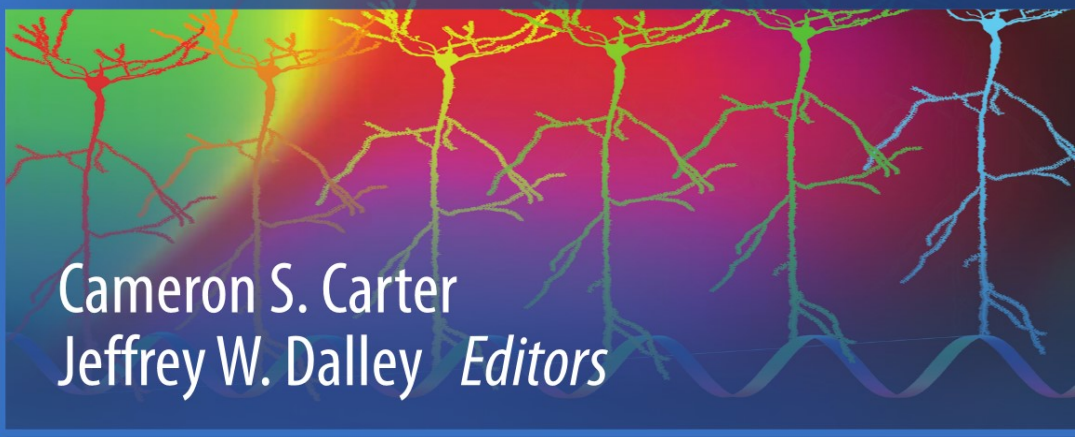
Current Topics in Behavioral Neurosciences 11



Cameron S. Carter
Jeffrey W. Dalley *Editors*

Brain Imaging in Behavioral Neuroscience

Springer

Current Topics in Behavioral Neurosciences

For further volumes:
http://www.springer.com/series/7854

About this Series

Current Topics in Behavioral Neurosciences provides critical and comprehensive discussions of the most significant areas of behavioral neuroscience research, written by leading international authorities. Each volume offers an informative and contemporary account of its subject, making it an unrivalled reference source. Titles in this series are available in both print and electronic formats.

With the development of new methodologies for brain imaging, genetic and genomic analyses, molecular engineering of mutant animals, novel routes for drug delivery, and sophisticated cross-species behavioral assessments, it is now possible to study behavior relevant to psychiatric and neurological diseases and disorders on the physiological level. The *Behavioral Neurosciences* series focuses on "translational medicine" and cutting-edge technologies. Preclinical and clinical trials for the development of new diagostics and therapeutics as well as prevention efforts are covered whenever possible.

Cameron S. Carter · Jeffrey W. Dalley
Editors

Brain Imaging in Behavioral Neuroscience

Springer

Editors
Cameron S. Carter
Imaging Research Center
Center for Neuroscience
University of California at Davis
Sacramento, CA 95817
USA

Jeffrey W. Dalley
Department of Experimental Psychology
University of Cambridge
Downing Site
Cambridge CB2 3EB
UK

ISSN 1866-3370 ISSN 1866-3389 (electronic)
ISBN 978-3-642-28710-7 ISBN 978-3-642-28711-4 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-28711-4
Springer Heidelberg New York Dordrecht London

Library of Congress Control Number: 2012938202

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

Preface

No technological advance has had greater impact on our understanding of human brain function or our approach to understanding the underlying mechanisms of brain disease than the emergence of methods for the non-invasive imaging of the human brain. Over a period of three short decades we have moved from an almost complete dependence on animal models and post mortem analysis to an era in which the structure, function, and molecular composition of the brain may be reliably measured with increasing precision and resolution. This has led to a revolutionary approach to modern neuroscience whereby neuroimaging studies enable us to bridge from a cellular, molecular and systems level understanding derived from animal model systems all the way to human cognition, emotion and behavior. The chapters in this volume describe the major technical advances in non-invasive neuroimaging along with important clinical and translational applications in a range of human developmental states and diseases. The first several chapters focus on molecular imaging approaches using Positron Emission Tomography (PET), the second set of chapters focuses on using Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) to reveal the structure, function, and molecular makeup of the brain.

Historically, PET research has focused on the brain dopaminergic systems, not least given the rich bounty of PET tracers targeting dopamine synthesis, plasma membrane transporters, and receptor binding sites. The first chapter by Volkow—a pioneering scientist in the use of PET to investigate dopamine transmission in addiction—gives a compelling insight into the brain mechanisms of this chronically relapsing brain affliction and the strong parallels of this disorder with obesity. This research has paved the way for neuroscientists interested in the causal attributes of dopamine dysfunction in psychopathology, specifically by aiding the development of translational models that capture key elements of clinical syndromes, including the addiction cycle. This has been no better exploited than the work of Gould and colleagues using a non-human primate model of stimulant addiction. Their review on neural vulnerability markers underlying addiction is thematic and timely to the concept of shared predispositions and clinical trajectories of several, often inter-related disorders such as addiction and attention

deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), a point emphasized by Del Campo and colleagues where they discuss the neuroimaging correlates of ADHD and prospects for treatment.

While PET offers the ability to non-invasively assess alterations in receptor function, it does routinely require restraint of the animal in order to keep it stationary during the period of data acquisition. In pre-clinical research this is usually achieved by general anaesthesia and other supplementary devices to fix, for example, the head in one position. This approach places a serious impediment to correlating PET signals with behavior. A quantitative solution to this problem is discussed by Aarons and co-authors, which utilises the gold standard tracer [18F]-fluorodeoxyglucose. This is a must-read chapter for neuroscientists considering using this approach for their own experiments.

Other chapters highlight the importance of PET in the domain of neurological disorders, which by virtue of their progressive underlying molecular neuropathology are well-matched to powerful longitudinal studies to facilitate diagnosis and the development of new therapies. Huguchi and colleagues discuss this important and growing area of research by drawing on evidence from animal models of Alzheimer's disease (AD) and the targeting of biomarkers underlying the immune response to neurodegeneration.

Following this article Cumming and Borghammer provide a comprehensive synthesis of molecular imaging studies in Parkinson's disease (PD) that extend beyond dopaminergic biomarkers in the basal ganglia. The chapter highlights the extraordinary heterogeneity of PD in terms of motor and cognitive impairment as well as underlying neurochemical pathology.

Finally in this section, Praschak-Rieder and Willeit discuss the astonishing relationship between rhythmical seasonal variations (e.g. in light intensity) and monoamine markers in the brain. The authors focus on the serotonergic systems, and their own remarkable contribution to this field that have implications for understanding the neurobiology of seasonal affective disorder.

The second section of the book, focusing largely on MRI based measures, begins with an article by Hall, which reviews the exciting application of magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS) to profile metabolic abnormalities in neurological disorders such as AD and PD. A comprehensive review then follows by Maddock and Buonocore on the major metabolites and neurotransmitters that can be measured in the human brain using MRS, along with a discussion of the insights and controversies regarding the functional significance of these measures. It then reviews the spectroscopic findings in a broad range of psychiatric diseases including the anxiety disorders, major depression, bipolar disorder and schizophrenia. This exhaustive distillation of a very large and complex literature is a must read for experts and beginners alike pursuing spectroscopy in patients with mental disorder.

Functional MRI has become a very widely applied methodology for understanding the relationship between discrete functional neural circuits, cognitive and emotional processing and symptoms in psychiatric and neurological disease. One area that has been a proving ground for this methodology has been the

investigation of the neural basis of cognitive deficits in schizophrenia. Libby and Ragland review this literature and chart the evolution in thinking about the mechanisms underlying cognitive dysfunction in schizophrenia, which has paralleled our growing understanding of the cognitive and neural basis of higher cognitive functions such as attention and memory in basic cognitive neuroscience. They also emphasize the evolution of thinking from a lesion deficit model to a systems level analysis of cognition related brain activity.

Two chapters address important issues in the use of MRI to understand the ageing brain. Andreescu and Aizenstein review methodological issues related to conducting fMRI studies of cognition in ageing subjects, as well as findings related to functional changes of brain circuitry associated with late life mood disorders. Next, Carmichael and Lockhart describe the use of diffusion tensor imaging (DTI) to study white matter tracts in the human brain along with its application in understanding the important and potentially partly reversible contribution of white matter disease to cognitive ageing.

Salo and Fassbender review non-invasive neuroimaging studies of individuals with methamphetamine addiction, a major public health problem in the Western United States and many other areas of the world. These authors review MRI studies of brain structure and function and chemistry as well as a body of PET neurochemistry studies in this disorder. This work is discussed in the context of the known neurotoxic effect of methamphetamine as well as documenting the improvements in brain structure and function that are seen with abstinence from the drug.

In the final chapter Minzenberg provides a comprehensive review of the conceptual and methodological issues related to the use of pharmacological MRI in studies investigating the mechanisms of action of psychopharmacological treatments. This chapter also highlights the value of neuroimaging as a source of biomarkers, which may enhance clinical diagnosis and provide surrogate measures of treatment effects, an important advance for treatment development for brain disorders, which has lagged behind that for many other medical conditions.

The broad range of topics covered as well as the methodological depth provided throughout the volume will ensure that the reader is left with a strong appreciation for the progress that has been made in the development and application of brain imaging in behavioral neuroscience as well as the tremendous potential that exists for further major advances in the coming years.

Sacramento, CA, USA — Cameron S. Carter
Cambridge, UK — Jeffrey W. Dalley

Contents

Food and Drug Reward: Overlapping Circuits in Human Obesity and Addiction

N. D. Volkow, G. J. Wang, J. S. Fowler, D. Tomasi and R. Baler

Abstract Both drug addiction and obesity can be defined as disorders in which the saliency value of one type of reward (drugs and food, respectively) becomes abnormally enhanced relative to, and at the expense of others. This model is consistent with the fact that both drugs and food have powerful reinforcing effects—partly mediated by dopamine increases in the limbic system—that, under certain circumstances or in vulnerable individuals, could overwhelm the brain's homeostatic control mechanisms. Such parallels have generated significant interest in understanding the shared vulnerabilities and trajectories between addiction and obesity. Now, brain imaging discoveries have started to uncover common features between these two conditions and to delineate some of the overlapping brain circuits whose dysfunctions may explain stereotypic and related behavioral deficits in human subjects. These results suggest that both obese and drug-addicted individuals suffer from impairments in dopaminergic pathways that regulate neuronal systems associated not only with reward sensitivity and incentive motivation, but also with conditioning (memory/learning), impulse control (behavioural inhibition), stress reactivity, and interoceptive awareness. Here, we integrate findings predominantly

N. D. Volkow (✉)
National Institute on Drug Abuse, 6001 Executive Boulevard 6001, Room 5274, Bethesda, MD 20892, USA
e-mail: nvolkow@nida.nih.gov

G. J. Wang · J. S. Fowler
Medical Department, Brookhaven National Laboratory, Upton, NY 11973, USA

D. Tomasi
National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA), National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD 20892, USA

R. Baler
National Institute on Drug Abuse, Bethesda, MD 20892, USA

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 1–24
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2011_169

Published Online: 21 October 2011

derived from positron emission tomography that shed light on the role of dopamine in drug addiction and in obesity, and propose an updated working model to help identify treatment strategies that may benefit both of these conditions.

Keywords Dopamine · Addiction · Obesity · Reward · Inhibitory control · Positron emission tomography

Contents

1 Background

Dopamine (DA) is considered a key to the rewarding effects of natural and drug rewards. However, its role in the loss of control and compulsive behaviours that are associated with addiction and obesity are much less clear. PET studies have played a crucial role in characterizing the role of the brain DA systems in addiction (in addition to its role in drug reward) and in obesity. Indeed, drugs of abuse (including alcohol) are consumed by humans or self-administered by laboratory animals because they are inherently rewarding, an effect that is mediated through their DA-enhancing properties in the mesolimbic system (Wise 2009). However, in the case of addiction, imaging studies have revealed that the disorder affects not only the DA reward circuit but also other DA pathways involved in the modulation of conditioning/habits, motivation, and executive functions (inhibitory control, salience attribution, and decision-making), and that DA deficits may also participate in the enhanced stress reactivity and disruption of interoceptive awareness associated with addiction. Preclinical and clinical studies have also revealed other neurotransmitters (and neuropeptides) that play important roles in drug reward and addiction (i.e., cannabinoids, opioids) and are intimately involved in the neuroplastic changes that follow repeated drug use (i.e., glutamate, opioids, GABA, corticotropin-releasing factor). The glutamatergic system is particularly prominent in this regard because it mediates the disruptions in both long-term potentiation and long-term depression that have been observed in animal models of chronic drug administration (Thomas et al. 2008). Reviews pertaining to these additional systems can be found elsewhere (Kalivas 2009; Koob 1992).

Since drugs activate the same reward systems that underlie food reward, it is not totally unexpected that, in general, brain imaging studies have supported the notion that impairments in DA-modulated circuits be also implicated in pathologic, compulsive eating behaviours. Food cues, like drug cues, increase striatal extracellular DA and drive the motivation to engage in the behaviours that are necessary to procure and eat the food, providing evidence for the involvement of DA not just in food reward but also in the non-hedonic motivational properties of food (i.e., caloric requirements) and the decrease in inhibitory control seen in compulsive overeating (Avena et al. 2008; Volkow et al. 2008a).

Here, we review findings from imaging studies that specifically focus on the overlaps in the brain circuits that are disrupted in obesity and in drug addiction. It is worth remembering, however, that the regulation of food intake behaviours is much more complex than the regulation of drug intake. The latter is predominantly mediated by the rewarding effects of drugs whereas the former is modulated not just by its rewarding effects (hedonic factors) but also by multiple peripheral and central factors that sense nutrient requirements in the body necessary for survival (homeostatic factors). Interestingly, there is growing evidence that homeostatic factors (e.g., insulin, leptin, ghrelin) modulate food intake in part by increasing or decreasing the sensitivity of brain reward circuits to food stimuli (Volkow et al. 2011a).

2 The Role of Dopamine in Acute Reward to Drugs and Food

Whether directly or indirectly, all addictive drugs display an ability to increase DA in nucleus accumbens (NAc) via specific interactions with different molecular targets (Nestler 2004) (Fig. 1). The mesolimbic DA pathway [DA cells in ventral tegmental area (VTA) that project into the NAc] seems to be crucial for drug reward (Wise 2009). However, as described below, other DA pathways [mesostriatal (DA cells in substantia nigra projecting into dorsal striatum) and mesocortical (DA cells in VTA projecting into frontal cortex)] also contribute to drug reward and addiction (Wise 2009). Overall, it appears that the rewarding and conditioning effects of drugs are predominantly driven by phasic DA cell firing, which leads to large and transient DA increases. In contrast, the downstream changes in executive function that occur in addiction are linked with changes in tonic DA cell firing and result in lower but more stable DA levels (Grace 2000; Wanat et al. 2009). This, in turn, point to the D1 receptors (D1R), which are low affinity DA receptors that stimulate cyclic AMP signaling, as being involved both in acute drug reward as well as in conditioning, since these are associated with the high DA concentrations necessary to stimulate D1R. In contrast, D2Rs, which inhibit cyclic AMP signaling, are stimulated by both phasic and tonic DA. Note that, due to the lack of specific radiotracers for the PET imaging of DA receptors of the D1, D3, D4, and D5 types, most studies on the effects of drugs of abuse and addiction in the human brain have focused on D2Rs.

In humans, PET studies have shown that several drugs [stimulants (Drevets et al. 2001; Volkow et al. 1999b), nicotine (Brody et al. 2009), alcohol (Boileau et al. 2003),

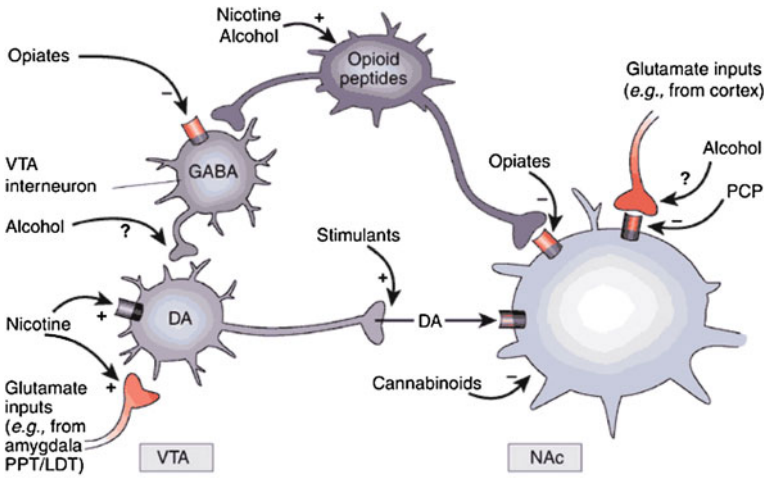


Fig. 1 Drugs of abuse act on the reward and ancillary circuits through different mechanisms, however, they all lead to similar dopaminergic effects in the VTA and NAc. Thus, stimulants boost acumbal DA directly, while opiates do this by lowering the inhibitory tone of GABAergic interneurons on DA signaling both either in the VTA or in then NAc. While the mechanisms of other drugs of abuse is less clear, there is evidence suggesting that nicotine may activate VTA DA *directly* through nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (nAChR) on those neurons and *indirectly* via stimulation of its receptors on glutamatergic nerve terminals that innervate the DA cells. Alcohol appears to inhibit GABAergic terminals in VTA, leading to DA neurons disinhibition in the VTA. Cannabinoids act, among others, through the activation of CB1 receptors on glutamatergic and GABAergic nerve terminals in the NAc, and on NAc neurons themselves. Phencyclidine (PCP) may act by inhibiting postsynaptic NMDA glutamate receptors in the NAc. In addition, there is some evidence suggesting that nicotine and alcohol may also interact with endogenous opioid and cannabinoid pathways (not shown). PPT/LDT, peduncular pontine tegmentum/lateral dorsal tegmentum. Reprinted with permission Nestler (2005)

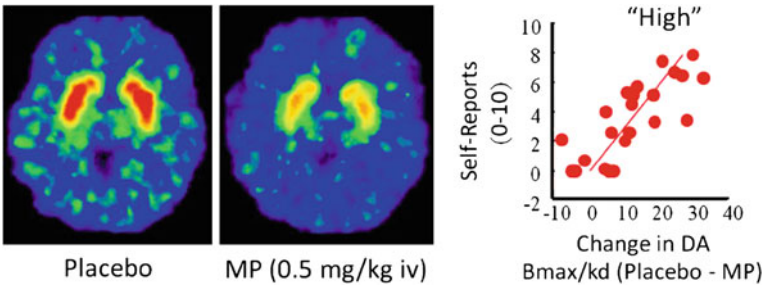


Fig. 2 Effects of intravenous methylphenidate (MP) in raclopride binding and relationship between striatal DA increases induced by MP in the striatum and the self-reports of "high". Modified from Volkow et al. (1999b)

and marijuana (Bossong et al. 2009)] increase DA in dorsal and ventral striatum (where the NAc is located). These studies take advantage of several radiotracers, such as [^{11}C]raclopride, that bind to D2R but only when these are not binding endogenous DA

(unoccupied), which under baseline conditions corresponds to 85–90% of the striatal D2R (Abi-Dargham et al. 1998). Thus, a comparison of [^{11}C]raclopride binding after placebo and after drug administration can help us estimate the decreases in D2R availability induced by the drug (or other stimuli that can increase DA). These decreases in [^{11}C]raclopride binding are proportional to the DA increases (Breier et al. 1997). These studies have shown that drug-induced DA increases in striatum are proportional to the intensity of the subjective experience of euphoria or "high" [see review (Volkow et al. 2009a)] (Fig. 2).

PET studies have also revealed a clear, direct relationship between a drug's pharmacokinetic profile (i.e., the speed with which it enters and leaves the brain) and its reinforcing effects. Specifically, the faster a drug reaches peak levels in the brain the more intense the "high" (Volkow et al. 2009a)**.** For example, for an equivalent level of cocaine reaching the brain (assessed through PET), when cocaine entered the brain rapidly (smoked or i.v. administration), it elicited a more intense "high" than when it entered at a slower rate (snorted) (Volkow et al. 2000). This is consistent with preclinical studies showing a similar correlation between a drug's pharmacokinetic profile and its reinforcing properties (Balster and Schuster 1973). It is reasonable to hypothesize that such abrupt and large DA increases as triggered by drugs of abuse may mimic the fast and large DA increases that result from phasic DA firing that have been associated, in the brain, with the processing of information about reward and saliency (Schultz 2010). Such drug-induced DA increases in the NAc may be necessary for addiction, but the fact that they occur also in non-addicted individuals indicates that they are insufficient to explain the impulsive and compulsive drug use characteristic of addiction.

There is now evidence that comparable dopaminergic responses are linked with food reward and that these mechanisms are also likely to play a role in excessive food consumption and obesity. It is well known that certain foods, particularly those rich in sugars and fat, are potently rewarding (Lenoir et al. 2007). High-calorie foods can promote over-eating (eating that is uncoupled from energetic needs) and trigger learned associations between the stimulus and the reward (conditioning). In evolutionary terms, this property of palatable foods *used* to be advantageous in environments where food sources were scarce and/or unreliable, because it ensured that food was eaten when available, enabling energy to be stored in the body (as fat) for future use. Unfortunately, in societies like ours, where food is plentiful and constantly available, this adaptation has become a liability.

Several neurotransmitters, including DA, cannabinoids, opioids, and serotonin, as well as hormones and neuropeptides involved in homeostatic regulation of food intake, such as insulin, orexin, leptin, and ghrelin, have been implicated in the rewarding effects of food (Atkinson 2008; Cason et al. 2010; Cota et al. 2006). Of these, DA has been the most thoroughly investigated and is the best characterized. Experiments in rodents have shown that, upon first exposure to a food reward, the firing of DA neurons in the VTA increases with a resulting increase in DA release in NAc (Norgren et al. 2006). Similarly, in healthy, normal-weight human subjects, the ingestion of palatable food has been shown to release DA in the dorsal striatum in proportion to the ratings of meal pleasantness (Small et al. 2003) (Fig. 3). However,

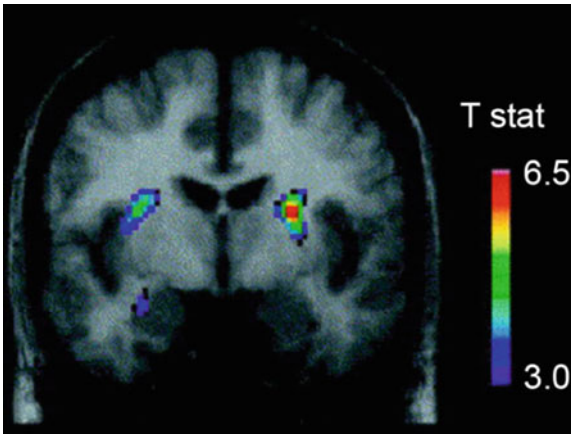


Fig. 3 Dopamine release induced by feeding. Coronal section from the T-map of statistically significant reductions in [^{11}C]raclopride's binding potential (BP) following feeding. The colour bar represents the *t* statistic values. (Reprinted with permission Small et al. 2003)

and as seen in studies with drug abusers, food-induced increases in striatal DA alone cannot explain the difference between normal food intake and excessive compulsive food consumption since these also occur in healthy individuals who do not eat excessively. Thus, as is the case for addiction, downstream adaptations are likely to be involved in the loss of control over food intake.

3 Imaging DA in Response to Drugs and to Conditioned Cues in Addiction

DA's role in reinforcement is more complex than just coding for reward per se (hedonic pleasure); for example, stimuli that induce fast and large DA increases also trigger conditioned responses and elicit incentive motivation to procure them (Owesson-White et al. 2009). This is important because, through the process of conditioning, neutral stimuli that are linked to the reinforcer (whether a natural or a drug reinforcer) acquire the ability *by themselves* to increase DA in striatum (including NAc) in anticipation of the reward, thus engendering a strong motivation to seek the drug (Owesson-White et al. 2009). However, uncoupling reward and conditioning mechanisms in the process of drug addiction is more challenging than for food consumption because drugs of abuse, through their pharmacological effects, directly activate DA neurons (i.e., nicotine) or increase DA release (i.e., amphetamine).

Brain imaging studies that compared the DA increases induced by the stimulant drug methylphenidate (MP) or amphetamine (AMPH) among cocaine addicted subjects vs. controls showed a marked attenuation of MP or AMPH-induced DA increases in striatum (50% lower in detoxified abusers and 80% in active abusers) and lower self-reports of the drug's rewarding effects relative to non-drug-abusing controls (Martinez et al. 2007; Volkow et al. 1997) (Fig. 4). This was surprising since MP and AMPH are pharmacologically similar to cocaine and methamphetamine, respectively, and drug abusers cannot distinguish between them when

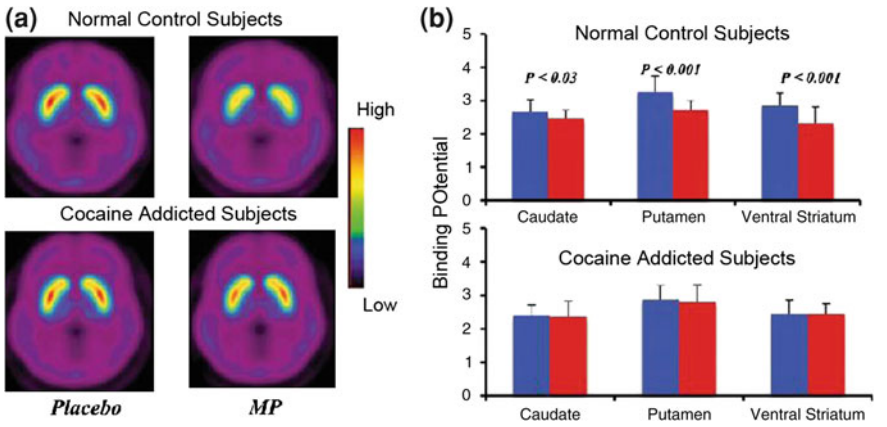


Fig. 4 DA changes induced by i.v. MP in controls and in active cocaine-addicted subjects. **a** Average nondisplaceable biding potential (BPND) images of [^{11}C]raclopride in active cocaine-addicted subjects ($n = 19$) and in controls ($n = 24$) tested after placebo and after i.v. MP. **b** D2R availability (BPND) in caudate, putamen, and ventral striatum after placebo (*blue*) and after MP (*red*) in controls and in cocaine-addicted subjects. MP reduced D2R in controls but not in cocaine-addicted subjects. Note that cocaine abusers show both decreases in baseline striatal D2R availability (placebo measure) and decreases in DA release when given i.v. MP (measured as decreases in D2R availability from baseline). Although one could question the extent to which the low striatal D2R availability in cocaine-addicted subject limits the ability to detect further decreases from MP, the fact that cocaine-addicted subjects show reductions in D2R availability when exposed to cocaine cues indicates that the attenuated effects of MP on [^{11}C]raclopride binding reflect decreased DA release. Reprinted with permission (Volkow et al. 1997; Wang et al. 2010)

they are administered intravenously. Since the marked reductions in the drug-induced DA increases were observed whether the cocaine abusers had been detoxified or not, this indicates that the state of withdrawal is not a confounding factor (Volkow et al. 2011b). These and related results (Volkow et al. 2009a) are consistent with the hypothesis that the hedonic response becomes deficient in drug-addicted individuals, and further strengthen the notion that the acute pharmacological DA-enhancing effects of the drug in NAc cannot explain by themselves the increased motivation to consume them.

The response of VTA DA neurons to rewarding stimuli changes with repeated exposure. While DA cells fire upon the first exposure to a novel reward, repeated exposure to DA causes the neurons to stop firing upon reward consumption and fire instead when they are exposed to stimuli that are predictive of the reward (Schultz et al. 1997). This is likely to underlie DA's role in learning and conditioning. Indeed, drug-induced phasic DA signaling can eventually trigger neuroadaptations in ancillary circuits that are related to habit formation and behavioural conditioning. These changes are predominantly induced by D1R signaling and synaptic changes in glutamate-modulated NMDA and AMPA receptors (Luscher and Malenka 2011; Zweifel et al. 2009). Recruitment of these circuits is significant in disease progression

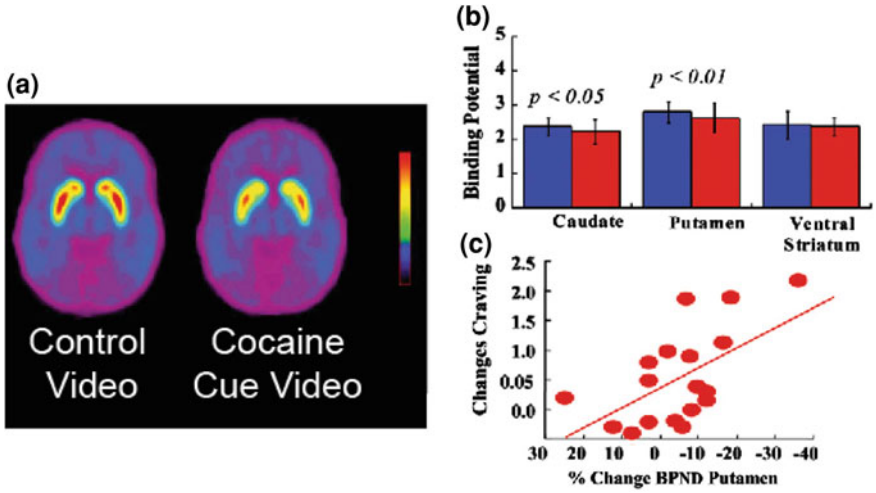


Fig. 5 DA changes induced by conditioned cues in active cocaine-addicted subjects. **a** Average nondisplaceable binding potential (BPND) images of [11C]raclopride in cocaine-addicted subjects ($n = 17$) tested while viewing a neutral video (nature scenes) and while viewing a cocaine-cues video (subjects administering cocaine). **b** D2R availability (BPND) in caudate, putamen, and ventral striatum for the neutral video (*blue*) and the cocaine-cues video (*red*). The cocaine cues decreased D2R in caudate and putamen. **c** Correlations between changes in D2R (reflecting DA increases) and self-reports of cocaine craving induced by the cocaine-cues video. Modified from ref. (Volkow et al. 2006b)

because the ensuing conditioned responses help explain the intense desire for the drug (craving) and the compulsive use that occurs when addicted subjects are exposed to drug-associated cues. This hypothesis is consistent with independent observations (Volkow et al. 2006b; Wong et al. 2006) that show the power of cocaine-associated cue exposure to raise DA levels in the dorsal striatum and trigger a concomitant increase in the subjective experience of craving in detoxified cocaine abusers (Fig. 5). Since the dorsal striatum plays a role in habit learning (Belin et al. 2009; Yin et al. 2004), the association is likely to reflect the strengthening of habits as chronicity of addiction progresses. This suggests that a basic disruption in addiction might relate to the DA-triggered conditioned responses that result in habits leading to intense craving and compulsive drug consumption. Interestingly, in actively using cocaine-addicted subjects, the DA increases triggered by conditioned cues appear to be *even larger* than those produced by the stimulant drug itself as assessed in two separate group of subjects (Volkow et al. 2011b, 2006b), suggesting that conditioned responses may drive the DA signaling that maintains the motivation to take the drug even when its pharmacological effects appear to be reduced. Thus, although drugs may initially induce feelings of immediate reward through DA release in the ventral striatum, with repeated use, and as habit develops, there appears to be a shift from the drug to the conditioned stimulus. According to studies in laboratory animals, glutamatergic projections from prefrontal cortex and from amygdala into VTA/SN

and NAc mediate these conditioned responses (Kalivas 2009). In this manner, the mere prediction of a reward may eventually become the reward that motivates the behaviour necessary for drug (or food) consumption.

Interestingly, this type of functional "switch" has also been reported for *natural reinforcers*, which are likely to induce an equivalent and gradual shift in DA increases, from ventral to more dorsal regions of the striatum during the transition from a novel stimulus that is inherently rewarding to that of the associated cues that predict it. This transition is conveyed through DA signaling, which appears to code for a "reward prediction error" (Schultz 2010). The extensive glutamatergic afferents to DA neurons from regions involved in the processing of sensory (insula or primary gustatory cortex), homeostatic (hypothalamus), reward (NAc), emotional (amygdala and hippocampus), and multimodal (orbitofrontal cortex for salience attribution) information, modulate their activity in response to rewards and to conditioned cues (Geisler and Wise 2008). More specifically, projections from the amygdala and the orbitofrontal cortex (OFC) to DA neurons and to NAc are involved in conditioned responses to food (Petrovich 2010). Indeed, imaging studies showed that when non-obese male subjects were asked to inhibit their craving for food -while being exposed to food cues-, they exhibited decreased metabolic activity in amygdala and OFC (as well as in hippocampus), insula and striatum, and that the decreases in OFC were associated with reductions in food craving (Wang et al. 2009). A similar inhibition of the metabolic activity in the OFC (and also in NAc) has been observed in cocaine abusers when they were asked to inhibit their drug craving upon exposure to cocaine-cues (Volkow et al. 2009b).

Still, the emergence of such powerfully cue-conditioned cravings, which for food also occur in healthy individuals who do not overeat, would not be as devastating were they not coupled with growing deficits in the brain's ability to inhibit maladaptive behaviours.

4 The Impact of Dysfunction in Inhibitory Control

The capacity to inhibit prepotent responses is bound to contribute to an individual's ability to avoid engaging in inappropriate behaviours, such as taking drugs or eating past the point of satiety, and thus increasing his/her vulnerability to addiction (or obesity) (Volkow and Fowler 2000; Volkow et al. 2008a).

PET studies have uncovered significant reductions in D2R availability in the striatum of addicted subjects that persist for months after protracted detoxification [reviewed in (Volkow et al. 2009a)]. Similarly, preclinical studies in rodent and non-human primates have shown that repeated drug exposures are associated with reductions in striatal D2R levels (Nader et al. 2006; Thanos et al. 2007; Volkow et al. 2001). In the striatum, D2Rs mediate signaling in the striatal indirect pathway that modulates prefrontal regions; and its downregulation has been shown to enhance sensitization to the effects of drugs in animal models

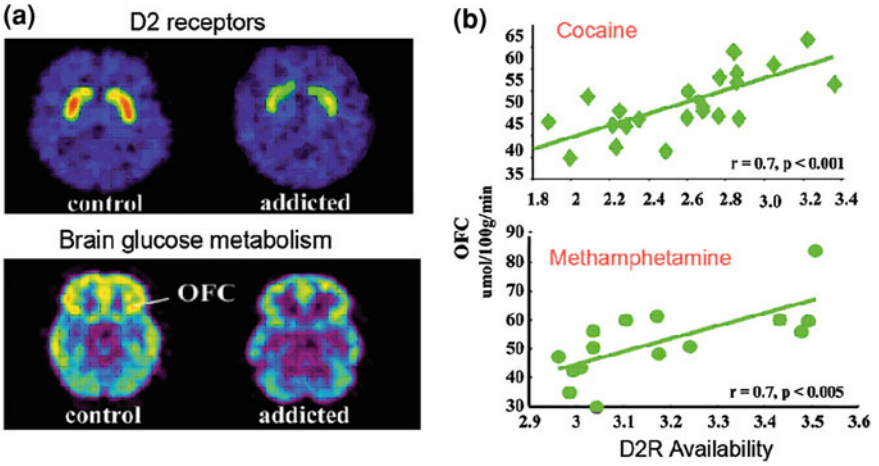


Fig. 6 Correlations between striatal D2R availability and metabolism in prefrontal brain regions. **a** Axial brain images for a control and for a cocaine-addicted subject for baseline images of D2R availability in striatum (obtained with [^{11}C]raclopride) and of brain glucose metabolism in OFC (obtained with [^{18}FDG). **b** Correlations between striatal D2R and metabolism in OFC in cocaine-addicted and methamphetamine-addicted subjects. Reprinted from Volkow et al. (2009a) Copyright (2009), with permission from Elsevier

(Ferguson et al. 2011). In humans addicted to drugs, the reduction in striatal D2R is associated with decreased activity of prefrontal regions as evidenced by decreases in baseline glucose metabolism (a marker of brain function) in OFC, anterior cingulate gyrus (ACC), and dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (DLPFC) (Volkow et al. 2001, 1993, 2007) (Fig. 6). Inasmuch as OFC, ACC, and DLPFC are involved with salience attribution, inhibitory control/emotion regulation, and decision-making, respectively, it has been postulated that their improper regulation by D2R-mediated DA signaling in addicted subjects could underlie the enhanced motivational value of drugs in their behaviour and the loss of control over drug intake (Volkow and Fowler 2000). In addition, because impairments in OFC and ACC are associated with compulsive behaviours and impulsivity (Fineberg et al. 2009), DA's impaired modulation of these regions is likely to contribute to the compulsive and impulsive drug intake seen in addiction (Goldstein and Volkow 2002). Indeed, in methamphetamine abusers, low striatal D2R was associated with impulsivity (Lee et al. 2009), and it also predicted compulsive cocaine administration in rodents (Everitt et al. 2008). A reverse scenario, in which an initial vulnerability for drug use preexists in prefrontal regions, and whereby repeated drug use triggers further decreases in striatal D2R, is also possible. Indeed, a study done in subjects who, despite having a high risk for alcoholism (positive family history of alcoholism) were not alcoholics, revealed a higher than normal striatal D2R availability that was associated with normal metabolism in OFC, ACC, and DLPFC (Volkow et al. 2006a). This suggests that, in these subjects at risk for

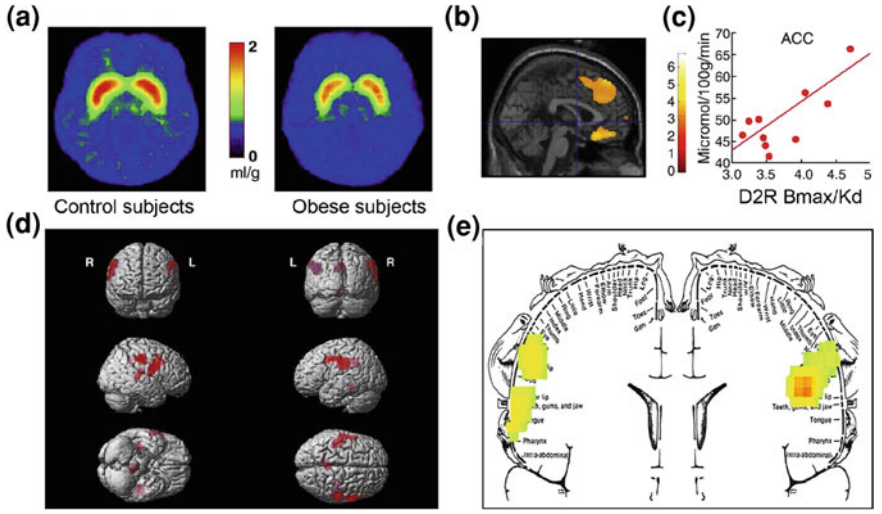


Fig. 7 Hyperphagia could result from a drive to compensate for a weakened reward circuit (processed through dopamine regulated corticostriatal circuits) combined with a heightened sensitivity to palatability (hedonic properties of food processed in part through the somatosensory cortex). **a** Averaged images for DA D2 receptor (D2R) availability in controls ($n = 10$) and in morbidly obese subjects ($n = 10$). **b** Results from (Statistical Parametric Mapping) SPM identifying the areas in the brain where D2R was associated with glucose metabolism, these included the medial OFC, ACC, and the dorsolateral PFC (region not shown). **c** Regression slope between striatal D2R and metabolic activity in ACC in obese subjects. **d** Three-dimensionally rendered SPM images showing the areas with higher metabolism in obese than in lean subjects ($P < 0.003$, uncorrected). **e** Colour coded SPM results displayed in a coronal plane with a superimposed diagram of the somatosensory homunculus. The results (z value) are presented using the rainbow scale where red > yellow > green. When compared with lean subjects, obese subjects had higher baseline metabolism in the somatosensory areas where the mouth, lips, and tongue are represented and which are involved with processing food palatability. Modified, with permission, from Volkow et al. (2008a) (**a**–**c**) and Wang et al. (2002) (**d**, **e**)

alcoholism, the normal prefrontal function was linked to enhanced striatal D2R signaling, which in turn may have protected them from alcohol abuse.

Predictably, evidence of dysregulation in control circuits has also been found among obese individuals. Both preclinical and clinical studies have provided evidence of decreased striatal D2R signaling, which, as mentioned above, is linked with reward (NAc) but also with the establishment of habits and routines (dorsal striatum) in obesity (Geiger et al. 2009; Wang et al. 2001). Importantly, decreased striatal D2R availability has been linked to compulsive food intake in obese rodents (Johnson and Kenny 2010) and with decreased metabolic activity in OFC and ACC in obese humans (Volkow et al. 2008b) (Fig. 7a–c). Given that dysfunction in OFC and ACC results in compulsivity [see review (Fineberg et al. 2009)], this might be part of the mechanism by which low striatal D2R signaling facilitates hyperphagia (Davis et al. 2009). In addition, since decreased D2R-related signaling is also likely to reduce the sensitivity to other natural rewards,

this deficit in obese individuals might also contribute to compensatory overeating (Geiger et al. 2008).

This hypothesis is consistent with preclinical evidence showing that decreased DA activity in VTA results in a dramatic increase in the consumption of high-fat foods (Stoeckel et al. 2008). Similarly, compared with normal-weight individuals, obese individuals who were presented with pictures of high-calorie food (stimuli to which they are conditioned) showed increased neural activation in regions that are part of reward and motivation circuits (NAc, dorsal striatum, OFC, ACC, amygdala, hippocampus, and insula) (Killgore and Yurgelun-Todd 2005). By contrast, in normal-weight controls, the activation of the ACC and OFC (regions involved in salience attribution that project into the NAc) during presentation of high-calorie food was found to be negatively correlated with their body mass index (BMI) (Stice et al. 2008b). This suggests a dynamic interaction between the amount of food eaten (reflected in part in the BMI) and the reactivity of reward regions to high-calorie food (reflected in the activation of OFC and ACC) in normal-weight individuals, which is lost in obesity.

Surprisingly, obese individuals exhibited less activation of reward circuits from actual food consumption (referred to as *consummatory* food reward) than lean individuals, whereas they showed greater activation of somatosensory cortical regions that process palatability when they anticipated consumption (Stice et al. 2008b). The latter observation corresponded to regions where a previous study had revealed enhanced activity in obese subject tested at baseline (non stimulation) (Wang et al. 2002) (Fig. 7d, e). An enhanced activity of regions that process palatability could make obese subjects favour food over other natural reinforcers, whereas decreased activation of dopaminergic targets by the actual food consumption might lead to overconsumption as a means to compensate for weak D2R-mediated signaling (Stice et al. 2008a). This reduced response of the reward circuitry to food consumption in obese subjects is reminiscent of the reduced DA increases triggered by drug consumption in addicted individuals when compared to non-addicted subjects.

The prefrontal cortex (PFC) plays a crucial role in executive function, including inhibitory control (Miller and Cohen 2001). These processes are modulated by D1R and D2R (presumably also D4R) and thus, the decreased activity in PFC, both in addiction and in obesity, is likely to contribute to poor control and high compulsivity. The lower-than-normal availability of D2R in the striatum of obese individuals, which has been associated with reduced activity in PFC and ACC (Volkow et al. 2008b) is therefore likely to contribute to their deficient control over food intake. Indeed, the negative correlation between BMI and striatal D2R reported in obese (Wang et al. 2001) and in overweight (Haltia et al. 2007a) individuals supports this. A better understanding of the mechanisms that lead to impaired PFC function in obesity (or addiction) could facilitate the development of strategies to ameliorate, or perhaps even reverse, specific impairments in crucial cognitive domains. For example, delay discounting, which is the tendency to devalue a reward as a function of the temporal delay of its delivery, is one of the most extensively investigated cognitive operations in relation to disorders associated with impulsivity and

compulsivity. Delay discounting has been most exhaustively investigated in drug abusers who exhibit an exaggerated preference for small-but-immediate over large-but-delayed rewards (Bickel et al. 2007). However, the few studies performed with obese individuals have also uncovered evidence of a preference for high, immediate rewards, despite an increased chance of suffering higher future losses (Brogan et al. 2010; Weller et al. 2008). And more recently, another study found a positive correlation between BMI and *hyperbolic* discounting, whereby future *negative* payoffs are discounted less than future positive payoffs (Ikeda et al. 2010). Interestingly, delay discounting seems to depend on the function of ventral striatum (Gregorios-Pippas et al. 2009) and of the PFC, including lateral OFC (Bjork et al. 2009), and is sensitive to DA manipulations (Pine et al. 2010). Specifically, enhancing DA signaling (with L DOPA treatment) increased impulsivity and temporal discounting.

5 Involvement of Motivation Circuits

Dopaminergic signaling also modulates motivation. Behavioural traits such as vigor, persistence, and investing a continued effort towards achieving a goal, are all subject to modulation by DA acting through several target regions, including NAc, ACC, OFC, DLPFC, amygdala, dorsal striatum, and ventral pallidum (Salamone et al. 2007). Dysregulated DA signaling is associated with enhanced motivation to procure drugs, a hallmark of addiction, which is why drug-addicted individuals often engage in extreme behaviours to obtain drugs, even when they entail known severe and adverse consequences (Volkow and Li 2005). Because drug taking becomes the main motivational drive in drug addiction (Volkow et al. 2003), addicted subjects are aroused and motivated by the process of obtaining the drug but tend to become withdrawn and apathetic when exposed to non-drug-related activities. This shift has been studied by comparing the brain activation patterns occurring with exposure to conditioned cues with those occurring in the absence of such cues. In contrast to the decreases in prefrontal activity reported in detoxified cocaine abusers when not stimulated with drug or drug cues [see review (Volkow et al. 2009a)], these prefrontal regions become activated when cocaine abusers are exposed to craving-inducing stimuli (either drugs or cues) (Grant et al. 1996; Volkow et al. 1999a; Wang et al. 1999). This result is reminiscent of the observation that cocaine abusers, studied shortly after an episode of cocaine binging, showed an increase in metabolic activity in OFC and ACC (also dorsal striatum) that was associated with craving (Volkow et al. 1991).

Moreover, when the responses to i.v. MP are compared between cocaine-addicted and non-addicted individuals, the former responded with increased metabolism in ventral ACC and medial OFC (an effect associated with craving), while the latter showed the opposite response, namely decreased metabolism in these regions (Volkow et al. 2005). This suggests that the activation of these prefrontal regions with drug exposure may be specific to addiction and associated with the enhanced desire for the drug. In addition, a study that prompted cocaine-addicted

subjects to purposefully inhibit craving when exposed to drug cues showed that those subjects who were successful at inhibiting craving displayed decreased metabolism in medial OFC (which processes motivational value of a reinforcer) and NAc (which predicts reward) (Volkow et al. 2009b). These findings further corroborate the involvement of OFC, ACC, and striatum in the enhanced motivation to procure the drug seen in addiction.

Predictably, the OFC has also been implicated in attributing salience value to food (Grabenhorst et al. 2008; Rolls and McCabe 2007), helping to assess its expected pleasantness and palatability as a function of its context. PET studies with FDG to measure brain glucose metabolism in normal weight individuals reported that exposure to food-cues increased metabolic activity in OFC, which was an effect associated with the perception of hunger and the desire for food (Wang et al. 2004). The enhanced OFC activation by the food stimulation is likely to reflect downstream dopaminergic effects and participate in DA's involvement in the drive for food consumption. The OFC plays a role in learning stimulus-reinforcement associations and conditioning (Cox et al. 2005; Gallagher et al. 1999), supports conditioned-cue elicited feeding (Weingarten 1983), and probably contributes to overeating irrespective of hunger signals (Ogden and Wardle 1990). Indeed, dysfunction of the OFC has been linked to overeating (Machado and Bachevalier 2007).

In spite of some inconsistencies among studies, brain imaging data also support the notion that structural and functional changes in brain regions implicated in executive function (including inhibitory control) may be associated with high BMI in otherwise healthy individuals. For example, an MRI study done in elderly women, using voxel-based morphometry, found a negative correlation between BMI and gray matter volumes (including frontal regions), which, in the OFC, was associated with impaired executive function (Walther et al. 2010). Using PET to measure brain glucose metabolism in healthy controls, we reported a negative correlation between BMI and metabolic activity in DLPFC, OFC, and ACC. In this study, the metabolic activity in prefrontal regions predicted the subjects' performance in tests of executive function (Volkow et al. 2009c). Similarly, a nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopic study in healthy middle age and elderly controls showed that BMI was negatively associated with the levels of N-acetyl-aspartate (a marker of neuronal integrity) in frontal cortex and ACC (Gazdzinski et al. 2008; Volkow et al. 2009c).

Brain imaging studies comparing obese and lean individuals have also reported lower gray matter density in frontal regions (frontal operculum and middle frontal gyrus) and in post-central gyrus and putamen (Pannacciulli et al. 2006). Another study, found no differences in gray matter volumes between obese and lean subjects, however, it did record a positive correlation between white matter volume in basal brain structures and waist to hip ratios, a trend that was partially reversed by dieting (Haltia et al. 2007b). Interestingly, cortical areas, like the DPFC and OFC that are involved in inhibitory control, have also been found to become activated in successful dieters in response to meal consumption (DelParigi et al. 2007), suggesting a potential target for behavioural retraining in the treatment of obesity (and also in addiction).

6 Involvement of Interoceptive Circuitry

Neuroimaging studies have revealed that the middle insula plays a critical role in cravings for food, cocaine, and cigarettes (Bonson et al. 2002; Pelchat et al. 2004; Wang et al. 2007). The importance of the insula has been highlighted by a study that reported that smokers with damage to this region (but not control smokers who had suffered extra-insular lesions) were able to stop smoking easily and without experiencing either cravings or relapse (Naqvi et al. 2007). The insula, particularly its more anterior regions, is reciprocally connected to several limbic regions (e.g., ventromedial prefrontal cortex, amygdala, and ventral striatum) and appears to have an interoceptive function, integrating the autonomic and visceral information with emotion and motivation, thus providing conscious awareness of these urges (Naqvi and Bechara 2009). Indeed, brain lesion studies suggest that the ventromedial PFC and insula are necessary components of the distributed circuits that support emotional decision-making (Clark et al. 2008). Consistent with this hypothesis, imaging studies consistently show differential activation of the insula during craving (Brody et al. 2009; Goudriaan et al. 2010; Naqvi and Bechara 2009; Wang et al. 1999). Accordingly, the reactivity of this brain region has been suggested to serve as a biomarker to help predict relapse (Janes et al. 2010).

The insula is also a primary gustatory area, which participates in many aspects of eating behaviours, such as taste. In addition, the rostral insula (connected to primary taste cortex) provides information to the OFC that influences its multimodal representation of the pleasantness or reward value of incoming food (Rolls 2008). Because of the involvement of the insula in the interoceptive sense of the body, in emotional awareness (Craig 2003) and in motivation and emotion (Rolls 2008), a contribution of insular impairment in obesity could be expected. Indeed, gastric distention results in activation of the posterior insula, which is likely to reflect its role in the awareness of body states (in this case of fullness) (Wang et al. 2008). Moreover, in lean, but not in obese subjects, gastric distention resulted in activation of the amygdala and deactivation of the anterior insula (Tomasi et al. 2009). The lack of amygdala response in obese subjects could reflect a blunted interoceptive awareness of bodily states linked with satiety (full stomach). Even though the modulation of insular activity by DA has been poorly investigated, it is recognised that DA is involved in the responses to tasting of palatable foods that are mediated through the insula (Hajnal and Norgren 2005). Human imaging studies have shown that tasting palatable foods activated the insula and midbrain areas (DelParigi et al. 2005; Frank et al. 2008). However, the DA signaling may also be necessary for sensing the calorie content of food. For example, when normal weight women tasted a sweetener with calories (sucrose), both the insula and dopaminergic midbrain areas became activated, whereas tasting a calorie-free sweetener (sucralose) only activated the insula (Frank et al. 2008). Obese subjects exhibit greater insular activation than normal controls when tasting a liquid meal that consists of sugar and fat (DelParigi et al. 2005). In contrast, subjects who have recovered from anorexia nervosa show less activation in the insula when tasting

sucrose and no association of feelings of pleasantness with insular activation as observed in the normal controls (Wagner et al. 2008). When combined, these results make it likely that dysregulation of the insula in response to taste stimuli might be involved in the impaired control of various appetitive behaviours.

7 The Circuitry of Aversion

As mentioned before, training (conditioning) on a cue that predicts reward leads to dopaminergic cells firing in response to the prediction of reward, and not to the reward itself. On the other hand, and consistent with this logic, it has been observed that dopaminergic cells will fire *less than normal* if the expected reward fails to materialise (Schultz et al. 1997). Cumulative evidence (Christoph et al. 1986; Lisoprawski et al. 1980; Matsumoto and Hikosaka 2007; Nishikawa et al. 1986) points to the habenula as one of the regions that controls the decreases in firing of dopaminergic cells in VTA that may follow the failure to receive an expected reward (Kimura et al. 2007). Thus, an enhanced sensitivity of the habenula, as a result of chronic drug exposures, could underlie a greater reactivity to drug cues. Indeed, activation of the habenula, in cocaine-addicted subjects, has been associated with behavioural relapse to drug taking upon cue exposure (Brown et al. 2011; Zhang et al. 2005). In the case of nicotine, the $\alpha 5$ nicotinic receptors in the habenula appear to modulate the aversive responses to large doses of nicotine (Fowler et al. 2011); and the $\alpha 5$ and $\alpha 2$ receptors in the habenula are implicated in nicotine withdrawal (Salas et al. 2009). Because of the habenula's opposite response to that of DA neurons to reward (deactivation) and its activation upon exposure to aversive stimuli, we refer here to the habenula signaling as one conveying an "antireward" input.

The habenula appears to play a similar role with regards to food reward. A highly palatable food diet can induce obesity in rats, with the weight increases correlating with increases in μ-opioid peptide binding in the basolateral and basomedial amygdala. Interestingly, the medial habenula showed significantly higher μ-opioid peptide binding (by approximately 40%) after exposure to the palatable food in the rats that gained weight (those that consumed more food) but not in those that did not (Smith et al. 2002). This suggests that the habenula may be involved in overeating under conditions of availability of palatable food. Moreover, neurons in the rostromedial tegmental nucleus, which receive a major input from the lateral habenula, project to VTA DA neurons and are activated after food deprivation (Jhou et al. 2009). These findings are consistent with a role for the habenula in mediating responses to aversive stimuli or states such as those that occur during dieting or drug withdrawal.

The involvement of the habenula as an antireward hub within emotional networks is consistent with prior theoretical models of addiction that postulated sensitized anti-reward responses (mediated through enhanced sensitivity of the amygdala and increased signaling though the corticotropin releasing factor) as

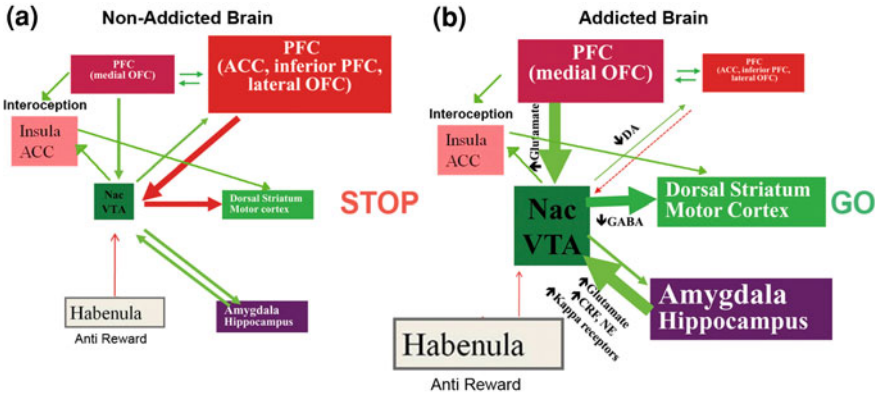


Fig. 8 Model proposing a network of interacting circuits, disruptions which contribute to the complex set of stereotypic behaviours underlying drug addiction and chronic overeating: reward (nucleus accumbens, VTA, and ventral pallidum), conditioning/memory (amygdala, medial OFC for attribution of saliency, hippocampus, and dorsal striatum for habits), executive control (DLPFC, ACC, inferior frontal cortex, and lateral OFC), motivation/drive (medial OFC for attribution of saliency, ventral ACC, VTA, SN, dorsal striatum, and motor cortex). Nac, nucleus accumbens, interoception (Insula and ACC), and aversion/avoidance (Habenula). **a** When these circuits are balanced, this results in proper inhibitory control and decision making. **b** During addiction, when the enhanced expectation value of the drug in the reward, motivation, and memory circuits overcomes the control circuit, favouring a positive-feedback loop initiated by the consumption of the drug and perpetuated by the enhanced activation of the motivation/drive and memory circuits. These circuits also interact with circuits involved in mood regulation, including stress reactivity (which involves the amygdala, hypothalamus, habenula) and interoception (which involves the insula and ACC and contributes to awareness of craving). Several neurotransmitters are implicated in these neuroadaptations, including glutamate, GABA, norepinephrine, corticotropin-releasing factor, and opioid receptors. CRF, corticotropin-releasing factor; NE, norepinephrine. Modified with permission from Volkow et al. (2011b)

driving drug intake in addiction (Koob and Le Moal 2008). Similar antireward responses may also contribute to excessive food consumption in obesity.

8 Pathological Drug and Food Reward: An Updated Working Model

The ability to resist the urge to use a drug or eat past the point of satiety requires the proper functioning of neuronal circuits involved in top-down control to oppose the conditioned responses that predict reward from ingesting the food/drug and the desire to ingest the food/drug. Here, we highlighted six of these circuits: reward/saliency, conditioning/habits, inhibitory control/executive function, motivation/drive, interoception, and aversion avoidance/stress reactivity (Fig. 8). Based on the imaging data presented here, we postulate that it is the

discrepancy between the expectation for the drug/food effects (conditioned responses) and the blunted neurophysiological effects that maintains the taking of drugs or the overconsumption of foods in an attempt to attain the expected reward. Also, whether tested during early or protracted periods of abstinence/dieting, addicted/obese subjects show lower D2R in striatum (including NAc), which are associated with decreases in baseline activity in frontal brain regions implicated in salience attribution (orbitofrontal cortex) and inhibitory control (ACC and DLPFC), whose disruption results in compulsivity and impulsivity. Finally, evidence has also been emerging on the role of interoceptive and aversive circuitry in the systemic imbalances that result in the compulsive consumption of either drugs or food.

As a consequence of the sequential disruption in these circuits, individuals may experience 1) an enhanced motivational value of the drug/food (secondary to learned associations through conditioning and habits) at the expense of other reinforcers (secondary to decreased sensitivity of the reward circuit), 2) an impaired ability to inhibit the intentional (goal-directed) actions triggered by the strong desire to take the drug/food (secondary to impaired executive function) that result in compulsive drug/food taking, and 3) enhanced stress reactivity and aversive avoidance that results in impulsive drug taking to escape the aversive state.

This model suggests a multipronged therapeutic approach to addiction designed to decrease the reinforcing properties of drug/food, reestablish/enhance the rewarding properties of natural reinforcers, inhibit conditioned learned associations, enhance motivation for non-drug/food-related activities, decrease stress reactivity, improve mood, and strengthen general-purpose inhibitory control.

Acknowledgments The authors would like to thank the support of the NIAAA intramural program of the National Institutes of Health.

References

Abi-Dargham A, Gil R, Krystal J, Baldwin RM, Seibyl JP, Bowers M et al (1998) Increased striatal dopamine transmission in schizophrenia: confirmation in a second cohort. Am J Psychiatry 155:761–767

Atkinson TJ (2008) Central and peripheral neuroendocrine peptides and signalling in appetite regulation: considerations for obesity pharmacotherapy. Obes Rev 9:108–120

Avena NM, Rada P, Hoebel BG (2008) Evidence for sugar addiction: behavioral and neurochemical effects of intermittent, excessive sugar intake. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 32:20–39

Balster RL, Schuster CR (1973) Fixed-interval schedule of cocaine reinforcement: effect of dose and infusion duration. J Exp Anal Behav 20:119–129

Belin D, Jonkman S, Dickinson A, Robbins TW, Everitt BJ (2009) Parallel and interactive learning processes within the basal ganglia: relevance for the understanding of addiction. Behav Brain Res 199:89–102

Bickel WK, Miller ML, Yi R, Kowal BP, Lindquist DM, Pitcock JA (2007) Behavioral and neuroeconomics of drug addiction: competing neural systems and temporal discounting processes. Drug Alcohol Depend 90 Suppl 1:S85–S91

Bjork JM, Momenan R, Hommer DW (2009) Delay discounting correlates with proportional lateral frontal cortex volumes. Biol Psychiatry 65:710–713

Boileau I, Assaad JM, Pihl RO, Benkelfat C, Leyton M, Diksic M et al (2003) Alcohol promotes dopamine release in the human nucleus accumbens. Synapse 49:226–231

Bonson KR, Grant SJ, Contoreggi CS, Links JM, Metcalfe J, Weyl HL et al (2002) Neural systems and cue-induced cocaine craving. Neuropsychopharmacology 26:376–386

Bossong MG, van Berckel BN, Boellaard R, Zuurman L, Schuit RC, Windhorst AD et al (2009) Delta 9-tetrahydrocannabinol induces dopamine release in the human striatum. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:759–766

Breier A, Su TP, Saunders R, Carson RE, Kolachana BS, de Bartolomeis A et al (1997) Schizophrenia is associated with elevated amphetamine-induced synaptic dopamine concentrations: evidence from a novel positron emission tomography method. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94:2569–2574

Brody AL, Mandelkern MA, Olmstead RE, Allen-Martinez Z, Scheibal D, Abrams AL et al (2009) Ventral striatal dopamine release in response to smoking a regular vs a denicotinized cigarette. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 34:282-289

Brogan A, Hevey D, Pignatti R (2010) Anorexia, bulimia, and obesity: shared decision making deficits on the Iowa Gambling Task (IGT). J Int Neuropsychol Soc 16:711–715

Brown RM, Short JL, Lawrence AJ (2011) Identification of brain nuclei implicated in cocaine-primed reinstatement of conditioned place preference: a behaviour dissociable from sensitization. PLoS One 5:e15889

Cason AM, Smith RJ, Tahsili-Fahadan P, Moorman DE, Sartor GC, Aston-Jones G (2010) Role of orexin/hypocretin in reward-seeking and addiction: implications for obesity. Physiol Behav 100:419–428

Christoph GR, Leonzio RJ, Wilcox KS (1986) Stimulation of the lateral habenula inhibits dopamine-containing neurons in the substantia nigra and ventral tegmental area of the rat. J Neurosci 6:613–619

Clark L, Bechara A, Damasio H, Aitken MR, Sahakian BJ, Robbins TW (2008) Differential effects of insular and ventromedial prefrontal cortex lesions on risky decision-making. Brain 131:1311–1322

Cota D, Tschop MH, Horvath TL, Levine AS (2006) Cannabinoids, opioids and eating behavior: the molecular face of hedonism? Brain Res Rev 51:85–107

Cox SM, Andrade A, Johnsrude IS (2005) Learning to like: a role for human orbitofrontal cortex in conditioned reward. J Neurosci 25:2733–2740

Craig AD (2003) Interoception: the sense of the physiological condition of the body. Curr Opin Neurobiol 13:500–505

Davis LM, Michaelides M, Cheskin LJ, Moran TH, Aja S, Watkins PA et al (2009): Bromocriptine administration reduces hyperphagia and adiposity and differentially affects dopamine D2 receptor and transporter binding in leptin-receptor-deficient Zucker rats and rats with diet-induced obesity. Neuroendocrinology 89:152–162

DelParigi A, Chen K, Salbe AD, Hill JO, Wing RR, Reiman EM et al (2007) Successful dieters have increased neural activity in cortical areas involved in the control of behavior. Int J Obes (Lond) 31:440–448

DelParigi A, Chen K, Salbe AD, Reiman EM, Tataranni PA (2005) Sensory experience of food and obesity: a positron emission tomography study of the brain regions affected by tasting a liquid meal after a prolonged fast. Neuroimage 24:436–443

Drevets WC, Gautier C, Price JC, Kupfer DJ, Kinahan PE, Grace AA et al (2001) Amphetamine-induced dopamine release in human ventral striatum correlates with euphoria. Biol Psychiatry 49:81–96

Everitt BJ, Belin D, Economidou D, Pelloux Y, Dalley JW, Robbins TW (2008) Review. Neural mechanisms underlying the vulnerability to develop compulsive drug-seeking habits and addiction. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci 363:3125–3135

Ferguson SM, Eskenazi D, Ishikawa M, Wanat MJ, Phillips PE, Dong Y et al (2011) Transient neuronal inhibition reveals opposing roles of indirect and direct pathways in sensitization. Nat Neurosci 14:22–24

Fineberg NA, Potenza MN, Chamberlain SR, Berlin HA, Menzies L, Bechara A et al (2009) Probing compulsive and impulsive behaviors, from animal models to endophenotypes: a narrative review. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:591–604

Fowler CD, Lu Q, Johnson PM, Marks MJ, Kenny PJ (2011) Habenular alpha5 nicotinic receptor subunit signalling controls nicotine intake. Nature 471:597–601

Frank GK, Oberndorfer TA, Simmons AN, Paulus MP, Fudge JL, Yang TT et al (2008) Sucrose activates human taste pathways differently from artificial sweetener. Neuroimage 39:1559–1569

Gallagher M, McMahan RW, Schoenbaum G (1999) Orbitofrontal cortex and representation of incentive value in associative learning. J Neurosci 19:6610–6614

Gazdzinski S, Kornak J, Weiner MW, Meyerhoff DJ (2008) Body mass index and magnetic resonance markers of brain integrity in adults. Ann Neurol 63:652–657

Geiger BM, Behr GG, Frank LE, Caldera-Siu AD, Beinfeld MC, Kokkotou EG et al (2008) Evidence for defective mesolimbic dopamine exocytosis in obesity-prone rats. FASEB J 22:2740–2746

Geiger BM, Haburcak M, Avena NM, Moyer MC, Hoebel BG, Pothos EN (2009) Deficits of mesolimbic dopamine neurotransmission in rat dietary obesity. Neuroscience 159:1193–1199

Geisler S, Wise RA (2008) Functional implications of glutamatergic projections to the ventral tegmental area. Rev Neurosci 19:227–244

Goldstein RZ, Volkow ND (2002) Drug addiction and its underlying neurobiological basis: neuroimaging evidence for the involvement of the frontal cortex. Am J Psychiatry 159:1642–1652

Goudriaan AE, de Ruiter MB, van den Brink W, Oosterlaan J, Veltman DJ (2010) Brain activation patterns associated with cue reactivity and craving in abstinent problem gamblers, heavy smokers and healthy controls: an fMRI study. Addict Biol 15:491–503

Grabenhorst F, Rolls ET, Bilderbeck A (2008) How cognition modulates affective responses to taste and flavor: top-down influences on the orbitofrontal and pregenual cingulate cortices. Cereb Cortex 18:1549–1559

Grace AA (2000) The tonic/phasic model of dopamine system regulation and its implications for understanding alcohol and psychostimulant craving. Addiction 95 Suppl 2:S119–S128

Grant S, London ED, Newlin DB, Villemagne VL, Liu X, Contoreggi C et al (1996) Activation of memory circuits during cue-elicited cocaine craving. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93:12040–12045

Gregorios-Pippas L, Tobler PN, Schultz W (2009) Short-term temporal discounting of reward value in human ventral striatum. J Neurophysiol 101:1507–1523

Hajnal A, Norgren R (2005) Taste pathways that mediate accumbens dopamine release by sapid sucrose. Physiol Behav 84:363–369

Haltia LT, Rinne JO, Merisaari H, Maguire RP, Savontaus E, Helin S et al (2007a) Effects of intravenous glucose on dopaminergic function in the human brain in vivo. Synapse 61: 748–756

Haltia LT, Viljanen A, Parkkola R, Kemppainen N, Rinne JO, Nuutila P et al (2007b) Brain white matter expansion in human obesity and the recovering effect of dieting. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 92:3278–3284

Ikeda S, Kang MI, Ohtake F (2010) Hyperbolic discounting, the sign effect, and the body mass index. J Health Econ 29:268–284

Janes AC, Pizzagalli DA, Richardt S, de BFB, Chuzi S, Pachas G et al (2010) Brain reactivity to smoking cues prior to smoking cessation predicts ability to maintain tobacco abstinence. Biol Psychiatry 67:722–729

Jhou TC, Fields HL, Baxter MG, Saper CB, Holland PC (2009) The rostromedial tegmental nucleus (RMTg), a GABAergic afferent to midbrain dopamine neurons, encodes aversive stimuli and inhibits motor responses. Neuron 61:786–800

Johnson PM, Kenny PJ (2010) Dopamine D2 receptors in addiction-like reward dysfunction and compulsive eating in obese rats. Nat Neurosci 13:635–641

Kalivas PW (2009) The glutamate homeostasis hypothesis of addiction. Nat Rev Neurosci 10:561–572

Killgore WD, Yurgelun-Todd DA (2005) Body mass predicts orbitofrontal activity during visual presentations of high-calorie foods. Neuroreport 16:859–863

Kimura M, Satoh T, Matsumoto N (2007) What does the habenula tell dopamine neurons? Nat Neurosci 10:677–678
Koob GF (1992) Neural mechanisms of drug reinforcement. Ann N Y Acad Sci 654:171–191
Koob GF, Le Moal M (2008) Addiction and the brain antireward system. Annu Rev Psychol 59:29–53
Lee B, London ED, Poldrack RA, Farahi J, Nacca A, Monterosso JR et al (2009) Striatal dopamine d2/d3 receptor availability is reduced in methamphetamine dependence and is linked to impulsivity. J Neurosci 29:14734–14740
Lenoir M, Serre F, Cantin L, Ahmed SH (2007) Intense sweetness surpasses cocaine reward. PLoS One 2:e698
Lisoprawski A, Herve D, Blanc G, Glowinski J, Tassin JP (1980) Selective activation of the mesocortico-frontal dopaminergic neurons induced by lesion of the habenula in the rat. Brain Res 183:229–234
Luscher C, Malenka RC (2011) Drug-evoked synaptic plasticity in addiction: from molecular changes to circuit remodeling. Neuron 69:650–663
Machado CJ, Bachevalier J (2007) The effects of selective amygdala, orbital frontal cortex or hippocampal formation lesions on reward assessment in nonhuman primates. Eur J Neurosci 25:2885–2904
Martinez D, Narendran R, Foltin RW, Slifstein M, Hwang DR, Broft A et al (2007) Amphetamine-induced dopamine release: markedly blunted in cocaine dependence and predictive of the choice to self-administer cocaine. Am J Psychiatry 164:622–629
Matsumoto M, Hikosaka O (2007) Lateral habenula as a source of negative reward signals in dopamine neurons. Nature 447:1111–1115
Miller EK, Cohen JD (2001) An integrative theory of prefrontal cortex function. Annu Rev Neurosci 24:167–202
Nader MA, Morgan D, Gage HD, Nader SH, Calhoun TL, Buchheimer N et al (2006) PET imaging of dopamine D2 receptors during chronic cocaine self-administration in monkeys. Nat Neurosci 9:1050–1056
Naqvi NH, Bechara A (2009) The hidden island of addiction: the insula. Trends Neurosci 32:56–67
Naqvi NH, Rudrauf D, Damasio H, Bechara A (2007) Damage to the insula disrupts addiction to cigarette smoking. Science 315:531–534
Nestler EJ (2004) Molecular mechanisms of drug addiction. Neuropharmacology 47 Suppl 1:24–32
Nestler EJ (2005) Is there a common molecular pathway for addiction? Nat Neurosci 8:1445–1449
Nishikawa T, Fage D, Scatton B (1986) Evidence for, and nature of, the tonic inhibitory influence of habenulointerpeduncular pathways upon cerebral dopaminergic transmission in the rat. Brain Res 373:324–336
Norgren R, Hajnal A, Mungarndee SS (2006) Gustatory reward and the nucleus accumbens. Physiol Behav 89:531–535
Ogden J, Wardle J (1990) Cognitive restraint and sensitivity to cues for hunger and satiety. Physiol Behav 47:477–481
Owesson-White CA, Ariansen J, Stuber GD, Cleaveland NA, Cheer JF, Wightman RM et al (2009) Neural encoding of cocaine-seeking behavior is coincident with phasic dopamine release in the accumbens core and shell. Eur J Neurosci 30:1117–1127
Pannacciulli N, Del Parigi A, Chen K, Le DS, Reiman EM, Tataranni PA (2006) Brain abnormalities in human obesity: a voxel-based morphometric study. Neuroimage 31:1419–1425
Pelchat ML, Johnson A, Chan R, Valdez J, Ragland JD (2004) Images of desire: food-craving activation during fMRI. Neuroimage 23:1486–1493
Petrovich GD (2010) Forebrain circuits and control of feeding by learned cues. Neurobiol Learn Mem 95:152–158
Pine A, Shiner T, Seymour B, Dolan RJ (2010) Dopamine, time, and impulsivity in humans. J Neurosci 30:8888–8896
Rolls ET (2008) Functions of the orbitofrontal and pregenual cingulate cortex in taste, olfaction, appetite and emotion. Acta Physiol Hung 95:131–164

Rolls ET, McCabe C (2007) Enhanced affective brain representations of chocolate in cravers vs. non-cravers. Eur J Neurosci 26:1067–1076

Salamone JD, Correa M, Farrar A, Mingote SM (2007) Effort-related functions of nucleus accumbens dopamine and associated forebrain circuits. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 191: 461–482

Salas R, Sturm R, Boulter J, De Biasi M (2009) Nicotinic receptors in the habenulo-interpeduncular system are necessary for nicotine withdrawal in mice. J Neurosci 29:3014–3018

Schultz W (2010) Dopamine signals for reward value and risk: basic and recent data. Behav Brain Funct 6:24

Schultz W, Dayan P, Montague PR (1997) A neural substrate of prediction and reward. Science 275:1593–1599

Small DM, Jones-Gotman M, Dagher A (2003) Feeding-induced dopamine release in dorsal striatum correlates with meal pleasantness ratings in healthy human volunteers. Neuroimage 19:1709–1715

Smith SL, Harrold JA, Williams G (2002) Diet-induced obesity increases mu opioid receptor binding in specific regions of the rat brain. Brain Res 953:215–222

Stice E, Spoor S, Bohon C, Small DM (2008a) Relation between obesity and blunted striatal response to food is moderated by TaqIA A1 allele. Science 322:449–452

Stice E, Spoor S, Bohon C, Veldhuizen MG, Small DM (2008b) Relation of reward from food intake and anticipated food intake to obesity: a functional magnetic resonance imaging study. J Abnorm Psychol 117:924–935

Stoeckel LE, Weller RE, Cook EW, 3rd, Twieg DB, Knowlton RC, Cox JE (2008) Widespread reward-system activation in obese women in response to pictures of high-calorie foods. Neuroimage 41:636–647

Thanos PK, Michaelides M, Benveniste H, Wang GJ, Volkow ND (2007) Effects of chronic oral methylphenidate on cocaine self-administration and striatal dopamine D2 receptors in rodents. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 87:426–433

Thomas MJ, Kalivas PW, Shaham Y (2008) Neuroplasticity in the mesolimbic dopamine system and cocaine addiction. Br J Pharmacol 154:327–342

Tomasi D, Wang GJ, Wang R, Backus W, Geliebter A, Telang F et al (2009) Association of body mass and brain activation during gastric distention: implications for obesity. PLoS One 4:e6847

Volkow N, Li TK (2005) The neuroscience of addiction. Nat Neurosci 8:1429–1430

Volkow ND, Chang L, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Ding YS, Sedler M et al (2001) Low level of brain dopamine D2 receptors in methamphetamine abusers: association with metabolism in the orbitofrontal cortex. Am J Psychiatry 158:2015–2021

Volkow ND, Fowler JS (2000) Addiction, a disease of compulsion and drive: involvement of the orbitofrontal cortex. Cereb Cortex 10:318–325

Volkow ND, Fowler JS, Wolf AP, Hitzemann R, Dewey S, Bendriem B et al (1991) Changes in brain glucose metabolism in cocaine dependence and withdrawal. Am J Psychiatry 148: 621–626

Volkow ND, Fowler JS, Wang GJ, Hitzemann R, Logan J, Schlyer DJ et al (1993) Decreased dopamine D2 receptor availability is associated with reduced frontal metabolism in cocaine abusers. Synapse 14:169–177

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Logan J, Gatley SJ, Hitzemann R et al (1997) Decreased striatal dopaminergic responsiveness in detoxified cocaine-dependent subjects. Nature 386:830–833

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Hitzemann R, Angrist B, Gatley SJ et al (1999a) Association of methylphenidate-induced craving with changes in right striato-orbitofrontal metabolism in cocaine abusers: implications in addiction. Am J Psychiatry 156:19–26

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Logan J, Gatley SJ, Wong C et al (1999b) Reinforcing effects of psychostimulants in humans are associated with increases in brain dopamine and occupancy of D(2) receptors. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 291:409–415

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Fischman MW, Foltin R, Fowler JS, Franceschi D et al (2000) Effects of route of administration on cocaine induced dopamine transporter blockade in the human brain. Life Sci 67:1507–1515

Volkow ND, Fowler JS, Wang GJ (2003) The addicted human brain: insights from imaging studies. J Clin Invest 111:1444–1451

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Ma Y, Fowler JS, Wong C, Ding YS et al (2005) Activation of orbital and medial prefrontal cortex by methylphenidate in cocaine-addicted subjects but not in controls: relevance to addiction. J Neurosci 25:3932–3939

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Begleiter H, Porjesz B, Fowler JS, Telang F et al (2006a) High levels of dopamine D2 receptors in unaffected members of alcoholic families: possible protective factors. Arch Gen Psychiatry 63:999–1008

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Telang F, Fowler JS, Logan J, Childress AR et al (2006b) Cocaine cues and dopamine in dorsal striatum: mechanism of craving in cocaine addiction. J Neurosci 26:6583–6588

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Telang F, Fowler JS, Logan J, Jayne M et al (2007) Profound decreases in dopamine release in striatum in detoxified alcoholics: possible orbitofrontal involvement. J Neurosci 27:12700–12706

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Telang F (2008a) Overlapping neuronal circuits in addiction and obesity: evidence of systems pathology. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci 363: 3191–3200

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Telang F, Fowler JS, Thanos PK, Logan J et al (2008b) Low dopamine striatal D2 receptors are associated with prefrontal metabolism in obese subjects: possible contributing factors. Neuroimage 42:1537–1543

Volkow ND, Fowler JS, Wang GJ, Baler R, Telang F (2009a) Imaging dopamine's role in drug abuse and addiction. Neuropharmacology 56 Suppl 1:3–8

Volkow ND, Fowler JS, Wang GJ, Telang F, Logan J, Jayne M et al (2009b) Cognitive control of drug craving inhibits brain reward regions in cocaine abusers. Neuroimage 49:2536–2543

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Telang F, Fowler JS, Goldstein RZ, Alia-Klein N et al (2009c) Inverse association between BMI and prefrontal metabolic activity in healthy adults. Obesity (Silver Spring) 17:60–65

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Baler RD (2011a) Reward, dopamine and the control of food intake: implications for obesity. Trends Cogn Sci 15:37–46

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Tomasi D, Telang F (2011b) Quantification of Behavior Sackler Colloquium: Addiction: Beyond dopamine reward circuitry. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108(37):15037–15042

Wagner A, Aizenstein H, Mazurkewicz L, Fudge J, Frank GK, Putnam K et al (2008) Altered insula response to taste stimuli in individuals recovered from restricting-type anorexia nervosa. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:513–523

Walther K, Birdsill AC, Glisky EL, Ryan L (2010) Structural brain differences and cognitive functioning related to body mass index in older females. Hum Brain Mapp 31:1052–1064

Wanat MJ, Willuhn I, Clark JJ, Phillips PE (2009) Phasic dopamine release in appetitive behaviors and drug addiction. Curr Drug Abuse Rev 2:195–213

Wang GJ, Tomasi D, Backus W, Wang R, Telang F, Geliebter A et al (2008) Gastric distention activates satiety circuitry in the human brain. Neuroimage 39:1824–1831

Wang GJ, Volkow N, Telang F, Logan J, Wong C, Jayne M et al (2010) Decreased brain dopaminergic responses in active cocaine dependent subjects. J Nucl Med 51:269

Wang GJ, Volkow ND, Felder C, Fowler JS, Levy AV, Pappas NR et al (2002) Enhanced resting activity of the oral somatosensory cortex in obese subjects. Neuroreport 13:1151–1155

Wang GJ, Volkow ND, Fowler JS, Cervany P, Hitzemann RJ, Pappas NR et al (1999) Regional brain metabolic activation during craving elicited by recall of previous drug experiences. Life Sci 64:775–784

Wang GJ, Volkow ND, Logan J, Pappas NR, Wong CT, Zhu W et al (2001) Brain dopamine and obesity. Lancet 357:354–357

Wang GJ, Volkow ND, Telang F, Jayne M, Ma J, Rao M et al (2004) Exposure to appetitive food stimuli markedly activates the human brain. Neuroimage 21:1790–1797

Wang GJ, Volkow ND, Telang F, Jayne M, Ma Y, Pradhan K et al (2009) Evidence of gender differences in the ability to inhibit brain activation elicited by food stimulation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:1249–1254

Wang Z, Faith M, Patterson F, Tang K, Kerrin K, Wileyto EP et al (2007) Neural substrates of abstinence-induced cigarette cravings in chronic smokers. J Neurosci 27:14035–14040

Weingarten HP (1983) Conditioned cues elicit feeding in sated rats: a role for learning in meal initiation. Science 220:431–433

Weller RE, Cook EW, 3rd, Avsar KB, Cox JE (2008) Obese women show greater delay discounting than healthy-weight women. Appetite 51:563–569

Wise RA (2009) Roles for nigrostriatal–not just mesocorticolimbic–dopamine in reward and addiction. Trends Neurosci 32:517–524

Wong DF, Kuwabara H, Schretlen DJ, Bonson KR, Zhou Y, Nandi A et al (2006) Increased occupancy of dopamine receptors in human striatum during cue-elicited cocaine craving. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:2716–2727

Yin HH, Knowlton BJ, Balleine BW (2004) Lesions of dorsolateral striatum preserve outcome expectancy but disrupt habit formation in instrumental learning. Eur J Neurosci 19:181–189

Zhang F, Zhou W, Liu H, Zhu H, Tang S, Lai M et al (2005) Increased c-Fos expression in the medial part of the lateral habenula during cue-evoked heroin-seeking in rats. Neurosci Lett 386:133–137

Zweifel LS, Parker JG, Lobb CJ, Rainwater A, Wall VZ, Fadok JP et al (2009) Disruption of NMDAR-dependent burst firing by dopamine neurons provides selective assessment of phasic dopamine-dependent behavior. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:7281–7288

Nonhuman Primate Models of Addiction and PET Imaging: Dopamine System Dysregulation

Robert W. Gould, Linda J. Porrino and Michael A. Nader

Abstract This chapter highlights the use of nonhuman primate models of cocaine addiction and the use of positron emission tomography (PET) imaging to study the role of individual differences in vulnerability and how environmental and pharmacological variables can impact cocaine abuse. The chapter will describe studies related to the dopamine (DA) neurotransmitter system, and focus primarily on the D2-like DA receptor, the DA transporter and the use of fluorodeoxyglucose to better understand the neuropharmacology of cocaine abuse. The use of nonhuman primates allows for within-subject, longitudinal studies that have provided insight into the human condition and serve as an ideal model of translational research. The combination of nonhuman primate behavior, pharmacology and state-of-the-art brain imaging using PET will provide the foundation for future studies aimed at developing behavioral and pharmacological treatments for drug addiction in humans.

Keywords Animal models · PET imaging · Dopamine · D2-like receptors · Fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG) · Nonhuman primates

R. W. Gould · L. J. Porrino · M. A. Nader (✉)
Department of Physiology and Pharmacology,
Wake Forest University School of Medicine,
Winston-Salem, NC 27157-1083, USA
e-mail: mnader@wakehealth.edu

R. W. Gould
e-mail: rgould@wakehealth.edu

L. J. Porrino
e-mail: lporrino@wakehealth.edu

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 25–44
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2011_168

Published Online: 22 October 2011

Contents

1 Introduction

Drug dependence remains a consistent societal problem resulting in deleterious consequences on an individual's health, work, and family that resonates throughout communities worldwide and bears with it an overwhelming financial burden (WHO 2004). In the United States alone, over 20 million people over the age of 12 met the DSM-IV criteria for drug abuse or dependence in 2008 (translating into nearly 1 in every 15 people; SAMHSA 2009) including 1.6 million cocaine users (SAMHSA 2010). Within the European Union, 56% of all countries reporting on cocaine trends documented increases (WHO 2004). Although numerous advances have been made to improve our understanding of addiction including effectively demonstrating addiction is a brain disease, treatment for numerous addictions, including psychostimulant abuse have remained elusive. Development of successful treatment relies on a strong understanding of the neurobiological etiology of addiction. The goal of the current review is to describe the influence of environmental, physiological, and pharmacological factors contributing to changes in the dopamine (DA) neurotransmitter system across various correlates of the addiction cycle including vulnerability, maintenance, abstinence, and relapse to cocaine addiction, as assessed via positron emission tomography (PET) imaging in nonhuman primate (NHP) models.

1.1 Positron Emission Tomography and Dopamine Neurotransmission

PET is an imaging technique used to visualize and quantify the interaction of a radiolabelled molecule of known structure within an organism in a noninvasive manner. The present focus will be the utility of PET neuroimaging to characterize

the DA neurotransmitter system and its malleability following physiological, environmental, or pharmacological manipulations in NHPs. Briefly, the DA system is comprised of four neuronal pathways originating from midbrain nuclei with projections to various brain structures (see Beaulieu and Gainetdinov 2011 for review). The nigrostriatal pathway innervates the dorsal striatum (caudate-putamen) and is involved in motor control. The mesolimbic pathway projects to the ventral striatum (nucleus accumbens) and other limbic structures including the amygdala, hippocampus, and cingulate gyrus and mediates actions related to reward, reinforcement, emotion, and motivation. The mesocortical pathway innervates frontal cortical regions and is implicated in learning and memory. Lastly, the tuberoinfundibular pathway projects to the hypothalamus and influences anterior pituitary gland function. Dysregulation of the mesencephalic DA system through neurodegeneration or pharmacological insult can contribute to a number of disease states in addition to Parkinson's Disease, including depression, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), schizophrenia, and addiction (for reviews see Vallone et al. 2000; Beaulieu and Gainetdinov 2011).

There are two superfamilies of DA receptors, the D1-like and D2-like G-protein coupled-receptors, originally distinguished by their ability to stimulate and inhibit adenylyl cyclase activity, respectively. D1-like receptors are primarily located postsynaptically whereas D2-like receptors are located pre- and post-synaptically functioning as autoreceptors as well as post-synaptic effectors. There are currently no D1-like PET studies in NHP models of cocaine abuse. The D2-like superfamily consists of D_2, D_3, and D_4 receptor subtypes, which have been investigated in PET studies with [^{18}F]N-methylspiperone (NMSP), [^{11}C]raclopride and [^{18}F]fluoroclebopride (FCP), among other tracers. Much of our research utilizes [^{18}F]FCP, which binds with high affinity at D2-like receptors (Mach et al. 1996) to allow examination DA-rich region such as the basal ganglia (Fig. 1a). As it relates to cocaine addiction, the D_3 receptor subtype has received recent attention because its expression is limited to limbic regions. However, D_3 receptor-selective radioligands have only recently become available for PET studies and will not be described in this review. Also located on presynaptic DA nerve terminals are DA transporters (DAT) that function to transport synaptic DA intracellularly, where it can be repackaged in vesicles through the action of the vesicular monoamine transporters (VMAT) or degraded by catechol-O-methyltransferase (COMT; for reviews see Vallone et al. 2000; Beaulieu and Gainetdinov 2011), although the main pathway for intracellular DA catabolism is mediated by monoamine oxidase (MAO; Kopin 1985). In this review, we will describe studies using [^{18}F](+)-N-(4-fluorobenzyl)-2β-propanoyl-3β-(4-chlorophenyl)tropane (FCT) and [^{18}F]-[8-(2-fluoroethyl)-2β-carbomethoyx-3β-(4-chlorophenyl)nortropane] (FECNT) to label the DAT. PET studies examining VMAT and COMT will not be reviewed.

Another utility for PET imaging is the in vivo investigation of the consequences of dopaminergic activity in the central nervous system using tracers that can measure blood flow or energy use, as a means of measuring neural activity. [^{15}O]H_2O for example, is a marker of blood flow and can be used to characterize the acute effects of a pharmacological stimulus. Another tracer is [^{18}F]-fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG)

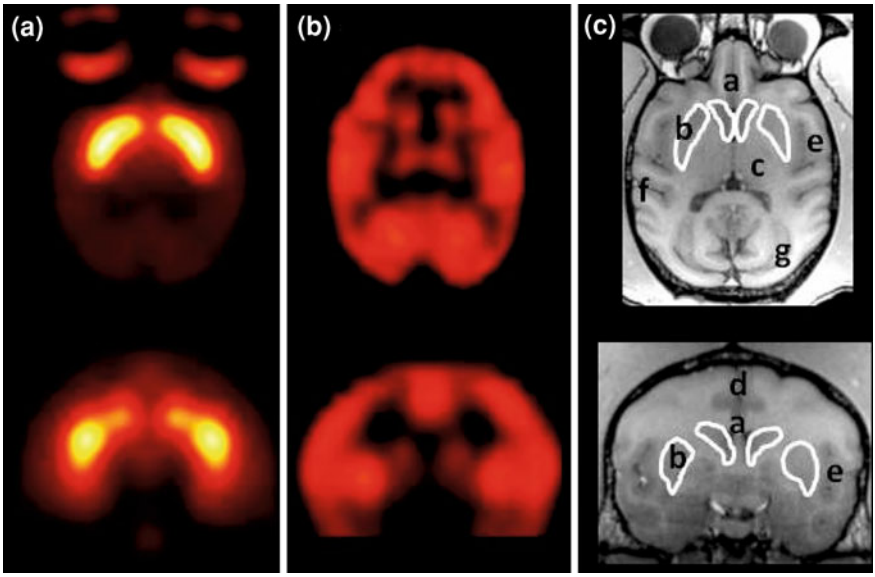


Fig. 1 PET imaging in NHPs**.** FCP binding to D2-like receptors in the basal ganglia of an anesthetized monkey (**a**), FDG uptake occuring over 40 min of responding maintained by 190-g pellet delivery measuring cerebral glucose utilization in cortical and subcortical regions (**b**), and corresponding MR. **c** Each scan occurred in a single rhesus monkey; *a* caudate nucleus; *b* putamen; *c* thalamus; *d* anterior cingulate cortex; *e* insular cortex; *f* temporal cortex; *g* occipital cortex; *top* horizontal; *bottom* coronal slices

which is an analog of glucose, the sole energy substrate in the brain under normal conditions. Increased rates of uptake of FDG reflect increases in local energy use and, in turn, functional activity. These methods are intended for the evaluation of manipulations that occur over relatively short time frames (e.g., drug administration or brief behavioral task) with changes in rates of glucose utilization calculated by comparison to scans obtained during baseline conditions. For example, Fig. 1b highlights FDG uptake in cortical and subcortical regions in a rhesus monkey. FDG was administered prior to the start of a baseline motor task. Following 40 min of behavior during which each response resulted in pellet delivery, the monkey was sedated and FDG uptake was examined via PET. In addition, FDG methods can be used to assess differences in basal brain glucose metabolism associated with disease states or phenotypes. Altered basal rates of glucose utilization generally have longer time courses (hours, days, and weeks), and reflect intrinsic and ongoing changes in brain activity representing the cumulative effects of experience with the internal and external milieu (e.g., Borghammer et al. 2010). For a more comprehensive list of PET radiotracers targeting the DA and serotonin systems and their contributions to the field of addiction studies in NHPs see Howell and Murnane (2011).

Cocaine is a psychomotor stimulant that binds with near equal affinity to the DAT, serotonin and norepinephrine transporter (SERT and NET, respectively) but

its reinforcing effects are thought to be mediated mainly through DAT blockade, and subsequent elevations of extracellular DA, as first evidenced by in vivo microdialysis studies in rodents (Di Chiara and Imperato 1988). Radiolabelled cocaine ([^{11}C]-cocaine) was tested in baboons in the late 1980s, showing substantially higher binding in DAT-rich striatal regions, thus providing a noninvasive method for visualizing the binding site for cocaine within the CNS (Fowler et al. 1989). Further, [^{11}C]-cocaine receptor availability in striatum decreased following pretreatment with unlabeled cocaine and other DAT inhibitors, but not administration of NET or SERT inhibitors providing evidence of predominately DAT-specific binding (Fowler et al. 1989). Other displacement studies have involved administering compounds known to elevate DA during a PET study with a tracer that competes with DA. In one example using FCP (Mach et al. 1997), several psychomotor stimulants (including cocaine) displaced the tracer in the basal ganglia (caudate nucleus and putamen) in an orderly fashion similar to DA elevations seen in microdialysis studies. In addition, Kimmel et al. (2008) noted an inverse relationship between reinforcing effects of cocaine analogs, quantified as the peak number of injections during self-administration (SA), and the time to peak uptake of the same [^{11}C]-labeled cocaine analogs. Together, these studies demonstrated the binding site of cocaine within the CNS, biodistribution and pharmacokinetic differences between psychostimulants, and correlations of PET with behavioral measures to provide data relevant to understanding abuse liability and pharmacotherapeutic development for potential DAT inhibitors (see Murnane and Howell 2011).

1.2 Nonhuman Primates as Research Subjects

The development of new imaging modalities has made in vivo small animal imaging using rodents an exciting line of research. For this review, however, we will focus only on PET imaging research utilizing NHPs. As it relates to translational research, NHPs are more phylogenetically related to humans and, along with baboons, Old World macaques (rhesus, *Macaca mulatta*, and cynomolgus, *M. fascicularis*) are the closest relatives of humans approved for biomedical research in the United States. Macaques have close homology to humans in terms of developmental and aging processes, neurotransmitter distribution, and complex social and cognitive behavioral repertoires (see Weerts et al. 2007 for review). For example, humans and NHPs share greater than 95% overall gene homology and greater than 98% homology in monoaminergic transporters (Hacia et al. 1998; Miller et al. 2001). Further, documented differences in DA neuron innervation (Berger et al. 1991; Joel and Weiner 2000) and affinity of DA for receptors between monkey and rodent (Weed et al. 1998) may be indicative of other differences in drug biodistribution, pharmacokinetic or pharmacodynamic interactions within the DA system (e.g., Lyons et al. 1996; Roberts et al. 1999; Lile et al. 2003). Using animal models with neurotransmitter distribution and receptor

localization resembling that in humans is critical when using PET imaging to generalize preclinical results to the human condition (Nader and Czoty 2008). An additional advantage of NHP research is the ability for longitudinal study designs within a laboratory setting. Baseline behavioral, neurochemical, and hormonal measures can be correlated with changes following an experimental manipulation (e.g., chronic drug administration) while controlling for such factors as stress and nutrition over many years. As it relates to drug addiction, the longer the history of drug exposure, the stronger the face validity of the animal model.

NHPs have an extensive and complex behavioral repertoire. Macaques form a linear social hierarchy that can be quantified by measuring the number of agonistic interactions between monkeys (e.g., Kaplan et al. 1982). Typically, the most dominant monkey aggresses toward all other animals and has access to the largest allotment of resources whereas the most subordinate monkey does not aggress, submits and avoids more dominant monkeys, spends more time alone, and has less access to resources. We describe this continuum as one in which the living conditions of dominant monkeys can be considered an enriched environment while subordinate monkeys are exposed to an environment of chronic social stress. This continuum allows an examination of how social and environmental variables (i.e., acute or chronic stress and enrichment) affect neuroendocrine function (Czoty et al. 2009a; Riddick et al. 2009) or neurobiology influencing vulnerability to self-administer drugs (Morgan et al. 2002; Czoty et al. 2004; Nader and Czoty 2005). These studies provide direct translational applicability toward understanding how social stressors may influence the propensity to initiate drug use, relapse during abstinence, or conversely, positively influence sustained abstinence.

Another advantage presented by NHP models is their capacity for learning complex cognitive tasks similar to those administered to humans. Human cocaine abusers show signs of cognitive impairments on tasks measuring strategic planning, such as the ability to withhold or modify a behavioral response, working memory and measures of impulsivity (Fillmore and Rush 2002; Bolla et al. 2004; Hester and Garavan 2004; Goldstein et al. 2007, 2010); similar impairments have been shown in monkeys following cocaine SA (Liu et al. 2008, 2009; Porter et al. 2011). Cognitive impairments have been hypothesized to perpetuate a cycle of compulsive drug use and increase the prevalence of relapse (Goldstein and Volkow 2002; Koob and Volkow 2011). Therefore, understanding when (duration or dose) and how (neurobiological alterations) cocaine affects executive function is integral in developing effective treatment strategies. Longitudinal studies examining cognitive performance in monkeys allows for the assessment of environmental (e.g., stressors) or pharmacological agents that can be assessed using PET (e.g., Porrino et al. 2005; Hampson et al. 2009, 2011).

Often overlooked until recently, sex differences are emerging as an important variable in preclinical (e.g., Lynch 2006; Terner and de Wit 2006) and clinical settings (Zilberman et al. 2003; O'Brien and Anthony 2005; Greenfield et al. 2010). Similar to humans, female macaques have a $\sim$28 day estrous cycle marked by similar fluctuations in hormone levels, notably those of estrogen and progesterone (e.g., Dukelow et al. 1979). Influence of hormones on various drug-related

behaviors (e.g., reinforcing or discriminative stimulus effects) and effects of drugs on hormonal regulation are empirical questions beginning to be delineated (see Mello and Mendelson 2009; Evans and Foltin 2010 for reviews). For example, the relationship between menstrual cycle phase and D2-like receptor availability has been examined in women, with three different results. Using [^{18}F]NMSP, Wong et al. (1988) observed a trend toward lower striatal uptake during the follicular versus luteal phase, indicating either lower D2-like receptor densities or higher striatal DA concentrations during the follicular phase. In a second study from this group, [^{11}C]raclopride binding potential was lower in the putamen (but not caudate nucleus or ventral striatum) in women during the luteal versus follicular phase (Munro et al. 2006). In contrast, Nordström et al. (1998) observed no menstrual-cycle dependent variation in [^{11}C]raclopride availability in the putamen of five women. Of course, there are many factors that could influence D2-like measures, so it is not surprising that in different populations of women, the interaction between menstrual cycle phase and D2-like receptor availability is complicated. In experimentally naïve female macaques, though, the relationship was quite straightforward and orderly (Czoty et al. 2009b). In that study using a within-subjects design in which seven female cynomolgus monkeys were scanned in the follicular and luteal phases of the menstrual cycle, D2-like receptor availability using [^{18}F]FCP was significantly lower during the follicular phase compared to the luteal phase. As will be described in greater detail, D2-like receptor availability is intimately related to vulnerability to self-administer drugs of abuse.

1.3 Animal Models

There are several advantages to using animal models, including the ability to perform experiments that are ethically or practically impossible in humans. For example, as it relates to addiction, the use of animal models allows for imaging the brain of individuals prior to any drug exposure, so as to permit the assessment of trait variables (i.e., whether that brain measure represents a pre-existing characteristic that is predictive of an outcome) and state variables (i.e., whether the independent variable was associated with a change in brain function; see Nader and Czoty 2005 for further discussion). Before discussing animal models of cocaine addiction and brain imaging studies, it is worthwhile to first describe the types of animal models (see also Katz and Higgins 2003).

At its simplest level, there are two methods for animals to receive drugs of abuse: non-contingent, i.e., administered by the experimenter, or contingent, i.e., self-administered by the animal. The choice of methods depends on the research question. If the researcher simply wants to know where in the brain a drug is binding, then non-contingent administration will suffice. This has been used with great success as part of ligand-development studies. However, if the researcher wants to understand the role of environment, the organism's phenotype and environment x organism interactions mediating drug abuse, then contingent drug SA studies are

necessary. Differences in response to contingent vs. non-contingent cocaine include the pattern and magnitude of DA efflux measured via microdialysis (Bradberry 2000; Lecca et al. 2007), HPA axis responsivity (Galici et al. 2000), and lethality (Dworkin et al. 1995), supporting the notion that addiction is more complex than just neurobiological changes resulting from drug-receptor interactions. In humans, drug abuse is a chronic condition, such that long-term SA studies in NHPs provide a homologous model. Equally important, SA paradigms allow animals to self-administer at rates and intakes that provide an index of individual differences, in contrast to fixed experimenter-administered regimens that may affect neurobiology differently.

The distinction between contingent and non-contingent drug administration can also be considered in terms of models of "formal equivalence" (Carlton 1983). As described by Katz and Higgins (2003), these are models developed to simulate a specific symptom of the human disease. In short, these types of models have established "face validity"—the endpoint in animals resembles some aspect of the human condition. Chronic drug administration impacts on receptors in the brain, resulting in (perhaps) long-term changes in brain function that can be modeled in animals and imaged using the same instruments as those used for humans. In terms of face validity, as will be described below, chronic drug administration is certainly more relevant to human addiction than, for example, acute drug treatments, but SA has higher face validity than non-contingent drug administration.

2 Models of Cocaine Addiction and DA Receptor Function

Drug SA models have been used for decades to examine the reinforcing effects of compounds (e.g., Woolverton and Nader 1990; Mello and Negus 1996), including examination of potential pharmacotherapies. Animal drug SA resembles human drug use (Griffiths et al. 1980) and produces parallel neurobiological effects (e.g., Beveridge et al. 2008; Everitt et al. 2008). For example, in monkeys, chronic cocaine SA induced long-lasting changes in the mesolimbic DAergic system (Moore et al. 1998; Letchworth et al. 2001; Nader et al. 2002, 2006; Porrino et al. 2007) and altered cerebral blood flow, metabolism, and function (Lyons et al. 1996; Beveridge et al. 2006) in a manner similar to what has been observed in human cocaine users (Strickland et al. 1993; Volkow et al. 1993).

2.1 Models of Vulnerability

As mentioned above, perhaps the best use of animals, including NHPs, in models of addiction involves assessing phenotypic traits that render an individual more or less vulnerable to addiction. Currently, among the best examples of the use of imaging to study trait variables have involved vulnerability to drug abuse in relation to the DA D2-like receptor. In humans, Volkow et al. (1999) reported an

inverse relationship between D2-like receptor availability and subjective effects of intravenous methylphenidate (MP). In that study, 23 non-drug abusing males were scanned with [^{11}C]raclopride in a drug-free condition, and at another time were administered MP and asked to rate its subjective effects. Volkow et al. (1999) found that men with lower D2-like binding potentials found MP "pleasant", while men with higher D2-like binding potentials found the same dose to be "noxious". This suggests that individuals with low D2-like receptor availability would be more vulnerable to stimulant abuse than individuals with high D2-like measures. This same inverse relationship was observed in male rhesus monkeys (Nader et al. 2006). In that study, 12 experimentally naïve monkeys were scanned with [^{18}F]FCP and then trained to respond on a lever maintained by banana-flavored food pellets. When responding was stable, the reinforcer was changed from banana-flavored pellets to 0.2 mg/kg intravenous cocaine. Over the first 10 weeks of exposure, cocaine-maintained responding was higher in monkeys with lower D2-like receptor measures compared to monkeys with higher baseline D2-like receptor availability. Taken together, these two findings support the hypothesis that low D2-like receptor availability makes individuals more vulnerable for stimulant abuse. The use of NHP models in the latter study controlled for many variables that exist in humans, such as past drug use, stress, etc. However, the use of NHPs can also be used to determine if these D2-like receptor measures are malleable to environmental and pharmacological variables.

If D2-like receptor availability influences vulnerability, can these levels be modified (increased or decreased) before exposure to cocaine and thereby alter vulnerability? The answer appears to be "yes". In one study, baseline PET scans were conducted in individually housed male cynomolgus monkeys prior to random placement in social groups of four monkeys/pen (Morgan et al. 2002). As mentioned above, macaques form linear hierarchies, with the most dominant monkeys (#1) winning all fights, being groomed more, having access to the entire pen, etc., while the most subordinate monkeys (#4) being the target of most aggression, they are groomed least and are frequently used as a model of socially derived stress. Morgan et al. (2002) reported no relationship between initial D2-like receptor measures and eventual social rank, indicating that D2-like receptor availability is not a trait marker for social rank. However, D2-like receptor availability changed significantly after stable social hierarchies were formed and the change occurred in the dominant monkeys. On average, D2-like receptor availability increased by 20% after monkeys became dominant. This increase in D2-like receptor availability subsequently protected the monkeys from the initial reinforcing effects of cocaine (Morgan et al. 2002). In fact, not only did subordinate monkeys, who had the lower D2-like receptor measures, self-administer cocaine at higher rates compared to dominant animals, the dominant monkeys, with their elevated D2-like receptors, didn't find cocaine reinforcing. These two monkey studies highlight an important role for D2-like receptors in vulnerability to cocaine abuse and suggest viable targets for pharmacotherapy development.

An important consideration that will require much future research involves the use of female subjects. The human and monkey research described above involved

males. We have recently replicated the findings above using initially individually housed female cynomolgus monkeys who were then randomly assigned to social groups of four monkeys/pen. We found similar results with D2-like receptor availability as seen in males—D2-like receptors at baseline were not trait markers for eventual social rank, but these measures increased significantly in females who became dominant. However, the relationship between D2-like receptor availability and vulnerability to cocaine reinforcement was opposite. Dominant females, with higher D2-like receptor measures, acquired cocaine reinforcement at lower doses compared to subordinate females who had low D2-like receptor availability (Nader et al. under review). These findings suggest that treatment strategies that target the D2-like receptor should be opposite in males and females. For example, drugs that increase D2-like receptor availability would be hypothesized to be effective in males, but would likely fail in females. Clearly, more research involving females is required to validate this conjecture.

2.2 Models of Maintenance

Drug addiction is characterized as a chronic, relapsing condition. Thus, it is imperative for our animal models to incorporate long-term chronic drug administration. The use of NHPs is particularly advantageous in this regard, because monkeys can be used in intravenous drug SA studies for many years, and can self-administer extremely high doses of drug that better model the human condition compared to rodent models. In male monkeys, we found that long-term cocaine SA produced robust decreases in D2-like receptor availability as assessed with [^{18}F]FCP and PET (Nader et al. 2006). The mechanism(s) for this reduction in D2-like receptor availability may be (1) receptor down-regulation, (2) elevations in extracellular DA concentrations or (3) both. Without additional studies, it is impossible to determine which mechanism mediates the effects we are observing. There have been, however, several studies by multiple groups that can provide important information related to the mechanisms involved in the reductions in D2-like availability. Our group has conducted terminal in vitro receptor autoradiography studies confirming that level of protein (i.e., D2-like receptor density) is significantly lower in monkeys with a cocaine SA history compared to control monkeys (Moore et al. 1998; Nader et al. 2002). Concerning the second possible mechanism, acute cocaine elevates extracellular DA (Czoty et al. 2000), and acute methamphetamine reduced the apparent affinity of [^{11}C]-raclopride (Doudet and Holden 2003) consistent with increased interstitial DA levels, but it is unlikely that chronic cocaine SA produces long-lasting elevations since Bradberry (2000) reported within-session tolerance to cocaine-induced elevations in DA. Another method used in conjunction with PET imaging is the co-administration of a "cold" compound that can reduce extracellular DA concentrations, thereby increasing the likelihood that the assessment of receptor availability will occur under conditions of low competition with DA. Using baboons, Dewey et al. (1992) conducted two studies in the same animal on the same day to investigate GABA-mediated

inhibition of DA release. The first PET study of the day was a baseline measure of D2-like receptor availability using [^{11}C]raclopride. The second PET study was preceded by administration of either the benzodiazepine lorazepam or the indirect-acting GABA agonist gamma-vinyl-GABA (GVG); both compounds should decrease extracellular DA concentrations. Consistent with their hypothesis, administration of lorazepam and GVG increased D2-like receptor availability by nearly 50 and 30%, respectively. The PET studies showing reductions in D2-like availability following cocaine SA included the use of lorazepam in order to decrease DA concentrations (Nader et al. 2006).

Up to this point, we could summarize our findings as follows: in males, low D2-like receptor availability appears to increase vulnerability to cocaine abuse and that continued cocaine use results in further decreases in D2-like receptor availability, perhaps developing a spiral cycle toward addiction (Koob and Le Moal 2000). Another question that can be explored with PET involves "drug seeking" vs. "drug taking". Volkow et al. (1993) noted that there was no relationship between D2-like receptor function and her subjects' typical cocaine dose, but there was a significant correlation between D2-like binding potential and duration of cocaine use. To better explore this relationship, we conducted a study in 12 experimentally naïve male rhesus monkeys in which baseline D2-like receptor availability and DAT availability was determined in all monkeys prior to cocaine access (Czoty et al. 2007). Monkeys were then trained to self-administer cocaine under a very lean schedule of reinforcement—a fixed-interval 30 min schedule of 0.03 mg/kg cocaine. The cocaine dose was low and the contingency was such that the first response after 30 min resulted in a cocaine injection; sessions ended after 2 injections. Thus, monkeys were "drug seeking" every day, but were not self-administering very high doses. Monkeys self-administered cocaine under these conditions for approximately 9 weeks and were then rescanned. The mean cocaine intake over that time was approximately 5 mg/kg. There were no effects of cocaine SA on D2-like or DAT availability in the caudate nucleus and putamen—two regions that have been shown to be sensitive to environmental and pharmacological manipulations (e.g., Morgan et al. 2002; Czoty et al. 2005; Nader et al. 2006). Such findings suggest that during acquisition, the pharmacological effect of cocaine, and not drug seeking per se, is the critical determinant of decreases in D2-like receptor availability.

Howell and colleagues have extended the use of PET to examine relationships between receptor occupancy and the ability of drugs to decrease cocaine SA (e.g., Lindsey et al. 2004; Howell et al. 2007). In one study (Lindsey et al. 2004), several drugs that bind to the DAT were substituted for cocaine in rhesus monkeys trained to SA drugs under a second-order schedule of reinforcement. These same drugs were also tested for their ability to decrease cocaine SA. In a final experiment, DAT occupancy was measured by administering behaviorally active doses during a PET study with the DAT ligand [^{18}F]FECNT. These investigators found that selective DAT inhibitors required high DAT occupancy (between 50% and 90%) to reduce cocaine SA and to function as reinforcers; such information will be critical for the development of long-acting compounds that reduce cocaine abuse and that have low abuse liability.

2.3 Models of Abstinence and Relapse

The previous sections have documented a relationship between D2-like receptor availability and vulnerability and changes during chronic cocaine exposure. Of critical relevance is whether these changes in D2-like receptor availability persist during abstinence. Volkow et al. (1993), using [^{18}F]NMSP, reported significantly lower D2-like binding potentials in abstinent cocaine abusers compared to control subjects. These investigators were only able to examine abstinence periods up to 4 months; all subjects had relapsed by then. Although it would be several years later before a potential inverse relationship between D2-like receptor availability and vulnerability would be identified, the authors speculated that it was possible the lower D2-like receptor measures during abstinence were due to a predisposition of individuals with low D2-like receptor availability to use cocaine, rather than a consequence of chronic cocaine exposure. The studies described in the previous two sections indicate that low D2-like receptor availability increases vulnerability to use drugs and that chronic cocaine use further decreases D2-like receptor function (in males). The use of NHPs has allowed for long-term study of SA and permits the study of abstinence beyond the 4 months reported in human cocaine abusers.

Nader et al. (2006) examined recovery of D2-like receptor availability in male rhesus monkeys that had been self-administering cocaine. In one study, short access to cocaine reduced D2-like receptor availability, but recovery occurred in all monkeys within 1–3 weeks. Five animals were studied in abstinence after 1 year of cocaine SA; D2-like receptor availability was reduced by $\sim$20% in all monkeys. For three monkeys, there was complete recovery of [^{18}F]FCP signal within 3 months of abstinence. However, in two monkeys, there was no recovery of D2-like receptor availability after 1 year of abstinence. There were no differences in the amount of cocaine self-administered over the 1 year or in the rate of cocaine SA between monkeys that showed D2-like receptor recovery and those that did not. However, there were subtle behavioral differences that may have predicted a lack of recovery (see Nader et al. 2006). The main point is that the combination of behavioral pharmacology and PET imaging provided novel and important information that may guide future research into environmental and/or pharmacological modifications of D2-like receptor availability.

3 Functional Sequelae of Cocaine Administration

3.1 Blood Flow and Metabolic Responses to Cocaine-Related Stimuli

Physiological and functional changes can be measured via PET in response to environmental (e.g., conditioned stimuli) or pharmacological (e.g., cocaine) challenges that may contribute to repeated drug use, cognitive decline and relapse.

Howell et al. (2001) trained drug-naïve rhesus monkeys to lie still in a head and body restraint system to allow examination of cerebral blood flow (CBF) in the awake, unstressed condition. An acute non-contingent cocaine injection increased cerebral blood flow primarily in the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (PFC), in a dose-dependent manner, measured with [^{15}O]H_2O-PET (Howell et al. 2002). Further, pretreatment with the SERT inhibitor alaproclate blocked the cocaine-induced elevation in CBF (Howell et al. 2002).

Using a within-subject design and FDG-PET, Henry et al. (2010) examined the effects of a single non-contingent cocaine dose compared to saline, on glucose metabolism prior to and following a history of cocaine SA in rhesus monkeys. In this study, cocaine-induced elevations in glucose metabolism were restricted to the PFC in cocaine-naïve monkeys. Following 60 sessions of limited access (1 h) cocaine SA, the same non-contingent cocaine injection increased glucose metabolism in the PFC and also striatum (primarily dorsal striatum). Following an additional 60 sessions of extended access (4 h) cocaine SA, cocaine increased glucose metabolism throughout the PFC and striatum. This pattern of activation was diminished following 1 month of cocaine abstinence, compared to the response in the cocaine-naïve state. This study showed a progressive expansion of cocaine's effects from cortical to mesolimbic regions with extended access to cocaine in a pattern similar to studies using the [^{14}C]-deoxyglucose autoradiographic technique (2DG method; see Porrino et al. 2007 for review). However, FDG-PET revealed progressive increases in glucose metabolism following non-contingent cocaine exposure, whereas results from 2DG studies showed progressive decreases in these dopaminergic-rich brain regions. The differences in directional effects may be due to differences in reinforcement schedule, dose, or timing of drug administration and data collection between studies.

While the previous studies examined non-contingent administration of cocaine, similar activation patterns were shown when rhesus monkeys were allowed to self-administer cocaine during PET image acquisition (Howell et al. 2010). In addition to the PFC and striatum the anterior cingulate cortex (ACC) was metabolically more active following cocaine SA, a region widely shown to be hypoactive during executive function tasks in recent cocaine users (e.g., Bolla et al. 2004; Hester and Garavan 2004; Kubler et al. 2005; Tomasi et al. 2007a, b). Further, when saline was substituted for cocaine during a subsequent PET scan such that only the conditioned stimuli (e.g., lights) were present, activation of the dorsomedial PFC was still present. Brain activation patterns in these NHP studies utilizing awake PET imaging during cocaine SA or extinction conditions are similar to those induced by acute cocaine injections (Breiter et al. 1997) or cocaine-related visual cues (e.g., Wilcox et al. 2011) in humans measured with functional MRI. Such functional responses to drug-related cues are in part attributed to increased DA release determined via displacement of [^{11}C]-raclopride and PET imaging in humans (Volkow et al. 2006). These studies present a neurobiological mechanism underlying drug stimuli-induced craving that may contribute to compulsive drug use and relapse in humans. PET studies in NHPs may be utilized to assess novel, putative pharmacotherapies to block the CNS response to cocaine-related stimuli during abstinence to aid in relapse prevention.

FDG-PET can also be used to examine the effects of various environmental influences on drug-related behavior. For example, preliminary FDG-PET data from our laboratory have shown that glucose metabolism is differentially altered following a stressful encounter with an unknown monkey based on social rank. Dominant monkeys showed increased glucose metabolism in mesocorticolimbic regions and chose fewer cocaine injections and more food pellets in a food-drug choice procedure following this encounter, whereas their subordinate counterparts showed reduced metabolism in mesolimbic regions and an increased preference for cocaine. This model can be used to assess neurobiological differences influencing subsequent behavior based on different environmental histories.

3.2 Models of Cognitive Decline

One of the hallmark consequences of cocaine addiction is a disruption of cognitive behavior. In human cocaine users, fMRI studies complement PET studies and have provided new opportunities to examine specific brain function underlying cognitive tasks. Recent fMRI studies have shown differences associated with impaired executive function compared to control groups across cognitive domains such as behavioral inhibition, cognitive flexibility, updating or working memory, and measures of impulsivity (Fillmore and Rush 2002; Bolla et al. 2004; Hester and Garavan 2004; Goldstein et al. 2007, 2010; Woicik et al. 2011). Despite strong evidence supporting cocaine-induced cognitive impairments, studies cannot discount cognitive predispositions such as heightened impulsivity or risk-taking behavior that may lead to drug use.

Recent studies have used FDG-PET to identify the substrates underlying cognitive behavior. For example, Porrino et al. (2005) used a delay match-to-sample (DMS) task as a measure of working memory in NHPs. In this task monkeys are shown a 'sample' image followed by a delay of varying length (1–30 s). The monkeys are then shown an array of 2–8 images from which they must 'match' the one from the sample phase of the task for a juice reward. The task ranges in difficulty with short intervals and a small number of images during the match phase (low cognitive load) to long intervals with a high number of images (high cognitive load). Performance was associated with increases in glucose utilization in the hippocampal region, dorsal striatum, and the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex. When cocaine was substituted for juice as the reward, there was a dose-dependent decline in performance particularly in high-load trials that was associated with increased activation in the dorsolateral PFC. The basis for the increased activation was a disruption in the firing patterns of dorsolateral PFC neurons recorded in the same animals under the same conditions (Hampson et al. 2011).

NHPs can be trained to perform tasks probing specific cognitive domains known to be impaired in human cocaine users. Following establishment of a stable cognitive baseline, cocaine SA can be initiated. The effects of acute and chronic drug exposure, or abstinence from cocaine on cognitive performance can

be systematically examined, controlling for both intake and duration. Cocaine SA in monkeys brought about impairments in stimulus discrimination and reversal learning, response inhibition, measures of impulsivity, and working memory (Liu et al. 2008, 2009; Porter et al. 2011). In another paradigm of similar design, sleep deprivation impaired percent accuracy on a DMS task and was accompanied by reductions in glucose metabolism in working memory-related cortical areas (Porrino et al. 2005). Administration of the ampakine, CX717 or orexin-A attenuated the deleterious effects of sleep deprivation on both percent accuracy and glucose metabolism (Porrino et al. 2005; Deadwyler et al. 2007; Hampson et al. 2009). Putative cognitive enhancers aimed to attenuate cocaine-induced hypoactive brain function are also being tested in monkeys and humans. For example, recent cocaine users showed deficits in an attention task and showed lower activation within the ACC compared to controls (Goldstein et al. 2010). Following administration of methylphenidate, ACC activity and percent accuracy improved, demonstrating the attenuation of functional alterations underlying cognitive deficits via a pharmacological treatment. The generalizability of methylphenidate to enhance cocaine-associated neural and cognitive deficits has yet to be examined across other cognitive domains.

4 Summary

This review has attempted to briefly highlight the use of NHP models of cocaine addiction and in vivo brain imaging using PET to better understand the neuropharmacology of drug addiction. While we describe key PET studies using DAT tracers and FDG, the focus on DA D2-like receptors has allowed for an assessment of a potential trait marker, which was also influenced by environmental, social and pharmacological variables. D2-like receptor availability influenced vulnerability to cocaine abuse in a manner that was orderly and quite malleable to environmental or pharmacological manipulations. Certainly future studies must examine how other neurotransmitter and neurohormone systems change in concert with brain DA systems in these NHP models.

Acknowledgments We would like to thank Susan Nader, Tonya Calhoun, Mack Miller, and Josh Long for technical assistance and the long-standing collaborations with Paul Czoty, Ph.D., Don Gage, Ph.D., Pradeep Garg, Ph.D. and Sam Deadwyler, Ph.D. The research described in this review was supported by National Institute on Drug Abuse grants DA10584, DA14637, DA09085, DA017763 and P50 DA06634.

References

Beaulieu JM, Gainetdinov RR (2011) The physiology, signaling, and pharmacology of dopamine receptors. Pharmacol Rev 63(1):182–217

Berger B, Gaspar P, Verney C (1991) Dopaminergic innervation of the cerebral cortex: unexpected differences between rodents and primates. Trends Neurosci 14(1):21–27

Beveridge TJR, Smith HR, Daunais JB, Nader MA, Porrino LJ (2006) Chronic cocaine self-administration is associated with altered functional activity in the temporal lobes of nonhuman primates. Eur J Neurosci 23:3109–3118

Beveridge TJ, Gill KE, Hanlon CA, Porrino LJ (2008) Review: parallel studies of cocaine-related neural and cognitive impairment in humans and monkeys. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci 363(1507):3257–3266

Bolla K, Ernst M, Kiehl K, Mouratidis M, Eldreth D, Contoreggi C et al (2004) Prefrontal cortical dysfunction in abstinent cocaine abusers. J Neuropsychiatry Clin Neurosci 16(4):456–464

Borghammer P, Chakravarty M, Jonsdottir KY, Sato N, Matsuda H, Ito K, Arahata Y, Kato T, Gjedde A (2010) Cortical hypometabolism and hypoperfusion in Parkinson's disease is extensive: probably even at early disease stages. Brain Struct Funct 214(4):303–317

Bradberry CW (2000) Acute and chronic dopamine dynamics in a nonhuman primate model of recreational cocaine use. J Neurosci 20:7109–7115

Breiter HC, Gollub RL, Weisskoff RM, Kennedy DN, Makris N, Berke JD et al (1997) Acute effects of cocaine on human brain activity and emotion. Neuron 19(3):591–611

Carlton PL (1983) A primer of behavioral pharmacology: concepts and principles in the behavioral analysis of drug action. W.H. Freeman, New York

Czoty PW, Justice JB Jr, Howell LL (2000) Cocaine-induced changes in extracellular dopamine determined by microdialysis in awake squirrel monkeys. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 148(3):299–306

Czoty PW, Morgan D, Shannon EE, Gage HD, Nader MA (2004) Characterization of dopamine D1 and D2 receptor function in socially housed cynomolgus monkeys self-administering cocaine. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174(3):381–388

Czoty PW, Gage HD, Nader MA (2005) PET imaging of striatal dopamine D2 receptors in nonhuman primates: increases in availability produced by chronic raclopride treatment. Synapse 58(4):215–219

Czoty PW, Gage DG, Nader SH, Reboussin BA, Bounds M, Nader MA (2007) PET imaging of dopamine D2 receptors and transporter availability during acquisition of cocaine self-administration in rhesus monkeys. J Addict Med 1(1):33–39

Czoty PW, Gould RW, Nader MA (2009a) Relationship between social rank and cortisol and testosterone concentrations in male cynomolgus monkeys (*Macaca fascicularis*). J Neuroendocrinol 21(1):68–76

Czoty PW, Riddick NV, Gage HD, Sandridge M, Nader SH, Garg S et al (2009b) Effect of menstrual cycle phase on dopamine D2 receptor availability in female cynomolgus monkeys. Neuropsychopharmacology 34(3):548–554

Deadwyler SA, Porrino L, Siegel JM, Hampson RE (2007) Systemic and nasal delivery of orexin-A (Hypocretin-1) reduces the effects of sleep deprivation on cognitive performance in nonhuman primates. J Neurosci 27(52):14239–14247

Dewey SL, Smith GS, Logan J, Brodie JD, Yu DW, Ferrieri RA, King PT, MacGregor RR, Martin TP, Wolf AP et al (1992) GABAergic inhibition of endogenous dopamine release measured in vivo with ^{11}C-raclopride and positron emission tomography. J Neurosci 12:3773–3780

Di Chiara G, Imperato A (1988) Drugs abused by humans preferentially increase synaptic dopamine concentrations in the mesolimbic system of freely moving rats. Proc Natl Acad Sci 85:5274–5278

Doudet DJ, Holden JE (2003) Sequential versus nonsequential measurement of density and affinity of dopamine D2 receptors with [11C]raclopride: effect of methamphetamine. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 23(12):1489–1494

Dukelow WR, Grauwiler J, Bruggemann S (1979) Characteristics of the menstrual cycle in nonhuman primates: I. similarities and dissimilarities between *Macaca fascicularis* and *Macaca arctoides*. J Med Primatol 8(1):39–47

Dworkin SI, Mirkis S, Smith JE (1995) Response-dependent versus response-independent presentation of cocaine: differences in the lethal effects of the drug. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 117(3):262–266

Evans SM, Foltin RW (2010) Does the response to cocaine differ as a function of sex or hormonal status in human and non-human primates? Horm Behav 58(1):13–21
Everitt BJ, Belin D, Economidou D, Peloux Y, Dalley JW, Robbins TW (2008) Review: neural mechanisms underlying the vulnerability to develop compulsive drug-seeking habits and addiction. Phil Trans R Soc B 363(1507):3125–3135
Fillmore MT, Rush CR (2002) Impaired inhibitory control of behavior in chronic cocaine users. Drug Alcohol Depend 66(3):265–273
Fowler JS, Volkow ND, Wolf AP, Dewey SL, Schlyer DJ, MacGregor RR et al (1989) Mapping cocaine binding sites in human and baboon brain in vivo. Synapse 4(4):371–377
Galici R, Pechnick RN, Poland RE, France CP (2000) Comparison of noncontingent versus contingent cocaine administration on plasma corticosterone levels in rats. Eur J Pharmacol 387(1):59–62
Goldstein RZ, Volkow ND (2002) Drug addiction and its underlying neurobiological basis: neuroimaging evidence for the involvement of the frontal cortex. Am J Psychiatry 159(10):1642–1652
Goldstein RZ, Tomasi D, Rajaram S, Cottone LA, Zhang L, Maloney T et al (2007) Role of anterior cingulate and medial orbitofrontal cortex in processing drug cues in cocaine addiction. Neuroscience 144(4):1153–1159
Goldstein RZ, Woicik PA, Maloney T, Tomasi D, Alia-Klein N, Shan J et al (2010) Oral methylphenidate normalizes cingulate activity in cocaine addiction during a salient cognitive task. Proc Nat Acad Sci 107(38):16667–16672
Greenfield SF, Back SE, Lawson K, Brady KT (2010) Substance abuse in women. Psychiatr Clin North Am 33(2):339–355
Griffiths RR, Bigelow GE, Henningfield JE (1980) Similarities in animal and human drug-taking behavior. In: Mello NK (ed) Advances in substance abuse. JAI Press, Greenwich, pp 1–90
Hacia JG, Makalowski W, Edgemon K, Erdos MR, Robbins CM, Fodor SP et al (1998) Evolutionary sequence comparisons using high-density oligonucleotide arrays. Nat Genet 18(2):155–158
Hampson RE, España RA, Rogers GA, Porrino LJ, Deadwyler SA (2009) Mechanisms underlying cognitive enhancement and reversal of cognitive deficits in nonhuman primates by the ampakine CX717. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 202(1–3):355–369
Hampson RE, Porrino LJ, Opris I, Stanford T, Deadwyler SA (2011) Effects of cocaine rewards on neural representations of cognitive demand in nonhuman primates. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 213(1):105–118
Henry PK, Murnane KS, Votaw JR, Howell LL (2010) Acute brain metabolic effects of cocaine in rhesus monkeys with a history of cocaine use. Brain Imaging and Behav 4(3–4):212–219
Hester R, Garavan H (2004) Executive dysfunction in cocaine addiction: evidence for discordant frontal, cingulate, and cerebellar activity. J Neurosci 24(49):11017–11022
Howell LL, Murnane KS (2011) Nonhuman primate positron emission tomography neuroimaging in drug abuse research. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 337(2):324–334
Howell LL, Hoffman JM, Votaw JR, Landrum AM, Jordan JF (2001) An apparatus and behavioral training protocol to conduct positron emission tomography (PET) neuroimaging in conscious rhesus monkeys. J Neurosci Methods 106(2):161–169
Howell LL, Hoffman JM, Votaw JR, Landrum AM, Wilcox KM, Lindsey KP (2002) Cocaine-induced brain activation determined by positron emission tomography neuroimaging in conscious rhesus monkeys. Psychopharmacology 159(2):154–160
Howell LL, Carroll FI, Votaw JR, Goodman MM, Kimmel HL (2007) Effects of combined dopamine and serotonin transporter inhibitors on cocaine self-administration in rhesus monkeys. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 320(2):757–765
Howell LL, Votaw JR, Goodman MM, Lindsey KP (2010) Cortical activation during cocaine use and extinction in rhesus monkeys. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 208(2):191–199
Joel D, Weiner I (2000) The connections of dopaminergic system with the striatum in rats and primates: an analysis with respect to the functional and compartmental organization of the striatum. Neuroscience 96(3):451–474

Kaplan JR, Manuck SB, Clarkson TB, Lusso FM, Taub DM (1982) Social status, environment, and atherosclerosis in cynomolgus monkeys. Arteriosclerosis 2:359–368

Katz JL, Higgins ST (2003) The validity of the reinstatement model of craving and relapse to drug use. Psychopharmacology 168:21–30

Kimmel HL, Negus SS, Wilcox KM, Ewing SB, Stehouwer J, Goodman MM et al (2008) Relationship between rate of drug uptake in brain and behavioral pharmacology of monoamine transporter inhibitors in rhesus monkeys. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 90(3):453–462

Koob GF, Le Moal M (2000) Drug addiction, dysregulation of reward, and allostasis. Neuropsychopharmacology 24(2):97–129

Koob GF, Volkow ND (2011) Neurocircuitry of addiction. Neuropsychopharmacology 35(1):217–238

Kopin IJ (1985) Catecholamine metabolism: basic aspects and clinical significance. Pharmacol Rev 37(4):333–364

Kubler A, Murphy K, Garavan H (2005) Cocaine dependence and attention switching within and between verbal and visuospatial working memory. Eur J Neurosci 21(7):1984–1992

Lecca D, Cacciapaglia F, Valentini V, Acquas E, Di Chiara G (2007) Differential neurochemical and behavioral adaptation to cocaine after response contingent and noncontingent exposure in rat. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 191(3):653–667

Letchworth SR, Nader MA, Smith HR, Friedman DP, Porrino LJ (2001) Progression of changes in dopamine transporter binding site density as a result of cocaine self-administration in rhesus monkeys. J Neurosci 21(8):2799–2807

Lile JA, Wang Z, Woolverton WL, France JE, Gregg TC, Davies HM et al (2003) The reinforcing efficacy of psychostimulants in rhesus monkeys: the role of pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 307(1):356–366

Lindsey KP, Wilcox KM, Votaw JR, Goodman MM, Plisson C, Carroll FI et al (2004) Effects of dopamine transporter inhibitors on cocaine self-administration in rhesus monkeys: relationship to transporter occupancy determined by positron emission tomography neuroimaging. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 309(3):959–969

Liu S, Heitz RP, Sampson AR, Zhang W, Bradberry CW (2008) Evidence of temporal cortical dysfunction in rhesus monkeys following chronic cocaine self-administration. Cerebral Cortex 18:2109–2116

Liu S, Heitz RP, Bradberry CW (2009) A touch screen based stop signal response task in rhesus monkeys for studying impulsivity associated with chronic cocaine self-administration. J Neurosci Methods 177(1):67–72

Lynch WJ (2006) Sex differences in vulnerability to drug self-administration. Exp Clin Psychopharmacol 14(1):34–41

Lyons D, Friedman DP, Nader MA, Porrino LJ (1996) Cocaine alters cerebral metabolism within the ventral striatum and limbic cortex of monkeys. J Neurosci 16(3):1230–1238

Mach RH, Nader MA, Ehrenkaufer RLE, Line SW, Smith CR, Luedtke RR, Kung MP, Kung HF, Lyons D, Morton TE (1996) Comparison of two fluorine-18 labeled benzamide derivatives that bind reversibly to dopamine D2 receptors: in vitro binding studies and positron emission tomography. Synapse 24:322–333

Mach RH, Nader MA, Ehrenkaufer RL, Line SW, Smith CR, Gage HD et al (1997) Use of positron emission tomography to study the dynamics of psychostimulant-induced dopamine release. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 57(3):477–486

Mello NK, Mendelson JH (2009) Cocaine, hormones, and behavior: clinical and preclinical studies. In: Pfaff DW, Arnold AP, Etgen AM, Fahrbach SE, Rubin RT (eds) Hormones, brain and behavior, 2nd edn. Academic Press, San Deigo, pp 3081–3139

Mello NK, Negus SS (1996) Preclinical evaluation of pharmacotherapies for treatment of cocaine and opioid abuse using drug self-administration procedures. Neuropsychopharmacology 14(6):375–424

Miller GM, Yatin SM, De La Garza R II, Goulet M, Madras BK (2001) Cloning of dopamine, norepinephrine and serotonin transporters from monkey brain: relevance to cocaine sensitivity. Brain Res Mol Brain Res 87(1):124–143

Moore RJ, Vinsant SL, Nader MA, Porrino LJ, Friedman DP (1998) Effect of cocaine self-administration on dopamine D2 receptors in rhesus monkeys. Synapse 30(1):88–96

Morgan D, Grant KA, Gage HD, Mach RH, Kaplan JR, Prioleau O et al (2002) Social dominance in monkeys: dopamine D2 receptors and cocaine self-administration. Nat Neurosci 5(2):169–174

Munro CA, McCaul ME, Wong DF, Oswald LM, Zhou Y, Brasic J et al (2006) Sex differences in striatal dopamine release in healthy adults. Biol Psychiatry 59(10):966–974

Murnane KS, Howell LL (2011) Neuroimaging and drug taking in primates. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 206:153–171

Nader MA, Czoty PW (2005) PET imaging of dopamine D2 receptors in monkey models of cocaine abuse: genetic predisposition versus environmental modulation. Am J Psychiatry 162(8):1473–1482

Nader MA, Czoty PW (2008) Brain imaging in nonhuman primates: insights into drug addiction. ILAR J 49(1):89–102

Nader MA, Daunais JB, Moore T, Nader SH, Moore RJ, Smith HR et al (2002) Effects of cocaine self-administration on striatal dopamine systems in rhesus monkeys: initial and chronic exposure. Neuropsychopharmacology 27(1):3–46

Nader MA, Morgan D, Gage HD, Nader SH, Calhoun TL, Buchheimer N et al (2006) PET imaging of dopamine D2 receptors during chronic cocaine self-administration in monkeys. Nat Neurosci 9(8):1050–1056

Nordström AL, Olsson H, Halldin C (1998) A PET study of D2 dopamine receptor density at different phases of the menstrual cycle. Psychiatry Res 83:1–6

O'Brien MS, Anthony JC (2005) Risk of becoming cocaine dependent: epidemiological estimates for the United States, 2000–2001. Neuropsychopharmacology 30(5):1006–1018

Porrino LJ, Daunais JB, Rogers GA, Hampson RE, Deadwyler SA (2005) Facilitation of task performance and removal of the effects of sleep deprivation by an ampakine (CX717) in nonhuman primates. PLoS Biol 3(9):299

Porrino LJ, Smith HR, Nader MA, Beveridge TJ (2007) The effects of cocaine: a shifting target over the course of addiction. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 31(8):1593–1600

Porter JN, Olsen AS, Gurnsey K, Dugan BP, Jedema HP, Bradberry CW (2011) Chronic cocaine self-administration in rhesus monkeys: impact on associative learning, cognitive control, and working memory. J Neurosci 31(13):4926–4934

Riddick NV, Czoty PW, Gage HD, Kaplan JR, Nader SH, Icenhower M et al (2009) Behavioral and neurobiological characteristics influencing social hierarchy formation in female cynomolgus monkeys. Neurosci 158(4):1257–1265

Roberts DCS, Phelan R, Hodges LM, Hodges MM, Bennett BA, Childers SR et al (1999) Self-administration of cocaine analogs by rats. Psychopharmacology 144(4):389–397

SAMHSA (2009) Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration: Results from the 2008 national survey on drug use and health: national findings. Office of Applied Studies, NSDUH series H-36, HHS publication number SMA 09-4434, Rockville

SAMHSA (2010) Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration: Reliability of key measures in the national survey on drug use and health. Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, US Department of Health and Human Services, Rockville

Strickland TL, Mena I, Villanueva-Meyer J, Miller BL, Cummings J, Mehringer CM et al (1993) Cerebral perfusion and neuropsychological consequences of chronic cocaine abuse. J Neuropsychiatry Clin Neurosci 5(4):419–427

Terner JM, de Wit H (2006) Menstrual cycle phase and responses to drugs of abuse in humans. Drug Alcohol Depend 84(1):1–13

Tomasi D, Goldstein RZ, Telang F, Maloney T, Alia-Klein N, Caparelli EC, Volkow ND (2007a) Thalamo-cortical dysfunction in cocaine abusers: implications in attention and perception. Psychiatry Res 155(3):189–201

Tomasi D, Goldstein RZ, Telang F, Maloney T, Alia-Klein N, Caparelli EC, Volkow ND (2007b) Widespread disruption in brain activation patterns to a working memory task during cocaine abstinence. Brain Res 1171:83–92

Vallone D, Picetti R, Borrelli E (2000) Structure and function of dopamine receptors. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 24(1):125–132

Volkow ND, Fowler JS, Wang GJ, Hitzemann R, Logan J, Schlyer DJ et al (1993) Decreased dopamine D2 receptor availability is associated with reduced frontal metabolism in cocaine abusers. Synapse 14(2):169–177

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Logan J, Gatley SJ, Gifford A, Hitzemann R, Ding YS, Pappas N (1999) Prediction of reinforcing responses to psychostimulants in humans by brain D2 dopamine receptors. Am J Psychiatry 156:1440–1443

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Telang F, Fowler JS, Logan J, Childress AR et al (2006) Cocaine cues and dopamine in dorsal striatum: mechanism of craving in cocaine addiction. J Neurosci 26(24):6583–6588

Weed MR, Woolverton WL, Paul IA (1998) Dopamine D1 and D2 receptor selectivities of phenylbenzazepines in rhesus monkey striata. Eur J Pharmacol 361(1):129–142

Weerts EM, Fantegrossi WE, Goodwin AK (2007) The value of nonhuman primates in drug abuse research. Exp Clin Psychopharmacol 15(4):309–327

WHO (2004) Neuroscience of psychoactive substance use and dependence. World Health Organization, Geneva

Wilcox CE, Teshiba TM, Merideth F, Ling J, Mayer AR (2011) Enhanced cue reactivity and fronto-striatal functional connectivity in cocaine use disorders. Drug Alcohol Depend 115(1–2):137–144

Woicik PA, Urban C, Alia-Klein N, Henry A, Maloney T, Telang F et al (2011) A pattern of perseveration in cocaine addiction may reveal neurocognitive processes implicit in the Wisconsin card sorting task. Neuropsychologia 49(7):1660–1669

Wong DF, Broussolle EP, Wand G, Villemagne V, Dannals RF, Links JM et al (1988) In vivo measurement of dopamine receptors in human brain by positron emission tomography: age and sex differences. Ann N Y Acad Sci 515:203–214

Woolverton WL, Nader MA (1990) Experimental evaluation of the reinforcing effects of drugs. In: Adler MW, Cowans A (eds) Modern methods in pharmacology: testing and evaluation of drugs of abuse. Wiley-Liss, New York, pp 165–192

Zilberman M, Tavares H, el-Guebaly N (2003) Gender similarities and differences: the prevalence and course of alcohol- and other substance-related disorders. J Addict Dis 22(4): 61–74

PET Applications in Animal Models of Neurodegenerative and Neuroinflammatory Disorders

Makoto Higuchi, Jun Maeda, Bin Ji, Masaki Tokunaga, Ming-Rong Zhang, Masahiro Maruyama, Maiko Ono, Toshimitsu Fukumura and Tetsuya Suhara

Abstract Studies on hereditary neurological disorders such as familial Alzheimer's disease (AD) have revealed abnormalities of pathogenic proteins causative of neurodegeneration, while molecular initiators of sporadic neuropsychiatric conditions remain unidentified. Such disorders are characterized by collections of molecular abnormalities that may be critically involved in synaptic dysfunctions and other deteriorations in neurons. Diverse classes of radiochemicals designed for positron emission tomographic (PET) imaging facilitate delineation of mechanistic links among key molecules in these processes by tracking their spatiotemporal correlations. This assay technique is of particular utility when applied to rodent and nonhuman primate models given their suitability for invasive genetic and pharmacological interventions. In addition, the detection of neurochemical and neuropathological changes by PET can be examined in laboratory animals when combined with invasive antemortem and postmortem investigations such as in vivo microdialysis, electrophysiological and histopathological techniques. This review primarily covers the use of small animal models of brain disorders using PET to elucidate etiological molecular cascades to facilitate in turn the search for diagnostic and therapeutic agents applicable to AD and related disorders in humans.

Keywords Positron emission tomography (PET) · Alzheimer's disease · Transgenic mouse · Amyloid β peptide · Tau protein · Translocator protein · Imaging · Rodent model · Neurodegenerative disorders · Psychiatric diseases

M. Higuchi (✉) · J. Maeda · B. Ji · M. Tokunaga · M.-R. Zhang · M. Maruyama · M. Ono · T. Fukumura · T. Suhara
Molecular Imaging Center, National Institute of Radiological Sciences, 4-9-1 Anagawa, Inage-ku, Chiba 263-8555, Japan
e-mail: mhiguchi@nirs.go.jp

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 45–64
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2011_167

Published Online: 21 October 2011

Contents

1 Introduction

Researchers have taken advantage of positron emission tomographic (PET) imaging technologies in both nonclinical and clinical in vivo studies primarily because they offer an excellent alignment of results between laboratory animals and humans. This approach also opens an avenue to bidirectional translational research between bench and clinic through a feedback loop of pathological and pharmacological information. The limited availability of biopsy specimens and essential need for assessing penetration of drugs across the blood–brain barrier lend rationale to the application of PET to central nervous system assays in humans, while animal studies benefit from the capability of PET to measure neuronal activities and neurotransmissions and to monitor longitudinally brain pathologies in the same individuals, thereby enhancing statistical power.

In relation to small laboratory animal research, the latest progress in PET imaging instruments offer the precise mapping of radiotracer distribution in rodent brains with an in-plane spatial resolution approximating 1.5 mm (Fig. 1a–d) (Tai et al. 2005). This technology is of particular benefit to the use of genetically engineered mice and rats for proving specific interactions between radioligands and target molecules by overexpressing and/or knocking down such binding components, and for pursuing pathophysiological events downstream from the genetic modification. It is also noteworthy that the throughput of PET scans may be somewhat improved by utilizing mice, as dynamic PET data of four mice can be acquired in a single session (Fig. 1e). Furthermore, estimation of rate constants for transfer of a radiotracer between plasma and brain tissue and association with, and dissociation from, specific and nonspecific binding sites has been successful in PET imaging of mouse brains on the basis of compartment models requiring a metabolite-corrected arterial input function (Seki et al. 2008). Effects of neuroactive drugs possibly influenced by anesthetics are also assessable by small-animal PET devices with the use of conscious rats (Tokunaga et al. 2009) and mice (Mizuma et al. 2010). Congenic and inbred rodents with minimal or no genetic variations tend to produce less interindividual variability in levels of endogenous components and consequently kinetic parameter values for exogenous tracers than do primates, including humans. These technical merits notwithstanding, however,

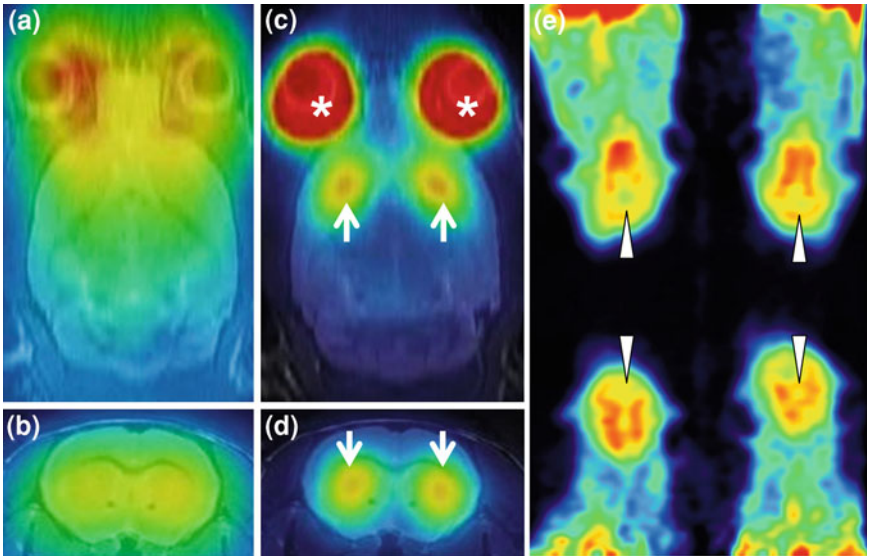


Fig. 1 Horizontal (**a**, **c**) and coronal (**b**, **d**) images of wild-type mouse brains acquired by Hamamatsu SHR7700 (**a**, **b**) and Siemens microPET Focus 220 (**c**, **d**) scanners with in-plane spatial resolutions of 2.6 and 1.3 mm, respectively, full-width at half-maximum at the center of the field of view. Images were generated by averaging dynamic PET data at 0–90 min after intravenous injection of a radioligand for the D2 dopamine receptor, [^{11}C]raclopride, and are superimposed on an MRI template. Despite concentrated radioactivity in the Harderian glands (*asterisks*), intense in vivo radiolabeling of the striatum (*arrows*) is detectable with a Focus 220 system. **e** Simultaneous scanning of four mice with a Focus 220 scanner. Images were constructed as an average of dynamic data collected at 0–30 min after intravenous injection of [^{11}C]PIB. Radiotracer uptake in the brain is indicated by *arrowheads*

rodent PET imaging may not be a full replacement for non-human primate assays prior to clinical applications, in consideration of interspecies heterogeneities of immunity, life span, higher brain functions and several other biological factors. Quantitative determination of radioprobe kinetics could be hampered in small rodents due to 'mass effects', which are primarily attributable to the occupancy of target and off-target binding elements by unlabeled tracer compounds (Hume et al. 1998; Kung and Kung 2005), and are inevitable unless scans with a very small mass dose are enabled by a profound enhancement of either specific radioactivity or an increased sensitivity of PET detectors.

Pharmacokinetic characterization of potential diagnostic and therapeutic compounds with PET is generally performed by injecting radiolabeled variants of these chemicals or measuring competition between test chemicals and established radioprobes. This assay can be conducted in normal animals if target molecules are expressed in a physiological condition. More specifically for neurodegenerative conditions, probes producing positive signals by capturing pathological aggregates of misfolded proteins/peptides and inflammatory glia can be characterized by the

use of model animals with or without genetic modifications. In the interim, these models are also applicable to evaluations of the capability of radiochemicals for negative signs of pathologic injuries such as loss of neurons, neuroreceptors, neurotransmitter transporters and energy metabolism. This approach can be contrasted with models of psychiatric illnesses, of which positive and negative biological signs in the brain remain largely elusive or are relatively subtle. However, PET research on animals together with candidate genetic and other etiological culprits of mental disorders may reveal neurochemical consequences of these abnormalities, and such alterations of neurotransmission components are potentially relevant as endophenotypes of psychiatric diseases (Gottesman and Gould 2003; Martinez et al. 2001).

2 Visualization of Fibrillar Protein Assemblies

A wide variety of neurodegenerative disorders can be neuropathologically characterized by either extracellular or intracellular deposition of proteinaceous fibrils (Forman et al. 2004). Senile plaques and neurofibrillary tangles, composed of amyloid β peptide (Aβ) and tau protein, respectively, are histopathological hallmarks in Alzheimer's disease (AD), while neuronal and glial tau inclusions feature in a subset of non-AD neurodegenerative diseases collectively referred to as tauopathies (Higuchi et al. 2002a). Genetic mutations of a precursor of Aβ, amyloid precursor protein (APP), and catalytic subunits of an enzyme responsible for Aβ production, presenilin-1 (PS1) and presenilin-2, are causative of familial AD (Chartier-Harlin et al. 1991; Rogaev et al. 1995; Sherrington et al. 1995), and tau gene mutations have been discovered in family members of hereditary non-AD tauopathy termed frontotemporal dementia with parkinsonism linked to chromosome 17 (FTDP-17) (Hutton et al. 1998; Poorkaj et al. 1998; Spillantini et al. 1998), indicating pivotal roles of Aβ, tau and other fibrillogenic molecules in the neurodegenerative pathway. The demonstration in autopsied brains that accumulation of senile plaques and neurofibrillary tangles is initiated decades before the symptomatic onset of AD (Price and Morris 1999) supports the significance of these fibrillar lesions as primary targets of early diagnostic and disease-modifying therapeutic approaches. However, it is yet to be clarified whether amounts of total aggregates or certain assembly forms are intimately associated with neurotoxicity.

A notable property of these pathological fibrils is that constituent proteins are homologously oligomerized and polymerized through formation of a β-pleated sheet as a secondary structure (Berriman et al. 2003). Radiolabeled small molecules binding to β-sheets are accordingly applied to the visualization of such aggregates in living brains (Cai et al. 2007). Although the vast majority of β-sheet ligands exhibit high in vitro affinity for diverse self-assemblies of synthetic Aβ peptides and recombinant tau proteins, only a restricted subgroup of these compounds is capable of interacting with tau depositions in the brain (Okamura et al. 2005; Maruyama et al. 2009; Fodero-Tavoletti et al. 2011). In addition, selectivity of β-sheet ligands

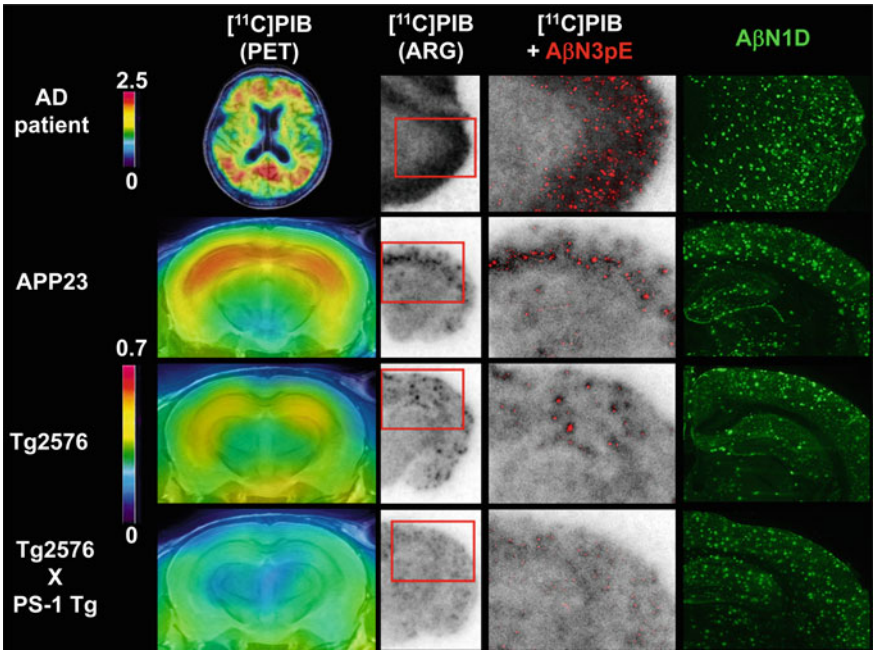


Fig. 2 Preferential binding of [^{11}C]PIB to AβN3pE aggregates characteristic of AD pathologies. Scale bars indicate binding potential for amyloid deposits in an AD patient and transgenic (Tg) mice modeling plaque formation, including APP23 (23 months old), Tg2576 (23 months old) and double PS-1/APP (8 months old) transgenics. The human PET image is superimposed on an individual MR image, and mouse PET images on an MRI template. Frozen sections of human and mouse brains used for in vitro autoradiography with [^{11}C]PIB were subsequently used for immunohistochemical mapping of AβN3pE and N-terminally intact Aβ, AβN1D

for subspecies of Aβ and tau is frequently indicated by comparative studies in diseased patients and animal models. High-contrast imaging of senile plaques in AD patients by PET with ^{11}C-labeled Pittsburgh Compound-B ([^{11}C]PIB) was first reported by Klunk et al. 2004. However, other more recent [^{11}C]PIB-PET studies have failed to detect Aβ deposits with a high contrast in APP transgenic mice (Toyama et al. 2005), which overexpress APP and developed amyloid (Tg2576; Hsiao et al. 1996), as well as mice doubly transgenic for mutant APP and PS-1 (Klunk et al. 2005), which show accelerated Aβ fibrillogenesis (Holcomb et al. 1996). By contrast, we have found detectable plaque lesions in several different mouse models using [^{11}C]PIB-PET, including Aβ deposition in an aged APP transgenic line (Sturchler-Pierrat et al. 1997; Maeda et al. 2007a; Fig. 2). Indeed, a longitudinal PET assay of the same APP23 mice illustrated intensification of plaque signals with aging (Maeda et al. 2007a). By contrast, in vivo binding of [^{11}C]PIB to aggregated Aβ in Tg2576 and APP/PS1 double transgenic mice was only marginally detectable in animals of 24 months of age (Fig. 2).

Binding potential based on specific binding compared to nondisplaceable uptake for [^{11}C]PIB was quantified with dynamic PET scan data, and was approximately 0.2 and 0.6 in the neocortex at 18 and 26 months of age, respectively, being linearly proportional to age during this period. These values much exceeded those in Tg2576 ($\sim$0.3 at 26 months) and APP/PS1 double transgenic (<0.1 at 9 months) mice, but were far below levels in the neocortex of AD patients, which reportedly approximated 1.3–1.5 in the frontal cortex (Price et al. 2005; Lopresti et al. 2005). Moreover, binding of [^{11}C]PIB to the cerebral cortices was shown to reach a plateau at a prodromal stage of AD often referred to as mild cognitive impairment (MCI) (Engler et al. 2006), unlike the continuous elevation of [^{11}C]PIB signals throughout the lifetime of APP23 mice (Maeda et al. 2007a). The distinct characteristics of amyloid ligand binding among different species and transgenic strains were overtly discrepant with the biochemical results demonstrating that amounts of total Aβ and two major C-terminal variants of Aβ ending at Val40 (Aβ40) and Ala42 (Aβ42) in insoluble protein fractions extracted from brains of all examined APP transgenic lines were equally abundant and were greater than those in AD patients (Kawarabayashi et al. 2001; Klunk et al. 2005; Maeda et al. 2007a).

We subsequently sought to identify the main component(s) of binding sites for [^{11}C]PIB, as accumulation of such elements has been hypothesized to be unique to the continuum from pathological aging to AD in humans (Findeis 2007; Gunn et al. 2010). Combined autoradiographic and immunohistochemical analyses were performed to assess the association of N-terminal and C-terminal heterogeneities of Aβ with [^{11}C]PIB binding sites. The levels and distribution of an Aβ subtype lacking two N-terminal amino acid residues and beginning with pyroglutamate (pGlu3), AβN3pE, were found to correlate with those of [^{11}C]PIB signals (Fig. 2) (Maeda et al. 2007a). As expected from biochemical assays of brain homogenates, Aβ40 and Aβ42 were not consistently co-localized with binding sites for [^{11}C]PIB in humans and APP transgenics. The preferential binding of [^{11}C]PIB to AβN3pE was further supported by an in vitro binding assay with synthetic Aβ peptides (Maeda et al. 2007a). Thus, we postulated that this N-terminal variant of Aβ was a primary element of binding components for [^{11}C]PIB.

The significance of AβN3pE as a major component of AD plaques was documented by histopathological studies (Saido et al. 1995), followed by reports by different groups demonstrating fibrillogenic and neurotoxic propensities of this Aβ subtype (He and Barrow 1999; Russo et al. 2002; Schilling et al. 2006), and biochemical assays of AD and transgenic mouse brains (Kawarabayashi et al. 2001). Incorporation of the PS1 mutation into Tg2576 mice induced no signal intensification in [^{11}C]PIB-PET despite an enhanced accumulation of total Aβ and Aβ42, which might amplify disproportionate deposition of N-terminally unprocessed Aβ to AβN3pE. Such PIB-negative Aβ plaques are also characteristic of Tg2576 and APP23 mice at 9–15 months, and correspond to the transition from normal to pathological aging of human brains. Similarly, linear increases of [^{11}C]PIB-PET signals with aging in these mouse models at 15 months or older resembles the progression of pathological aging toward MCI. This notion may be

justified by the fact that no marked neuronal loss is observable in most APP transgenic lines during their lifetime (Van Dam et al. 2005). Accumulation of AβN3pE and emergence of [^{11}C]PIB signals predate overt cognitive impairment in humans (Mintun et al. 2006; Rowe et al. 2010), which contrasts to the antecedence of abnormal electrophysiological and behavioral phenotypes to the formation of AβN3pE- and [^{11}C]PIB-positive plaques in APP transgenics (Huang et al. 2006). In these contexts, APP transgenic models may not be of utility in elucidating roles played by Aβ subtypes deleterious to neuronal functionality and viability in aged human brains.

PET studies in different animal species and transgenic strains have also provided insights into the development of animal models with Aβ pathologies. Aβ is primarily degraded by endopeptidases such as neprilysin (Iwata et al. 2000), while a small subset of Aβ undergoes N-terminal truncation and modification resulting in production of AβN3pE (Cynis et al. 2008). This N-terminal processing step is a minor pathway of Aβ metabolism requiring decades for an accumulation of AβN3pE to a [^{11}C]PIB-positive level, but may be accelerated in the event of downregulated neprilysin activity (Miners et al. 2008). To test this notion, Saido and coworkers have recently established APP23 mice deficient in neprilysin, and their preliminary results indicate a selective increase in AβN3pE in these animals relative to APP23 mice. Consistent with this biochemical finding, our pilot [^{11}C]PIB-PET assays have illustrated augmented radioligand binding to the neocortex and hippocampus of the double mutant mice, supporting the views that [^{11}C]PIB preferentially binds to AβN3pE aggregates, and that manipulation of Aβ metabolism could lead to advances in the in vivo modeling of AD through the use of genetically engineered animals.

A number of researchers have developed PET ligands to visualize fibrillar tau lesions in vivo (Okamura et al. 2005; Maruyama et al. 2009; Fodero-Tavoletti et al. 2011). However, rather disappointedly, only a limited class of β-sheet ligands exhibit high-affinity for tau inclusions. An ^{18}F-labeled amyloid probe, 2-(1-{6-[(2-[^{18}F]fluoroethyl)-(methyl)amino]-2-naphthyl}ethylidene)malononitrile ([^{18}F]FDDNP), was developed to bind to both plaques and tangles in AD brains (Small et al. 2006), although it remains inconclusive whether [^{18}F]FDDNP provides a sufficiently sensitive detection of AD pathologies at an early stage (Thompson et al. 2009). In addition, compounds reported to possess high selectivity for tau lesions versus Aβ deposits (Okamura et al. 2005; Maruyama et al. 2009; Fodero-Tavoletti et al. 2011) have not been used in humans. Since the concurrence of Aβ and tau depositions in AD brains hampers separate in vivo assessments of selective binding of radioprobes into Aβ and tau pathologies, animals developing tau inclusions may serve to establish the reactivity of candidate chemicals with their specific targets. Multiple lines of mice transgenic for human tau with FTDP-17 mutations were found to harbor tau aggregates typically stained with fluorescent chemicals such as thioflavin-S and 1-fluoro-2,5-bis(3-carboxy-4-hydroxystyryl)benzene (FSB) (Fig. 3) (Lewis et al. 2000; Higuchi et al. 2002b; Santacruz et al. 2005; Yoshiyama et al. 2007). However, the majority of β-sheet ligands capable of capturing AD neurofibrillary tangles do not bind to these transgenic tau lesions, suggesting a structural distinction between tau

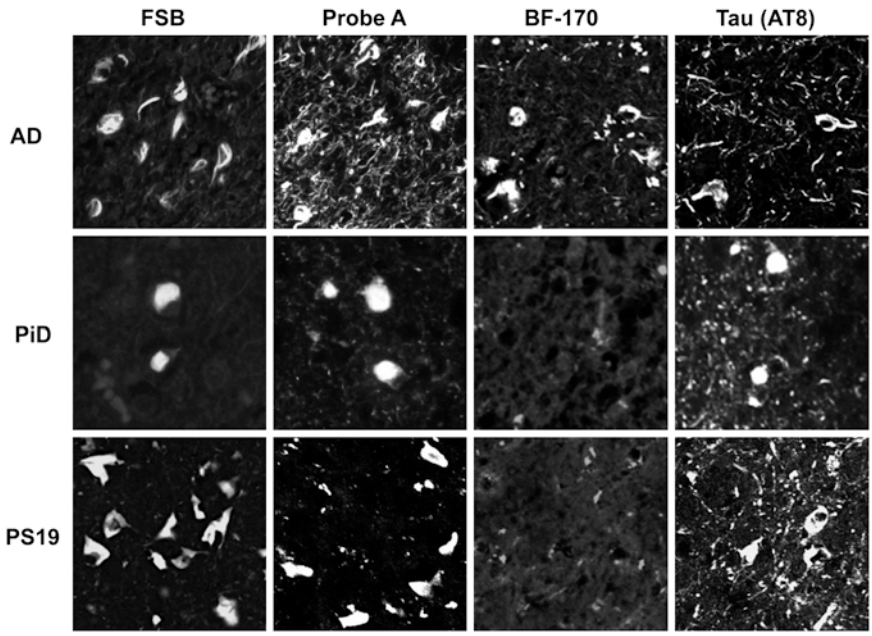


Fig. 3 Fluorescence staining of frontal cortex slices from patients with AD and Pick's disease (PiD) and brain stem slices from a PS19 tau transgenic mouse. Separate samples were reacted with FSB and a new tau ligand designated as Probe A, and were doubly labeled with a tau-selective compound, BF-170, and monoclonal antibody against phosphorylated tau, AT8. Tau inclusions in all tested samples are illuminated with FSB and Probe A, while BF-170 only recognized tau lesions in AD

assemblies generated in AD and mouse brains (Fig. 3) (Okamura et al. 2005; Maruyama et al. 2009). This discrepancy might be attributed to the composition of tau isoforms incorporated in fibrillar aggregates, as most transgenic mouse strains overexpress a single tau isoform with three or four microtubule-binding repeat domains, unlike the assembly of all six tau isoforms into fibrils in AD (Higuchi et al. 2002a). Consistent with this notion, many tangle-binding compounds do not show affinity for intraneuronal and intraglial tau inclusions in the majority of non-AD tauopathies, including progressive supranuclear palsy, Pick's disease and corticobasal degeneration (Fig. 3). Moreover, there is a marked overlap of compounds reactive with tau deposits in transgenic mouse models and non-AD neurodegenerative diseases (Maruyama et al. 2009). Hence, utilization of mice modeling tauopathies may facilitate the pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic evaluation of candidate imaging agents targeting a wide spectrum of tau pathologies and consequently enabling differentiation among diverse tauopathies including AD. Indeed, several tau transgenic mouse lines have been employed for evaluating putative tau-binding radioligands by PET (Maruyama et al. 2009; Fodero-Tavoletti et al. 2011). However, clinical PET studies are needed to establish in vivo homologies of tau

lesions in AD, non-AD tauopathies and transgenic mouse models. It should also be noted that analogs of tau probes could act as anti-aggregation drugs by blocking β-sheet formation (Taniguchi et al. 2005), a possibility that requires further rigorous evaluation in rodent models of tau pathology.

3 Imaging Biomarkers for Immune Responses to Neuropathologies

Immune signaling in the CNS is regulated by signaling between neurons and glia (Amor et al. 2010; Kettenmann et al. 2011). Indeed, activation of microglia and astrocytes is commonly observed in diverse neuropathological conditions (Eikelenboom et al. 2006; Block et al. 2007). The main role of glial cells appears to involve the removal of toxic proteinaceous deposits (Sawada 2009), and appear largely dependent on glial subpopulations and types, and the severity and stages of disorders (Maeda et al. 2007b; Serrano-Pozo et al. 2011). Activated microglia are known to express 18-kDa translocator protein (TSPO, also known as peripheral benzodiazepine receptor) at a high level, and different classes of low-molecular-weight chemicals have been applied to PET imaging of TSPO in living animal models and humans (Banati et al. 2000; Cagnin et al. 2001; Ouchi et al. 2005; Maeda et al. 2007a, b; Rojas et al. 2007). In addition, TSPO is upregulated in astrocytes responding to experimental neuronal injuries, such as ischemia and ethanol-induced tissue damages in rats (Chen et al. 2004; Maeda et al. 2007a, b; Rojas et al. 2007). Our recent work indicated that TSPO upregulation occurred in a profound manner in neurotoxic microglia contacting neurons and protective astrocytes with an enhanced production of glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor (Ji et al. 2008). In line with this finding, tau transgenic PS19 mice developing significant neuronal loss display TSPO positivity in microglia (Yoshiyama et al. 2007; Ji et al. 2008). By contrast, APP23 mice, which exhibit an upregulation of astrocytic TSPO, do not develop abundant plaques and neuronal loss (Fig. 4) (Ji et al. 2008; Maeda et al. 2011). The basis for this finding likely reflects the fact that TSPO-PET signals in PS19 mice are more intense than those in APP23 mice (Fig. 4), and become detectable before the onset of neuronal loss (Yoshiyama et al. 2007; Maeda et al. 2011). Pronounced loss of neurons and high-level expression of TSPO in microglia have also been observed in a transgenic mouse line, which overexpresses the mutant human APP gene, resulting in the accumulation of oligomeric Aβ in neurons (Tomiyama et al. 2010). However, increased TSPO follows neuronal death in these mice, unlike the earlier onset of TSPO-positive microgliosis prior to the occurrence of neuronal loss in PS19 mice (Maeda et al. 2011). Moreover, suppression of TSPO-positive neuroinflammation in PS19 mice by oral administration of an immunosuppressant has been reported to attenuate the deposition of insoluble, hyperphosphorylated tau proteins and loss of neurons (Yoshiyama et al. 2007). These PET and neuropathological data imply that tau

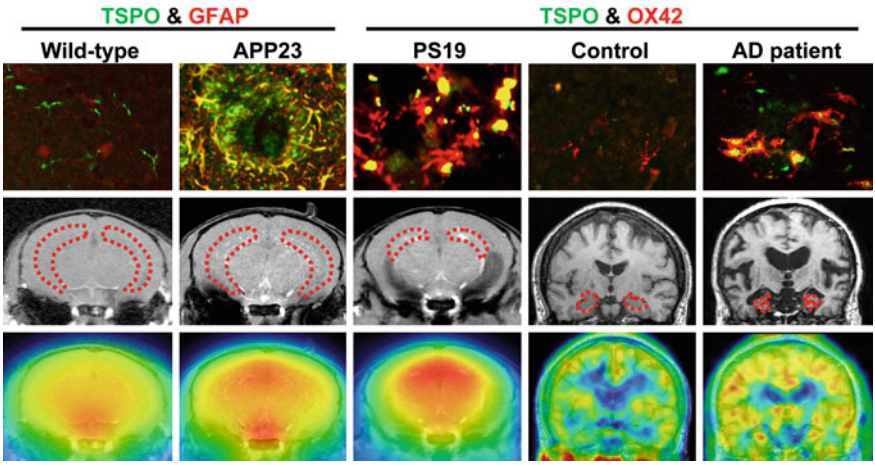


Fig. 4 Cellular localization of TSPO in neuroinflammatory conditions with or without overt neuronal loss. (*Top panels*) Double immunofluorescence staining of cortical or hippocampal sections demonstrating overlap of TSPO signals with astrocytic marker, glial fibrillary acid protein (GFAP), in an APP23 mouse and with microglial marker, OX42, in PS19 mouse and AD patient. (*Middle panels*) In vivo T1-weighted coronal magnetic resonance images containing the hippocampus (outlined by *dotted lines*). Marked hippocampal atrophy is observed in PS19 mouse and AD patient. (*Bottom panels*) Coronal PET images of TSPO superimposed on individual MR images displayed in the middle panels. Images were generated by averaging dynamic scan data at 0–60 min after injection of [^{18}F]fluoroethyl-DAA1106 in mice and at 0–90 min after injection of [^{11}C]DAA1106 in humans. PS19 mouse exhibits a notable increase in TSPO signals, exceeding the changes in APP23 mouse. TSPO is also upregulated in extensive regions of the AD brain

pathology is a strong inducer of dysfunctional microgliosis associated with TSPO upregulation.

In light of the above findings, it is conceivable that TSPO signals are intimately correlated with tau lesions in patients with neurodegenerative disorders. This view is supported by immunohistochemical localization of TSPO to microglia in the vicinity of tau aggregates in AD and non-AD tauopathy brains (Maeda et al. 2011). TSPO was also documented to increase in AD patients (Fig. 4) (Cagnin et al. 2001; Yasuno et al. 2008) and asymptomatic carriers of tau gene with an FTDP-17 mutation (Miyoshi et al. 2010) as assessed by PET with TSPO radioligands, [^{11}C]PK-11195 and [^{11}C]DAA1106. However, the elevation of binding potential for TSPO in AD was only 20–30% of the baseline level, and was detected in extensive brain regions, distinct from the spatial distribution of tau and Aβ depositions. Binding potential for TSPO in the hippocampus of aged PS19 mice was approximately 3-fold relative to normal mice imaged with an analog of DAA1106, [^{18}F]fluoroethyl-DAA1106, and 5–6-fold with a relatively new ligand, [^{11}C]Ac5216 (Maeda et al. 2011). This discrepancy of tau-induced changes of TSPO between humans and mouse models may be accounted for by the high signal in control scans. Such ‘normal’ binding of the TSPO radioprobe is also abundant in

monkeys relative to rodents, and is displaceable by co-administration of nonradioactive ligands (Maeda et al. 2004; Zhang et al. 2007). Accordingly, there is a possibility that additional cell types express TSPO in normal primate brains, and insights into TSPO induction gained from mouse models of neuroinflammation should be carefully interpreted in light of these findings.

In addition to TSPO, a number of other inflammatory biomarkers are also applicable to visualization and analysis by PET, including cyclooxygenases (de Vries et al. 2008; Shukuri et al. 2011) and type 2 cannabinoid receptors (Fujinaga et al. 2010). However, there is a paucity of information about immunohistochemical positivity for these molecules in diseased states relevant to AD. Thus, future research should be directed toward the investigation of neuroinflammatory processes using PET ligands for non-TSPO biomarkers.

4 Neurochemical Profiling and Neuronal Viability

Dysfunctional neurotransmission is the likely consequence of neurotoxic protein aggregation in neurodegenerative disorders and undoubtedly contributes to the symptomatic manifestation of such disorders. PET investigations of neurotransmitter systems in living brains support the evaluation of symptomatic treatments, which currently are the only pharmacotherapeutic approaches available to clinicians (Mangialasche et al. 2010; Gárdián and Vécsei 2010). Optimal doses of drugs acting on neuroreceptors and neurotransmitter transporters have been estimated previously by quantifying the occupancy of these targets in vivo relative to their concentration in plasma (Saijo et al. 2009). Plasma concentration of a drug yielding 50% of target occupancy in the brain (EC50) is a representative index for its potency. The utility of this approach is reflected by the high resemblance of EC50 values in humans and rodents reported recently for several radioligands (Saijo et al. 2009). However, it is noteworthy that high-affinity PET radioligands may occupy a considerable percentage of their specific binding sites, impeding accurate quantification of the occupancy by therapeutic agents (Hume et al. 1998; Klunk et al. 2005). To offset this problem it is necessary to reduce the mass of injected radiochemical by increasing the specific radioactivity coupled with the use of highly sensitive PET cameras.

Although in its infancy previous PET research in animals provides a platform for investigating neurotransmitter function in animal models of neurodegenerative disorders. Such work has gained momentum from in vitro autoradiographic imaging of brain slices, as exemplified by our studies in mice heterozygously deficient in calcium-calmodulin-dependent protein kinase IIα (Yamasaki et al. 2008). Such mice display aggressive behaviors and exaggerated infradian rhythms together with altered levels of dopamine, serotonin and glutamate receptors in the hippocampus and other brain regions (Yamasaki et al. 2008). Changes in the synaptic concentration of neurotransmitters are detectable if occupancy of binding sites by endogenous ligands can be displaced by PET radioligands with appropriate affinity

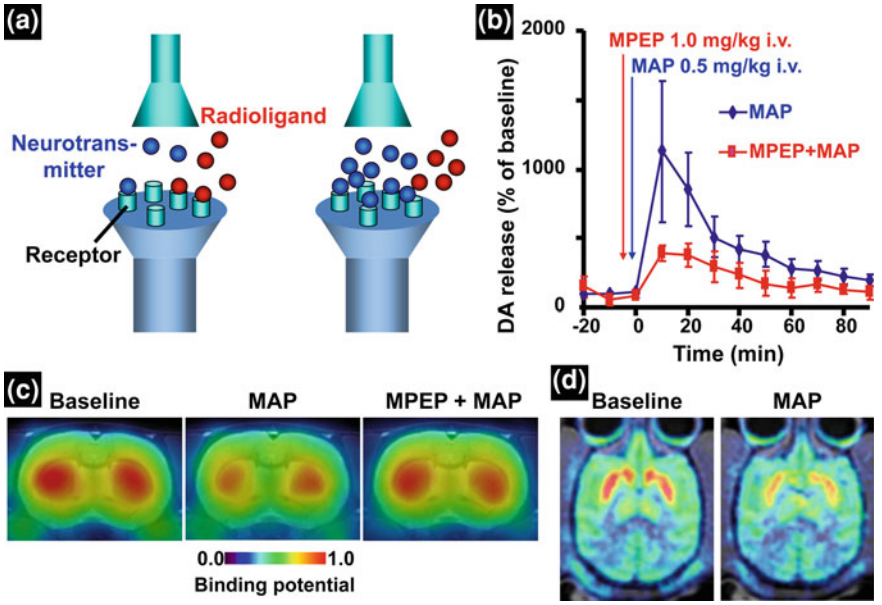


Fig. 5 PET detection of neurotransmitter release and signaling between different neurotransmitter systems. **a** Availability of neuroreceptors at baseline (*left*) and following stimulation of neurotransmitter release (*right*). These endogenous ligands compete with exogenous radiotracers for agonistic binding sites. **b** Extracellular dopamine concentrations measured in microdialysis samples obtained through a probe inserted into rat striata. The 10-fold increase in dopamine induced by the intravenous injection of methamphetamine (MAP) is profoundly attenuated by pretreatment with an antagonist for the type 5 metabotropic glutamate receptor, MPEP. **c** Coronal PET images of D2 DA receptors in a conscious rat under experimental conditions identical to the microdialysis assays. The binding of the D2 receptor agonist radioligand, [^{11}C]MNPA, is noticeably suppressed by endogenous competitors following MAP injection, an effect reversible by administration of MPEP prior to the MAP treatment. PET images are superimposed on an MRI template. **d** Horizontal [^{11}C]MNPA-PET data showing binding potential for D2 DA receptors in a conscious monkey at baseline and following administration of MAP. PET images are superimposed on individual MR images

(Fig. 5a) (Laruelle 2000). This 'endogenous blocking' effect can be validated by measuring extracellular levels of neurotransmitters with in vivo microdialysis under experimental conditions similar to those used for PET scanning. We have shown following administration of the psychostimulants amphetamine and methamphetamine in rats and monkeys that there is an approximately 10-fold increase in extracellular dopamine concentration in the striatum (Fig. 5b), which is accompanied by a near 20% decrease in the binding potential of the D2 receptor agonist radioligand, (R)-2-[^{11}C]methoxyl-N–n-propylnorapomorphine ([^{11}C]MNPA) (Fig. 5c, d) (Seneca et al. 2008; Tokunaga et al. 2009). Notably, the decline is less prominent with the use of dopamine receptor antagonists such as [^{11}C]raclopride since endogenous dopamine is less effective at competing at dopamine receptor

antagonist binding sites (Seneca et al. 2008). Physiological stimuli may lead to less manifest changes in synaptic dopamine levels, and resultant alterations of PET ligand binding might be below test–retest variabilities of the assay setting. Despite this limitation, relatively small increases in neurotransmitter release are likely to trigger a notable reduction in radiotracer binding potentials by promoting internalization of neuroreceptors, rendering binding components less accessible by the exogenous ligands (Laruelle 2000).

Combined PET, microdialysis and electrophysiological studies in experimental animals also enables an assessment of 'crosstalk' between different neurotransmitter systems. Consistent with this view, the aforementioned decline of radioligand binding to D2 receptors induced by methamphetamine in monkeys and rats was found to be reversed by the co-administration of the type 5 metabotropic glutamate receptor (mGluR5) antagonist, 6-methyl-2-(phenylethynyl)pyridine (MPEP) (Tokunaga et al. 2009), suggesting a modulatory role of glutamate and mGluR5 in the regulation of dopamine neurotransmission. To circumvent the effects of a general anesthetic agent on such processes, we have recently developed a PET protocol to investigate neurotransmitter function in awake primates and rodents (Tokunaga et al. 2009). This approach has now been advanced using a skull-mounted PET system to monitor behavior in awake, freely moving animals (Schulz et al. 2011). Such developments will undoubtedly have a major bearing on the coupling of PET with animal behavioral models of neurodegenerative and neuroinflammatory diseases.

In addition to imaging of neurotransmitter release, neuroreceptor and neurotransmitter transporters, PET can be used to investigate regional brain glucose metabolism using with the tracer [^{18}F]fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG). Uptake of FDG in the brain and its regionality are profoundly affected by the use of general anesthetic agents (Toyama et al. 2004), Nevertheless, current methodologies allow PET assays of monkeys, rats and mice without anesthesia (Obayashi et al. 2001; Tokunaga et al. 2009; Mizuma et al. 2010). However, it is yet to be clarified whether neuronal activity in a resting state with minimal stimuli can be robustly evaluated in animal models by FDG-PET. Our preliminary work has indicated that glucose metabolism remains unchanged in the hippocampus of PS19 tau transgenic mice until atrophy of this region becomes observable by volumetric MRI scans (Hattori et al. 2009). Thus, FDG uptake at baseline may reflect neuronal viability and the number of surviving neurons and there may be considerable compensation in this capacity. Similarly, diminution of glucose metabolism is less pronounced than the increases in neuroinflammatory TSPO signals in a rat model of traumatic brain injury (Yu et al. 2010). A parsimonious explanation for the lack of sensitivity of FDG-PET in such models is that attendant increases in glucose utilization by activated astrocytes may override more subtle reductions in metabolism caused by neuronal loss (Magistretti and Pallerin 1996; 1999).

5 Conclusion

The entire pathological cascade in neurological disorders can be monitored in living animal models by visualizing the accumulation of putative culprit proteins and peptides, dysregulation of neurotransmission, and intermediate molecular events linking proteinopathy, synaptopathy and neuronal death. PET offers the significant advantage of performing multiple scans in the same subject to reveal the time course of pathogenesis as well as the onset of disease-related behavioral and cognitive phenotypes. The close face and construct validity of animal models of AD provides an additional impetus for comparative interspecies PET research. The investigation of neuroreceptors by PET to infer changes about neurotransmitter release is a promising avenue of research to discover anciliary biomarkers and therapeutic targets relevant to AD and other neurodegenerative disorders. However, work is needed to establish whether PET-visible markers related to neurotransmission are robust endophenotypes in this context. The parallel application of invasive (e.g. in vivo microdialysis) and non-invasive (e.g. PET) neurochemical imaging techniques in awake, freely moving animals is expected to reveal new insights into the neurochemical basis of synaptic pathophysiology and its pharmacotherapeutic modification. Application of this experimental paradigm to genetically engineered animal models should eventually lead to the identification of pathological mechanisms upstream of psychiatric disease symptoms.

Acknowledgments The authors thank Drs. J. Q. Trojanowski and V. M. –Y. Lee at the University of Pennsylvania, Drs. T. C. Saido and N. Iwata at the RIKEN Brain Science Institute, Dr. Y. Yoshiyama at the National Hospital Organization Chiba-East Hospital, Dr. M. Staufenbiel at the Novartis Institutes for Biomedical Research Basel, Dr. R. B. Innis at the National Institute of Mental Health, National Institutes of Health and Dr. C. Halldin at the Kalorinska Institute for their collaborative support of the works conducted at the National Institute of Radiological Sciences. These research projects were also supported in part by grants-in-aid for the Molecular Imaging Program from the Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology, Japan.

References

Amor S, Puentes F, Baker D, van der Valk P (2010) Inflammation in neurodegenerative diseases. Immunology 129:154–169

Banati RB, Newcombe J, Gunn RN, Cagnin A, Turkheimer F, Heppner F, Price G, Wegner F, Giovannoni G, Miller DH, Perkin GD, Smith T, Hewson AK, Bydder G, Kreutzberg GW, Jones T, Cuzner ML, Myers R (2000) The peripheral benzodiazepine binding site in the brain in multiple sclerosis: quantitative in vivo imaging of microglia as a measure of disease activity. Brain 123:2321–2337

Berriman J, Serpell LC, Oberg KA, Fink AL, Goedert M, Crowther RA (2003) Tau filaments from human brain and from in vitro assembly of recombinant protein show cross-beta structure. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:9034–9038

Block ML, Zecca L, Hong JS (2007) Microglia-mediated neurotoxicity: uncovering the molecular mechanisms. Nat Rev Neurosci 8:57–69

Cagnin A, Brooks DJ, Kennedy AM, Gunn RN, Myers R, Turkheimer FE, Jones T, Banati RB (2001) In vivo measurement of activated microglia in dementia. Lancet 358:461–467

Cai L, Innis RB, Pike VW (2007) Radioligand development for PET imaging of beta-amyloid (Aβ)–current status. Curr Med Chem 14:19–52

Chartier-Harlin MC, Crawford F, Houlden H, Warren A, Hughes D, Fidani L, Goate A, Rossor M, Roques P, Hardy J, Mullan M (1991) Early-onset Alzheimer's disease caused by mutations at codon 717 of the β-amyloid precursor protein gene. Nature 353:844–846

Chen MK, Baidoo K, Verina T, Guilarte TR (2004) Peripheral benzodiazepine receptor imaging in CNS demyelination: functional implications of anatomical and cellular localization. Brain 127:1379–1392

Cynis H, Scheel E, Saido TC, Schilling S, Demuth HU (2008) Amyloidogenic processing of amyloid precursor protein: evidence of a pivotal role of glutaminyl cyclase in generation of pyroglutamate-modified amyloid-β. Biochemistry 47:7405–7413

de Vries EF, Doorduin J, Dierckx RA, van Waarde A (2008) Evaluation of [^{11}C]rofecoxib as PET tracer for cyclooxygenase 2 overexpression in rat models of inflammation. Nucl Med Biol 35:35–42

Eikelenboom P, Veerhuis R, Scheper W, Rozemuller AJ, van Gool WA, Hoozemans JJ (2006) The significance of neuroinflammation in understanding Alzheimer's disease. J Neural Transm 113:1685–1695

Engler H, Forsberg A, Almkvist O, Blomquist G, Larsson E, Savitcheva I, Wall A, Ringheim A, Långström B, Nordberg A (2006) Two-year follow-up of amyloid deposition in patients with Alzheimer's disease. Brain 129:2856–2866

Findeis MA (2007) The role of amyloid β peptide 42 in Alzheimer's disease. Pharmacol Ther 116:266–286

Fodero-Tavoletti MT, Okamura N, Furumoto S, Mulligan RS, Connor AR, McLean CA, Cao D, Rigopoulos A, Cartwright GA, O'Keefe G, Gong S, Adlard PA, Barnham KJ, Rowe CC, Masters CL, Kudo Y, Cappai R, Yanai K, Villemagne VL (2011) ^{18}F-THK523: a novel in vivo tau imaging ligand for Alzheimer's disease. Brain 134:1089–1100

Forman MS, Trojanowski JQ, Lee VM (2004) Neurodegenerative diseases: a decade of discoveries paves the way for therapeutic breakthroughs. Nat Med 10:1055–1063

Fujinaga M, Kumata K, Yanamoto K, Kawamura K, Yamasaki T, Yui J, Hatori A, Ogawa M, Yoshida Y, Nengaki N, Maeda J, Zhang MR (2010) Radiosynthesis of novel carbon-11-labeled triaryl ligands for cannabinoid-type 2 receptor. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 20: 1565–1568

Gárdián G, Vécsei L (2010) Medical treatment of Parkinson's disease: today and the future. Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther 48:633–642

Gottesman II, Gould TD (2003) The endophenotype concept in psychiatry: etymology and strategic intentions. Am J Psychiatry 160:636–645

Gunn AP, Masters CL, Cherny RA (2010) Pyroglutamate-Aβ: role in the natural history of Alzheimer's disease. Int J Biochem Cell Biol 42:1915–1918

Hattori S, Maruyama M, Seki C, Ji B, Maeda J, Okauchi T, Yoneyama M, Saito S, Aoki I, Suhara T, Higuchi M (2009) Detection ability of neurodegenerative pathology in tau transgenic mice with in vivo PET imaging. In: The 32nd Annual Meeting of the Japan Neuroscience Society, P1-k02, Sept 2009

He W, Barrow CJ (1999) The Aβ 3-pyroglutamyl and 11-pyroglutamyl peptides found in senile plaque have greater β-sheet forming and aggregation propensities in vitro than full-length Aβ. Biochemistry 38:10871–10877

Higuchi M, Lee VM, Trojanowski JQ (2002a) Tau and axonopathy in neurodegenerative disorders. Neuromolecular Med 2:131–150

Higuchi M, Ishihara T, Zhang B, Hong M, Andreadis A, Tronajowski JQ, Lee VMY (2002b) Transgenic mouse model of tauopathies with glial pathology and nervous system degeneration. Neuron 35:433–446

Holcomb L, Gordon MN, McGowan E, Yu X, Benkovic S, Jantzen P, Wright K, Saad I, Mueller R, Morgan D, Sanders S, Zehr C, O'Campo K, Hardy J, Prada CM, Eckman C,

Younkin S, Hsiao K, Duff K (1996) Accelerated Alzheimer-type phenotype in transgenic mice carrying both mutant amyloid precursor protein and presenilin 1 transgenes. Nat Med 4:97–100

Hsiao K, Chapman P, Nilsen S, Eckman C, Harigaya Y, Younkin S, Yang F, Cole G (1996) Correlative memory deficits, Aβ elevation, and amyloid plaques in transgenic mice. Science 274:99–102

Huang SM, Mouri A, Kokubo H, Nakajima R, Suemoto T, Higuchi M, Staufenbiel M, Noda Y, Yamaguchi H, Nabeshima T, Saido TC, Iwata N (2006) Neprilysin-sensitive synapse-associated amyloid-beta peptide oligomers impair neuronal plasticity and cognitive function. J Biol Chem 281:17941–17951

Hume SP, Gunn RN, Jones T (1998) Pharmacological constraints associated with positron emission tomographic scanning of small laboratory animals. Eur J Nucl Med 25:173–176

Hutton M, Lendon CL, Rizzu P, Baker M, Froelich S, Houlden H, Pickering-Brown S, Chakraverty S, Isaacs A, Grover A, Hackett J, Adamson J, Lincoln S, Dickson D, Davies P, Petersen RC, Stevens M, de Graaff E, Wauters E, van Baren J, Hillebrand M, Joosse M, Kwon JM, Nowotny P, Che LK, Norton J, Morris JC, Reed LA, Trojanowski J, Basun H, Lannfelt L, Neystat M, Fahn S, Dark F, Tannenberg T, Dodd PR, Hayward N, Kwok JB, Schofield PR, Andreadis A, Snowden J, Craufurd D, Neary D, Owen F, Oostra BA, Hardy J, Goate A, van Swieten J, Mann D, Lynch T, Heutink P (1998) Association of missense and 5'-splice-site mutations in tau with the inherited dementia FTDP-17. Nature 393:702–705

Iwata N, Tsubuki S, Takaki Y, Watanabe K, Sekiguchi M, Hosoki E, Kawashima-Morishima M, Lee HJ, Hama E, Sekine-Aizawa Y, Saido TC (2000) Identification of the major Aβ1–42-degrading catabolic pathway in brain parenchyma: suppression leads to biochemical and pathological deposition. Nat Med 6:143–150

Ji B, Maeda J, Sawada M, Ono M, Okauchi T, Inaji M, Zhang MR, Suzuki K, Ando K, Staufenbiel M, Trojanowski JQ, Lee VMY, Higuchi M, Suhara T (2008) Imaging of peripheral benzodiazepine receptor expression as biomarkers of detrimental versus beneficial glial responses in mouse models of Alzheimer's disease and other CNS pathologies. J Neurosci 28:12255–12267

Kawarabayashi T, Younkin LH, Saido TC, Shoji M, Ashe KH, Younkin SG (2001) Age-dependent changes in brain, CSF, and plasma amyloid β protein in the Tg2576 transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. J Neurosci 21:372–381

Kettenmann H, Hanisch UK, Noda M, Verkhratsky A (2011) Psysiology of microglia. Physiol Rev 91:461–553

Klunk WE, Engler H, Nordberg A, Wang Y, Blomqvist G, Holt DP, Bergström M, Savitcheva I, Huang GF, Estrada S, Ausén B, Debnath ML, Barletta J, Price JC, Sandell J, Lopresti BJ, Wall A, Koivisto P, Antoni G, Mathis CA, Långström B (2004) Imaging brain amyloid in Alzheimer's disease with Pittsburgh Compound-B. Ann Neurol 55:306–319

Klunk WE, Lopresti BJ, Ikonomovic MD, Lefterov IM, Koldamova RP, Abrahamson EE, Debnath ML, Holt DP, Huang GF, Shao L, DeKosky ST, Price JC, Mathis CA (2005) Binding of the positron emission tomography tracer Pittsburgh compound-B reflects the amount of amyloid-β in Alzheimer's disease brain but not in transgenic mouse brain. J Neurosci 25:10598–10606

Kung MP, Kung HF (2005) Mass effect of injected dose in small rodent imaging by SPECT and PET. Nucl Med Biol 32:673–678

Laruelle M (2000) Imaging synaptic neurotransmission with in vivo binding competition techniques: a critical review. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 20:423–451

Lewis J, McGowan E, Rockwood J, Melrose H, Nacharaju P, Van Slegtenhorst M, Gwinn-Hardy K, Paul Murphy M, Baker M, Yu X, Duff K, Hardy J, Corral A, Lin WL, Yen SH, Dickson DW, Davies P, Hutton M (2000) Neurofibrillary tangles, amyotrophy and progressive motor disturbance in mice expressing mutant (P301L) tau protein. Nat Genet 25:402–405

Lopresti BJ, Klunk WE, Mathis CA, Hoge JA, Ziolko SK, Lu X, Meltzer CC, Schimmel K, Tsopelas ND, DeKosky ST, Price JC (2005) Simplified quantification of Pittsburgh Compound B amyloid imaging PET studies: a comparative analysis. J Nucl Med 46:1959–1972

Maeda J, Suhara T, Zhang MR, Okauchi T, Yasuno F, Ikoma Y, Inaji M, Nagai Y, Takano A, Obayashi S, Suzuki K (2004) Novel peripheral benzodiazepine receptor ligand [^{11}C]DAA1106 for PET: an imaging tool for glial cells in the brain. Synapse 52:283–291

Maeda J, Ji B, Irie T, Tomiyama T, Maruyama M, Okauchi T, Staufenbiel M, Iwata N, Ono M, Saido TC, Suzuki K, Mori H, Higuchi M, Suhara T (2007a) Longitudinal, quantitative assessment of amyloid, neuroinflammation and anti-amyloid treatment in a living mouse model of Alzheimer's disease enabled by positron emission tomography. J Neurosci 27: 10957–10968

Maeda J, Higuchi M, Inaji M, Ji B, Haneda E, Okauchi T, Zhang MR, Suzuki K, Suhara T (2007b) Phase-dependent roles of reactive microglia and astrocytes in nervous system injury as delineated by imaging of peripheral benzodiazepine receptor. Brain Res 1157:100–111

Maeda J, Zhang MR, Okauchi T, Ji B, Ono M, Hattori S, Kumata K, Iwata N, Saido TC, Trojanowski JQ, Lee VMY, Staufenbiel M, Tomiyama T, Mori H, Fukumura T, Suhara T, Higuchi M (2011) In vivo positron emission tomographic imaging of glial responses to amyloid-β and tau pathologies in mouse models of Alzheimer's disease and related disorders. J Neurosci 31:4720–4730

Magistretti PJ, Pallerin L (1996) The contribution of astrocytes to the 18F–2-deoxyglucose signal in PET activation studies. Mol Psychiatry 1:445–452

Magistretti PJ, Pallerin L (1999) Astrocytes couple synaptic activity to glucose utilization in the brain. News Physiol Sci 14:177–182

Mangialasche F, Solomon A, Winblad B, Mecocci P, Kivipelto M (2010) Alzheimer's disease: clinical trials and drug development. Lancet Neurol 9:702–716

Martinez D, Broft A, Laruelle M (2001) Imaging neurochemical endophenotypes: promises and pitfalls. Pharmacogenomics 2:223–237

Maruyama M, Maeda J, Ji B, Zhang MR, Okauchi T, Ono M, Hattori S, Trojanowski JQ, Lee VMY, Fukumura T, Higuchi M, Suhara T (2009) In vivo optical and PET detections of fibrillar tau lesions in a mouse model of tauopathies. Alzheimers Dement 5:P209–P210

Miners JS, Baig S, Palmer J, Palmer LE, Kehoe PG, Love S (2008) Aβ-degrading enzymes in Alzheimer's disease. Brain Pathol 18:240–252

Mintun MA, Larossa GN, Sheline YI, Dence CS, Lee SY, Mach RH, Klunk WE, Mathis CA, DeKosky ST, Morris JC (2006) [^{11}C]PIB in a nondemented population: potential antecedent marker of Alzheimer disease. Neurology 67:446–452

Miyoshi M, Shinotoh H, Wszolek ZK, Strongosky AJ, Shimada H, Arakawa R, Higuchi M, Ikoma Y, Yasuno F, Fukushi K, Irie T, Ito H, Suhara T (2010) In vivo detection of neuropathologic changes in presymptomatic MAPT mutation carriers: a PET and MRI study. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 16:404–408

Mizuma H, Shukuri M, Hayashi T, Watanabe Y, Onoe H (2010) Establishment of in vivo brain imaging method in conscious mice. J Nucl Med 51:1068–1075

Obayashi S, Suhara T, Kawabe K, Okauchi T, Maeda J, Akine Y, Onoe H, Iriki A (2001) Functional brain mapping of monkey tool use. NeuroImage 14:853–861

Okamura N, Suemoto T, Furumoto S, Suzuki M, Shimadzu H, Akatsu H, Yamamoto T, Fujiwara H, Nemoto M, Maruyama M, Arai H, Yanai K, Sawada T, Kudo Y (2005) Quinoline and benzimidazole derivatives: candidate probes for in vivo imaging of tau pathology in Alzheimer's disease. J Neurosci 25:10857–10862

Ouchi Y, Yoshikawa E, Sekine Y, Futatsubashi M, Kanno T, Ogusu T, Torizuka T (2005) Microglial activation and dopamine terminal loss in early Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 57:168–175

Poorkaj P, Bird TD, Wijsman E, Nemens E, Garruto RM, Anderson L, Andreadis A, Wiederholt WC, Raskind M, Schellenberg GD (1998) Tau is a candidate gene for chromosome 17 frontotemporal dementia. Ann Neurol 43:815–825

Price JC, Klunk WE, Lopresti BJ, Lu X, Hoge JA, Ziolko SK, Holt DP, Meltzer CC, DeKosky ST, Mathis CA (2005) Kinetic modeling of amyloid binding in humans using PET imaging and Pittsburgh Compound-B. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 25:1528–1547

Price JL, Morris JC (1999) Tangles and plaques in nondemented aging and "preclinical" Alzheimer's disease. Ann Neurol 45:358–368

Rogaev EI, Sherrington R, Rogaeva EA, Levesque G, Ikeda M, Liang Y, Chi H, Lin C, Holman K, Tsuda T, Mar L, Sorbi S, Nacmias B, Piacentini S, Amaducci L, Chumakov I, Cohen D, Lannfelt L, Fraser PE, Rommens JM, St George-Hyslop PH (1995) Familial Alzheimer's disease in kindreds with missense mutations in a gene on chromosome 1 related to the Alzheimer's disease type 3 gene. Nature 376:775–778

Rojas S, Martín A, Arranz MJ, Pareto D, Purroy J, Verdaguer E, Llop J, Gómez V, Gispert JD, Millán O, Chamorro A, Planas AM (2007) Imaging brain inflammation with [^{11}C]PK11195 by PET and induction of the peripheral-type benzodiazepine receptor after transient focal ischemia in rats. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 27:1975–1986

Rowe CC, Ellis KA, Rimajova M, Bourgeat P, Pike KE, Jones G, Fripp J, Tochon-Danguy H, Morandeau L, O'Keefe G, Price R, Raniga P, Robins P, Acosta O, Lenzo N, Szoeke C, Salvado O, Head R, Martins R, Masters CL, Ames D, Villemagne VL (2010) Amyloid imaging results from the Australian Imaging, Biomarkers and Lifestyle (AIBL) study of aging. Neurobiol Aging 31:1275–1283

Russo C, Violani E, Salis S, Venezia V, Dolcini V, Damonte G, Benatti U, D'Arrigo C, Patrone E, Carlo P, Schettini G (2002) Pyroglutamate-modified amyloid β-peptides–AβN3(pE)–strongly affect cultured neuron and astrocyte survival. J Neurochem 82:1480–1489

Saido TC, Iwatsubo T, Mann DM, Shimada H, Ihara Y, Kawashima S (1995) Dominant and differential deposition of distinct beta-amyloid peptide species, A β N3(pE), in senile plaques. Neuron 14:457–466

Saijo T, Maeda J, Okauchi T, Maeda J, Morio Y, Kuwahara Y, Suzuki M, Goto N, Suzuki K, Higuchi M, Suhara T (2009) Utility of small animal positron emission tomographic imaging of rats for preclinical development of drugs acting on serotonin transporter. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 12:1021–1032

Santacruz K, Lewis J, Spires T, Paulson J, Kotilinek L, Ingelsson M, Guimaraes A, DeTure M, Ramsden M, McGowan E, Forster C, Yue M, Orne J, Janus C, Mariash A, Kuskowski M, Hyman B, Hutton M, Ashe KH (2005) Tau suppression in a neurodegenerative mouse model improves memory function. Science 309:476–481

Sawada M (2009) Neuroprotective and toxic changes in microglia in neurodegenerative disease. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 15:S39–S41

Schilling S, Lauber T, Schaupp M, Manhart S, Scheel E, Böhm G, Demuth HU (2006) On the seeding and oligomerization of pGlu-amyloid peptides (in vitro). Biochemistry 45: 12393–12399

Schulz D, Southekal S, Junnarkar SS, Pratte JF, Purschke ML, Stoll SP, Ravindranath B, Maramraju SH, Krishnamoorthy S, Henn FA, O'Connor P, Woody CL, Schlyer DJ, Vaska P (2011) Simultaneous assessment of rodent behavior and neurochemistry using a miniature positron emission tomograph. Nat Methods 8:347–352

Seki C, Tokunaga M, Hattori S, Shidahara M, Nakao R, Maeda J, Toyama H, Irie T, Higuchi M, Suhara T, Kanno I, Kimura Y (2008) Quantification of ^{11}C-PIB kinetics in mouse brain using metabolite-corrected arterial input function. NeuroImage 41(suppl 2):T32

Seneca N, Zoghbi SS, Skinbjerg M, Liow JS, Hong J, Sibley DR, Pike VW, Halldin C, Innis RB (2008) Occupancy of dopamine D2/3 receptors in rat brain by endogenous dopamine measured with the agonist positron emission tomography radioligand [^{11}C]MNPA. Synapse 62:756–763

Serrano-Pozo A, Mielke ML, Gómez-Isla T, Betensky RA, Growdon JH, Frosch MP, Hyman BT (2011) Reactive glia not only associates with plaques but also parallels tangles in Alzheimer's disease. Am J Pathol 179:1373–1384

Sherrington R, Rogaev EI, Liang Y, Rogaeva EA, Levesque G, Ikeda M, Chi H, Lin C, Li G, Holman K, Tsuda T, Mar L, Foncin JF, Bruni AC, Montesi MP, Sorbi S, Rainero I, Pinessi L, Nee L, Chumakov I, Pollen D, Brookes A, Sanseau P, Polinsky RJ, Wasco W, Da Silva HA, Haines JL, Perkicak-Vance MA, Tanzi RE, Roses AD, Fraser PE, Rommens JM,

St George-Hyslop PH (1995) Cloning of a gene bearing missense mutations in early-onset familial Alzheimer's disease. Nature 375:754–760

Shukuri M, Takashima-Hirano M, Tokuda K, Takashima T, Matsumura K, Inoue O, Doi H, Suzuki M, Watanabe Y, Onoe H (2011) In vivo expression of cyclooxygenase-1 in activated microglia and macrophages during neuroinflammation visualized by PET with ^{11}C-ketoprofen methyl ester. J Nucl Med 52:1094–1101

Small GW, Kepe V, Ercoli LM, Siddarth P, Bookheimer SY, Miller KJ, Lavretsky H, Burggren AC, Cole GM, Vinters HV, Thompson PM, Huang SC, Satyamurthy N, Phelps ME, Barrio JR (2006) PET of brain amyloid and tau in mild cognitive impairment. N Engl J Med 355:2652–2663

Spillantini MG, Murrell JR, Goedert M, Farlow MR, Klug A, Ghetti B (1998) Mutation in the tau gene in familial multiple system tauopathy with presenile dementia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95:7737–7741

Sturchler-Pierrat C, Abramowski D, Duke M, Wiederhold KH, Mistl C, Rothacher S, Ledermann B, Bürki K, Frey P, Paganetti PA, Waridel C, Calhoun ME, Jucker M, Probst A, Staufenbiel M, Sommer B (1997) Two amyloid precursor protein transgenic mouse models with Alzheimer disease-like pathology. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 94:13287–13292

Tai YC, Ruangma A, Rowland D, Siegel S, Newport DF, Chow PL, Laforest R (2005) Performance evaluation of the microPET focus: a third-generation microPET scanner dedicated to animal imaging. J Nucl Med 46:455–463

Taniguchi S, Suzuki N, Masuda M, Hisanaga S, Iwatsubo T, Goedert M, Hasegawa M (2005) Inhibition of heparin-induced tau filament formation by phenothiazines, polyphenols, and porphyrins. J Biol Chem 280:7614–7623

Thompson PW, Ye L, Morgenstern JL, Sue L, Beach TG, Judd DJ, Shipley NJ, Libri V, Lockhart A (2009) Interaction of the amyloid imaging tracer FDDNP with hallmark Alzheimer's disease pathologies. J Neuroschem 109:623–630

Tokunaga M, Seneca N, Shin RM, Maeda J, Obayashi S, Okauchi T, Nagai Y, Zhang MR, Nakao R, Ito H, Innis RB, Halldin C, Suzuki K, Higuchi M, Suhara T (2009) Neuroimaging and physiological evidence for involvement of glutamatergic transmission in regulation of the striatal dopaminergic system. J Neurosci 29:1887–1896

Tomiyama T, Matsuyama S, Iso H, Umeda T, Takuma H, Ohnishi K, Ishibashi K, Teraoka R, Sakama N, Yamashita T, Nishitsuji K, Ito K, Shimada H, Lambert MP, Klein WL, Mori H (2010) A mouse model of amyloid beta oligomers: their contribution to synaptic alteration, abnormal tau phosphorylation, glial activation, and neuronal loss in vivo. J Neurosci 30: 4845–4856

Toyama H, Ichise M, Liow JS, Modell KJ, Vines DC, Esaki T, Cook M, Seidel J, Sokoloff L, Green MV, Innis RB (2004) Absolute quantification of regional cerebral glucose utilization in mice by 18F-FDG small animal PET scanning and 2–14C-DG autoradiography. J Nucl Med 45:1398–1405

Toyama H, Ye D, Ichise M, Liow JS, Cai L, Jacobowitz D, Musachio JL, Hong J, Crescenzo M, Tipre D, Lu JQ, Zoghbi S, Vines DC, Seidel J, Katada K, Green MV, Pike VW, Cohen RM, Innis RB (2005) PET imaging of brain with the beta-amyloid probe, [^{11}C]6-OH-BTA-1, in a transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 32:593–600

Van Dam D, Vloeberghs E, Abramowski D, Staufenbiel M, De Deyn PP (2005) APP23 mice as a model of Alzheimer's disease: an example of a transgenic approach to modeling a CNS disorder. CNS Spectr 10:207–222

Yamasaki N, Maekawa M, Kobayashi K, Kajii Y, Maeda J, Soma M, Takao K, Tanda K, Ohira K, Toyama K, Kanzaki K, Fukunaga K, Sudo Y, Ichinose H, Ikeda M, Iwata N, Ozaki N, Suzuki H, Higuchi M, Suhara T, Yuasa S, Miyakawa T (2008) Alpha-CaMKII deficiency causes immature dentate gyrus, a novel candidate endophenotype of psychiatric disorders. Mol Brain 1:6

Yasuno F, Ota M, Kosaka J, Ito H, Higuchi M, Doronbekov TK, Nozaki S, Fujimura Y, Koeda M, Asada T, Suhara T (2008) Increased binding of peripheral benzodiazepine receptor in Alzheimer's disease measured by positron emission tomography using [^{11}C]DAA1106. Biol Psychiatry 64:835–841

Yoshiyama Y, Higuchi M, Zhang B, Huang SM, Iwata N, Saido TC, Maeda J, Suhara T, Trojanowski JQ, Lee VMY (2007) Synapse loss and microglial activation precede tangles in a P301S tauopathy mouse model. Neuron 53:337–351

Yu I, Inaji M, Maeda J, Okauchi T, Nariai T, Ohno K, Higuchi M, Suhara T (2010) Glial cell-mediated deterioration and repair of the nervous system after traumatic brain injury in a rat model as assessed by positron emission tomography. J Neurotrauma 27:1463–1475

Zhang MR, Kumata K, Maeda J, Yanamoto K, Hatori A, Okada M, Higuchi M, Obayashi S, Suhara T, Suzuki K (2007) ^{11}C-AC-5216: a novel PET ligand for peripheral benzodiazepine receptors in the primate brain. J Nucl Med 48:1852–1861

Neural and Behavioral Endophenotypes in ADHD

Natalia del Campo, Ulrich Müller and Barbara J. Sahakian

Abstract In recent years, descriptive symptom-based approaches of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) have been increasingly replaced by more sophisticated endophenotype-based strategies, better suited to investigate its pathophysiological basis, which is inherently heterogeneous. Measurements derived from neuroimaging techniques such as positron emission tomography (PET) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) constitute endophenotypes of growing interest, capable of providing unprecedented windows on neurochemical and neuroanatomical components of psychiatric conditions. This chapter reviews the current state of knowledge regarding putative neural and behavioral endophenotypes of ADHD, across the lifespan. To this end, recent evidence drawn from molecular and structural neuroimaging studies are discussed in the light of widely accepted neuropsychological and pharmacological models of ADHD.

Keywords ADHD · Endophenotypes · Dopamine · Positron emission tomography · Magnetic resonance imaging

Contents

N. del Campo (✉) · U. Müller · B. J. Sahakian
Department of Psychiatry, and Behavioral and Clinical Neuroscience Institute,
University of Cambridge, Cambridge, UK
e-mail: nata.delcampo@gmail.com

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 65–91
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2012_200

Published Online: 5 April 2012

1 Introduction

Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) is an early onset neurobehavioral disorder characterized by symptoms of inattention, impulsivity and/or hyperactivity (Biederman 2005). The presence of at least six symptoms in either domain can result in different phenomenological subtypes, namely predominantly inattentive type, predominantly hyperactive/impulsive type and combined type. With about 3–10% of children affected worldwide, ADHD is the most prevalent pediatric disorder (Burd et al. 2003; Faraone et al. 2003; Ford et al. 2003; Solanto 2001). Follow-up studies have shown that some symptoms persist into adulthood in 30–60% of affected children (Faraone and Biederman 2005), leading to the recent reconceptualization of the disorder as a lifespan condition (Barkley 1998). In adulthood, ADHD can be highly debilitating, being often associated with substance abuse, depression, unemployment and criminal offenses when left untreated (Biederman et al. 2006; Faraone and Biederman 2005; Kessler et al. 2006; McGough et al. 2005; Molina et al. 2009; Murphy and Barkley 1996).

Without necessary or sufficient symptoms, behavioral heterogeneity is a defining characteristic of ADHD. This heterogeneity might result either from genetic heterogeneity in pathogenetic mechanisms, or from differences across patients in severity of symptoms along an underlying continuum. In recent years, descriptive symptom-based approaches in ADHD have been increasingly replaced by more sophisticated models based on endophenotypes, better suited to encapsulate this heterogeneity and investigate its hypothesized pathophysiological basis (Castellanos and Tannock 2002; Doyle et al. 2005). The term "endophenotype" as it is commonly used in psychiatry refers to a phenotype that (a) is more proximal to the etiology of a disorder than its clinical symptoms and (b) shares one or more of the same susceptibility genes with the condition it subtends (Almasy and Blangero 2001; Gottesman and Gould 2003). One of the key features of biologically based endophenotypes is that their genetic basis is less complex than that of the disorder itself, due to their relative proximity to gene actions. As a result, they confer greater statistical power to identify genetically driven neurobiological mechanisms underlying the clinical manifestation of psychiatric conditions.

Neuroimaging measurements constitute endophenotypes of great interest, capable of providing unprecedented windows on the neurobiology of psychiatric conditions. Different neuroimaging techniques enable different types of research questions to be investigated in vivo: For example, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) provides information about morphological aspects of the brain, such as brain tissue density or connectivity, while positron emission tomography (PET) and single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) allow the direct assessment of neurotransmitter systems in vivo, through the application of radioactively labeled tracers that bind to or are metabolized by specific neurochemical markers. Objective neuropsychological measurements constitute a further type of endophenotypes, with the added advantage that they are cheaper and easier to implement relative to neuroimaging paradigms.

The interest in identifying and characterizing ADHD endophenotypes of behavioral, anatomical and neurochemical nature is two-fold. Firstly, this approach may prove fruitful in promoting our understanding of the precise neurobiological mechanisms underlying the disorder and its treatment, thus opening the possibility of developing optimized behavioral and pharmacological treatment solutions for affected patients. Secondly, compared to clinical symptoms, endophenotypes are better suited to be used as quantitative trait loci in future ADHD linkage and association studies, given their relative proximity to the underlying biology in the chain of events leading from gene to behavior. The latter point is particularly stimulating because decades of effort to map the genetic underpinnings of ADHD (conceived as the collection of traits falling under its broad diagnostic umbrella) has yielded disappointing results. Yet, like most major psychiatric syndromes, ADHD is known to be highly heritable (see below).

This chapter reviews the present state of knowledge regarding putative neural and behavioral endophenotypes of ADHD. To this end, we integrate data from the following research areas: neuropsychology, psychopharmacology and molecular and structural neuroimaging in ADHD. Given that co-segregation with the associated illness is an inherent characteristic of endophenotype, we open the chapter with a brief overview of the literature on the genetics of ADHD.

2 Genetics

Based on family studies indicating heritability estimates of ADHD between 0.6 and 0.9 (Biederman et al. 1990; Durston 2008), genetic factors are thought to play an important role in the etiology of ADHD. Exploratory genome-wide studies have to date failed to discover one single gene contributing substantially to the manifestation of the disorder (Franke et al. 2009, 2011), implying that multiple genes are involved, each contributing only a small portion of the variance of ADHD symptoms (Kuntsi et al. 2006b).

Over the past 15 years, there has been a considerable effort to examine specific genes based on their function and perceived etiological relevance, resulting in a

large and often conflicting literature (Gizer et al. 2009). The two most frequently studied and replicated candidate genes for ADHD are the dopamine (DA) receptor type 4 (DRD4) (Brookes et al. 2006; LaHoste et al. 1996; Swanson et al. 1998) and the DA transporter gene (DAT1) (Brookes et al. 2006; Cook et al. 1995; Gill et al. 1997). Both of these candidate genes appear to represent individually only a weak risk factor whose effects are thought to unfold across development in the presence of complex interactions with other genes and adverse environmental factors (Plomp et al. 2009). Other genes for which significant associations with ADHD have been described include the noradrenergic (NA) transporter gene SLC6A2 (Kim et al. 2006) and the alpha 2 adrenergic receptor gene ADRA2A (Gizer et al. 2009), both of which are involved in the adrenergic pathway. Additionally, the ADRA2A, catechol-O-methyltransferase, DA receptor type 5 and NA transporter protein 1 genes have been significantly associated with stimulant medication response (Froehlich et al. 2010).

3 Cognitive Markers of ADHD

In their seminal comprehensive reviews, Nigg (2005) and Willcutt (2005) compared the relative magnitude of ADHD case-control differences reported in the literature on a variety of cognitive domains (reviewed in Swanson et al. 2011a). The authors concluded that: (a) only few ADHD children showed pervasive deficits across neuropsychological tests, (b) an underlying executive dysfunction was not a necessary or sufficient condition in the manifestation of ADHD. These findings contributed to the shift from the traditional core deficit view to multiple deficit theories, representing a turning point in the literature of cognitive deficits of ADHD (Swanson et al. 2011a). In recent years, computerized batteries of neuropsychological tests have been used to fully characterize the cognitive profile of ADHD, such as the Cambridge Neuropsychological Test Automated Battery (CANTAB) (Chamberlain et al. 2010) and the Maudsley Attention and Response Suppression (MARS) (Rubia et al. 2007). A meta-analysis of case-control differences observed on prefrontal CANTAB tasks in children and adults with ADHD revealed medium-large deficits in performance in response inhibition, working memory and executive planning, and a small decrement in attentional set-shifting (Chamberlain et al. 2010), though deficits have also been observed in tests of temporal and parietal lobe function, such as pattern recognition and delayed matching to sample (Swanson et al. 2011a).

A distinct set of cognitive deficits often described in ADHD involves the abnormal processing of reward (e.g. delay aversion) and salience (Luman et al. 2005; Sonuga-Barke 2003). The simultaneous existence of deficits in top-down cognitive control processes and motivational processes (e.g. Gupta et al. 2011) supports the aforementioned multiple pathway models of ADHD pathophysiology (Nigg 2005; Sonuga-Barke 2003). Underlying alterations of distributed fronto-striato-cerebellar circuits, one of the best replicated findings in ADHD constitute a

likely neural substrate for the deficits observed in prefrontal-dependent top-down control processes, including executive functions and attention (Barkley 1997; Bush et al. 2005; Kuntsi et al. 2006a; Paloyelis et al. 2007; Pennington and Ozonoff 1996). On the other hand, a disruption of meso-cortico-limbic networks is thought to underlie motivational abnormalities in ADHD (Castellanos et al. 2006; Sonuga-Barke 2003).

4 Pharmacological Treatment

The psychostimulants methylphenidate (MPH) and amphetamine (AMPH) constitute the two main therapies of choice for the treatment of ADHD (Wilens 2008). Both drugs increase extra-synaptic DA and NA levels, albeit via different mechanisms: While both inhibit the reuptake of DA and NA, AMPH additionally increases the release of these neurotransmitters into extraneuronal space and inhibits the catabolic activity of monoamine oxidase (Kuczenski and Segal 1975).

Evidence from neuroimaging research suggests that the abuse potential of psychostimulants is mediated by subcortical DA effects (Volkow 2006). Atomoxetine, a selective noradrenaline reuptake inhibitor with limited effects on subcortical DA mechanisms, was recently approved by the FDA for the treatment of ADHD (Faraone et al. 2005). In animals, systematic administration of this drug was found to increase both cortical NA and DA levels several-fold (Bymaster et al. 2002). Due to its limited abuse potential, atomoxetine may thus offer clinical advantages, particularly for those patients who do not respond to stimulant treatment, estimated to constitute 30% of all ADHD pediatric patients (Madras et al. 2002). Modafinil, though not currently FDA-approved for the treatment of ADHD, also appears to exert therapeutic effects (Greenhill et al. 2006). The neurobiological mechanisms through which this drug exerts pro-cognitive effects remain to date poorly understood; however, aspects of its behavioral and cognitive effects appear to be contingent on the integrity of NA transmission (Minzenberg and Carter 2008). To summarize, medications used in the treatment of ADHD (including methylphenidate, dextroamphetamine and atomoxetine) act to increase brain catecholamine levels.

5 Cognitive Effects of Psychostimulants: Implications for our Understanding of ADHD

A growing body of evidence drawn from controlled studies supports the effectiveness of stimulant medications in the treatments of ADHD in children, adolescents (Faraone and Buitelaar 2010) and adults (Castells et al. 2011a, b). But what do we know about their cognitive effects?

There is some evidence that single therapeutic doses of MPH ameliorate functions in children and adults diagnosed with ADHD often reported to be sub-optimal in this condition (Clark et al. 2007; Mehta et al. 2004; Spencer et al. 2007; Turner et al. 2005). Therapeutic effects are thought to be mediated through neuromodulatory influences over fronto-striato-cerebellar circuits, although the exact underlying neurochemical mechanisms are not well understood (Del Campo et al. 2011). Analogous cognitive findings have been documented in healthy subjects, following both MPH (Elliott et al. 1997; Koelega 1993; Mehta et al. 2000; Strauss et al. 1984) and AMPH administration (Mattay et al. 1996, 2000; Rapoport et al. 1978, 1980), suggesting that stimulant effects are not pathognomic for ADHD. These findings imply that the "calming" effects of stimulants on hyperactive children, initially considered as paradoxical, are not likely to be mediated by an underlying neurochemical deficit; instead, they might be best understood through their normal actions. A further implication is that ADHD differs from health only quantitatively on normally distributed dimensions of attention, impulsivity and hyperactivity, with the criterion of six symptoms representing an arbitrary cut-off point at the top end of a normal distribution, rather than a true categorical boundary between ADHD vs. non-ADHD conditions.

It is noteworthy, however, that a non-neglectable number of controlled studies investigating pro-cognitive effects of stimulants have also yielded negative or null results (e.g. Rhodes et al. 2006). Recent reviews of cognitive stimulant effects in children with ADHD (Pietrzak et al. 2006) and healthy volunteers (mostly adults) (Faraone and Glatt 2010; Smith and Farah 2011) conclude that the pattern of stimulant-induced enhancement is far from clear. Overall, it appears that stimulants do not improve cognition across the board but rather selectively: In both ADHD patients and healthy volunteers, the neurocognitive processes affected most prominently by stimulants are in the domains of impulse control, working memory and attention (Chamberlain et al. 2010; DeVito et al. 2009; Finke et al. 2010; Naylor et al. 1985; Rhodes et al. 2006; Turner et al. 2003), and less so in executive function (Advokat 2010; Rhodes et al. 2006; Swanson et al. 2011b). Importantly, stimulants appear to interact with these domains in a baseline performance-dependent manner (Clatworthy et al. 2009; DeVito et al. 2009; Naylor et al. 1985; Robbins and Sahakian 1979; Rogers et al. 1999; Sahakian and Robbins 1977; Turner et al. 2003).

The contingency of stimulant effects to baseline performance has been interpreted in accordance with a hypothesized inverted u-shaped function, whereby optimal catecholamine levels determine optimal performance, and catecholamine levels along the curve at either side of the optimum are associated with impaired performance (Arnsten and Goldman-Rakic 1998; Mattay et al. 2003; Williams and Goldman-Rakic 1995). This model accounts for the more consistent drug effects found in patients with ADHD, who have relatively low baseline performance and putatively impaired catecholamine transmission. For example, improvements in attention following stimulant treatment of ADHD are substantially greater than those caused by non-medical use of stimulants by healthy individuals (Swanson et al. 2011b). Moreover, among a group of adults referred for an ADHD

assessment, those individuals whose elevated ADHD symptom severity leads to a clinical diagnosis of adult ADHD manifested a more pervasive benefit of MPH across computerized cognitive tasks (Turner et al. 2005). Also among healthy volunteers, stimulant-induced cognitive enhancement appears to be largest in those individuals with the highest scores on ADHD-like behaviors and traits (Smith and Farah 2011). This difference in baseline catecholamine levels may also underlie the differential response to stimulant medications observed between controls and patients with ADHD using functional MRI (Vaidya et al. 2005).

The inverted u-shaped function relating catecholamine levels to performance was originally formulated with respect to the chemical neuromodulation of the prefrontal cortex (Arnsten and Goldman-Rakic 1998) but it is likely to also apply to other structures within the same circuitry, including the striatum (Clatworthy et al. 2009; Robbins 2010). Studies in animals (Chudasama et al. 2005; Chudasama and Robbins 2004; Collins et al. 1998; Roberts et al. 1994) and humans (Clatworthy et al. 2009; Cools et al. 2001; Swainson et al. 2000) provide evidence for the existence of multiple inverted u-shaped functions associated with distinct cognitive processes. Indeed, stimulant medications appear to have different effects not only depending on baseline performance, but also on the context of administration and the type of cognitive domain probed. For example, in a recent functional MRI study in healthy controls, MPH exerted differential effects at prefrontal cortical and striatal sites to affect distinct cognitive components within a single task of reversal learning (Dodds et al. 2008).

6 Molecular Neuroimaging Studies in ADHD

6.1 Status of DA Markers in ADHD

Insofar as PET and SPECT allow quantification of DA receptor availability (indicative of DA receptor levels) with great specificity, both molecular neuroimaging techniques represent an attractive approach to investigate, in vivo, the role of dopaminergic abnormalities in the pathophysiology of ADHD. A number of DA markers have been compared between ADHD patients and healthy controls, including D_2/D_3 receptors, DA synthesis and DA transporters (DAT). Table 1 summarizes these findings; studies revealing decreased, increased or unchanged DA marker status in patients are highlighted in orange, blue and yellow, respectively (note that only studies including a control group are illustrated). Overall, results regarding DA parameter status in ADHD have been highly inconsistent, regarding both the direction of the observed abnormality and its magnitude. The first marker studies focused on DAT, given its role in mediating stimulant actions. At the time, a wealth of evidence appeared to indicate that ADHD patients had increased DAT density (Krause 2008; Larisch et al. 2006; Spencer et al. 2005), a finding that reached wide acceptance for almost a decade (Madras et al. 2006).

Table 1 DA marker status in patients with ADHD vs. healthy controls, as measured with PET and SPECT

Authors	Radiotracer	Age group	N (patients-controls)	Treatment history	Regions examined	Behavioral correlates
D_2/D_3 receptors						
Volkow et al. (2010)	[^{11}C]raclopride	A	45–51	Naïve	Accumbens, midbrain	MPQ (Achievement scale)
Volkow et al. (2009)	[^{11}C]raclopride	A	53–44	Naïve	Whole brain analysis followed by confirmatory template ROI analysis	SWAN
*Volkow et al. 2007a, b)	[^{11}C]raclopride	A	19–24	Naïve	Whole brain analysis and L/R CAU and PUT	CAARS
Jucaite et al. (2005)	[^{11}C]raclopride	T	12–10 (not age-matched)	n = 3 (MPH)	L/R CAU and PUT	DSM-IV scores, CPT, Motor measurements
*Ilgin et al. (2001)	[^{123}I]IBZM	C	9-published control data	Naïve	L/R CAU and PUT	CTRS, DSM-IV scores
FDOPA (brain decarboxylase activity, i.e. DA synthesis)						
Ludolph et al. (2008)	[^{18}F]F-DOPA	A	20–18	n = 12 (MPH)	Whole brain analysis, with small volume correction in midbrain, R/L CAU and PUT and amygdala	n/a
Forssberg et al. (2006)	L-[^{11}C]DOPA	T	8–6	n = 8 (MPH)	Twenty-eight manually adjusted template ROIs, including midbrain, CAU and PUT	DSM-IV scores
Ernst et al. (1999)	[^{18}F]F-DOPA	T	10–10 (healthy siblings)	n = 6 (stimulants)	L and R PFC, CAU, PUT and midbrain	DSM-III-R scores, Child Behavior Checklist, CPRS, CTRS, CPT

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Authors	Radiotracer	Age group	N (patients-controls)	Treatment history	Regions examined	Behavioral correlates
Ernst et al. (1998)	[^{18}F]F-DOPA	A	17–23	n = 4	L and R PFC, CAU, PUT and midbrain	DSM-III-R, CTRS (abbreviated version), Utah criteria of childhood ADHD
Dopamine transporter						
*Volkow et al. 2007a, b)	[^{11}C]cocaine	A	53–44	Naïve	Whole brain analysis and template ROIs	SWAN
Hesse et al. (2009)	[^{123}I]FP-CIT	A	17–14	Naïve	Striatum, head of CAU, PUT, thalamus, midbrain	ASRS, WURS, BDI
Volkow et al. (2007a, b)	[^{11}C]cocaine	A	20–25	Naïve	Whole brain analysis and L/R CAU and PUT	CAARS
Spencer et al. (2007)	[^{11}C]altropane	A	21–26	Naïve	L/R CAU and PUT	n/a
Larisch et al. (2006)	[^{123}I]FP-CIT	A	20–20	Naïve	L and R striatum	n/a
la Fougere et al. (2006)	[^{99}Tc]TRODAT-1	A	22–14	Naïve	Basal ganglia template ROIs	CGI-I, CGI-S
Jucaite et al. (2005)	[^{11}C]PET2I	T	12–10 (not age-matched)	n = 3 (MPH)	CAU, PUT and midbrain	CPT, motor measurements
Spencer et al. (2005)	[^{11}C]altropane	A	6–6	n = 1 (stimulant treatment)	L/R striatum	n/a
Cheon et al. (2003)	[^{123}I]IPT	C	9–6	Naïve	L/R basal ganglia	ARS

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Authors	Radiotracer	Age group	N (patients-controls)	Treatment history	Regions examined	Behavioral correlates
van Dyck et al. (2002)	[^{123}I]β-CIT	A	9–9	n = 1 (stimulant treatment)	Manually adjusted template ROIs for striatum, diencephalon, brainstem	ARS
Krause et al. (2000)	[^{99}Tc]TRODAT-1	A	10–10	n/a	Manually adjusted template ROIs for striatum	n/a
Dresel et al. (2000)	[^{99}Tc]TRODAT-1	A	17–14	n/a	Manually adjusted template ROIs for striatum, CAU and PUT	n/a
Dougherty et al. (1999)	[^{123}I]altropane	A	6-n/a (compared to control data on 30 healthy controls)	n = 4 (stimulant treatment)	Striatum	n/a

Studies revealing decreased, increased or unchanged DA marker status in patients are highlighted in orange, blue and yellow, respectively. Studies highlighted with an asterisk are those in which the DA marker was also measured following stimulant treatment (see Table 2). Abbreviations: *A* adults, *T* adolescents, *C* children, D_2/D_3 D_2/D_3 receptor availability, *DAT* DAT availability, *n/a* not available, *MPH* methylphenidate, *ROI* region of interest, *CAU* caudate, *PUT* putamen, *PFC* prefrontal cortex, Questionnaires (in alphabetical order): *ARS* ADHD Rating scale-IV, *ASRS* Adult ADHD Self-Report Scale, *BDI* Beck Depression Inventar, *CAARS* Conners Adult ADHD Rating Scales, *CGI-I* Clinical Global Improvement Scale, *CGI-S* Clinical Global Impression, *CPRS* Conner's Parent Rating Scale, *CTRS* Conner's Teaching Rating Scales, *MPQ* Multidimensional Personality Questionnaire, *SNAP-IV* Swanson, Nolan and Pelham Scale—version IV, *SWAN* Strengths and Weaknesses of ADHD symptoms and Normal-behavior, *TOVA/CPT* continuous performance task, *WURS* Wender Utah Rating Scale

However, more recent well-powered designs in adult medication-naïve ADHD patients have consistently shown that ADHD is associated with decreased DAT as well as D_2/D_3 receptor availability in selected sub-cortical regions of the left hemisphere, including nucleus accumbens, caudate and midbrain (Volkow et al. 2007a, b; 2009).

Studies investigating D_2/D_3 receptor status have to date been restricted to the striatum due to the use of [^{11}C]raclopride, a low affinity tracer which can only be reliably quantified in brain regions with high receptor density. From the five published D_2/D_3 receptor PET imaging studies, those reporting unchanged or increased receptor availability in ADHD patients used a control group that was not age-matched to the patients (Ilgin et al. 2001; Jucaite et al. 2005).

The prefrontal cortex, a brain region in which inadequate catecholamine transmission is thought to play a key role in the pathophysiology of ADHD, has been investigated using [^{18}F]fluorodopa ([^{18}F]DOPA), an index of DA synthesis capacity. The same laboratory documented opposite findings in adults (Ernst et al. 1998) and children with ADHD (Ernst et al. 1999). More recently, two reports in adolescent and adult ADHD suggest that ADHD is associated with decreased DOPA metabolism in sub-cortical regions (Forssberg et al. 2006; Ludolph et al. 2008). Given the low dopaminergic neural density in the prefrontal cortex, it has been argued that well-powered designs are needed to resolve the question of whether DA neurotransmission in the prefrontal cortex is affected in ADHD (Ernst et al. 1998).

6.2 Synaptic DA Transmission in ADHD

The binding competition between D_2/D_3 radioligands and endogenous DA provides an imaging paradigm to measure DA transmission following an acute drug challenge (Laruelle 2000), illustrated in Figs. 1 and 2. Over the last two decades, several groups have shown that the administration of psychostimulants such as AMPH or MPH are associated with an acute reduction in non-displaceable binding potential (BP_{ND}) of the PET radiotracers [11C]raclopride (Volkow et al. 1994) (Breier et al. 1997), [^{11}C]FLB 457 (Montgomery et al. 2007), and also [^{18}F]fallypride (Cropley et al. 2008). Evidence from microdialysis studies in non-human primates suggests that the magnitude of this reduction is indeed related to the AMPH-induced increase in extracellular DA measures (Laruelle et al. 1997).

Of the five published studies documenting the magnitude of stimulant-induced increases in endogenous DA in ADHD patients (summarized in Table 2), only one included an age-matched control group (Volkow et al. 2007b). Using [^{11}C]raclopride PET, Volkow et al. found that ADHD patients showed smaller increases in DA levels in the caudate following i.v. MPH treatment (0.5 mg/kg). Moreover, a voxelwise analysis revealed that the volumes of the regions where MPH significantly reduced tracer binding were significantly smaller in ADHD patients compared to controls in bilateral caudate, hippocampus and left amygdala. However,

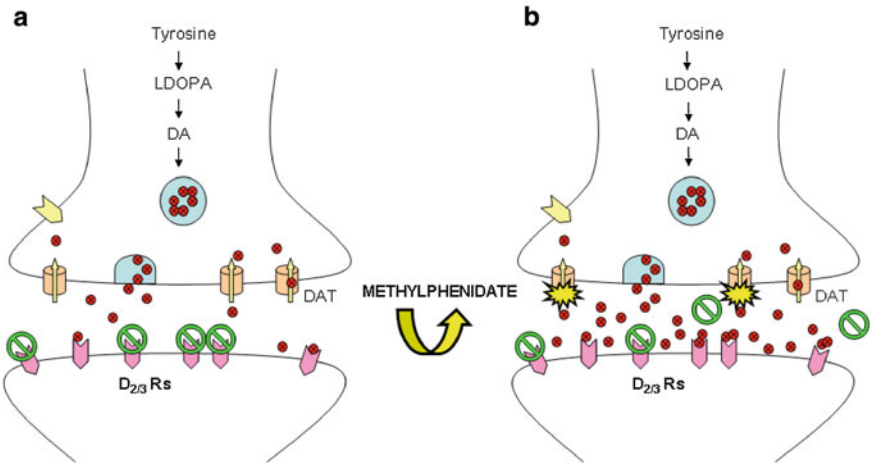


Fig. 1 Schematic illustration of a dopaminergic synapse visualized using [^{18}F]fallypride-PET or [^{11}C]raclopride PET before and after methylphenidate (MPH) administration. Dopamine (DA) is synthesized in the pre-synaptic terminal from the essential amino acid tyrosine and L-3,4 –dihydroxyphenylalanine (L-DOPA). DA is released into the synaptic cleft, where it binds to D_2/D_3 receptors found both pre- and post-synaptically. The radioactively labeled ligand binds to D_2/D_3 receptors, allowing estimation of receptor availability. MPH blocks dopamine transporters (DAT), impeding the reuptake of DA into the pre-synaptic terminal thereby increasing extra-cellular DA levels. The competition between endogenous DA and the radioligand for the binding to D_2/D_3 receptors leads to a reduction in radioactive signal

these findings are difficult to reconcile with prior evidence in adolescent ADHD patients indicating that MPH-induced increases in DA concentrations in the right striatum are associated with greater symptom severity (Rosa-Neto et al. 2005).

Initial PET evidence in healthy volunteers using tracers suitable to examine regions with low D_2/D_3 receptor density such as [^{11}C]FLB 457 and [^{18}F]fallypride suggests that stimulants increase DA levels also extra-striatally (including amygdala, temporal and orbito-frontal cortices) (Cropley et al. 2008; Montgomery et al. 2007; Riccardi et al. 2006a, b; Slifstein et al. 2010). The regional specificity and magnitude of DA changes remains to be replicated. Intriguingly, one study using AMPH yielded negative results (Aalto et al. 2009). Whether the magnitude of regional increases differs between patients and controls remains to be investigated.

6.3 Potential Confounding Factors Underlying Inconsistencies Across PET/SPECT Findings in ADHD

There are a number of factors that potentially underlie the disparities found across PET/SPECT studies assessing the status of DA markers in ADHD patients compared to controls (summarized in Table 3). Age, previous medication with

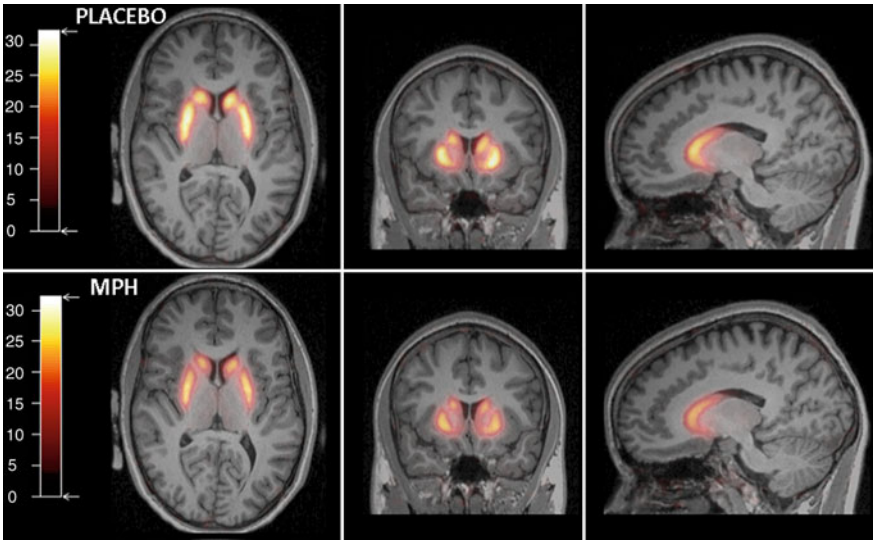


Fig. 2 [^{18}F]fallypride BP_{ND} maps of a healthy control following placebo (*top raw*) and following oral MPH (*bottom raw*). BP_{ND} maps are superimposed on a high resolution magnetic resonance image. MPH increases endogenous DA, leading to a reduction in [^{18}F]fallypride BP_{ND}

stimulants and psychiatric comorbidity seem to be the most critical factors and are highly recommended to be controlled for in future research assessing the DA system in ADHD in vivo (Del Campo et al. 2011). How the imaging data are processed and the anatomical landmarks used to define regions of interest also appear to be crucial when comparing data across studies. This appears to be particularly relevant in receptor imaging studies assessing the striatum, which has been shown to have a heterogenous distribution of dopamine receptors across its functional subregions (Martinez et al. 2003; Mawlawi et al. 2001).

7 Neuroanatomical Correlates of ADHD

The idea that fronto-striato-cerebellar circuits are altered in ADHD has been largely supported by morphological neuroimaging studies: Volumetric reductions in the interconnected frontal lobe (particularly the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex, DLPC and anterior cingulate cortex, ACC), basal ganglia and cerebellum are often reported by MRI studies (Nakao et al. 2011; Seidman et al. 2005). Abnormalities in these circuits are thought to sub-serve the deficits often observed in ADHD patients in prefrontal-dependent cognitive functions (see 3.Cognitive markers of ADHD). The cerebellum has recently attracted attention in ADHD research owing to its relevance in a wide range of other functions also reported to be abnormal in ADHD patients, such as motor timing and time estimation (Ackermann et al. 1999; Jueptner et al. 1995; Maquet et al. 1996; Rubia and Smith 2004; Smith et al. 2003).

Table 2 Changes in D_2/D_3 receptor availability following stimulant medication in ADHD patients

Authors	Radiotracer	Age group	N (patients-controls)	Treatment history	Drug challenge	Drug adminis-tration	Regions examined	Behavioral correlates
Endogenous DA levels								
*Volkow et al. 2007a, b)	[^{11}C]raclopride	A	19–24	Naïve	MPH (single dose)	I.v. (0.5 mg/kg)	Whole brain analysis and L/R CAU and PUT	CAARS
Rosa-Neto et al. (2005)	[^{11}C]raclopride	T	9-n/a	Naïve	MPH (single dose)	Oral (0.3 mg/kg)	L/R striatum	TOVA
Rosa-Neto et al. (2002)	[^{11}C]raclopride	T	6-n/a	No current stimulant treatment	MPH (single dose)	Oral (0.3 mg/kg)	L/R striatum	TOVA
Ilgin et al. (2001)	[^{123}I] IBZM	C	9-n/a	Naïve	MPH (3 month therapy)	Oral (0.5– 1.5 mg/kg.day)	L/R CAU and PUT	CTRS

Note that only the first study included an age-matched control group, allowing the comparison of the magnitude of the change in endogenous DA between patients and controls. The study is highlighted in red, since patients were found to have a smaller stimulant-induced increase in endogenous DA relative to controls. Abbreviations: *A* adults, *T* adolescents, *C* children, *D_2/D_3* D_2/D_3 receptor availability, *DAT* DAT availability, *n/a* not available, *MPH* methylphenidate, *ROI* region of interest, *CAU* caudate, *PUT* putamen, *PFC* prefrontal cortex, Questionnaires (in alphabetical order): *CAARS* Conners Adult ADHD Rating Scales, *TOVA/CPT* continuous performance task, *CTRS* Conner's Teaching Rating Scales

Table 3 Confounding factors potentially underlying the heterogeneity found across DA/PET studies in ADHD

Study population
• Age group
• Reduced sample size (insufficient power)
• Matched controls
• Comorbidity
• Medication history
• History of nicotine exposure (smoking)
• Genetic factors (e.g. DAT polymorphisms)
Methodology
• Imaging technique (PET vs. SPECT)
• Radiotracer
• Co-registration with structural MRI
• Brain regions examined/anatomical landmarks used

Accumulating evidence suggests that some patients also show alterations in meso-cortico-limbic circuits (Brieber et al. 2007; Carmona et al. 2005; Del Campo et al. under submission; Sowell et al. 2003; van't Ent et al. 2007; Wang et al. 2007). These abnormalities are thought to underlie difficulties in reward and emotional processes which often dominate the clinical profile of ADHD patients, particularly at adulthood (Hesslinger et al. 2003; Richards et al. 2006). Supporting evidence comes also from the aforementioned PET studies documenting catecholaminergic abnormalities in reward pathways (Volkow et al. 2007b; 2010). According to a recent meta-analysis, alterations in limbic regions are more pronounced in non-treated populations (Frodl and Skokauskas 2011).

7.1 Continuity of Morphological Abnormalities Across the Lifespan

The manifestation of ADHD throughout the lifespan evolves such that there is symptomatic improvement in 30–40% of children from late adolescence onwards (Mannuzza et al. 1991). Moreover, in those patients who continue to have a diagnosis at adulthood there is an age-dependent decline of hyperactivity symptoms, while the inattention symptoms often persist (Biederman et al. 2000). These observations raise the question of whether and how the neural signatures of ADHD evolve across the lifespan. While the molecular neuroimaging literature cannot address this question due to the lack of data in childhood ADHD (given regulations preventing exposure to radiation in children), MRI studies have been carried out in patients across all age ranges.

A few longitudinal studies have addressed whether there is neurobiological continuity between children and adolescents with ADHD, and whether the improvement of cognitive impairment and clinical outcome can be associated with

a normalization of the neuroanatomical correlates (Casey et al. 2007; Castellanos et al. 2002; Mackie et al. 2007; Shaw et al. 2006; Sowell et al. 2003).

The first study of this nature, carried out on 152 children and adolescents with ADHD and 139 controls scanned four times over a period of 10 years, found that all volumetric abnormalities in ADHD (decreased total cerebral and cerebellar volumes, as well as decreased overall WM) remained unchanged over time, except for the caudate nucleus volume, which normalized through adolescence (Castellanos et al. 2002). Normalization of this subcortical structure was interpreted in the light of the decreasing motor hyperactivity with age. Moreover, developmental trajectories of cerebellar and cerebral volumes were observed to be parallel in both groups, and longitudinal growth curves appeared to be unrelated to prior stimulant treatment.

This finding was largely supported by Shaw et al. (2006, 2007), who found cortical growth trajectories, which are typically characterized by cortical increase at childhood followed by adolescent decrease, to be parallel in children affected by the disorder and healthy controls. However, ADHD children attained peak thickness with a marked delay throughout most of the brain, most prominently in the prefrontal cortex (Shaw et al. 2007). Specific regional differences in the cortical maturation were associated with clinical outcome; while children with better clinical outcome presented normalization in portions of the right parietal cortex over time, a fixed non-progressive deficit of the medial prefrontal and cingulate regions was documented in children with a worse outcome (Shaw et al. 2006). The recent application of refined segmentation techniques has made it possible to identify different growth trajectories in sub-regions of the cerebellum (Mackie et al. 2007). Whereas a fixed, non-progressive volume decrease was reported in the superior cerebellar vermis of ADHD children, abnormalities in the cerebral hemispheres developed differently in children with better versus worse clinical outcome. Thus, the dissipation of ADHD symptoms throughout development may be associated with a normalization of certain neuroanatomical correlates of the disorder.

These findings contribute to a growing body of evidence suggesting that a delay in brain maturation (rather than a deviation from typical neurodevelopmental processes) is implicated in the pathophysiology of ADHD (Nakao et al. 2011; Shaw et al. 2006, 2007). Furthermore, it appears that ADHD patients may progressively catch up with their developmental delay with advancing age (Nakao et al. 2011), although more longitudinal studies are needed to confirm both observations.

What brain tissue signatures have been reported in adult ADHD patients? Initial studies by Seidman et al. (2006) and Makris et al. (2007) observed reduced cortical gray matter volume in the DLPFC and ACC, and a trend for overall increased white matter volumes in adult patients compared to controls (Seidman et al. 2006). Abnormalities in subcortical structures were not found with the exception of the nucleus accumbens, which was marginally larger in patients. The inferior parietal lobule, DLPFC and ACC, which are cortical regions thought to subserve a distinct network involved in attention, were thinner in patients, most prominently in the

right hemisphere (Makris et al. 2007). In a subsequent publication, the same authors reported a gray matter volume reduction in the left ACC in the treatment-naïve group and a reduction in the right ACC in the treated group, relative to controls (Makris et al. 2010).

Recently, other groups have also measured brain tissue volume in adult ADHD patients relative to controls (e.g. Ahrendts et al. 2011; Almeida Montes et al. 2010; Amico et al. 2011; Del Campo et al. submitted; Depue et al. 2010; Perlov et al. 2008) with few disease-related abnormalities surviving conservative statistical thresholds and whole brain analyzes. Thus, the jury is still out as to where in the brain adult ADHD patients have altered brain tissue volume, and how these abnormalities are associated with the clinical profile.

An important question that needs to be addressed when considering the continuity of neuroanatomical alterations into adulthood in ADHD is whether pharmacological treatment has an impact on structural changes across the life cycle. Two recent meta-analyzes exploring gray matter volume in ADHD agree that treatment may to be associated with the normalization of structural abnormalities (Frodl and Skokauskas 2011; Nakao et al. 2011). However, this conclusion was drawn from cross-sectional data and thus will need to be confirmed by longitudinal study designs.

7.2 Evidence for Abnormal Structural Connectivity in ADHD

Diffusion tensor imaging (DTI) is an MRI technique based on the property of water molecules to diffuse along fiber tracts which enables exploration of microstructural integrity of white matter (Assaf and Pasternak 2008). Because it is still an emerging technique, only few ADHD case-control studies of this nature exist (for a review see Konrad and Eickhoff 2010; Liston et al. 2011). The age and medication history of participants across studies, as well as the approaches used to analyze the DTI data were highly variable (whole brain voxel-wise comparisons, manually selected regions of interest or regions of interest specified by automated tractography algorithms and tract-based spatial statistical techniques), making the integration of results somehow difficult. Nevertheless, reduced white matter integrity in the superior longitudinal fasciculus and the anterior corona radiata, which carry fronto-striatal projections, are among the most consistently replicated findings. Indeed, out of the eight DTI studies that examined connectivity in fronto-striatal projections, seven report reduced connectivity in patients compared to controls (Liston et al. 2011). Connectivity between limbic regions has been comparatively less explored.

8 Conclusions

A large body of evidence from neuropsychological and neuroimaging case-control studies points chiefly toward an underlying dysfunction of distributed fronto-striato-cerebellar circuits in ADHD, although more recent studies suggest that

limbic circuits may also be implicated. Through neuromodulation of these circuits, catecholamines are thought to play a critical role in prefrontal-dependent cognitive functions, as well as motivational and emotional processes often reported to be altered in ADHD patients, representing the key target for pharmacotherapy in ADHD.

The psychostimulants methylphenidate and amphetamine, but also atomoxetine increase DA levels in prefrontal circuits and are clearly effective in improving clinical symptoms of ADHD across the lifespan. Those findings do, however, not correspond to equally clear findings from neurocognitive and neuroimaging studies of the DA system investigating single stimulant doses. Reports in both ADHD patients and healthy individuals suggest that the cognitive effects of psychostimulants are complex, being driven by two aspects: (a) baseline performance (mediated in turn by baseline catecholamine levels) and (b) the cognitive domain assessed. PET and SPECT studies in ADHD have to date focused on the DA system with ligands for the DA transporter, DA receptors and DA synthesis. The best-powered PET study, one of the most ambitious molecular neuroimaging studies ever performed in a psychiatric population, found reduced DAT and $D_{2/3}$ availability in never medicated patients with ADHD (Volkow et al. 2009). However, there was considerable overlap between patients and controls, so that dopaminergic PET imaging does not have the potential for a diagnostic assessment.

As reviewed in this chapter, the search for neural markers of ADHD has no doubt yielded important findings. Advancement in the field will be reliant on the development of improved neuroimaging techniques (e.g. allowing a finer level of spatial resolution) and analytic methods, but also on the implementation of longitudinal study designs addressing isolated symptom dimensions and their underlying mechanisms. The latter will be key to further our understanding of the pathophysiology of ADHD, which is inherently heterogeneous, and elucidate how its behavioral and neural signatures evolve across the lifespan. One fruitful approach to characterize neural markers of the disorder may be to enrich the neuroimaging data analyzes with information obtained from the same patients on well-validated cognitive tests. A further promising approach will be the development and application of radioligands aimed at hitherto unexplored neurochemical targets hypothesized to be affected in ADHD. One example is the in vivo investigation of the noradrenergic system with radioligands such as [^{11}C]methylreboxetine, which has been successfully deployed in initial human studies but is yet to be used in ADHD patients.

References

Aalto S, Hirvonen J, Kaasinen V, Hagelberg N, Kajander J, Nagren K, Seppala T, Rinne JO, Scheinin H, Hietala J (2009) The effects of d-amphetamine on extrastriatal dopamine D_2/D_3 receptors: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled PET study with [11C]FLB 457 in healthy subjects. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 36:475–483

Ackermann H, Graber S, Hertrich I, Daum I (1999) Cerebellar contributions to the perception of temporal cues within the speech and nonspeech domain. Brain Lang 67:228–241

Advokat C (2010) What are the cognitive effects of stimulant medications? Emphasis on adults with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD). Neurosci Biobehav Rev 34:1256–1266

Ahrendts J, Rusch N, Wilke M, Philipsen A, Eickhoff SB, Glauche V, Perlov E, Ebert D, Hennig J, van Elst LT (2011) Visual cortex abnormalities in adults with ADHD: a structural MRI study. World J Biol Psychiatry 12:260–270

Almasy L, Blangero J (2001) Endophenotypes as quantitative risk factors for psychiatric disease: rationale and study design. Am J Med Genet 105:42–44

Almeida Montes LG, Ricardo-Garcell J, Martinez Garcia RB, Barajas De La Torre LB, Prado Alcantara H, Fernandez-Bouzas A, Avila Acosta D (2010) Clinical correlations of grey matter reductions in the caudate nucleus of adults with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. J Psychiatry Neurosci 35:238–246

Amico F, Stauber J, Koutsouleris N, Frodl T (2011) Anterior cingulate cortex gray matter abnormalities in adults with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder: a voxel-based morphometry study. Psychiatry Res 191:31–35

Arnsten AF, Goldman-Rakic PS (1998) Noise stress impairs prefrontal cortical cognitive function in monkeys: evidence for a hyperdopaminergic mechanism. Arch Gen Psychiatry 55:362–368

Assaf Y, Pasternak O (2008) Diffusion tensor imaging (DTI)-based white matter mapping in brain research: a review. J Mol Neurosci 34:51–61

Barkley RA (1997) Behavioral inhibition, sustained attention, and executive functions: constructing a unifying theory of ADHD. Psychol Bull 121:65–94

Barkley RA (1998) Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder: A handbook for diagnosis and treatment (2nd ed.). The Guildford Press, The Guildford Press, New York

Biederman J (2005) Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder: a selective overview. Biol Psychiatry 57:1215–1220

Biederman J, Faraone SV, Keenan K, Knee D, Tsuang MT (1990) Family-genetic and psychosocial risk factors in DSM-III attention deficit disorder. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 29:526–533

Biederman J, Mick E, Faraone SV (2000) Age-dependent decline of symptoms of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder: impact of remission definition and symptom type. Am J Psychiatry 157:816–818

Biederman J, Monuteaux MC, Mick E, Spencer T, Wilens TE, Silva JM, Snyder LE, Faraone SV (2006) Young adult outcome of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder: a controlled 10-year follow-up study. Psychol Med 36:167–179

Breier A, Su TP, Saunders R, Carson RE, Kolachana BS, de Bartolomeis A, Weinberger DR, Weisenfeld N, Malhotra AK, Eckelman WC, Pickar D (1997) Schizophrenia is associated with elevated amphetamine-induced synaptic dopamine concentrations: evidence from a novel positron emission tomography method. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 94:2569–2574

Brieber S, Neufang S, Bruning N, Kamp-Becker I, Remschmidt H, Herpertz-Dahlmann B, Fink GR, Konrad K (2007) Structural brain abnormalities in adolescents with autism spectrum disorder and patients with attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder. J Child Psychol Psychiatry 48:1251–1258

Brookes K, Xu X, Chen W, Zhou K, Neale B, Lowe N, Anney R, Franke B, Gill M, Ebstein R, Buitelaar J, Sham P, Campbell D, Knight J, Andreou P, Altink M, Arnold R, Boer F, Buschgens C, Butler L, Christiansen H, Feldman L, Fleischman K, Fliers E, Howe-Forbes R, Goldfarb A, Heise A, Gabriels I, Korn-Lubetzki I, Johansson L, Marco R, Medad S, Minderaa R, Mulas F, Muller U, Mulligan A, Rabin K, Rommelse N, Sethna V, Sorohan J, Uebel H, Psychogiou L, Weeks A, Barrett R, Craig I, Banaschewski T, Sonuga-Barke E, Eisenberg J, Kuntsi J, Manor I, McGuffin P, Miranda A, Oades RD, Plomin R, Roeyers H, Rothenberger A, Sergeant J, Steinhausen HC, Taylor E, Thompson M, Faraone SV, Asherson P (2006) The analysis of 51 genes in DSM-IV combined type attention deficit hyperactivity disorder: association signals in DRD4, DAT1 and 16 other genes. Mol Psychiatry 11:934–953

Burd L, Klug MG, Coumbe MJ, Kerbeshian J (2003) Children and adolescents with attention deficit-hyperactivity disorder: 1. Prevalence and cost of care. J Child Neurol 18:555–561

Bush G, Valera EM, Seidman LJ (2005) Functional neuroimaging of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder: a review and suggested future directions. Biol Psychiatry 57:1273–1284

Bymaster FP, Katner JS, Nelson DL, Hemrick-Luecke SK, Threlkeld PG, Heiligenstein JH, Morin SM, Gehlert DR, Perry KW (2002) Atomoxetine increases extracellular levels of norepinephrine and dopamine in prefrontal cortex of rat: a potential mechanism for efficacy in attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Neuropsychopharmacology 27:699–711

Carmona S, Vilarroya O, Bielsa A, Tremols V, Soliva JC, Rovira M, Tomas J, Raheb C, Gispert JD, Batlle S, Bulbena A (2005) Global and regional gray matter reductions in ADHD: a voxel-based morphometric study. Neurosci Lett 389:88–93

Casey BJ, Epstein JN, Buhle J, Liston C, Davidson MC, Tonev ST, Spicer J, Niogi S, Millner AJ, Reiss A, Garrett A, Hinshaw SP, Greenhill LL, Shafritz KM, Vitolo A, Kotler LA, Jarrett MA, Glover G (2007) Frontostriatal connectivity and its role in cognitive control in parent-child dyads with ADHD. Am J Psychiatry 164:1729–1736

Castellanos FX, Lee PP, Sharp W, Jeffries NO, Greenstein DK, Clasen LS, Blumenthal JD, James RS, Ebens CL, Walter JM, Zijdenbos A, Evans AC, Giedd JN, Rapoport JL (2002) Developmental trajectories of brain volume abnormalities in children and adolescents with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Jama 288:1740–1748

Castellanos FX, Sonuga Barke EJ, Milham MP, Tannock R (2006) Characterizing cognition in ADHD: beyond executive dysfunction. Trends Cogn Sci 10:117–123

Castellanos FX, Tannock R (2002) Neuroscience of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder: the search for endophenotypes. Nat Rev Neurosci 3:617–628

Castells X, Ramos-Quiroga JA, Bosch R, Nogueira M, Casas M (2011a) Amphetamines for Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder (ADHD) in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev: CD007813

Castells X, Ramos-Quiroga JA, Rigau D, Bosch R, Nogueira M, Vidal X, Casas M (2011b) Efficacy of methylphenidate for adults with attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder: a meta-regression analysis. CNS Drugs 25:157–169

Chamberlain SR, Robbins TW, Winder-Rhodes S, Muller U, Sahakian BJ, Blackwell AD, Barnett JH (2010) Translational approaches to frontostriatal dysfunction in attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder using a computerized neuropsychological battery. Biol Psychiatry 64(2):137–144

Cheon KA, Ryu YH, Kim YK, Namkoong K, Kim CH, Lee JD (2003) Dopamine transporter density in the basal ganglia assessed with [123I]IPT SPET in children with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 30: 306–311

Chudasama Y, Nathwani F, Robbins TW (2005) D-Amphetamine remediates attentional performance in rats with dorsal prefrontal lesions. Behav Brain Res 158:97–107

Chudasama Y, Robbins TW (2004) Psychopharmacological approaches to modulating attention in the five-choice serial reaction time task: implications for schizophrenia. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 174:86–98

Clark L, Blackwell AD, Aron AR, Turner DC, Dowson J, Robbins TW, Sahakian BJ (2007) Association between response inhibition and working memory in adult ADHD: a link to right frontal cortex pathology? Biol Psychiatry 61:1395–1401

Clatworthy PL, Lewis SJ, Brichard L, Hong YT, Izquierdo D, Clark L, Cools R, Aigbirhio FI, Baron JC, Fryer TD, Robbins TW (2009) Dopamine release in dissociable striatal subregions predicts the different effects of oral methylphenidate on reversal learning and spatial working memory. J Neurosci 29:4690–4696

Collins P, Roberts AC, Dias R, Everitt BJ, Robbins TW (1998) Perseveration and strategy in a novel spatial self-ordered sequencing task for nonhuman primates: effects of excitotoxic lesions and dopamine depletions of the prefrontal cortex. J Cogn Neurosci 10:332–354

Cook EH Jr, Stein MA, Krasowski MD, Cox NJ, Olkon DM, Kieffer JE, Leventhal BL (1995) Association of attention-deficit disorder and the dopamine transporter gene. Am J Hum Genet 56:993–998

Cools R, Barker RA, Sahakian BJ, Robbins TW (2001) Enhanced or impaired cognitive function in Parkinson's disease as a function of dopaminergic medication and task demands. Cereb Cortex 11:1136–1143

Cropley VL, Innis RB, Nathan PJ, Brown AK, Sangare JL, Lerner A, Ryu YH, Sprague KE, Pike VW, Fujita M (2008) Small effect of dopamine release and no effect of dopamine depletion on [18F]fallypride binding in healthy humans. Synapse 62:399–408

Del Campo N, Acosta-Cabronero J, Suckling J, Chamberlain SR, Dowson J, Robbins TW, Sahakian BJ, Muller U (submitted) Distributed neuroanatomical abnormalities and attentional deficits in adult ADHD. Biol Psychiatry

Del Campo N, Chamberlain SR, Sahakian BJ, Robbins TW (2011) The roles of dopamine and noradrenaline in the pathophysiology and treatment of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Biol Psychiatry 69:e145–e157

Depue BE, Burgess GC, Bidwell LC, Willcutt EG, Banich MT (2010) Behavioral performance predicts grey matter reductions in the right inferior frontal gyrus in young adults with combined type ADHD. Psychiatry Res 182:231–237

DeVito EE, Blackwell AD, Clark L, Kent L, Dezsery AM, Turner DC, Aitken MR, Sahakian BJ (2009) Methylphenidate improves response inhibition but not reflection-impulsivity in children with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD). Psychopharmacology (Berl) 202:531–539

Dodds CM, Muller U, Clark L, van Loon A, Cools R, Robbins TW (2008) Methylphenidate has differential effects on blood oxygenation level-dependent signal related to cognitive subprocesses of reversal learning. J Neurosci 28:5976–5982

Dougherty DD, Bonab AA, Spencer TJ, Rauch SL, Madras BK, Fischman AJ (1999) Dopamine transporter density in patients with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Lancet 354: 2132–2133

Doyle AE, Willcutt EG, Seidman LJ, Biederman J, Chouinard VA, Silva J, Faraone SV (2005) Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder endophenotypes. Biol Psychiatry 57:1324–1335

Dresel S, Krause J, Krause KH, LaFougere C, Brinkbaumer K, Kung HF, Hahn K, Tatsch K (2000) Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder: binding of [99mTc]TRODAT-1 to the dopamine transporter before and after methylphenidate treatment. Eur J Nucl Med 27: 1518–1524

Durston S (2008) Converging methods in studying attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder: what can we learn from neuroimaging and genetics? Dev Psychopathol 20:1133–1143

Elliott R, Sahakian BJ, Matthews K, Bannerjea A, Rimmer J, Robbins TW (1997) Effects of methylphenidate on spatial working memory and planning in healthy young adults. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 131:196–206

Ernst M, Zametkin AJ, Matochik JA, Jons PH, Cohen RM (1998) DOPA decarboxylase activity in attention deficit hyperactivity disorder adults. A [fluorine-18]fluorodopa positron emission tomographic study. J Neurosci 18:5901–5907

Ernst M, Zametkin AJ, Matochik JA, Pascualvaca D, Jons PH, Cohen RM (1999) High midbrain [18F]DOPA accumulation in children with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Am J Psychiatry 156:1209–1215

Faraone SV, Biederman J (2005) What is the prevalence of adult ADHD? Results of a population screen of 966 adults. J Atten Disord 9:384–391

Faraone SV, Biederman J, Spencer T, Michelson D, Adler L, Reimherr F, Glatt SJ (2005) Efficacy of atomoxetine in adult attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder: a drug-placebo response curve analysis. Behav Brain Funct 1:16

Faraone SV, Buitelaar J (2010) Comparing the efficacy of stimulants for ADHD in children and adolescents using meta-analysis. Eur Child Adolesc Psychiatry 19:353–364

Faraone SV, Glatt SJ (2010) A comparison of the efficacy of medications for adult attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder using meta-analysis of effect sizes. J Clin Psychiatry 71: 754–763

Faraone SV, Sergeant J, Gillberg C, Biederman J (2003) The worldwide prevalence of ADHD: is it an American condition? World Psychiatry 2:104–113

Finke K, Dodds CM, Bublak P, Regenthal R, Baumann F, Manly T, Muller U (2010) Effects of modafinil and methylphenidate on visual attention capacity: a TVA-based study. Psychopharmacology (Berl)

Ford T, Goodman R, Meltzer H (2003) The British Child and Adolescent Mental Health Survey 1999: the prevalence of DSM-IV disorders. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 42: 1203–1211

Forssberg H, Fernell E, Waters S, Waters N, Tedroff J (2006) Altered pattern of brain dopamine synthesis in male adolescents with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Behav Brain Funct 2:40

Franke B, Faraone SV, Asherson P, Buitelaar J, Bau CH, Ramos-Quiroga JA, Mick E, Grevet EH, Johansson S, Haavik J, Lesch KP, Cormand B, Reif A (2011) The genetics of attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder in adults, a review. Mol Psychiatry 34(11):1061–1077

Franke B, Neale BM, Faraone SV (2009) Genome-wide association studies in ADHD. Hum Genet 126:13–50

Frodl T, Skokauskas N (2011) Meta-analysis of structural MRI studies in children and adults with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder indicates treatment effects. Acta Psychiatr Scand 124(6):497

Froehlich TE, McGough JJ, Stein MA (2010) Progress and promise of attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder pharmacogenetics. CNS Drugs 24:99–117

Gill M, Daly G, Heron S, Hawi Z, Fitzgerald M (1997) Confirmation of association between attention deficit hyperactivity disorder and a dopamine transporter polymorphism. Mol Psychiatry 2:311–313

Gizer IR, Ficks C, Waldman ID (2009) Candidate gene studies of ADHD: a meta-analytic review. Hum Genet 126:51–90

Gottesman II, Gould TD (2003) The endophenotype concept in psychiatry: etymology and strategic intentions. Am J Psychiatry 160:636–645

Greenhill LL, Biederman J, Boellner SW, Rugino TA, Sangal RB, Earl CQ, Jiang JG, Swanson JM (2006) A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of modafinil film-coated tablets in children and adolescents with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 45:503–511

Gupta R, Kar BR, Srinivasan N (2011) Cognitive-motivational deficits in ADHD: development of a classification system. Child Neuropsychol 17:67–81

Hesse S, Ballaschke O, Barthel H, Sabri O (2009) Dopamine transporter imaging in adult patients with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Psychiatry Res 171:120–128

Hesslinger B, Tebartz van Elst L, Mochan F, Ebert D (2003) A psychopathological study into the relationship between attention deficit hyperactivity disorder in adult patients and recurrent brief depression. Acta Psychiatr Scand 107:385–389

Ilgin N, Senol S, Gucuyener K, Gokcora N, Sener S (2001) Is increased D_2 receptor availability associated with response to stimulant medication in ADHD. Dev Med Child Neurol 43: 755–760

Jucaite A, Fernell E, Halldin C, Forssberg H, Farde L (2005) Reduced midbrain dopamine transporter binding in male adolescents with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder: association between striatal dopamine markers and motor hyperactivity. Biol Psychiatry 57:229–238

Jueptner M, Rijntjes M, Weiller C, Faiss JH, Timmann D, Mueller SP, Diener HC (1995) Localization of a cerebellar timing process using PET. Neurology 45:1540–1545

Kessler RC, Adler L, Barkley R, Biederman J, Conners CK, Demler O, Faraone SV, Greenhill LL, Howes MJ, Secnik K, Spencer T, Ustun TB, Walters EE, Zaslavsky AM (2006) The prevalence and correlates of adult ADHD in the United States: results from the National Comorbidity Survey Replication. Am J Psychiatry 163:716–723

Kim CH, Hahn MK, Joung Y, Anderson SL, Steele AH, Mazei-Robinson MS, Gizer I, Teicher MH, Cohen BM, Robertson D, Waldman ID, Blakely RD, Kim KS (2006) A polymorphism in the norepinephrine transporter gene alters promoter activity and is associated with attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103:19164–19169

Koelega HS (1993) Stimulant drugs and vigilance performance: a review. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 111:1–16

Konrad K, Eickhoff SB (2010) Is the ADHD brain wired differently? A review on structural and functional connectivity in attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Hum Brain Mapp 31: 904–916

Krause J (2008) SPECT and PET of the dopamine transporter in attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Expert Rev Neurother 8:611–625

Krause KH, Dresel SH, Krause J, Kung HF, Tatsch K (2000) Increased striatal dopamine transporter in adult patients with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder: effects of methylphenidate as measured by single photon emission computed tomography. Neurosci Lett 285:107–110

Kuczenski R, Segal DS (1975) Differential effects of D- and L-amphetamine and methylphenidate on rat striatal dopamine biosynthesis. Eur J Pharmacol 30:244–251

Kuntsi J, McLoughlin G, Asherson P (2006a) Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Neuromolecular Med 8:461–484

Kuntsi J, Neale BM, Chen W, Faraone SV, Asherson P (2006b) The IMAGE project: methodological issues for the molecular genetic analysis of ADHD. Behav Brain Funct 2:27

la Fougere C (2006) Value of 99mTc-TRODAT-1 SPECT to predict clinical response to methylphenidate treatment in adults with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Nucl Medicine commun 27:733–734

LaHoste GJ, Swanson JM, Wigal SB, Glabe C, Wigal T, King N, Kennedy JL (1996) Dopamine D4 receptor gene polymorphism is associated with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Mol Psychiatry 1:121–124

Larisch R, Sitte W, Antke C, Nikolaus S, Franz M, Tress W, Muller HW (2006) Striatal dopamine transporter density in drug naive patients with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Nucl Med Commun 27:267–270

Laruelle M (2000) Imaging synaptic neurotransmission with in vivo binding competition techniques: a critical review. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 20:423–451

Laruelle M, Iyer RN, al-Tikriti MS, Zea-Ponce Y, Malison R, Zoghbi SS, Baldwin RM, Kung HF, Charney DS, Hoffer PB, Innis RB, Bradberry CW (1997) Microdialysis and SPECT measurements of amphetamine-induced dopamine release in nonhuman primates. Synapse 25:1–14

Liston C, Cohen MM, Teslovich T, Levenson D, Casey BJ (2011) Atypical prefrontal connectivity in attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder: pathway to disease or pathological end point? Biol Psychiatry 69:1168–1177

Ludolph AG, Kassubek J, Schmeck K, Glaser C, Wunderlich A, Buck AK, Reske SN, Fegert JM, Mottaghy FM (2008) Dopaminergic dysfunction in attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), differences between pharmacologically treated and never treated young adults: a 3,4-dihdroxy-6-[18F]fluorophenyl-L-alanine PET study. Neuroimage 41:718–727

Luman M, Oosterlaan J, Sergeant JA (2005) The impact of reinforcement contingencies on AD/HD: a review and theoretical appraisal. Clin Psychol Rev 25:183–213

Mackie S, Shaw P, Lenroot R, Pierson R, Greenstein DK, Nugent TF 3rd, Sharp WS, Giedd JN, Rapoport JL (2007) Cerebellar development and clinical outcome in attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Am J Psychiatry 164:647–655

Madras BK, Fischman AJ, Meltzer PC (2006) Methods for diagnosing and monitoring treatment ADHD by assessing the dopamine transporter level. In: Office UP (ed), US

Madras BK, Miller GM, Fischman AJ (2002) The dopamine transporter: relevance to attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD). Behav Brain Res 130:57–63

Makris N, Biederman J, Valera EM, Bush G, Kaiser J, Kennedy DN, Caviness VS, Faraone SV, Seidman LJ (2007) Cortical thinning of the attention and executive function networks in adults with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Cereb Cortex 17:1364–1375

Makris N, Seidman LJ, Valera EM, Biederman J, Monuteaux MC, Kennedy DN, Caviness VS Jr, Bush G, Crum K, Brown AB, Faraone SV (2010) Anterior cingulate volumetric alterations in treatment-naive adults with ADHD: a pilot study. J Atten Disord 13:407–413

Mannuzza S, Klein RG, Bonagura N, Malloy P, Giampino TL, Addalli KA (1991) Hyperactive boys almost grown up. V. Replication of psychiatric status. Arch Gen Psychiatry 48:77–83

Maquet P, Lejeune H, Pouthas V, Bonnet M, Casini L, Macar F, Timsit-Berthier M, Vidal F, Ferrara A, Degueldre C, Quaglia L, Delfiore G, Luxen A, Woods R, Mazziotta JC, Comar D (1996) Brain activation induced by estimation of duration:a PET study. Neuroimage 3:119–126

Martinez D, Slifstein M, Broft A, Mawlawi O, Hwang DR, Huang Y, Cooper T, Kegeles L, Zarahn E, Abi-Dargham A, Haber SN, Laruelle M (2003) Imaging human mesolimbic dopamine transmission with positron emission tomography. Part II: amphetamine-induced dopamine release in the functional subdivisions of the striatum. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 23:285–300

Mattay VS, Berman KF, Ostrem JL, Esposito G, Van Horn JD, Bigelow LB, Weinberger DR (1996) Dextroamphetamine enhances "neural network-specific" physiological signals: a positron-emission tomography rCBF study. J Neurosci 16:4816–4822

Mattay VS, Callicott JH, Bertolino A, Heaton I, Frank JA, Coppola R, Berman KF, Goldberg TE, Weinberger DR (2000) Effects of dextroamphetamine on cognitive performance and cortical activation. Neuroimage 12:268–275

Mattay VS, Goldberg TE, Fera F, Hariri AR, Tessitore A, Egan MF, Kolachana B, Callicott JH, Weinberger DR (2003) Catechol O-methyltransferase val158-met genotype and individual variation in the brain response to amphetamine. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:6186–6191

Mawlawi O, Martinez D, Slifstein M, Broft A, Chatterjee R, Hwang DR, Huang Y, Simpson N, Ngo K, Van Heertum R, Laruelle M (2001) Imaging human mesolimbic dopamine transmission with positron emission tomography: I. Accuracy and precision of D(2) receptor parameter measurements in ventral striatum. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 21:1034–1057

McGough JJ, Smalley SL, McCracken JT, Yang M, Del'Homme M, Lynn DE, Loo S (2005) Psychiatric comorbidity in adult attention deficit hyperactivity disorder: findings from multiplex families. Am J Psychiatry 162:1621–1627

Mehta MA, Goodyer IM, Sahakian BJ (2004) Methylphenidate improves working memory and set-shifting in AD/HD: relationships to baseline memory capacity. J Child Psychol Psychiatry 45:293–305

Mehta MA, Owen AM, Sahakian BJ, Mavaddat N, Pickard JD, Robbins TW (2000) Methylphenidate enhances working memory by modulating discrete frontal and parietal lobe regions in the human brain. J Neurosci 20:RC65

Minzenberg MJ, Carter CS (2008) Modafinil: a review of neurochemical actions and effects on cognition. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:1477–1502

Molina BS, Hinshaw SP, Swanson JM, Arnold LE, Vitiello B, Jensen PS, Epstein JN, Hoza B, Hechtman L, Abikoff HB, Elliott GR, Greenhill LL, Newcorn JH, Wells KC, Wigal T, Gibbons RD, Hur K, Houck PR (2009) The MTA at 8 years: prospective follow-up of children treated for combined-type ADHD in a multisite study. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 48:484–500

Montgomery AJ, Asselin MC, Farde L, Grasby PM (2007) Measurement of methylphenidate-induced change in extrastriatal dopamine concentration using [11C]FLB 457 PET. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 27:369–377

Murphy K, Barkley RA (1996) Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder adults: comorbidities and adaptive impairments. Compr Psychiatry 37:393–401

Nakao T, Radua J, Rubia K, Mataix-Cols D (2011) Gray matter volume abnormalities in ADHD: Voxel-Based meta-analysis exploring the effects of age and stimulant medication. Am J Psychiatry

Naylor H, Halliday R, Callaway E (1985) The effect of methylphenidate on information processing. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 86:90–95

Nigg JT (2005) Neuropsychologic theory and findings in attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder: the state of the field and salient challenges for the coming decade. Biol Psychiatry 57: 1424–1435

Paloyelis Y, Mehta MA, Kuntsi J, Asherson P (2007) Functional MRI in ADHD: a systematic literature review. Expert Rev Neurother 7:1337–1356

Pennington BF, Ozonoff S (1996) Executive functions and developmental psychopathology. J Child Psychol Psychiatry 37:51–87

Perlov E, Philipsen A, Tebartz van Elst L, Ebert D, Henning J, Maier S, Bubl E, Hesslinger B (2008) Hippocampus and amygdala morphology in adults with attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder. J Psychiatry Neurosci 33:509–515

Pietrzak RH, Mollica CM, Maruff P, Snyder PJ (2006) Cognitive effects of immediate-release methylphenidate in children with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 30:1225–1245

Plomp E, Van Engeland H, Durston S (2009) Understanding genes, environment and their interaction in attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder: is there a role for neuroimaging? Neuroscience 164:230–240

Rapoport JL, Buchsbaum MS, Weingartner H, Zahn TP, Ludlow C, Mikkelsen EJ (1980) Dextroamphetamine. Its cognitive and behavioral effects in normal and hyperactive boys and normal men. Arch Gen Psychiatry 37:933–943

Rapoport JL, Buchsbaum MS, Zahn TP, Weingartner H, Ludlow C, Mikkelsen EJ (1978) Dextroamphetamine: cognitive and behavioral effects in normal prepubertal boys. Science 199:560–563

Rhodes SM, Coghill DR, Matthews K (2006) Acute neuropsychological effects of methylphenidate in stimulant drug-naive boys with ADHD II–broader executive and non-executive domains. J Child Psychol Psychiatry 47:1184–1194

Riccardi P, Li R, Ansari MS, Zald D, Park S, Dawant B, Anderson S, Doop M, Woodward N, Schoenberg E, Schmidt D, Baldwin R, Kessler R (2006a) Amphetamine-induced displacement of [18F] fallypride in striatum and extrastriatal regions in humans. Neuropsychopharmacology 31:1016–1026

Riccardi P, Zald D, Li R, Park S, Ansari MS, Dawant B, Anderson S, Woodward N, Schmidt D, Baldwin R, Kessler R (2006b) Sex differences in amphetamine-induced displacement of [(18)F]fallypride in striatal and extrastriatal regions:a PET study. Am J Psychiatry 163: 1639–1641

Richards TL, Deffenbacher JL, Rosen LA, Barkley RA, Rodricks T (2006) Driving anger and driving behavior in adults with ADHD. J Atten Disord 10:54–64

Robbins TW (2010) From Behavior to Cognition: Functions of Mesostriatal, Mesolimbic and Mesocortical Dopamine Systems. In: Iversen LL, Iversen SD, Dunnett SB, Bjorklund A (eds) Dopamine Handbook. Oxford University Press, New York, pp 203–214

Robbins TW, Sahakian BJ (1979) "Paradoxical" effects of psychomotor stimulant drugs in hyperactive children from the standpoint of behavioural pharmacology. Neuropharmacology 18:931–950

Roberts AC, De Salvia MA, Wilkinson LS, Collins P, Muir JL, Everitt BJ, Robbins TW (1994) 6-Hydroxydopamine lesions of the prefrontal cortex in monkeys enhance performance on an analog of the Wisconsin Card Sort Test: possible interactions with subcortical dopamine. J Neurosci 14:2531–2544

Rogers RD, Blackshaw AJ, Middleton HC, Matthews K, Hawtin K, Crowley C, Hopwood A, Wallace C, Deakin JF, Sahakian BJ, Robbins TW (1999) Tryptophan depletion impairs stimulus-reward learning while methylphenidate disrupts attentional control in healthy young adults: implications for the monoaminergic basis of impulsive behaviour. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 146:482–491

Rosa-Neto P, Lou HC, Cumming P, Pryds O, Karrebaek H, Lunding J, Gjedde A (2005) Methylphenidate-evoked changes in striatal dopamine correlate with inattention and impulsivity in adolescents with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Neuroimage 25: 868–876

Rosa-Neto P, Lou H, Cumming P, Pryds O, Gjedde A (2002) Methylphenidate-evoked potentiation of extracellular dopamine in the brain of adolescents with premature birth: correlation with attentional deficit. Ann N Y Acad Sci 965:434–439

Rubia K, Smith A (2004) The neural correlates of cognitive time management: a review. Acta Neurobiol Exp (Wars) 64:329–340

Rubia K, Smith A, Taylor E (2007) Performance of children with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) on a test battery of impulsiveness. Child Neuropsychol 13:276–304

Sahakian BJ, Robbins TW (1977) Are the effects of psychomotor stimulant drugs on hyperactive children really paradoxical? Med Hypotheses 3:154–158

Seidman LJ, Valera EM, Makris N (2005) Structural brain imaging of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Biol Psychiatry 57:1263–1272

Seidman LJ, Valera EM, Makris N, Monuteaux MC, Boriel DL, Kelkar K, Kennedy DN, Caviness VS, Bush G, Aleardi M, Faraone SV, Biederman J (2006) Dorsolateral prefrontal and anterior cingulate cortex volumetric abnormalities in adults with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder identified by magnetic resonance imaging. Biol Psychiatry 60: 1071–1080

Shaw P, Eckstrand K, Sharp W, Blumenthal J, Lerch JP, Greenstein D, Clasen L, Evans A, Giedd J, Rapoport JL (2007) Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder is characterized by a delay in cortical maturation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104:19649–19654

Shaw P, Lerch J, Greenstein D, Sharp W, Clasen L, Evans A, Giedd J, Castellanos FX, Rapoport J (2006) Longitudinal mapping of cortical thickness and clinical outcome in children and adolescents with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Arch Gen Psychiatry 63:540–549

Slifstein M, Kegeles LS, Xu X, Thompson JL, Urban N, Castrillon J, Hackett E, Bae SA, Laruelle M, Abi-Dargham A (2010) Striatal and extrastriatal dopamine release measured with PET and [(18)F] fallypride. Synapse 64:350–362

Smith A, Taylor E, Lidzba K, Rubia K (2003) A right hemispheric frontocerebellar network for time discrimination of several hundreds of milliseconds. Neuroimage 20:344–350

Smith ME, Farah MJ (2011) Are prescription stimulants "smart pills"? The epidemiology and cognitive neuroscience of prescription stimulant use by normal healthy individuals. Psychol Bull 137:717–741

Solanto MV (2001) Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Oxford University Press, Oxford

Sonuga-Barke EJ (2003) The dual pathway model of AD/HD: an elaboration of neuro-developmental characteristics. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 27:593–604

Sowell ER, Thompson PM, Welcome SE, Henkenius AL, Toga AW, Peterson BS (2003) Cortical abnormalities in children and adolescents with attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder. Lancet 362:1699–1707

Spencer TJ, Adler LA, McGough JJ, Muniz R, Jiang H, Pestreich L (2007) Efficacy and safety of dexmethylphenidate extended-release capsules in adults with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Biol Psychiatry 61:1380–1387

Spencer TJ, Biederman J, Madras BK, Faraone SV, Dougherty DD, Bonab AA, Fischman AJ (2005) In vivo neuroreceptor imaging in attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder: a focus on the dopamine transporter. Biol Psychiatry 57:1293–1300

Strauss J, Lewis JL, Klorman R, Peloquin LJ, Perlmutter RA, Salzman LF (1984) Effects of methylphenidate on young adults' performance and event-related potentials in a vigilance and a paired-associates learning test. Psychophysiology 21:609–621

Swainson R, Rogers RD, Sahakian BJ, Summers BA, Polkey CE, Robbins TW (2000) Probabilistic learning and reversal deficits in patients with Parkinson's disease or frontal or temporal lobe lesions: possible adverse effects of dopaminergic medication. Neuropsychologia 38:596–612

Swanson J, Baler RD, Volkow ND (2011a) Understanding the effects of stimulant medications on cognition in individuals with attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder: a decade of progress. Neuropsychopharmacology 36:207–226

Swanson JM, Sunohara GA, Kennedy JL, Regino R, Fineberg E, Wigal T, Lerner M, Williams L, LaHoste GJ, Wigal S (1998) Association of the dopamine receptor D4 (DRD4) gene with a refined phenotype of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD): a family-based approach. Mol Psychiatry 3:38–41

Swanson JM, Wigal TL, Volkow ND (2011b) Contrast of medical and nonmedical use of stimulant drugs, basis for the distinction, and risk of addiction: comment on Smith and Farah (2011). Psychol Bull 137:742–748

Turner DC, Blackwell AD, Dowson JH, McLean A, Sahakian BJ (2005) Neurocognitive effects of methylphenidate in adult attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 178:286–295

Turner DC, Robbins TW, Clark L, Aron AR, Dowson J, Sahakian BJ (2003) Relative lack of cognitive effects of methylphenidate in elderly male volunteers. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 168:455–464

Vaidya CJ, Bunge SA, Dudukovic NM, Zalecki CA, Elliott GR, Gabrieli JD (2005) Altered neural substrates of cognitive control in childhood ADHD: evidence from functional magnetic resonance imaging. Am J Psychiatry 162:1605–1613

van 't Ent D, Lehn H, Derks EM, Hudziak JJ, Van Strien NM, Veltman DJ, De Geus EJ, Todd RD, Boomsma DI (2007) A structural MRI study in monozygotic twins concordant or discordant for attention/hyperactivity problems: evidence for genetic and environmental heterogeneity in the developing brain. Neuroimage 35:1004–1020

van Dyck CH, Quinlan DM, Cretella LM, Staley JK, Malison RT, Baldwin RM, Seibyl JP, Innis RB (2002) Unaltered dopamine transporter availability in adult attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Am J Psychiatry 159:309–312

Volkow ND (2006) Stimulant medications: how to minimize their reinforcing effects? Am J Psychiatry 163:359–361

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Logan J, Schlyer D, Hitzemann R, Lieberman J, Angrist B, Pappas N, MacGregor R et al (1994) Imaging endogenous dopamine competition with [11C]raclopride in the human brain. Synapse 16:255–262

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Newcorn J, Fowler JS, Telang F, Solanto MV, Logan J, Wong C, Ma Y, Swanson JM, Schulz K, Pradhan K (2007a) Brain dopamine transporter levels in treatment and drug naive adults with ADHD. Neuroimage 34:1182–1190

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Newcorn J, Telang F, Solanto MV, Fowler JS, Logan J, Ma Y, Schulz K, Pradhan K, Wong C, Swanson JM (2007b) Depressed dopamine activity in caudate and preliminary evidence of limbic involvement in adults with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Arch Gen Psychiatry 64:932–940

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Kollins SH, Wigal TL, Newcorn JH, Telang F, Fowler JS, Zhu W, Logan J, Ma Y, Pradhan K, Wong C, Swanson JM (2009) Evaluating dopamine reward pathway in ADHD: clinical implications. Jama 302:1084–1091

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Newcorn JH, Kollins SH, Wigal TL, Telang F, Fowler JS, Goldstein RZ, Klein N, Logan J, Wong C, Swanson JM (2010) Motivation deficit in ADHD is associated with dysfunction of the dopamine reward pathway. Mol Psychiatry 20(4):717–734

Wang J, Jiang T, Cao Q, Wang Y (2007) Characterizing anatomic differences in boys with attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder with the use of deformation based morphometry. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol 28:543–547

Wilens TE (2008) Effects of methylphenidate on the catecholaminergic system in attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. J Clin Psychopharmacol 28:S46–S53

Willcutt EG, Doyle AE, Nigg JT, Faraone SV, Pennington BF (2005) Validity of the executive function theory of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder: a meta-analytic review. Biol Psychiatry 57:1336–1346

Williams GV, Goldman-Rakic PS (1995) Modulation of memory fields by dopamine D_1 receptors in prefrontal cortex. Nature 376:572–575

Experimental Protocols for Behavioral Imaging: Seeing Animal Models of Drug Abuse in a New Light

Alexandra R. Aarons, Amanda Talan and Wynne K. Schiffer

Abstract Behavioral neuroimaging is a rapidly evolving discipline that represents a marriage between the fields of behavioral neuroscience and preclinical molecular imaging. This union highlights the changing role of imaging in translational research. Techniques developed for humans are now widely applied in the study of animal models of brain disorders such as drug addiction. Small animal or preclinical imaging allows us to interrogate core features of addiction from both behavioral and biological endpoints. Snapshots of brain activity allow us to better understand changes in brain function and behavior associated with initial drug exposure, the emergence of drug escalation, and repeated bouts of drug withdrawal and relapse. Here we review the development and validation of new behavioral imaging paradigms and several clinically relevant radiotracers used to capture dynamic molecular events in behaving animals. We will discuss ways in which behavioral imaging protocols can be optimized to increase throughput and quantitative methods. Finally, we discuss our experience with the practical aspects of behavioral neuroimaging, so investigators can utilize effective animal models to better understand the addicted brain and behavior.

A. R. Aarons · A. Talan · W. K. Schiffer (✉)
Laboratory for Behavioral and Molecular Neuroimaging,
Feinstein Institute for Medical Research, North Shore - LIJ Health System,
350 Community Drive, Manhasset, NY 11030, USA
e-mail: wschiffer@nshs.edu

A. R. Aarons
State University of New York (SUNY) Uptstate Medical University,
Syracuse, NY 13210, USA

W. K. Schiffer
Department of Psychiatry, NYU School of Medicine,
New York, NY 10016, USA

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 93–115
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2012_206

Published Online: 13 March 2012

Keywords Positron emission tomograph (PET) · Neuroimaging · Resting state · Addiction · Behavioral neuroimaging · Functional neuroimaging

Contents

1 Behavioral Neuroimaging in Animal Models of Addiction

Animal behavioral models have been instrumental in elucidating key biochemical and physiological mechanisms underlying the progression from drug use to drug abuse and addiction. Drug self-administration and conditioned place preference (CPP) constitute the major preclinical behavioral tools used to screen new therapies before clinical testing. Although these behavioral models are useful in predicting addictive liability and effective drug treatments, the power of these models to determine clinical efficacy is a matter of dispute. Preclinical neuroimaging, coupled with real-time assessment of addictive behavior, offers a powerful model for testing addictive liability and pharmacotherapy development.

The overall objective of preclinical behavioral neuroimaging is distinctly different from existing neuroimaging paradigms. This dual paradigm takes advantage of the higher resolution and noninvasive imaging technology that combines measures of brain function with behavior, two relevant endpoints that are more informative and accurate together, rather than alone. This allows for exciting research that investigates whole brain systems in the context of drug abuse within a robust and reproducible experimental setting that reflects real-time behavioral states.

In essence, behavioral neuroimaging helps investigators compare animal behavior to human behavior. If a drug attenuates behavior in an animal paradigm but fails to do so for humans, researchers must question whether they are measuring the same phenomena across different species. The identification of independent, biological markers—patterns of brain function—of the addictive state that are homologous in both animals and humans would serve to validate behavioral models. The promise of common biological measures rests on preclinical imaging, and by

coupling behavioral models with imaging; the validity of animal models increases substantially.

Preclinical behavioral imaging modalities allow us to examine the neuroanatomical and neurochemical impairments produced by a specific substance, and examine neurochemically-specific treatment regimens that can minimize the addictive liability of drugs. Behavioral functional imaging in small animals provides a comprehensive view of the progression from drug use to drug abuse that comprises both behavioral and biological measures with strong clinical relevance. For example, limitations of drug reinstatement models for screening therapeutic medications are suggested by the generally poor agreement of findings with clinical studies in humans (Katz and Higgins 2003; Shaham et al. 2003). Ideally, the addition of imaging will lead to more effective therapies that enter into Phase I and Phase II clinical trials (McArthur 2011). The net result could be the development of more effective pharmacotherapy treatments, which would greatly enhance the therapeutic availability for individuals seeking addiction treatment. In sum, preclinical imaging offers a translational tool to study drug abuse, with continual improvement in the predictability of animal models (Borsook et al. 2006; McArthur 2011).

Our aim is to strengthen the understanding of methodological issues in behavioral imaging studies, specifically in the context of translational models of drug abuse. In this review, we will briefly cover different imaging methods with an emphasis on functional positron emission tomograph (PET) techniques, as PET offers the unique opportunity to image brain function in animals that are free to move in any experimental environment, outside of the scanner itself. We will discuss optimal study designs for preclinical behavioral imaging. We will emphasize the strengths and weaknesses of various approaches, and highlight some of the issues associated with neuroimaging across species and modalities. Finally, we will critically evaluate the potential of behavioral imaging as a translational tool to align preclinical models with clinical manifestations of drug abuse.

2 Behavioral Imaging Modalities: Strengths and Weaknesses

There are several types of neuroimaging approaches common to both clinical and preclinical fields. Our focus will be the strengths and weaknesses of behavioral imaging with PET, and we will also discuss functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI). Both behavior imaging modalities can provide insight on drug use and abuse, disease progression and successful treatment development.

For fMRI, there are significant challenges in imaging functional activity in animals that are not necessarily applicable to PET methods. In the main, fMRI studies require that animal subjects be inside the magnet during image acquisition, which means that they must be anesthetized, immobilized, restrained, or trained—this limits behavioral output to all but the simplest behaviors. The use of anesthetics is a significant confound to functional imaging studies not only because of obvious limitations on behavior, but also because of alterations in brain function

associated with anesthetic agents (see below). Further, the need to adopt special stimulation systems within the magnet, the intense noise levels produced by the magnet and the general lack of ability to observe the animal because it is placed deep within the magnet core, all limit the repertoire of behavioral imaging studies that can be performed with functional MRI in rodents (Borsook and Becerra 2011). However, devices for conscious animal imaging have been reported (Schulz and Vaska 2011), although most require surgical implantation into the skull of animal subjects, which can introduce additional confounds on brain function (Khubchandani et al. 2003; Schiffer et al. 2006; Frumberg et al. 2007). Restraint molds and training are also options for fMRI studies where image acquisition must occur at the time of behavioral measurements (Becerra et al. 2011), however again, this precludes measurements of all but the simplest behaviors.

For the study of drug abuse and addiction, the most appropriate behavioral models require that animals be able to respond to stimuli. Functional PET studies, as described below, can be performed outside the tomograph with minimal or no effects on animal behavior, given an appropriate radiotracer. Important information has been gained from imaging studies in which behavioral measures were obtained separately from image acquisition (reviewed in Dalley et al. 2009). No matter the paradigm, parallel behavioral measures have highlighted individual responses in correlations of change in behavior with change in brain function (Dalley et al. 2007; Schiffer et al. 2009), allowing another important dimension of cross-species consistency in the study of drug abuse.

3 "Snapshot" Imaging Protocols

The strategy we discuss here is unique in that it focuses on simultaneous measurements of brain activity and behavior from the same imaging session, however as always, there are trade-offs that must be considered in the experimental design. As previously mentioned, a major benefit to the field of neuroscience is the ability to measure changes in metabolic activity with behavioral responses. With small animal PET, animal subjects receive radiotracer administration prior to image acquisition, and successively are able to freely behave in an experimental environment during their uptake period. Thus, the images captured represent brain metabolism or neurochemical changes that occur while the animal is freely behaving. These behaviors can be trained or drug induced. Many functional PET studies in humans are designed in this same way, where scans are conducted after the completion of a behavioral task and the radiotracer is akin to a photograph taken at the moment of the behavioral experience. Some qualities of optimal radiotracers are given in Table 1.

Simultaneous PET imaging and behavior measures are acquired using radiotracers, such as 2-[^{18}F]fluoro-2-deoxy-D-glucose (^{18}F-FDG or FDG), which are captured and trapped in tissue for an extended period of time post radiotracer administration, or with the use of receptor-specific radiotracers whose kinetics are predictable and well-established (Patel et al. 2008). This dual imaging and behavioral paradigm provides a solid covariate for image analysis.

Table 1 Ideal radiotracer qualities for behavioral imaging in freely moving animals[a]

- Chemical stability
- Non-toxic
- High lipophilicity and efficient extraction into the brain (high lipid solubility with ready passage of the tracer across the blood brain barrier, BBB)
- High extraction by the brain, with a distribution that is proportional to blood flow
- Specificity—a prolonged retention in brain tissue with a fixed distribution that is independent of regional blood flow variations
- Inability of radiolabeled metabolites to cross the BBB and/or rapid clearance of these metabolites from blood, unless radiolabeled metabolites in the brain can be accounted for by ratio quantitation methods
- A trapping mechanism where the mechanism itself is not altered by the disease pathology
- Radioactive half-life long enough to permit radiotracer injection during the occurrence of the behavior and subsequent anesthesia and image acquisition
- Radioactive half life that is short enough to allow decay within a few hours to days to minimize radiation exposure to the animal and to laboratory staff, and also to permit rescanning of the animal subject as its own control
- A photon energy compatible with currently used instrumentation

[a] Adapted from (Holschneider and Maarek 2004)

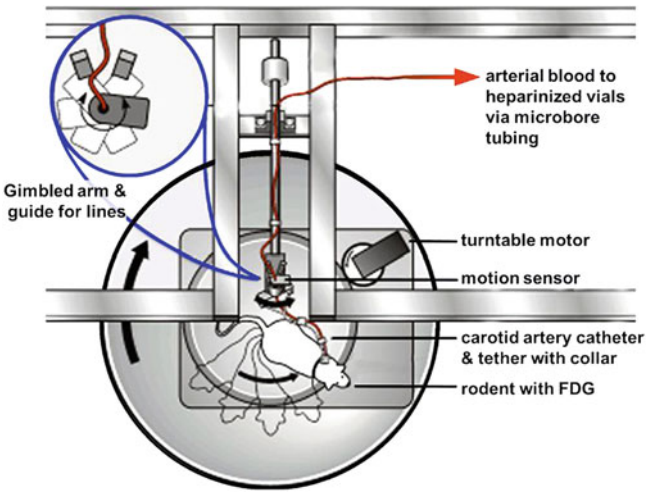


Fig. 1 Example apparatus for sampling arterial blood from freely moving animals for fully quantitative metabolic function studies. Modified BAS Raturn system (Bioanalytical Systems, Inc. [BASi] West Lafayette, IN) offer a counter-balanced arm and tethering system that allow the animal to move freely until an optical sensor is activatated, which counter-rotates the cage. This gives the animal the illusion of running when actually the cage is moving instead, while catheter lines are stabilized through the counterbalanced arm. The use of specialized microdialysis tubing minimizes dead volume to 1.2 μL/10cm, reducing the physiological burden of large volume blood samples

The compromise for performing behavioral imaging studies using these snapshot PET protocols, where radiotracer uptake occurs outside of the tomograph, is temporal resolution. Therefore, the concurrent behavioral measure must be long lasting (Schiffer et al. 2007). An example protocol is shown in Fig.1, where the

uptake and "trapping" of FDG occurs over a period of 25–45 min. Despite the relatively poor temporal resolution, the animals can move freely during radiotracer uptake in any experimental environment. Thus, animal behavior measurements can be directly related to brain activity during this period. This is fundamental to our definition of "snapshot" behavioral neuroimaging, in which measures of brain metabolism reflect the neural networks involved during the simultaneous measurement of a behavioral response.

The strengths of functional MRI and PET continue to advance the behavioral imaging field. fMRI has high temporal resolution, relative ease of application and lacks radiation exposure. In addition, fMRI provides a time course of blood oxygenation during functional imaging experiments, facilitating the use of network models such as principal or independent component analyzes (PCA or ICA, respectively). While the spatial resolution of structural MRI is orders of magnitude higher than for PET, the spatial resolution of functional MRI is roughly the same as the spatial resolution of the newest generation of small animal PET scanners. For example, a functional MRI dataset with an initial in-plane resolution of 0.8×0.8 mm smoothed with a standard filter of 1.5 voxels results in a final resolution of 1.2×1.2 mm (Steward et al. 2005), which is just over the quoted resolution of most small animal PET scanners (Magota et al. 2011).

An additional advantage of small animal PET for longitudinal behavioral imaging studies is the ability to obtain quantitative functional information from one scan to the next, such that PET outcome measures can be absolute over time. However, the variability that has plagued clinical FDG PET measurements since the initial scans were performed (Phelps et al. 1979b; Camargo et al. 1992; Alavi et al. 1994; Alkire et al. 1999) is also seen in animals; some animal subjects have higher brain metabolism than their genetically identical peers, just as some humans have higher metabolic rates than their siblings or age-matched cohorts (Bressan et al. 2004; Marsteller et al. 2006). This significant issue will be discussed below with respect to global normalization and image quantitation.

Despite the differences between PET and MRI, the literature surrounding functional MRI in rodents has been a valuable resource in the development of preclinical PET imaging protocols and procedures. It benefits any behavioral imaging study in rodents to consult both bodies of literature. For example, the important selection of a baseline task and the use of the "resting state" as a surrogate marker of disease is a compelling new direction for both modalities (see below). The success of behavioral imaging in animal models and the potential of these techniques to enable more predictive clinical treatments relies on several experimental parameters, such as the route of radiotracer administration, the imaging/anesthetic protocol, and the selection of a baseline state or condition. Next we will briefly describe the principle behind behavioral imaging with FDG PET and also with [^{11}C]-raclopride PET, another radiotracer widely employed in clinical studies of drug abuse that has recently been applied to awake imaging studies of cue-induced craving. Following, we will suggest practical experimental guidelines for behavioral imaging that can be generally applied.

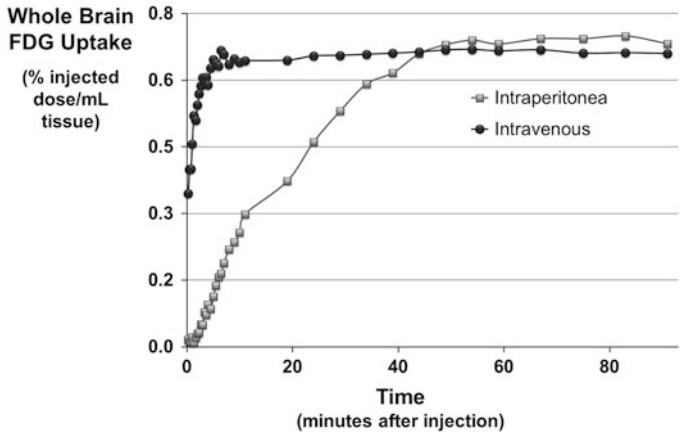


Fig. 2 Time course of intraperitoneal versus intravenous FDG uptake in the brain of the anesthetized rat. The time activity of [^{18}F] in plasma from the same animals is given in Schiffer et al. 2007

4 Behavioral Imaging of Metabolic Function with FDG

FDG is a derivative of 2-deoxyglucose that has an attached fluorine-18 isotope. 2-Deoxyglucose (DG) has been found to measure brain glucose metabolism (Sokoloff et al. 1977) and FDG a glucose analog, has similar utility. DG and FDG compete with glucose for transport sites into the brain (Phelps et al. 1979b), and when FDG is phosphorylated by hexokinase, it is transported across the membrane and becomes "trapped" intracellularly. It is important to realize that with this method, unlike functional imaging with MRI, the scanning, and the uptake period do not occur at the same time. During the uptake period, the scanning has not yet begun; the animal or the human subjects are not usually in the PET scanner, but outside performing a task. After the uptake period, the subject is placed into the tomograph for a short scan and the resulting images show the accumulated pattern of metabolic demand during the prior uptake period.

The principles underlying functional imaging with FDG PET were derived from those developed for autoradiography by Sokoloff et al. (1977). In humans, uptake of FDG and metabolic trapping in brain tissue as FDG-6-phosphate is 80–90% complete at 32 min (Phelps et al. 1979a). The eventual PET images represent the accumulated regional FDG uptake that occurred during the corresponding uptake period. Glucose metabolic rates are calculated using the deoxyglucose kinetic models of Sokoloff that were originally developed for animals, modified for humans, and now applied to animals again with small animal PET (Toyama et al. 2004b; Schiffer et al. 2006; Ravasi et al. 2011). Full quantitation of FDG requires repeated blood sampling, which can be done in freely moving animals using an in vivo microdialysis set up, as shown in Fig. 2 (Schiffer et al. 2006). However, not only does the required arterial blood sampling affect animal behavior (personal observations; animals increase locomotion and become visibly anxious), which is likely related to

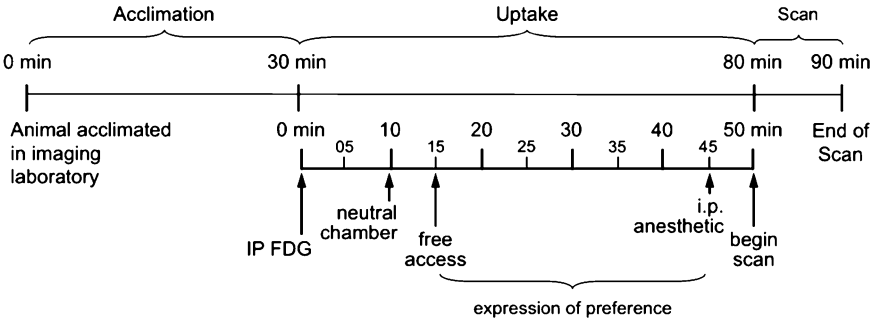


Fig. 3 Behavioral imaging protocol for FDG studies of brain function simultaneously with behavioral measurements of conditioned place preference (CPP). Animals receive an intraperitoneal (IP) injection of FDG and ten minutes later, are placed in a neutral chamber. This is based on the time course of IP FDG to reach the blood stream (Schiffer et al. 2007), which peaks 14 min after IP injection. After 10 min, animals are given free access to all chambers of the apparatus for 35 min, after which they are anesthetized and scanned for 10 min. Adapted from Carrion et al. 2009

sampling-induced activation of compensatory mechanisms such as arterial baroreceptors, it may also result in changes in blood flow or blood pressure and other physiological measurements (Kalisch et al. 2001). In addition, while microdialysis systems such as the Raturn (Bioanalytical Systems Inc., Indiana, USA) are historically referred to as "freely moving" systems (Schiffer et al. 2000), the range of available behavioral measurements is limited by the tether and the bowl (see Fig. 2).

In an extension of the experiment conducted by Sokoloff et al. (1977), it was found that the concentration of ^{18}F increases in human tissue for 90 min before plateauing (Phelps et al. 1979b). Based on previous studies and our own work with ^{18}F-FDG in rodents, it is optimal to allow at least 45 min for uptake prior to anesthesia (Kornblum et al. 2000; Schiffer et al. 2007; Wong et al. 2011). Figure 3 shows the time course of FDG in the brain with intravenous (IV) versus intraperitoneal (IP) injections. It is evident from Fig. 3 that once FDG reaches tissues and is taken up and trapped, it is fairly impenetrable for 90 min. After the 90 min period, dephosphorylation of FDG (k_4 in models of the rate of glucose metabolism) by hexokinase produces a slow decline in the time activity of FDG in these tissues. Importantly, this time period is much shorter in mice, and can be as early as 80 min (Mirrione et al. 2006, 2007; Wong et al. 2011).

Prior to image acquisition, researchers can obtain blood samples via venous sampling (i.e. tail vein). These samples provide the precise amount of ^{18}F in the bloodstream and also can be used, together with blood glucose levels, to acquire percent injected dose (Marsteller et al. 2006). We have previously shown that a single blood measure of FDG and glucose concentrations can be used to calculate a standard uptake value (SUV) that correlates to full quantitation of the rate of glucose metabolism (Schiffer et al. 2007), although this is not necessarily more reliable than using the calculated injected dose from an IP injection (Marsteller et al. 2006). Other studies have used anesthetized animals to acquire a population blood curve and demonstrated a robust and reproducible signal. However, these animals were anesthetized and not freely behaving during uptake, which must be

accounted for (Meyer et al. 2006). Similarly, image-derived input functions are also promising solutions to quantitate local metabolic rate of glucose metabolism (LMRGlu) (Huang et al. 2004; Schiffer et al. 2007), however, these animals must also be anesthetized during FDG uptake, which again, precludes simultaneous behavioral measurements.

When determining brain activations associated with a behavioral challenge, it is assumed that the changes in FDG uptake reflect an increased metabolic demand associated with changes in neuronal firing. Thus, regional changes in brain FDG uptake are only indirect reflections of changes in brain function associated with cognitive or behavioral tasks. Further, unless full kinetic modeling is used to calculate the LMRGlu in anesthetized animals, FDG uptake itself becomes the outcome measure. Thus, FDG uptake is a proxy for LMRGlu which, in turn, is a proxy for neuronal firing or inhibition. In all of this, it is critical that the fundamental principles of the FDG model are not violated by the imaging protocol or experimental design. For example, alterations in blood brain barrier permeability or changes in glucose levels during the critical period of FDG uptake can confound measurements of brain function, especially when FDG uptake is used as a proxy for LMRGlu.

FDG PET in rodent models of addiction provides an objective readout of CNS function that can inform behavioral studies of CNS disorders. This behavioral imaging paradigm introduces a novel framework for investigations concerning brain function and the effects of drug abuse on that function. This is very much an iterative process where functional measures of the physiology of drug use and abuse can be defined by neural circuitry rather than by behavior alone.

5 Behavioral Imaging of Dopaminergic Function with [^{11}C]-Raclopride

Dopaminergic neurotransmission plays a prominent role in the rewarding effects of abused drugs, such as cocaine. Binding of the radioligand, [^{11}C]-labeled raclopride, to dopamine D2 receptors is sensitive to the levels of endogenous dopamine in the synapse, which can be released either by stimulants such as cocaine or, in drug abusing patients, by the presentation of cocaine-associated cues (Volkow et al. 2006, 2008; Wong et al. 2006). In fact, behavioral imaging studies in humans have shown increased dopamine release associated with specific behavioral stimuli, such as passive reward, conditioned reward, gambling, and many others (reviewed in Egerton et al. 2009).

Several methodological and analytical approaches have been applied to [^{11}C]-raclopride studies of dopamine release following behavioral challenges in humans, each of which have different practical and methodological advantages and disadvantages. Animal studies are limited to some degree by the need to anesthetize animals for image acquisition, although our group has performed many experiments to optimize the scanning protocol such that the anesthesia has little or no effect on [^{11}C]-raclopride binding parameters (Patel et al. 2008). The basic

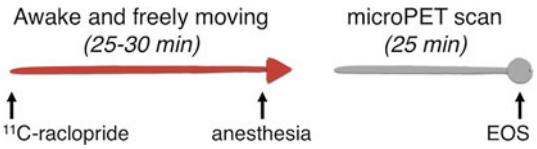


Fig. 4 Behavioral imaging protocol for [^{11}C]-raclopride studies in freely moving animals. Prior to each imaging session, polyurethane tubing is connected to a catheter port in unrestrained animals as they are allowed free movement in the home cage or test environment. [^{11}C]-raclopride is delivered as a 5–10 sec bolus and the line flushed immediately with heparinized saline. During uptake, the lines can be loosely taped to the outside of the conditioning chamber (for CPP) or routed through a swivel, as in Fig. 1. Leaving the lines in the animal permits remote administration of anesthetic without perturbing or interacting with the animal during [^{11}C]-raclopride uptake. After 30 min, ketamine/xylazine is administered through the same intravenous catheter line and animals are nonresponsive to tail pinch or eye blink in less than 10 seconds. They are then positioned in the small animal PET gantry and scanned for 25 min, after which they return to their home cage and are monitored until recovery from anesthesia

protocol is shown in Fig. 4. Following earlier studies with [^{3}H]-raclopride (Wadenberg et al. 2000, 2001), the well-established kinetic profile of [^{11}C]-raclopride and its prolonged sensitivity to changes in endogenous dopamine levels make this radiotracer an optimal ligand for behavioral imaging studies. That said, one of the most significant criticisms of [^{11}C]-raclopride as a dopamine-sensitive PET radiotracer is that the time course of the change in [^{11}C]-raclopride binding is considerably longer than the change in dopamine levels (for review, see Laruelle et al. 1997). For example, it is well known that amphetamine-induced dopamine release peaks and returns to baseline within 30 min, yet [^{11}C]-raclopride is displaced by this dopamine pulse for as long as 5 h after amphetamine administration (Houston et al. 2004). While this may be a shortcoming of the radiotracer for kinetic studies, for behavioral imaging studies in freely moving animals it provides a relatively impenetrable signal change that persists through uptake, anesthesia and scanning (Patel et al. 2008; Schiffer et al. 2009).

Importantly, with [^{11}C]-raclopride and other receptor-mediated radiotracers, the effects of specific activity (the amount of radioactivity per unit mass of unlabeled compound) is important to consider, especially when the actual image acquisition (scanning) occurs after at least one half-life of carbon-11 has passed. Contrary to intuition, high resolution PET imaging of small animals cannot be performed with tracer doses scaled down in the ratio of animal to human body mass. Indeed, it can be shown that, to a first approximation, the same absolute amount of radioactivity must be used in both subjects. The reason for this is that the size of the resolution "voxel" appropriate to the mouse or rat scales with the mass of the animal. If the statistical precision of the activity measurement in that voxel is to be equivalent to a human study, the same absolute amount of [^{11}C]-raclopride must be delivered to the small animal voxel. This requirement, in turn, implies that the same absolute amount of unlabeled raclopride must be given to the animal as to the human,since it is the raclopride that carries the radioactivity to that voxel (we will use raclopride as an example but this applies to any radiotracer with a limited number of

binding sites in the brain). However, if a human dose of [^{11}C]-raclopride is given to an animal, the concentration of raclopride in the animal may be thousands of times greater than in the human, since the animal is thousands of times less massive. The possibility exists, therefore, that such large concentrations of unlabeled raclopride could, in some cases, cause pharmacological effects in rodents rather than act as tracer doses. We have previously established the mass dose of unlabeled raclopride delivered with [^{11}C]-raclopride at a range of specific activities that causes a pharmacological effect in the brain (Schiffer et al. 2005). Simultaneous measurements of extracellular dopamine levels during small animal [^{11}C]-raclopride PET scans demonstrated that mass doses over $\sim$5 nmol/kg of unlabeled raclopride begin to influence measures of binding potential, in agreement with other reports (Hume et al. 1995; Kung and Kung 2005; Fischer et al. 2011). One way to minimize this problem is to synthesize rodent deliveries of [^{11}C]-raclopride with specific activities much higher than for human subjects. The increased sensitivity of newer generation small animal tomographs permits lower injected doses of radioactivity to obtain the same counting statistics and statistical confidence in the image. Nevertheless, with awake animal [^{11}C]-raclopride imaging, image acquisition occurs after a period of uptake that is approximately one half-life of carbon-11 (see Fig. 4), so the amount of radioactivity is at least half of that injected. Furthermore, we have shown that with awake intravenous injections of [^{11}C]-raclopride, approximately fourfold less radiotracer reaches the brain compared to [^{11}C]-raclopride delivered to an anesthetized animal (for more details, see Patel et al. 2008). This means that even more radioactivity must be injected into the animal for an awake behavioral imaging study, and further underscores the importance of high specific activity syntheses of [^{11}C]-raclopride for behavioral small animal PET. Regardless of the protocol, it is a good idea to implement a routine procedure to plot the specific activity of each injection by the measured binding potential from each scan, to ensure there are no systematic biases in radiotracer binding introduced by the mass of unlabeled ligand. Significant correlations between the mass of raclopride administered and the measured [^{11}C]-raclopride binding potential would indicate that the specific activity of the radiotracer preparation may be confounding the experimental results.

6 Technical Issues

6.1 Route of Radiotracer Administration

One major goal of preclinical behavioral imaging is to ensure that the process of imaging does not influence the animals' behavior, or is as minimally intrusive as possible. For minimal disturbance of the behavioral measure, catheterized animals are the ideal test subjects. The jugular or femoral catheter permits intravenous administration through a protracted catheter line, whose length can be extended out from an experimental test environment. This route of administration is

preferable because the injection is less of a disturbance, compared to an IP injection. However, jugular or femoral catheterization is experimentally more complicated than an IP injection, and requires flushing with heparin several times weekly to maintain the patency of the catheter.

IP injections do not require surgical catheterization, although they do involve additional animal handling during the uptake period. The IP route of administration is also problematic due to delayed and often unpredictable absorption of the radiotracer from the intraperitoneal cavity into the blood stream. This delayed absorption can result in a poorly defined temporal resolution, in addition to variable brain penetration from the IP injection. Dynamic FDG PET studies have shown that IP injections of FDG take approximately 14 min to reach the brain (Schiffer et al. 2006). Fortunately with FDG, once the radiotracer has been trapped, it is relatively impenetrable, and IP injections after 45 min of uptake do not affect the regional profile of metabolic activity (Schiffer et al. 2007; Gremese and Schulz 2011). Figure 3 shows that both IV and IP routes result in comparable brain uptake at later time points.

The question of which route of administration is "best" depends on the specific task. An IP injection of a radiotracer is optimal for experiments where behavioral measurements are performed over a long period of time. The relatively slow delivery of FDG would also be advantageous if the desired drug or task did not produce immediate effects. On the other hand, IV administration would produce a faster delivery of radiotracer or substance into the blood stream. Practically, this means that the window of imaging the drug or task effect with an IV injection should be much smaller than with an IP injection, although the temporal resolution is still limited by the duration it takes for the radiotracer to be trapped once delivered to tissues (see above). With intravenous FDG, plasma 18F concentrations peak in the blood between 3 and 5 s after FDG, whereas with IP injections, peak plasma 18F occurs 14 min after injection (Schiffer et al. 2007).

Some radiotracers, such as [^{11}C]-raclopride, are metabolized in the periphery and cannot be delivered by IP injection (personal observation). A recent study using [^{18}F]-fallypride also demonstrated limited utility of IP injections for awake animal studies of dopamine dynamics (Yoder et al. 2011).

6.2 *Effects of Anesthesia on Functional Imaging with "Snapshot" Protocols*

It should be noted that, for functional imaging with FDG and a burgeoning number of radiotracers such as [^{11}C]-raclopride, a single PET scan is taken immediately at the end of a period of tracer uptake, at a time when the animals can be immobilized by anesthesia with minimal, if any, effect on tracer distribution (Matsumura et al. 2003; Schiffer et al. 2007; Patel et al. 2008; Ravasi et al. 2011). This procedure avoids the need to use anesthesia to immobilize the animal during the critical period of tracer uptake by the brain while the animal is free to behave naturally.

The use of catheterized animals or remote infusion pumps (Holschneider et al. 2002, 2003) allow the delivery of both radiotracer and anesthetic without any interaction from the investigator. For this reason, an important avenue for functional imaging in rodents will be to further remove any interaction with the investigator, as both radiotracer and anesthetic can be delivered remotely (Schiffer et al. 2009).

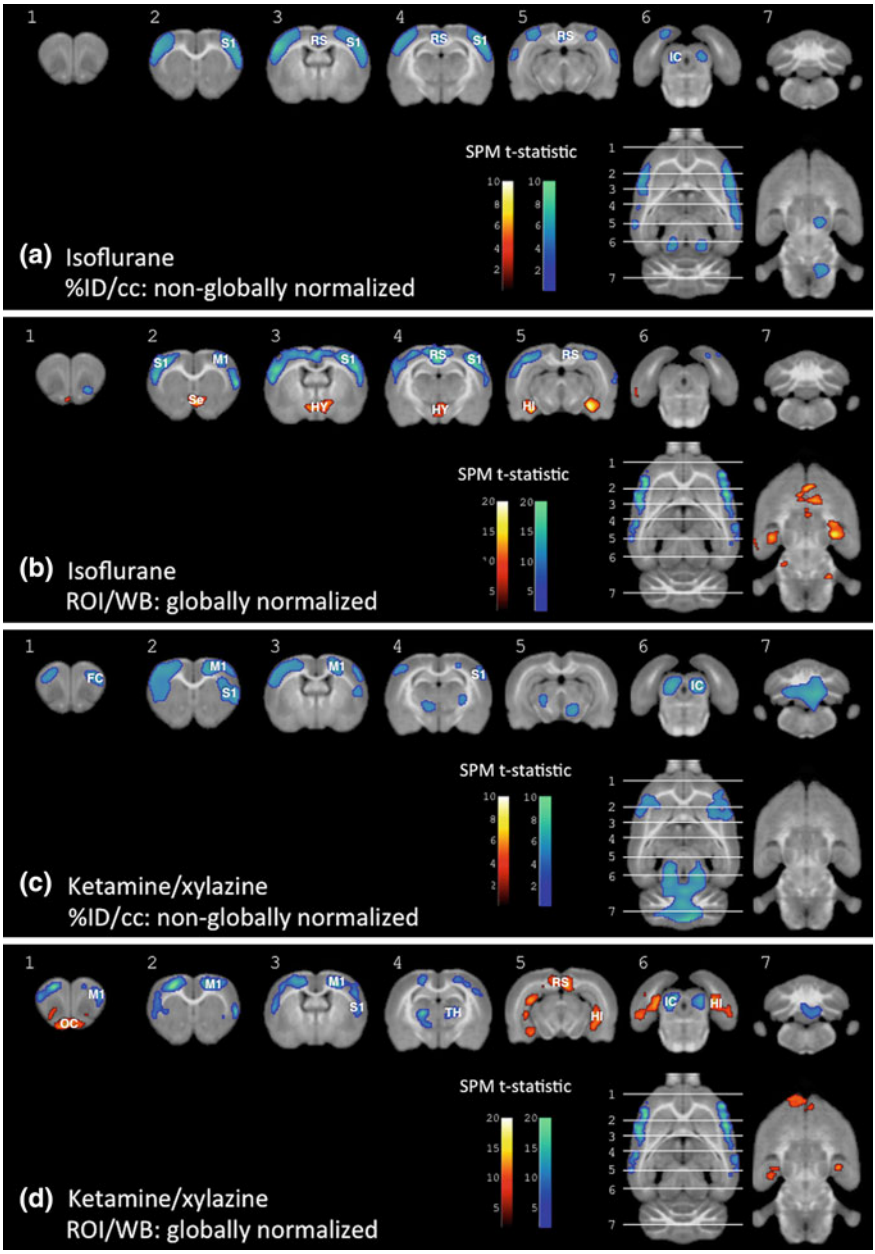
Inevitably, animals must be anesthetized for scanning. We rely on the impenetrable nature of specific radiotracers (here, FDG and [^{11}C]-raclopride) to not be affected by anesthesia at this late stage of scanning.

6.3 The Use of Anesthesia for Behavioral Imaging Studies in Animals

Many behavioral imaging research reports appropriately address the issue of anesthesia, as well as restraint stress or training, as part of their discussion. Indeed, it is our experience that journal referees and conference attendees frequently draw attention to the subject of anesthesia. However, there is very little synthesis of understanding with respect to either the use of anesthesia in these animal models or the differential effects of distinct anesthetics. Each laboratory is well able to justify their choice of anesthetic regime, training schedule, or restraint device; some because they appear to preserve normal neuronal function, others because they have minimal effects on peripheral physiological functions. Discrepancies in results between studies are commonly ascribed to differences in the anesthetic regime, training schedule or restraint device, and while these explanations are plausible, they are not illuminating. Data reported from studies using anesthetized, restrained, or trained animal models have direct implications for the design, analysis and interpretation of neuroimaging studies using awake humans. It is thus just as important to consider the effects of these experimental modifications as it is species differences. There are problems associated with movement artifacts and there is a danger of supplanting the adverse effects of anesthesia with those of restraint stress. Our "snapshot" protocol circumvents some of these limitations at the cost of temporal resolution. The awake animal models described here, though modeled as much after clinical FDG and [^{11}C]-raclopride PET studies as possible, do not provide a complete solution. It will be critical for more users to employ these types of behavioral imaging studies to both validate and push the field forward.

6.4 Defining the Baseline State

A critical challenge in behavioral neuroimaging in animals is to identify the control or baseline condition. This can greatly impact the interpretation of functional imaging studies. In a standard functional imaging design, brain activity


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
S1
RS
IC
SPM t-statistic
(a) Isoflurane
%ID/cc: non-globally normalized
M1
Se
HY
HI
(b) Isoflurane
ROI/WB: globally normalized
FC
(c) Ketamine/xylazine
%ID/cc: non-globally normalized
OC
TH
(d) Ketamine/xylazine
ROI/WB: globally normalized

◀**Fig. 5** Voxel-based analysis of anesthesia-induced changes in FDG uptake. Voxel values, percent change from awake, resting baseline and abbereviations for each region are given in Table 2. SPM t-maps represent changes in brain FDG uptake from rats (n = 8) tested three times: awake, resting state uptake versus anesthetized FDG uptake with first isoflurane (a and b) followed one week later by ketamine/xylazine (c and d). All SPM t-maps were corrected for multiple comparisons using False Discovery Rate (FDR) correction with a threshold of $p < 0.001$. Non-globally normalized SPM t-maps were not proportionally scaled (a and c) and represent the significance of the change in FDG uptake expressed as percent injected dose per mL brain tissue. For the globally normalized SPM t-maps (b and d), global differences were adjusted by the SPM software in each animal by scaling the voxel intensities so that the mean intensity for each brain is the same (proportional scaling). Analysis of the values in Table 2 show that increases on globally normalized SPM t-maps (for example, in the hippocampal regions of b and d) represent those regions that are less suppressed by anesthesia when non-globally normalized values are compared (a and c)

during two conditions is compared by subtraction—identifying the difference between brain areas that change activation state (increase or decrease) in the experimental condition, relative to a baseline condition. This requires great attention to matching the challenge condition to an appropriate baseline condition. Depending on the complexity of the behavioral model within a behavioral imaging study design, this may represent a formidable challenge.

In longitudinal studies, animal subjects serve as their own control, rather than comparing separate control and challenge groups. Longitudinal studies provide the advantage of using the same animals in a serial scan design, which reduces animal numbers. That said, subtle confounding factors such as repeated handling and anesthesia can complicate the interpretation of behavioral imaging data. In some cases, it is a necessary advantage to have animals that have been handled (or not handled) in exactly the same manner. For example, in longitudinal designs where the loss of a cage-mate leaves one animal singly housed, subtle effects on the behavior of the animal can impact functional imaging studies or the acquisition of a learned behavior (Langford et al. 2006, 2010).

Additional error may be introduced in longitudinal designs from repositioning errors of the subject's head within the scanner. While software for spatial pre-processing may aid in minimizing repositioning errors, detailed reference test-retest studies are needed to identify the variation between two studies on the same animal subjects under the same baseline condition (Marsteller 2006).

The ability of anesthetics to change global baseline brain function has created the opportunity to examine the relevance of global baseline (resting) brain activity in terms of region-specific cerebral processing in humans and in animals (Shulman et al. 2003; Vincent et al. 2007). Because FDG can be carried out in both awake and anesthetized animals, many of the initial small animal PET studies focused on the effects of anesthesia on brain metabolism by comparing awake and anesthetized states (for example, see Matsumura et al. 2003; Shimoji et al. 2004; Toyama et al. 2004a). A different way to use the anesthetized state is to juxtapose it to a resting baseline state, to determine which brain regions might be activated at rest

by those which are deactivated under anesthesia, and vice versa (Vincent et al. 2007). In this way, the ability of anesthetics to alter brain metabolism has been exploited as a tool to examine the contributions of global baseline or resting brain function to specific tasks controlled by discrete brain areas (Shulman et al. 2003; Vincent et al. 2007). In this regard, we have compiled data from our previous study comparing awake, freely moving uptake to the same animals under ketamine anesthesia (Schiffer et al. 2007) with new data using the same protocol in which animals were scanned in a freely moving state followed 1 week later by scanning under ketamine anesthesia, and 1 week later under isoflurane anesthesia (Fig. 5). Together, this data highlights several important points both about the resting state in animals, as well as the potentially misleading presentation of globally normalized data analyzed with voxel-based analyzes.

Furthermore, the baseline condition or basal brain function can possibly drive experimental results where resting state scans are obtained from the same animals over time. However, preclinical resting state scans are increasing in popularity because of their coherence to clinical resting state scans. Clinical studies have shown, for instance, that there is a distinct pattern of functional connections in the resting state that distinguish both Alzheimer's disease patients and Parkinson's patients from age-matched healthy controls (Huang et al. 2007; Horwitz and Rowe 2011). This study design is appealing to small animal functional imaging for several reasons. First, no training is required and no task performance necessary during image acquisition; all imaging is performed during the resting state. Second, and related, is that no interpretation of behavioral results are necessary to determine how relevant the animal model is to the clinical disease; the brain scans provide an independent, biological measure of the similarities and differences between the animal model and human resting state scans. For these reasons, resting state studies hold promise for determining the clinical relevance of genetically modified animal models of human disease where there is evidence of functional connectivity alterations at rest (Ulug et al. 2011). However, global changes in brain function can confound the interpretation of differences, especially in resting state conditions. In Fig. 5, data from anesthetized animals compared to an awake, resting state baseline state show that global normalization of pixel values can be misleading. When globally normalized, positive t-scores do not represent increases in activity per se, but actually reflect those areas in which the decreases in brain FDG uptake were of less magnitude than the change in global mean. Template-based ROI values for the same data in Fig. 5 are given in Table 2, where it is evident in regions such as the hippocampus that increases in normalized values (ROI/WB) actually represent less of a decrease in absolute FDG uptake (%ID/cc).

In clinical studies of brain function, the argument has also been posed that the baseline condition is rarely predictive of the activation condition (Morcom and Fletcher 2007; Hyder and Rothman 2011). That is, basal brain function is not a predictor of brain function in activated states. Evidence in support of this notion has also recently been shown with electrophysiological studies in animals (Li et al. 2011). However, basal brain function is a significant confound to studies that have

Table 2 Regional changes in FDG uptake with (a) isoflurane anesthesia, (b) ketamine anesthesia

Brain region	%ID/cc					ROI/WB				
	Awake		Anesthetized		%Δ	Awake		Anesthetized		%Δ
	Mean	SD	Mean	SD		Mean	SD	Mean	SD	
a. Isoflurane anesthesia										
NAcc	0.52	0.07	0.44	0.09	-16^{*}	1.17	0.03	1.24	0.05	7^{*}
Amyg	0.42	0.06	0.35	0.06	-15	0.93	0.04	1.01	0.03	9^{***}
CPu	0.58	0.08	0.47	0.09	-19^{*}	1.28	0.03	1.33	0.05	4^{*}
S1	0.61	0.08	0.38	0.07	-38^{***}	1.35	0.03	1.07	0.03	-21^{***}
M1	0.64	0.09	0.44	0.08	-31^{**}	1.42	0.02	1.26	0.03	-11^{***}
ACC	0.67	0.09	0.48	0.09	-28^{**}	1.48	0.03	1.36	0.06	-8^{***}
FC	0.60	0.09	0.46	0.09	-23^{*}	1.34	0.02	1.32	0.05	-1
Ins	0.50	0.06	0.37	0.07	-25^{**}	1.10	0.03	1.06	0.02	-4
HIP_{ant}	0.44	0.05	0.37	0.07	-15	0.98	0.02	1.07	0.03	9^{***}
HIP_{post}	0.39	0.05	0.35	0.06	-10	0.86	0.03	0.99	0.03	15^{***}
HY	0.40	0.05	0.36	0.07	-11	0.89	0.04	1.02	0.02	14^{***}
Sup Coll	0.55	0.07	0.42	0.07	-25^{**}	1.23	0.03	1.19	0.05	-3
CB	0.38	0.05	0.31	0.05	-18^{*}	0.84	0.03	0.88	0.04	5
Inf Coll	0.60	0.09	0.43	0.07	-28^{**}	1.35	0.05	1.23	0.08	-9^{**}
TH	0.55	0.11	0.41	0.08	-25^{**}	1.26	0.02	1.22	0.03	-3^{*}
RSC	0.54	0.08	0.37	0.07	-31^{**}	1.20	0.02	1.07	0.03	-11^{***}
OC	0.53	0.07	0.41	0.08	-23^{**}	1.17	0.02	1.16	0.03	-2
Sept	0.41	0.06	0.36	0.08	-12	0.91	0.05	1.01	0.07	11^{*}
b. Ketamine anesthesia										
NAcc	0.52	0.07	0.41	0.11	-21	1.17	0.03	1.26	0.04	9^{*}
Amyg	0.42	0.06	0.32	0.09	-24^{**}	0.93	0.04	0.97	0.03	4^{**}
CPu	0.58	0.08	0.41	0.11	-28^{**}	1.28	0.03	1.27	0.03	-1

(continued)

Table 2 (continued)

Brain region	%ID/cc					ROI/WB				
	Awake		Anesthetized		%Δ	Awake		Anesthetized		%Δ
	Mean	SD	Mean	SD		Mean	SD	Mean	SD	
S1	0.61	0.08	0.40	0.10	-34^{***}	1.35	0.03	1.12	0.02	-17^{**}
M1	0.64	0.09	0.42	0.10	-35^{***}	1.42	0.02	1.29	0.03	-9^{***}
ACC	0.67	0.09	0.49	0.09	-26^{**}	1.48	0.03	1.50	0.05	1
FC	0.60	0.09	0.45	0.12	-25^{**}	1.34	0.02	1.37	0.03	3^{***}
Ins	0.50	0.06	0.34	0.09	-31^{***}	1.10	0.03	1.05	0.03	-5^{**}
HIP_{ant}	0.44	0.05	0.36	0.09	-19^{**}	0.98	0.02	1.10	0.03	12^{***}
HIP_{post}	0.39	0.05	0.31	0.08	-19^{**}	0.86	0.03	0.96	0.03	11^{***}
HY	0.40	0.05	0.30	0.08	-26^{**}	0.89	0.04	0.91	0.03	2
Sup Coll	0.55	0.07	0.37	0.10	-34^{***}	1.23	0.03	1.12	0.02	-8^{***}
CB	0.38	0.05	0.26	0.06	-33^{**}	0.84	0.03	0.79	0.03	-6^{***}
Inf Coll	0.60	0.09	0.37	0.10	-39^{***}	1.35	0.05	1.12	0.04	-17^{***}
TH	0.55	0.11	0.39	0.12	-30^{***}	1.26	0.02	1.20	0.02	-5^{***}
RSC	0.54	0.08	0.45	0.13	-17	1.20	0.02	1.38	0.08	14^{***}
OC	0.53	0.07	0.42	0.12	-20^{*}	1.17	0.02	1.29	0.04	10^{***}
Sept	0.41	0.06	0.31	0.09	-24^{***}	0.91	0.05	0.86	0.02	-6^{*}

NAcc Nucleus accumbens, *Amyg* Amygdala, *CPu* Caudate putamen, *S1* Primary somatosensory cortex, *M1* Motor cortex, *ACC* Cingulate cortex, *FC* Frontal cortex, *Ins* Insula, HIP_{ant} Hippocampus (anterodorsal), HIP_{post} Hippocampus (posterior), *HY* Hypothalamus, *Sup Coll* Superior colliculus, *CB* Cerebellum, *Inf Coll* Inferior colliculi, *TH* Thalamus, *RSC* Retrosplenial cortex, *OC* Olfactory cortex, *Sept* Septum

$^{***}p < 0.001$, significant difference from awake baseline

** $p < 0.01$, significant difference from awake baseline

* $p < 0.05$, significant difference from awake baseline

no challenge or perturbation and that seek to rely on serial resting state scans to distinguish pathological conditions. This is really only relevant to studies that use the resting state as a condition that is "subtracted" from the baseline state (Hyder and Rothman 2011). Nevertheless, it can significantly hamper efforts to mimic clinical resting state studies in transgenic animals.

7 Convergence or Divergence of Behavioral and Imaging Data, of Human and Animal Data

Despite research that describes a well-defined relationship between brain function and behavior, there are circumstances in which divergence between behavioral and brain functional measures occur. Even so, the absence of a concurrent behavioral effect does not mean that regional changes in brain function are insignificant. In fact, it may be that activation of neural circuits do not always manifest in a clear behavioral response (Brodie 1996). This becomes especially complicated when extrapolating animal brain/behavior relationships to human brain/behavior relationships. More generally, not enough might yet be known about the structure of rodent cognition to say how behavioral measures should constrain interpretations of brain activation, if they should at all.

The main point we wish to highlight is that there may be legitimate circumstances where behavioral and neural activation measures diverge. There is a danger in rejecting significant patterns of brain activation just because they are not mirrored behaviorally, especially in animals. In clinical studies there are many reports in which an experimental perturbation changes response at the imaging, but not the behavioral level (for review, see Wilkinson et al. 1998; Erlandsson et al. 2003). The reverse has also been shown, in which significant effects are found in the behavioral, but not the imaging data (Grady et al. 2001).

8 Conclusions

Preclinical behavioral neuroimaging offers a platform for measuring concurrent changes in animal brain function and behavior. Brain imaging, in particular, is one technique that has cross-species consistency, as do various operant conditioning procedures. Using PET and radiotracers such as [^{11}C]-raclopride or FDG, preclinical behavioral imaging studies can closely parallel functional imaging experiments in humans. Small animal behavioral imaging, like all new disciplines, must find converging support where and when it can. There are two main areas for such support. The first can be derived from concordance with analogous functional imaging experiments in humans, and the second through multiple ancillary measures that are only accessible to preclinical imaging. These include additional measurements that may not be possible from human subjects, such as simultaneous in vivo microdialysis, electrophysiology, or histological measures to corroborate the imaging itself, in addition, to the behavioral responses.

Preclinical imaging of brain systems offers exciting opportunities to better understand the neurobiology of drug abuse and addiction. Using a dual (behavior and imaging) paradigm, we are better able to interrogate how well our animal models parallel human conditions and diseases. The behavioral imaging techniques (PET and fMRI) have emerged as fundamental tools for studying brain

structure, network connectivity, and the responses to pharmacological challenges in animal models (reviewed in Borsook et al. 2006; Lancelot and Zimmer 2010; Cumming et al. 2011). Small animal PET and fMRI instrumentation have become more sophisticated, yet easier to operate. This has enabled a greater number of researchers the opportunity to conduct small animal investigations leading to more advances in the preclinical imaging field.

Acknowledgments We are grateful for helpful discussions with Dr. David Eidelberg. We are also grateful for scientific support from the National Institutes of Health (NIH) National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA-R01-DA25729) and National Institute of Environmental Health Sciences (NIEHS RC1-ES018534) to WKS, as well as the Department of Defense (DOD) Peer Reviewed Medical Research Program (PRMRP 094020) to WKS.

References

Alavi A, Smith R, Duncan D (1994) What are the sources of error in measuring and calculating cerebral metabolic rates with fluorine-18-fluorodeoxyglucose and PET? J Nucl Med 35:1466–1470

Alkire MT, Pomfrett CJ, Haier RJ, Gianzero MV, Chan CM, Jacobsen BP, Fallon JH (1999) Functional brain imaging during anesthesia in humans: effects of halothane on global and regional cerebral glucose metabolism. Anesthesiology 90:701–709

Becerra L, Chang PC, Bishop J, Borsook D (2011) CNS activation maps in awake rats exposed to thermal stimuli to the dorsum of the hindpaw. Neuroimage 54:1355–1366

Borsook D, Becerra L (2011) CNS animal fMRI in pain and analgesia. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 35:1125–1143

Borsook D, Becerra L, Hargreaves R (2006) A role for fMRI in optimizing CNS drug development. Nat Rev Drug Discov 5:411–424

Bressan RA, Erlandsson K, Mulligan RS, Gunn RN, Cunningham VJ, Owens J, Cullum ID, Ell PJ, Pilowsky LS (2004) A bolus/infusion paradigm for the novel NMDA receptor SPET tracer [123I]CNS 1261. Nucl Med Biol 31:155–164

Brodie JD (1996) Imaging for the clinical psychiatrist: facts, fantasies, and other musings [editorial]. Am J Psychiatry 153:145–149

Camargo EE, Szabo Z, Links JM, Sostre S, Dannals RF, Wagner HN, Jr. (1992) The influence of biological and technical factors on the variability of global and regional brain metabolism of 2-[18F]fluoro-2-deoxy-D-glucose. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 12:281–290

Cumming P, Caprioli D, Dalley JW (2011) What have positron emission tomography and 'Zippy' told us about the neuropharmacology of drug addiction? Br J Pharmacol 163:1586–1604

Dalley JW, Fryer TD, Brichard L, Robinson ES, Theobald DE, Laane K, Pena Y, Murphy ER, Shah Y, Probst K, Abakumova I, Aigbirhio FI, Richards HK, Hong Y, Baron JC, Everitt BJ, Robbins TW (2007) Nucleus accumbens D2/3 receptors predict trait impulsivity and cocaine reinforcement. Science 315:1267–1270

Dalley JW, Fryer TD, Aigbirhio FI, Brichard L, Richards HK, Hong YT, Baron JC, Everitt BJ, Robbins TW (2009) Modelling human drug abuse and addiction with dedicated small animal positron emission tomography. Neuropharmacology 56(Suppl 1):9–17

Egerton A, Mehta MA, Montgomery AJ, Lappin JM, Howes OD, Reeves SJ, Cunningham VJ, Grasby PM (2009) The dopaminergic basis of human behaviors: a review of molecular imaging studies. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 33:1109–1132

Erlandsson K, Bressan RA, Mulligan RS, Gunn RN, Cunningham VJ, Owens J, Wyper D, Ell PJ, Pilowsky LS (2003) Kinetic modelling of [123I]CNS 1261—a potential SPET tracer for the NMDA receptor. Nucl Med Biol 30:441–454

Fischer K, Sossi V, Schmid A, Thunemann M, Maier FC, Judenhofer MS, Mannheim JG, Reischl G, Pichler BJ (2011) Noninvasive nuclear imaging enables the in vivo quantification of striatal dopamine receptor expression and raclopride affinity in mice. J Nucl Med 52:1133–1141

Frumberg DB, Fernando MS, Lee DE, Biegon A, Schiffer WK (2007) Metabolic and behavioral deficits following a routine surgical procedure in rats. Brain Res 1144:209–218

Grady CL, McIntosh AR, Beig S, Craik FI (2001) An examination of the effects of stimulus type, encoding task, and functional connectivity on the role of right prefrontal cortex in recognition memory. Neuroimage 14:556–571

Gremese F, Schulz FW (2011) Qualitative and quantitative data analysis. In: Keiessling F, Pichler BJ (eds) Small animal imaging, Springer, Berlin, pp 363–378

Holschneider DP, Maarek JM (2004) Mapping brain function in freely moving subjects. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 28:449–461

Holschneider DP, Maarek JM, Harimoto J, Yang J, Scremin OU (2002) An implantable bolus infusion pump for use in freely moving, nontethered rats. Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol 283:H1713–H1719

Holschneider DP, Maarek JM, Yang J, Harimoto J, Scremin OU (2003) Functional brain mapping in freely moving rats during treadmill walking. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 23:925–932

Horwitz B, Rowe JB (2011) Functional biomarkers for neurodegenerative disorders based on the network paradigm. Prog Neurobiol 95:505–509

Houston GC, Hume SP, Hirani E, Goggi JL, Grasby PM (2004) Temporal characterisation of amphetamine-induced dopamine release assessed with [11C]raclopride in anaesthetised rodents. Synapse 51:206–212

Huang SC, Wu HM, Shoghi-Jadid K, Stout DB, Chatziioannou A, Schelbert HR, Barrio JR (2004) Investigation of a new input function validation approach for dynamic mouse microPET studies. Mol Imaging Biol 6:34–46

Huang C, Tang C, Feigin A, Lesser M, Ma Y, Pourfar M, Dhawan V, Eidelberg D (2007) Changes in network activity with the progression of Parkinson's disease. Brain 130:1834–1846

Hume SP, Opacka-Juffry J, Myers R, Ahier RG, Ashworth S, Brooks DJ, Lammertsma AA (1995) Effect of L-dopa and 6-hydroxydopamine lesioning on [11C]raclopride binding in rat striatum, quantified using PET. Synapse 21:45–53

Hyder F, Rothman DL (2011) Evidence for the importance of measuring total brain activity in neuroimaging. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:5475–5476

Kalisch R, Elbel GK, Gossl C, Czisch M, Auer DP (2001) Blood pressure changes induced by arterial blood withdrawal influence bold signal in anesthesized rats at 7 Tesla: implications for pharmacologic MRI. Neuroimage 14:891–898

Katz JL, Higgins ST (2003) The validity of the reinstatement model of craving and relapse to drug use. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 168:21–30

Khubchandani M, Mallick HN, Jagannathan NR, Mohan Kumar V (2003) Stereotaxic assembly and procedures for simultaneous electrophysiological and MRI study of conscious rat. Magn Reson Med 49:962–967

Kornblum HI, Araujo DM, Annala AJ, Tatsukawa KJ, Phelps ME, Cherry SR (2000) In vivo imaging of neuronal activation and plasticity in the rat brain by high resolution positron emission tomography (microPET). Nat Biotechnol 18:655–660

Kung MP, Kung HF (2005) Mass effect of injected dose in small rodent imaging by SPECT and PET. Nucl Med Biol 32:673–678

Lancelot S, Zimmer L (2010) Small-animal positron emission tomography as a tool for neuropharmacology. Trends Pharmacol Sci 31:411–417

Langford DJ, Crager SE, Shehzad Z, Smith SB, Sotocinal SG, Levenstadt JS, Chanda ML, Levitin DJ, Mogil JS (2006) Social modulation of pain as evidence for empathy in mice. Science 312:1967–1970

Langford DJ, Tuttle AH, Brown K, Deschenes S, Fischer DB, Mutso A, Root KC, Sotocinal SG, Stern MA, Mogil JS, Sternberg WF (2010) Social approach to pain in laboratory mice. Social neuroscience 5:163–170

Laruelle M, Iyer RN, al-Tikriti MS, Zea-Ponce Y, Malison R, Zoghbi SS, Baldwin RM, Kung HF, Charney DS, Hoffer PB, Innis RB, Bradberry CW (1997) Microdialysis and SPECT measurements of amphetamine-induced dopamine release in nonhuman primates. Synapse 25:1–14

Li A, Gong L, Xu F (2011) Brain-state-independent neural representation of peripheral stimulation in rat olfactory bulb. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:5087–5092

Magota K, Kubo N, Kuge Y, Nishijima K, Zhao S, Tamaki N (2011) Performance characterization of the Inveon preclinical small-animal PET/SPECT/CT system for multimodality imaging. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 38:742–752

Marsteller DA, Barbarich-Marsteller NC, Fowler JS, Schiffer WK, Alexoff DL, Rubins DJ, Dewey SL (2006) Reproducibility of intraperitoneal 2-deoxy-2-[(18)F]-fluoro-D-glucose cerebral uptake in rodents through time. Nucl Med Biol 33:71–79

Matsumura A, Mizokawa S, Tanaka M, Wada Y, Nozaki S, Nakamura F, Shiomi S, Ochi H, Watanabe Y (2003) Assessment of microPET performance in analyzing the rat brain under different types of anesthesia: comparison between quantitative data obtained with microPET and ex vivo autoradiography. Neuroimage 20:2040–2050

McArthur R (2011) Many are called, yet few are chosen. Are neuropsychiatric clinical trials letting us down? Drug Discov Today 16:173–175

Meyer PT, Circiumaru V, Cardi CA, Thomas DH, Bal H, Acton PD (2006) Simplified quantification of small animal [18F]FDG PET studies using a standard arterial input function. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 33:948–954

Mirrione MM, Schiffer WK, Siddiq M, Dewey SL, Tsirka SE (2006) PET imaging of glucose metabolism in a mouse model of temporal lobe epilepsy. Synapse 59:119–121

Mirrione MM, Schiffer WK, Fowler JS, Alexoff DL, Dewey SL, Tsirka SE (2007) A novel approach for imaging brain-behavior relationships in mice reveals unexpected metabolic patterns during seizures in the absence of tissue plasminogen activator. Neuroimage 38:34–42

Morcom AM, Fletcher PC (2007) Does the brain have a baseline? Why we should be resisting a rest. Neuroimage 37:1073–1082

Patel VD, Lee DE, Alexoff DL, Dewey SL, Schiffer WK (2008) Imaging dopamine release with positron emission tomography (PET) and (11)C-raclopride in freely moving animals. Neuroimage 41:1051–1066

Phelps ME, Huang SC, Hoffman EJ, Selin C, Sokoloff L, Kuhl DE (1979a) Tomographic measurement of local cerebral glucose metabolic rate in humans with [18F]2-fluoro-2-deoxyglucose: validation of method. Ann Neurol 6:371–388

Phelps ME, Huang SC, Hoffman EJ, Selin C, Sokoloff L, Kuhl DE (1979b) Tomographic measurement of local cerebral glucose metabolic rate in humans with (F-18)2-fluoro-2-deoxy-D-glucose: validation of method. Ann Neurol 6:371–388

Ravasi L, Shimoji K, Soto-Montenegro ML, Esaki T, Seidel J, Sokoloff L, Schmidt K (2011) Use of [18F]fluorodeoxyglucose and the ATLAS small animal PET scanner to examine cerebral functional activation by whisker stimulation in unanesthetized rats. Nucl Med Commun 32:336–342

Schiffer WK, Gerasimov MR, Bermel RA, Brodie JD, Dewey SL (2000) Stereoselective inhibition of dopaminergic activity by gamma vinyl-GABA following a nicotine or cocaine challenge: a PET/microdialysis study. Life Sci 66:PL169–PL173

Schiffer WK, Alexoff DL, Shea C, Logan J, Dewey SL (2005) Development of a simultaneous PET/microdialysis method to identify the optimal dose of 11C-raclopride for small animal imaging. J Neurosci Meth 144:25–34

Schiffer WK, Mirrione MM, Biegon A, Alexoff DL, Patel V, Dewey SL (2006) Serial microPET measures of the metabolic reaction to a microdialysis probe implant. J Neurosci Meth 155:272–284

Schiffer WK, Mirrione MM, Dewey SL (2007) Optimizing experimental protocols for quantitative behavioral imaging with 18F-FDG in rodents. J Nucl Med 48:277–287

Schiffer WK, Liebling CN, Reiszel C, Brodie JD, Dewey SL (2009) Cue-induced dopamine release predicts cocaine preference: PET studies in freely moving rodents. J Neurosci 29(19):6176–6185(in press)

Schulz D, Vaska P (2011) Integrating PET with behavioral neuroscience using RatCAP tomography. Rev Neurosci 22:647–655

Shaham Y, Shalev U, Lu L, De Wit H, Stewart J (2003) The reinstatement model of drug relapse: history, methodology and major findings. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 168:3–20

Shimoji K, Ravasi L, Schmidt K, Soto-Montenegro ML, Esaki T, Seidel J, Jagoda E, Sokoloff L, Green MV, Eckelman WC (2004) Measurement of cerebral glucose metabolic rates in the anesthetized rat by dynamic scanning with 18F-FDG, the ATLAS small animal PET scanner, and arterial blood sampling. J Nucl Med 45:665–672

Shulman RG, Hyder F, Rothman DL (2003) Cerebral metabolism and consciousness. C R Biol 326:253–273

Sokoloff L, Reivich M, Kennedy C, Des Rosiers MH, Patlak CS, Pettigrew KD, Sakurada O, Shinohara M (1977) The [14C]deoxyglucose method for the measurement of local cerebral glucose utilization: theory, procedure, and normal values in the conscious and anesthetized albino rat. J Neurochem 28:897–916

Steward CA, Marsden CA, Prior MJ, Morris PG, Shah YB (2005) Methodological considerations in rat brain BOLD contrast pharmacological MRI. Psychopharmacology 180:687–704

Toyama H, Ichise M, Liow JS, Vines DC, Seneca NM, Modell KJ, Seidel J, Green MV, Innis RB (2004a) Evaluation of anesthesia effects on [18F]FDG uptake in mouse brain and heart using small animal PET. Nucl Med Biol 31:251–256

Toyama H, Ichise M, Liow JS, Modell KJ, Vines DC, Esaki T, Cook M, Seidel J, Sokoloff L, Green MV, Innis RB (2004b) Absolute quantification of regional cerebral glucose utilization in mice by 18F-FDG small animal PET scanning and 2-14C-DG autoradiography. J Nucl Med 45:1398–1405

Ulug AM, Vo A, Argyelan M, Tanabe L, Schiffer WK, Dewey S, Dauer WT, Eidelberg D (2011) Cerebellothalamocortical pathway abnormalities in torsinA DYT1 knock-in mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:6638–6643

Vincent JL, Patel GH, Fox MD, Snyder AZ, Baker JT, Van Essen DC, Zempel JM, Snyder LH, Corbetta M, Raichle ME (2007) Intrinsic functional architecture in the anaesthetized monkey brain. Nature 447:83–86

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Telang F, Fowler JS, Logan J, Childress AR, Jayne M, Ma Y, Wong C (2006) Cocaine cues and dopamine in dorsal striatum: mechanism of craving in cocaine addiction. J Neurosci 26:6583–6588

Volkow ND, Wang GJ, Telang F, Fowler JS, Logan J, Childress AR, Jayne M, Ma Y, Wong C (2008) Dopamine increases in striatum do not elicit craving in cocaine abusers unless they are coupled with cocaine cues. Neuroimage 39:1266–1273

Wadenberg ML, Kapur S, Soliman A, Jones C, Vaccarino F (2000) Dopamine D2 receptor occupancy predicts catalepsy and the suppression of conditioned avoidance response behavior in rats. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 150:422–429

Wadenberg ML, Soliman A, VanderSpek SC, Kapur S (2001) Dopamine D2 receptor occupancy is a common mechanism underlying animal models of antipsychotics and their clinical effects. Neuropsychopharmacology 25:633–641

Wilkinson LS, Humby T, Killcross AS, Torres EM, Everitt BJ, Robbins TW (1998) Dissociations in dopamine release in medial prefrontal cortex and ventral striatum during the acquisition and extinction of classical aversive conditioning in the rat. Eur J Neurosci 10:1019–1026

Wong DF et al (2006) Increased occupancy of dopamine receptors in human striatum during cue-elicited cocaine craving. Neuropsychopharm 31:2716–2727

Wong KP, Sha W, Zhang X, Huang SC (2011) Effects of administration route, dietary condition, and blood glucose level on kinetics and uptake of 18F-FDG in mice. J Nucl Med 52:800–807

Yoder KK, Mock BH, Zheng QH, McCarthy BP, Riley AA, Hutchins GD (2011) Assessment of i.p. injection of [18F]fallypride for behavioral neuroimaging in rats. J Neurosci Methods 196:70–75

Molecular Imaging and the Neuropathologies of Parkinson's Disease

Paul Cumming and Per Borghammer

Abstract The main motor symptoms of Parkinson's disease (PD) are linked to degeneration of the nigrostriatal dopamine (DA) fibers, especially those innervating the putamen. This degeneration can be assessed in molecular imaging studies with presynaptic tracers such as [^{18}F]-fluoro-*L*-DOPA (FDOPA) and ligands for DA transporter ligands. However, the pathologies of PD are by no means limited to nigrostriatal loss. Results of post mortem and molecular imaging studies reveal parallel degenerations of cortical noradrenaline (NA) and serotonin (5-HT) innervations, which may contribute to affective and cognitive changes of PD. Especially in advanced PD, cognitive impairment can come to resemble that seen in Alzheimer's dementia, as can the degeneration of acetylcholine innervations arising in the basal forebrain. The density of striatal DA D_2 receptors increases in early untreated PD, consistent with denervation upregulation, but there is an accelerated rate of DA receptor loss as the disease advances. Animal studies and post mortem investigations reveal changes in brain opioid peptide systems, but these are poorly documented in imaging studies of PD. Relatively minor changes in the binding sites for GABA are reported in cortex and striatum of PD patients. There remains some controversy about the expression of the 18 kDa translocator protein (TSPO) in activated microglia as an indicator of an active inflammatory component of neurodegeneration in PD. A wide variety of autonomic disturbances

P. Cumming (✉)
Department of Nuclear Medicine, Ludwig-Maximilian's University of Munich, Munich, Germany
e-mail: paul.k.cumming@gmail.com

P. Borghammer
Department of Nuclear Medicine and PET Center, Aarhus University Hospital, Aarhus, Denmark

P. Cumming
Department of Nuclear Medicine, Klinikum Grosshadern, Marchioninistrasse 15, 81377, Munich, Germany

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 117–148
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2011_165

Published Online: 28 October 2011

contribute to the clinical syndrome of PD; the degeneration of myocardial sympathetic innervation can be revealed in SPECT studies of PD patients with autonomic failure. Considerable emphasis has been placed on investigations of cerebral blood flow and energy metabolism in PD. Due to the high variance of these physiological estimates, researchers have often employed normalization procedures for the sensitive detection of perturbations in relatively small patient groups. However, a widely used normalization to the global mean must be used with caution, as it can result in spurious findings of relative hypermetabolic changes in subcortical structures. A meta-analysis of the quantitative studies to date shows that there is in fact widespread hypometabolism and cerebral blood flow in the cerebral cortex, especially in frontal cortex and parietal association areas. These changes can bias the use of global mean normalization, and probably represent the pathophysiological basis of the cognitive impairment of PD.

Keywords Parkinson's disease · PET · Dopamine · Serotonin · Noradrenaline · Receptors · TSPO · Cerebral blood flow · CMRglc · SPECT

Contents

1 Introduction

The loss of pigmentation in the substantia nigra was noted in post mortem brain of patients dying following the epidemic of post-encephalitic parkinsonism (von Economo 1931). Once the neurochemical anatomy of monoaminergic neurons had been described in human brain (Carlsson et al. 1962), the motor symptoms of

Parkinson's disease (PD) could be linked to the degeneration of the mesencephalic DA neurons, with consequent loss of DA innervation to the extended striatum. In general, the cardinal motor symptoms of PD, i.e. rigidity and bradykinesia are alleviated with DA substitution via the precursor levodopa, or with direct DA receptor agonists. However, the therapeutic response to these pharmacological treatments is ultimately marred by the emergence of motor complications as the disease advances. Furthermore, patients with advanced PD frequently develop dementia (Aarsland et al. 2005), depression, anxiety, and other symptoms which are generally unresponsive to DA substitution therapy. While the greatest emphasis has been placed on PET investigations of neurochemical pathology in relation to motor symptoms, the cognitive and affective manifestations of PD cannot be ignored. It seems imperative to understand PD not as a disease *sensu strictu* of the nigrostriatal pathway, but as a widespread systemic disease affecting multiple sites in the central nervous system and multiple organ and sensory systems. A comprehensive understanding of the protean neuropathology of PD may be a prerequisite for designing effective neuroprotective strategies, and for appreciating the spectrum of cognitive and affective changes that occur in PD, as distinct from the motor symptoms.

2 Dopamine

PET imaging of nigrostriatal degeneration with the DOPA decarboxylase substrate 6-[^{18}F]-fluoro-*L*-DOPA (FDOPA) was one of the first successes of molecular imaging of PD (Nahmias et al. 1985). In many subsequent FDOPA PET studies, the net influx to brain of FDOPA (K_{in}^{app}; ml g^{-1} min^{-1}) is calculated based upon the assumption that the [^{18}F]fluorodopamine formed in striatum is irreversibly trapped within synaptic vesicles, mainly within dopaminergic neurons. However, this trapping is reversible due to the catabolism of [^{18}F]fluorodopamine to acidic metabolites; their diffusion from brain is especially evident in FDOPA recordings lasting longer than one hour. As an alternative index of the status of DA innervations, the FDOPA steady-state binding capacity can be calculated (V_D; ml g^{-1}). This distribution volume can be defined as the ratio of FDOPA utilization in brain tissue divided by the elimination rate constant of [^{18}F]fluorodopamine, which is best calculated from dynamic FDOPA recordings lasting 2 hours or more, wherein the progressive washout of [^{18}F]fluorodopamine is clearly evident. This approach resolves a paradox in the literature that FDOPA utilization is unchanged with healthy aging (Kumakura et al. 2010b); as seen in Fig. 1a, the FDOPA K_{in}^{app} is nearly identical in groups of healthy young and old subjects, whereas there is a substantial loss in FDOPA V_D with age. The steady-state approach also shows an even greater impairment in FDOPA V_D in putamen of early PD patients (Kumakura et al. 2006), contralateral to the main symptoms, and also throughout the cerebral cortex, as also presented in Fig. 1a. We attribute these changes to declining vesicular binding capacity within the composite of monoamine innervations, i.e. DA

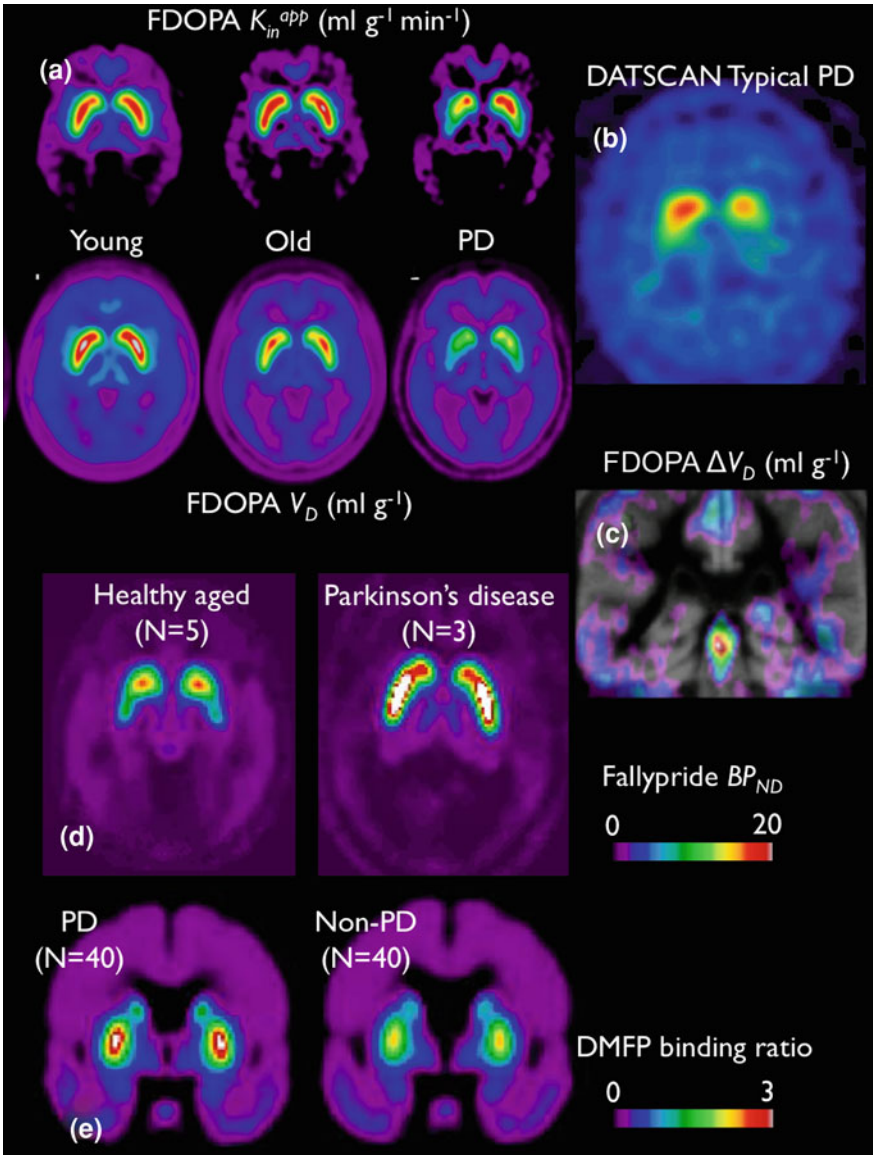


Fig. 1 **a** Mean parametric maps in groups of healthy young (<40 years), healthy old (>50 years) and Parkinson's disease (PD) patients, showing the FDOPA net blood brain clearance (K_{in}^{app}; *upper row*), and the steady-state distribution volume (V_D) [reproduced with permission from Kumakura and Cumming (2009)], **b** a representative DATSCAN image from a patient with early asymmetric PD **c** the increased FDOPA trapping (V_D) in the dorsal raphe nucleus of a group of PD patients [reproduced with permission from Kumakura et al. (2010a)], **d** binding sites for [^{18}F]-fallypride in brain of healthy elderly subjects, and untreated PD patients, and **e** the use of DMFP-PET for the discriminative diagnosis of PD and non-PD basal ganglia disease

noradrenalin and serotonin. Impaired retention of [^{18}F]fluorodopamine is also evident in FDOPA PET studies of monkeys with MPTP-induced parkinsonism (Cumming et al. 2001), consistent with the increased DA metabolite ratios measured post mortem (Pifl and Hornykiewicz 2006). Dopamine content is typically reduced by 95% in post mortem putamen from PD patients, in whom the disease has run its full course. However, the relative concentration of DA metabolites such as homovanillic acid is substantially increased in putamen from PD patients (Bokobza et al. 1984). Insofar as metabolite ratios indicate the exposure of cytosolic DA to degradation by monoamine oxidase, the *post mortem r*esults support a PET-derived model of PD in which DA storage capacity cannot accommodate the residual capacity to synthesize DA, which is relatively preserved in parkinsonian striatum.

Since the advent of FDOPA PET, diverse agents have been developed for imaging reuptake sites, vesicular transporters, and post-synaptic sites in the nigrostriatal DA system. In a multi-tracer PET study of PD patients, the relative decline in the striatal binding of [^{11}C]-methylphenidate to DA transporters exceeded the declines in the binding of [^{11}C]-dihydrotetrabenazine to DA vesicles, and of the trapping of FDOPA in nigrostriatal terminals (Lee et al. 2000). A similar phenomenon is documented in a triple-tracer PET study of aged and MPTP-lesioned monkeys (Doudet et al. 2006). These results likely reveal a compensatory decrease in the capacity for clearance of interstitial DA, which would enhance the temporal duration and spatial extension (also known as volume transmission) of DA's action in the healthy aged striatum, and to an even greater extent in PD striatum. The behavioral consequences of this altered DA signaling are poorly understood, but may manifest as declining reaction time in motor tasks.

The apparent down-regulation of DA transporters contributes to the sensitivity of molecular imaging for the detection of degeneration of nigrostriatal fibers. The tracer [^{123}I]-ioflupane, commonly known as DATSCAN, had found wide use as a SPECT agent for clinical diagnosis of PD. Figure 1b shows typical findings of asymmetric loss of DA transporters in putamen, contralateral to the main motor symptoms. However, DATSCAN does not reveal the relatively sparse extra-striatal catecholamine innervations, which can be detected with [^{11}C]-nomifensine.

In the primate, cortical DA innervations are concentrated in the motor and premotor cortex and in supplementary motor areas (Berger et al. 1986; Gaspar et al. 1991), unlike the case of rodent brain, in which the prefrontal and limbic cortices have a relatively dense DA innervation. Immunocytochemical analysis of the human motor cortex reveals that DA fibers containing only tyrosine hydroxylase (and not dopamine β-hydroxylase) are twice as abundant as are NA fibers, which contain both enzymes (Gaspar et al. 1991). Tyrosine hydroxylase fibers are 80% depleted in primary motor cortex and premotor cortex of PD patients, especially in the superficial layers. Asymmetry in cortical binding of the catecholamine transporter ligand [^{11}C]-nomifensine correlated with clinical motor symptoms (rigidity and tremor) especially in ventromedial prefrontal cortex of early PD patients with asymmetric motor symptoms (Marie et al. 1995) In healthy subjects, FDOPA uptake in caudate and putamen correlated with performance of frontal cortical tasks such as the Stroop test (Vernaleken et al. 2007). However,

PET studies with 6-[^{18}F]fluoro-*meta*-tyrosine, an alternate tracer of catecholamine synthesis, showed a complex relationship with cognition, whereby high tracer uptake in the caudate of young subjects correlated with lower performance of a frontal task (Braskie et al. 2008), in the manner of an inverted U relationship between dopamine and cognitive performance, as has bee nreported for DA D1 receptors in frontal cortex (Takahashi et al. 2008). Nonetheless, high FMT uptake in striatum predicted better performance in a working memory task (Cools et al. 2008). Pharmacological blockade of only 25% of striatal DA receptors (Mehta et al. 2008) evoked cognitive deficits in healthy young subjects similar to those seen in PD (Mehta et al. 1999). Consistent with cognitive deficits emerging before motor symptoms in early PD, deficit in performance of a delayed alternation task has been noted in MPTP-poisoned monkeys without frank motor symptoms, despite increased DA metabolite ratios in post mortem striatum (Schneider 1990). In early PD, cortical FDOPA uptake is reportedly *increased* in association with impaired performance of the Stroop task, and of a test of sustained attention (Bruck et al. 2005), perhaps reflecting an early adaptive change in cortical function in response to a primary nigrostriatal degeneration. Given the relative preservation of DA in the caudate nucleus of early PD patients, this structure has been particularly implicated in cognitive performance. Indeed, a principle component analysis of cerebral blood flow revealed greater expression of cortical networks associated with tactile discrimination of object shape in the sub-group of PD patients with better preserved FDOPA uptake in the caudate nucleus (Weder et al. 2000). Furthermore, FDOPA uptake in caudate of PD patients correlated with impaired performance of verbal memory tests, although atrophy in hippocampus emerged as a more important factor determining cognitive changes (Jokinen et al. 2009). The (inherently rather low) FDOPA uptake in hippocampus of PD patients correlated with performance of the Raven's Colored Progressive Matrices (Nagano-Saito et al. 2004). In advanced PD, the FDOPA uptake in caudate correlated with scores in tests of memory and verbal fluency (an executive function of the frontal lobe), whereas the uptake in putamen uptake correlated with mental flexibility or switching, perhaps arising from impaired motor function in the execution of tasks such as the trail making task (van Beilen et al. 2008).

In healthy subjects, FDOPA uptake specifically in the ventral striatum correlated with affective processing in the frontal cortex, as assessed by BOLD signal changes evoked by presentation of emotionally laden visual stimuli (Siessmeier et al. 2006). Loss of emotional reactivity is well established in PD. Nonetheless, this phenomenon is scarcely investigated by molecular imaging. In one such study, the binding of [^{11}C]-methylphenidate to DA transporters in left putamen correlated with emotionally evoked BOLD changes in the ventrolateral prefrontal cortex of PD patients (Lotze et al. 2009). Depression is likewise frequently encountered in PD. In one PET study, FDOPA uptake in striatum correlated specifically with the cognitive items on an inventory of depression (Koerts et al. 2007). In patients with PD, higher scores for anxiety and depression were associated with reduced DA transporter availability in the left striatum, but only in those patients with less severe PD (Weintraub et al. 2005). This finding of a link between DA loss

specifically in the left striatum and depression, as well as impaired performance of the Tower of London task, was replicated in a [^{123}I]-FP-CIT SPECT of DA transporters in PD patients (Rektorova et al. 2008). Reduced uptake of [^{11}C]-nomifensine in the right putamen correlated with impaired performance of object alternation and conditional associative learning tasks in non-demented PD patients (Marie et al. 1999). Loss of olfactory function is commonly an early presentation of PD. In healthy aged subjects, loss of olfactory sense was most pronounced in those with age-associated (i.e. non-clinical) nigrostriatal degeneration, as revealed by [^{11}C]-β-CFT (Wong et al. 2010).

The abundance of striatal DA D_2 receptors declines by 5–10% per decade of normal aging [e.g. (Antonini et al. 1993)]. Elevated binding of the DA $D_{2/3}$ antagonist ligand [^{11}C]-raclopride is reported in striatum of never-treated patients with early PD (Antonini et al. 1994), consistent with a compensatory up-regulation in response to denervation, as seen in rats with 6-hydroxydopamine lesions (Palner et al. 2010). The elevated binding of the high affinity DA $D_{2/3}$ ligand [^{18}F]-fallypride in putamen of a group of early PD patients is illustrated in Fig. 1d. Despite this early upregulation, follow-up [^{11}C]-raclopride PET studies show an accelerated rate of loss of DA receptors in patients with more advanced PD (Antonini et al. 1997), presumably occurring in parallel with the presynaptic changes described above. However, the rate of this loss is even more pronounced in patients with more aggressive parkinsonian syndromes such as progressive supranuclear palsy. Consequently, molecular imaging with the DA $D_{2/3}$ receptor ligand [^{18}F]-DMFP (Fig. 1e) can aid is the discriminative diagnosis of PD (la Fougere et al. 2010b).

3 Medullary Catecholamine Neurons

The locus coeruleus (LC) is a compact group of NA neurons located on either side of the fourth ventricle, containing approximately 15,000 neurons per side in the human (Ohm et al. 1997). The LC gives rise to NA innervations of the entire neuraxis, with some axons collateralizing to divergent targets such as the cerebellum or cerebral cortex and spinal cord (Loughlin et al. 1982). The number of pigmented neurons in the LC was reduced by 75% in PD patients (Gai et al. 1991), and this reduction has been linked to a history of depression (Frisina et al. 2009). On the other hand, the concentrations of NA and its metabolites were decreased in LC of PD patients with dementia, but were normal in non-demented PD patients, irrespective of their history of mood disorders (Cash et al. 1987). It is generally thought that LC loss is a late manifestation of PD, as supported by FDOPA-PET, which revealed reduced uptake in the LC only in advanced PD (Moore et al. 2008). However, loss of LC neurons in PD can eventually come to exceed that of DA neurons (Zarow et al. 2003). In PD patients without concurrent diagnosis of Alzheimer's dementia, the extent of LC cell loss correlated with severity of dementia

symptoms (Zweig et al. 1993). The extent of degeneration of LC neurons, most especially in PD patients who had suffered from depression, is comparable to that seen in Alzheimer's dementia (Chan-Palay and Asan 1989). LC lesions exacerbate the progression of the MPTP model of parkinsonism in marmoset monkey, (Mavridis et al. 1991), and it has been proposed that LC degeneration can predispose to the development of levodopa dyskinesia (Fornai et al. 2007). This observation led to the suggestion that specifically adrenergic aspects of PD should be the focus of new treatments, with a particular emphasis on dementia symptoms and disease progression (Rommelfanger and Weinshenker 2007).

In a PET study with the non-specific catecholamine uptake site ligand [^{11}C]-RTI, binding was especially reduced in the limbic cortex and thalamus of PD patients with notable depression symptoms (Remy et al. 2005). PET ligands selective for the NA transporter have only recently become available. In one study, age-related loss of the NA transporter was revealed in LC, hypothalamus, and thalamus (Ding et al. 2010), whereas another PET ligand has revealed loss of NA innervations in post mortem material from AD patients (Gulyas et al. 2010). However, PET findings with this class of ligands have not yet been reported in PD patients. In an early report, the densities of post-synaptic α_1 and β_1 adrenergic receptors was increased, whereas α_2 receptors were decreased in frontal cortex from PD patients, which was attributed to LC degeneration and up-regulation of post-synaptic binding sites (Cash et al. 1984). Binding of α_2 receptors in porcine cerebral cortex has been demonstrated with [^{11}C]-yohimbine (Jakobsen et al. 2006), and [^{11}C]-mirtazepine (Smith et al. 2006). The availability of binding sites for the latter compound was reduced in medication-free depressed patients who had earlier failed to benefit from antidepressant medication (Smith et al. 2009). There have been as yet no studies of pre- or post-synaptic markers of adrenergic innervations in PD patients.

Weakly melanized adrenaline neurons expressing the enzyme phenylethanolamine N-methyltransferase (PNMT) are located in the ventrolateral medulla (A1), under the nucleus of the solitary tract (A2) and in the dorsomedial medulla (A3) in human and rodent brain, but not in guinea pig (Cumming et al. 1986). These neurons give rise to adrenergic innervations especially of the hypothalamus, and also to the noradrenergic locus coeruleus and intermediolateral cell columns of the spinal cord. PNMT activity was reduced in hypothalamus of PD patients (Nagatsu et al. 1977), and the abundance of PNMT-positive A1 neurons was reduced by 50%, whereas that of the A3 was reduced by 79% relative to control values, whereas the abundance of A2 neurons was unchanged (Gai et al. 1993). In contrast, an earlier immunohistochemical study with TH antisera had reported a loss of lightly pigmented adrenaline neurons in the medial A2 (Saper et al. 1991), whereas still others had failed to find any significant loss of A1 and A2 adrenaline neurons in a group of three PD patients (Malessa et al. 1990). However, the general concurrence of findings is that brain adrenaline is deficient in PD, which could be predicted to contribute to aspects of autonomic dysfunction.

4 Autonomic Dysfunction

Autonomic dysfunction occurs in a very high percentage of PD patients, and was indeed described by James Parkinson in 1817. The most common manifestations of autonomic dysfunction in PD include male erectile dysfunction, incomplete bladder emptying, constipation, and orthostatic hypotension (Campos-Sousa et al. 2003; Singer et al. 1992). Orthostatic hypotension is most pronounced in patients with long duration of PD (Orskov et al. 1987). Lewy bodies are present in the sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves, and in the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus nerve of PD patients (Braak et al. 2003) and in the cardiac plexus of PD patients (Iwanaga et al. 1999). The number of preganglionic sympathetic neurons in the intermediolateral cell column at the thoracic level was reduced by 70% in patients with PD; Lewy bodies were found in the remaining neurons of PD patients (Wakabayashi and Takahashi 1997). The sympathetic system is generally characterized by a cholinergic preganglionic component and by an adrenergic post-ganglionic component. In rodent, the post-ganglionic innervation of the sweat glands is atypically cholinergic, although noradrenergic markers are transiently expressed during development. However, recent studies indicate that the primate post-ganglionic sudomotor innervation co-express cholinergic and adrenergic markers (Weihe et al. 2005). Although the pathophysiological basis of the hyperhydrosis in PD is poorly understood, excessive sweating can constitute a significant psycho-social aspect of the disease (Swinn et al. 2003). The symptoms are said to be worse off-levodopa, and to correlate in severity more with other autonomic symptoms than with motor symptoms of PD. On the other hand, it has been claimed that thalamotomy was effective against tremor and also hyperhydrosis. Implying a causal relationship between the two, rather than autonomic function per se (Selby 1968).

Abnormalities in parasympathetic function have been frequently reported in PD (see (Koike and Takahashi 1997)). The baseline variation in heart rate at rest, and the variation in response to deep breathing is reduced in PD relative to healthy controls (Orskov et al. 1987), as is heart rate variability during sleep (Kallio et al. 2004), both of which findings suggest parasympathetic failure. The presence of delayed QT interval in the electrocardiogram from PD patients (Deguchi et al. 2002) suggests a basis for the increased risk of PD patients for sudden cardiac death. Sympathetic failure certainly manifests in the high incidence of orthostatic hypotension in PD, which contributes to the propensity of patients to experience falls. However, a pilot PET study with a novel nicotinic receptor ligand did not reveal any alterations in myocardium of PD patients, suggesting that the parasympathetic system in heart is intact (Bucerius et al. 2006).

The catecholamine transporters in myocardial sympathetic fibers can be measured in molecular imaging studies with [^{123}I]-*meta*-iodobenzylguanidine ([^{123}I]-MIBG), [^{18}F]-fluorodopamine, or [^{11}C]-hydroxyephedrine. The myocardial uptake of [^{18}F]-fluorodopamine was substantially reduced in PD patients with orthostatic hypotension (Goldstein et al. 2002). Uptake of this tracer was also reduced in the thyroid gland and in renal cortex of the PD patients, indicating a pervasive loss of

sympathetic fibers. The sympathetic denervation of the legs can likewise be discerned with [^{123}I]-MIGB scintigraphy of patients with PD and autonomic failure (Koike and Takahashi 1997).

The specificity of myocardial denervation for PD has been a matter of controversy; nearly a dozen imaging studies having failed to detect impaired [^{123}I]-MIBG binding in patients with multiple system atrophy or progressive supranuclear palsy (i.e. Yoshita 1998). Indeed, it was considered for a time that [^{123}I]-MIBG scintigraphy could provide discriminative diagnosis of PD from other nigrostriatal degeneration syndromes. However, the uptake of MIBG in myocardium proved to be more impaired among patients with Lewy body dementia than in PD patients (Suzuki et al. 2006). Furthermore, loss of myocardial sympathetic innervation was detected in [^{11}C]- hydroxyephedrine PET studies of some patients with multiple system atrophy or progressive supranuclear palsy (Raffel et al. 2006). The occurrence of myocardial sympathectomy only in some affected individuals indicates that these parkinsonian syndromes are highly heterogeneous with respect to the involvement of the sympathetic nervous system. Raffel et al. (2006) also investigated the movement disorder patients with [^{11}C]-dihydrotetrabenazine PET in order to measure the density of DA vesicles in striatum; the absence of any clear correlation between striatal and myocardial denervations suggested the occurrence of independent pathophysiological mechanisms in the two tissues.

Urodynamic symptoms such as incomplete voiding occur in a large proportion of PD patients, and may increase in severity with disease progression (Araki et al. 2000). Brain imaging studies with DA transporter ligands show particularly extensive loss of striatal binding sites in patients with bladder symptoms (Sakakibara et al. 2001; Winge et al. 2005). However, severity of motor symptoms likewise correlated with the decline in striatal DA transporters. Therefore, it cannot be concluded that urodynamic symptoms arise from the nigrostriatal degeneration per se, or due to independent factors such as loss of autonomic function. On the other hand, treatment with levodopa or direct DA agonists improved urodynamic symptoms (increased bladder capacity) in most PD patients, although the highly variable individual benefits suggested the presence of heterogeneous factors (Winge et al. 2004).

Constipation is another classical dysautonomic problem of PD; colonic transit time is substantially increased in PD patients due to failure of peristalsis (Sakakibara et al. 2003). Dopamine-containing neurons were nearly absent in the myenteric plexus of the majority of PD patients with chronic constipation (Singaram et al. 1995). In contrast, the enteric vasoactive intestinal peptide neurons were of normal abundance, although they frequently contained Lewy bodies.

5 Neuroendocrine Systems

The paraventricular and supraoptic nucleus of the hypothalamus contain oxytocin and vasopressin neurons, which project to the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland. Relative to age-matched control subjects, the number of oxytocin-containing

neurons was reduced by 22% (in the absence of Lewy bodies) in the paraventricular nucleus of PD patients. The abundance of vasopressin neurons were nonsignificantly reduced in the same subjects (Purba et al. 1994).

Inhibition of growth hormone secretion by somatostatin is overcome by growth-hormone releasing hormone. While this mechanism was intact in patients with PD, the release of growth hormone normally evoked by a 5-HT_1 agonist did not occur in PD patients (Volpi et al. 1997b). Fenfluramine challenge evokes a twofold increase in plasma ACTH in normal subjects, but not PD patients (Volpi et al. 1997a). However, the effect of corticotrophin releasing factor was identical in the two groups, indicating a primary defect of the hypothalamic 5-HT innervation. Fenfluramine-evoked prolactin response was also blunted in PD patients (Kostic et al. 1996). While these neuroendocrine changes might plausibly be attributed to degeneration of the 5-HT innervation (see below), hypothalamic 5-HT content was not significantly reduced in PD patients (Shannak et al. 1994). Treatment with the μ-opioid antagonist naloxone increases secretion of ACTH/cortisol and luteinizing hormone, by interfering with tonic inhibition of hypothalamic/pituitary function. However, naloxone failed to evoke increases in ACTH/cortisol or LH secretion in PD patients off levodopa; reinstatement of levodopa treatment normalized these neuroendocrine responses (Volpi et al. 1994). The activity of DOPA decarboxylase is reduced by 67% in hypothalamus of patients with PD (Lloyd and Hornykiewicz 1970), suggesting that loss of catecholamine tonus intrinsic to the hypothalamus may mediate some of the neuroendocrine changes in PD.

6 Serotonin

Serotonin transmission, like that of DA, is regulated via specific plasma membrane transporters. The binding of [^{3}H]-citalopram to 5-HT transporters (SERT) was reduced by 75% in caudate and putamen of PD patients, and by 50% in the substantia nigra and neocortical regions (Chinaglia et al. 1993). In contrast, the density of SERT in the raphe nuclei was normal in PD patients, although Lewy bodies have been reported in 5-HT neurons in that condition (Ohama and Ikuta 1976). The extent of reduced 5-HT concentration in cerebrospinal fluid from PD patients correlated inversely with Hoehn and Yahr stage and with severity of gait freezing (Tohgi et al. 1993). This finding does not indicate causality in motor symptoms, but could alternately indicate that 5-HT depletion is a surrogate marker for severe DA depletion, i.e. due to a parallel decline in monoamine systems. In another study, the occurrence of premorbid depression correlated with the extent of loss of 5-HT neurons in the dorsal raphe of patients dying with PD (Paulus and Jellinger 1991). The 5-HT metabolite 3-hydroxykynurenine was reduced by 75% in cerebrospinal fluid of PD patients, but the 5-HT concentration proved to have the higher negative correlation with motor symptoms (Tohgi et al. 1993). Serotonin levels, and also NA, were reduced by 50% in lumbar cord (Scatton et al. 1986) and in limbic cortical regions of patients dying with PD

(Scatton et al. 1983), which may have implications for the affective and pain syndromes of PD.

There is some evidence that mesencephalic DA exerts a tonic inhibition of 5-HT neurons in the raphe. An early, preclinical stage of nigrostriatal degeneration might thus entail facilitiation of 5-HT activity, at least prior to the onset of degeneration of the 5-HT neurons in late PD. In an FDOPA-PET study of early PD patients with asymmetric disease, we have observed elevated FDOPA trapping in the vicinity of the dorsal raphe nucleus (Fig. 1c), and also the ventral striatum (Kumakura et al. 2010a). This observation could predict elevated 5-HT synthesis, or production of DA as a false neurotransmitter within the 5-HT neurons in early PD treated with levodopa. In a [^{11}C]-DASB study, the availability of 5-HT transporters was reduced by some 30% in forebrain of PD patients without pronounced depression (Guttman et al. 2007), whereas [^{11}C]-DASB binding was *elevated* in some cortical regions of PD patients with depression (Boileau et al. 2008). A [^{11}C]-DASB study linked reduced 5-HT transporters to fatigue symptoms in PD patients (Pavese et al. 2010). Others found relative preservation of 5-HT transporters in specific brain regions such as amygdala and posterior cingulate cortex of depressed PD patients (Politis et al. 2010).

Post-synaptic actions of 5-HT are mediated via a large number of receptor subtypes. The concentration of 5-HT$_2$ receptors was reduced in parietal cortex of patients with PD and dementia, in whom the cortical concentration of choline acetyltransferase (ChAT) was also reduced (Perry et al. 1984). In other post mortem studies, the abundance of 5-HT$_2$ receptors labeled with [^{3}H]-ketanserin was reduced by 50% in temporal cortex from patients who had died with PD, whereas nearly normal levels were present in frontal cortex; declines in temporal lobe 5-HT$_2$ receptors did not correlate with severity of dementia in these PD patients (Maloteaux et al. 1988a). Fine anatomical analysis of cortical [^{3}H]-ketanserin binding revealed declines in all cortical layers of patients with PD, Lewy body dementia, and Alzheimer's dementia (Cheng et al. 1991). Thus, loss of 5-HT receptors is well-documented in PD, but is equally present in other neurodegenerative disorders. Declines in post-synaptic 5-HT receptors in conjunction with loss of cortical 5-HT innervation suggest that degeneration of 5-HT pathways involves pre- and post-synaptic mechanisms, rather than a simple denervation, which might be expected to result in up-regulation of some classes of 5-HT receptors. The observed changes in 5-HT markers may be especially relevant to cognitive changes associated with PD.

7 Acetylcholine

A cardinal neurochemical feature of Alzheimer's disease is the loss of cortical cholinergic innervation derived from the basal nucleus of Meynert in the basal forebrain (Coyle et al. 1983). However, reduced enzymatic activity of the cholinergic marker choline acetyltransferse (ChAT) in frontal cortex also correlated

with the extent of cognitive impairment in PD patients, as did the DA D_1 receptor density in the caudate nucleus (Mattila et al. 2001). Loss of basal forebrain cholinergic neurons is especially prevalent in PD patients with dementia that is unresponsive to levodopa therapy (Chan-Palay 1988), and reduced cortical ChAT was noted above in association with loss of cortical 5-HT receptors in demented PD patients (Perry et al. 1984). However, ChAT levels were unaffected in the substantia nigra of PD patients (Javoy-Agid et al. 1981), nor was ChAT reduced in putamen of patients dying with PD (Perry et al. 1991). In association with the cholinergic neurons of the basal nucleus of Meynert, there are to be found fusiform neurons expressing galanin peptide, which is inhibitory to cholinergic neurons. In patients with AD and PD, the density of galanin-immunoreactive terminals on soma and dendrites of the cholinergic neurons was increased (Chan-Palay 1988).

The relationship between cortical availability of nicotinic receptors and cognition (Kadir et al. 2006) and treatment effects of galantamine (Ellis et al. 2009) has been investigated in molecular imaging studies of Alzheimer's disease. There were slight (10%) reductions in nicotinic receptor binding in the striatum of PD patients, but no cortical changes were reported in that PET study (Kas et al. 2009).

8 Peptide Neurotransmitter Systems

The striatum contains two populations of GABA-ergic medium spiny neurons. The GABA-enkephalin neurons project mainly to the external pallidum, whereas the GABA-substance P neurons project to the substantia nigra and pallidal internal segment. The concentration of met-enkephalin was reduced by one half in the caudate, putamen, and substantial nigra of PD patients (Fernandez et al. 1996), and likewise in striatum of MPTP-lesioned monkeys (Perez-Otano et al. 1995), but was increased in striatum of 6-OHDA-treated rats (Thal et al. 1983). The leu-enkephalin concentration was substantially reduced in putamen and substantia nigra of PD patients (Fernandez et al. 1996), but leu-enkephalin levels were normal in striatum of MPTP-lesioned monkeys (Jenner et al. 1986). The concentration of substance P was reduced by 50% in post mortem putamen samples from PD patients (Fernandez et al. 1996); in animal studies of acquired parkinsonism, a similar reduction on Substance P concentration was reversed by levodopa treatment (Engber et al. 1991).

Opioid receptors are found on pre- and post-synaptic elements as well as on interneurons in the striatum. Opioid binding was investigated in PET studies employing [^{11}C]-diprenorphine in groups of patients with PD and other akinetic rigid syndromes (Burn et al. 1995); the striatal binding ratio in the PD patients was similar to that in control subjects, whereas the binding ratio was reduced in putamen of striatonigral degeneration patients, and in caudate and putamen of Steele–Richardson–Olszewski syndrome. However the same group subsequently reported reduced [^{11}C]-diprenorphine binding in striatum of PD patients with dyskinesias, in whom the radioligand binding was also reduced in thalamus and cingulate gyrus, but was increased in the prefrontal cortex (Piccini et al. 1997).

Substance P is also expressed in several cell populations of the mesopontine tegmentum, including the pedunculopontine tegmental nucleus and the 5-HT neurons of the dorsal raphe. Very substantial loss of these groups of peptidergic neurons is reported in PD (Gai et al. 1991). Studies in experimental animals suggest that lesions of the pedunculopontine nucleus may result in the REM sleep behavior disorder, a newly described clinical entity characterized by vivid dreaming and loss of normal atonia, resulting in simple or complex movements during sleep, even to the extent of "acting out" dreams. In a longitudinal study, 38% of cases with initial diagnosis of REM sleep behavior disorder had proceeded to develop PD, a mean of 4 years later (Schenck et al. 1996). Striatonigral degeneration has been confirmed in a [^{123}I]-FP-CIT SPECT study of PD patients with a history of REM sleep behavior disorder, as well as olfactory dysfunction (Stiasny-Kolster et al. 2005).

Within the parabrachial nucleus there is also a population of neuromelanin-containing tyrosine hydroxylase-positive neurons; the abundance of which is reduced in patients with PD (Goto and Hirano 1991). Since this structure is involved in the regulation of autonomic function via input from the amygdale, this cell loss may contribute to the autonomic dysfunction frequently occurring in PD, as described above.

9 GABA

Despite the great abundance of GABA-ergic neurons in the striatum, only moderate densities of GABA-A binding sites are to be found in the basal ganglia, whereas the densest binding in brain occurs in the cerebellum and cerebral cortex. The specific binding of [^{3}H]-flunitrazepam was unchanged in cerebral cortex, but increased in post mortem striatum from PD patients (Maloteaux et al. 1988b). Despite this finding in vitro, the binding of the SPECT ligand [^{123}I]I-iomazenil was decreased throughout cerebral cortex of PD patients, in proportion to the severity of their disease (Kawabata and Tachibana 1997). Indeed, binding of the GABA-A ligand [^{11}C]-flumazenil in cerebral cortex has been interpreted to be a surrogate indicator of cortical thickness and neuronal density (la Fougere et al. 2010a), which may be reduced in PD. However, GABA-A binding is relatively preserved in cortex of AD patients, despite the clear reductions in cerebral blood flow (Ohyama et al. 1999). This suggests that the [^{123}I]I-iomazenil results in PD may indicate an actual loss of cortical neurons, rather than a decline in cortical thickness due to atrophy of the neuropil.

10 Microglial Activation

The 18 kDa translocator protein (TSPO), formerly known as the peripheral benzodiazepine receptor, is highly expressed in the outer mitochondrial membrane, most especially in microglia, which are the resident macrophages of the

brain. As such, TSPO binding can be taken as an indicator of inflammatory reactions in the brain parenchyma. In a rat microPET study, the binding of the prototypic TSPO ligand [^{11}C]-PK11195 was persistently increased in striatum and substantia nigra following infusion of the DA neurotoxin 6-OHDA (Cicchetti et al. 2002). Indeed, a histological study with antibodies against another marker of activated microglia revealed a continuing inflammatory process in parkinsonian monkey brain several years after intoxication with MPTP (McGeer et al. 2003). A longitudinal PET study of idiopathic PD patients likewise revealed a widespread and persistent increase in [^{11}C]-PK11195 binding, which did not, however, correlate with impaired striatal FDOPA utilization or clinical severity (Gerhard et al. 2006). The authors suggested that microglia activation had occurred at an early stage of the disease process. Levels of [^{11}C]-PK11195 uptake in midbrain correlated inversely with the DA transporter marker [^{11}C]-CFT binding potentials in the putamen and correlated positively with motor symptoms of PD patients (Ouchi et al. 2005). Protective effect of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAID) have been described in animal models of PD (Aubin et al. 1998; Mohanakumar et al. 2000) and epidemiological studies have reported decreased risk of developing PD with chronic intake of a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug (Chen et al. 2005), suggesting that activated microglia play a role in PD pathogenesis, at least as an initiator. Nonetheless, others failed to detect any elevated [^{11}C]-PK11195 binding in a small group of PD patients, and also failed to detect an effect of treatment with a COX-2 inhibitor on the cerebral binding (Bartels et al. 2010). However, the low sensitivity of [^{11}C]-PK11195 for detecting TSPO is well-known; there was only a trend toward increased binding in the brain of pigs with well-documented MPTP lesions of the nigrostriatal pathway (Cumming et al. 2006). There is currently a very active search to identify an optimal TSPO tracer with binding properties superior to those of [^{11}C]-PK11195 (e.g. Van Camp et al. 2010).

11 Blood Flow and Glucose Metabolism

The investigation of cerebral blood flow (CBF) and rate of glucose consumption (CMRglc) has had two major applications in the context of PD: to advance the understanding of neuroenergetic features of the disorder, and to develop tools for differential diagnostic purposes, treatment- and disease-monitoring. Before the era of human PET was underway, a substantial body of knowledge had already been collected using [^{14}C]-2-deoxy-glucose (2DG) autoradiography (Sokoloff et al. 1977) in animal models of PD. The findings of more than 20 such studies of parkinsonian animals were recently reviewed (Borghammer et al. 2009b; Obeso et al. 2008). Evaluation of this evidence is complicated by differences in imaging procedures, and the precise nature of the neurotoxic lesion obtained with agents such as MPTP or 6-OHDA. Importantly, the interval of time between intoxication and autoradiographic imaging ranges from a few days to many months.

Nevertheless, the evidence shows some clear consistencies. In brief, the resting state in the parkinsonian rodent and monkey seems to be characterized by unchanged or decreased CMRglc in frontal and parietal cortex. The subthalamic nucleus, in which the neurons display increased firing rate in the condition of DA denervation of the striatum (Bergman et al. 1994; Obeso et al. 2008), is unequivocally hypometabolic. In contrast, the external pallidum (GPe) exhibits decreased firing rate but is nearly always hypermetabolic. This illustrates the principle that glucose metabolism is more closely associated with the input to a given region than with its output (Attwell and Laughlin 2001). The pedunculopontine nucleus (PPN) is probably also hypermetabolic. A few studies reported hypermetabolism in the internal pallidum, striatum, the ventral-lateral (VL), and ventral-anterior (VA) thalamic nuclei, but many more studies reported no change or even decreases in these structures. In summary, the brain of parkinsonian animals is probably characterized by cortical hypometabolism and concurrent hypermetabolism in only a few discrete and very small, basal ganglia structures (PPN and GPe).

Many subsequent quantitative PET studies in human PD focused on replicating findings from the animal literature. However, the final spatial resolution of nearly all PET studies performed to date is little better than 10 mm, when taking all factors into account, i.e. intrinsic scanner resolution, head movement, post-reconstruction filtering, and less-than-perfect co-registration of emission images to a standard coordinate system. In other words, given present technical limitations, PET studies are unfit to replicate the animal findings of hypermetabolism in small structural elements of the basal ganglia. In addition, human CBF and CMRglc values display a great deal of biological variation. The relative standard deviation of these parameters is usually 14–20% in groups of normal subjects (Leenders et al. 1990; Moeller et al. 1996), and patients with neurodegenerative disorders (Berding et al. 2001; Imon et al. 1999), but can be as high as 30% in PD (Huang et al. 2007). This substantial variance hinders detection of low-magnitude signals in typical PET studies consisting of 10–20 subjects per group. Taken together, these observations probably explain why absolute subcortical hypermetabolism has not been robustly confirmed in patients with PD, even though more than 30 quantitative CBF and CMRglc studies have been performed to date [see Borghammer et al. 2010 for references].

On the other hand, nearly all of the 30 quantitative PET studies of metabolism reported significant or non-significant global and regional decreases of CBF and CMRglc in PD. Many of the studies reported significant absolute decreases of CBF and CMRglc in frontal (Eberling et al. 1994; Takahashi et al. 1999) and parieto-occipital cortical regions (Berding et al. 2001; Bohnen et al. 1999; Hu et al. 2000; Takahashi et al. 1999). Figure 2 illustrates the results of a recent meta-analysis of all available CBF and CMRglc studies, in which global mean values were specifically stated (Borghammer et al. 2010). The meta-analysis confirms the presence of decreased CBF and CMRglc in the global mean values of PD patients, although these defects are not always detected in individual studies due to their insufficient sample sizes.

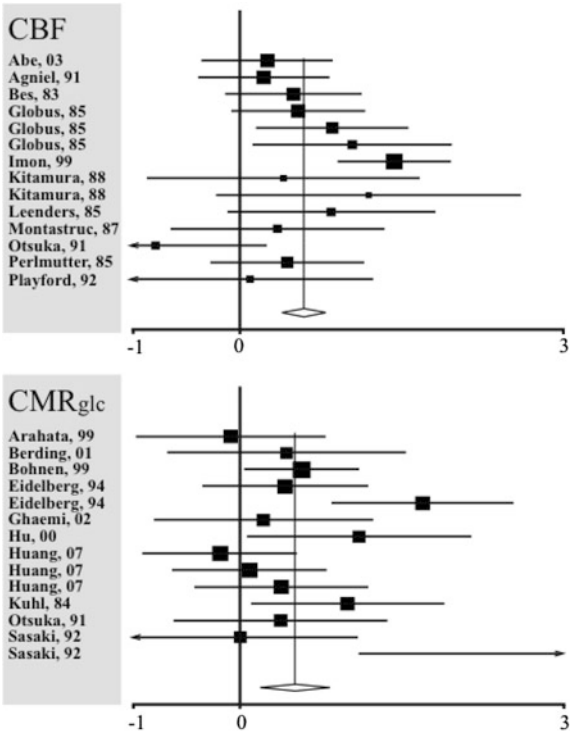


Fig. 2 Forest plots of meta-analyses of CBF (*top*) and CMRglc (*bottom*) differences between PD patients and healthy controls. *Horizontal lines* represent 95% confidence intervals around the standard mean difference (SMD) of each study. The *size of the squares* represents the relative weight assigned to that particular study in calculation of the overall SMD. The *vertical lines* signify overall SMD with 95% CI (*diamond*). The SMD is defined as the ratio (between-group difference in mean)/(pooled standard deviation with correction for small sample sizes). Reprinted with permission from Borghammer et al. (2010)

12 Hypometabolism in Normalized PET Studies

Inclusion of sufficiently large sample sizes to compensate for the considerable variation in CBF and CMRglc data is so costly that the use of data normalization was quickly introduced in PET studies (Fox et al. 1988). The most commonly used method is to simply divide the tracer uptake in each region or voxel by the global mean (GM) value of the whole brain, or the mean value of all gray matter. This kind of normalization process yields ratios with drastically decreased variation (relative SD of 4–10%) (Antonini et al. 1998; Defebvre et al. 1999; Ghaemi et al. 2002). Thus, normalization favors the detection of group differences which are focal and of small magnitude. However, valid use of this approach is predicated on the assumption of absent between-group GM differences. As shown in Fig. 2, this requirement is probably not met in PD patients, in whom the GM metabolism and blood flow are most likely decreased.

Thus, PET scans in PD and other neurodegenerative disorders should instead be normalized to other regions, which are known to be less affected than the GM. The cerebellum (Dukart et al. 2010), the pons (Minoshima et al. 1995), the somatosensory cortex (Yakushev et al. 2009), and white matter (Borghammer et al. 2008) have all been demonstrated to perform better than GM normalization in

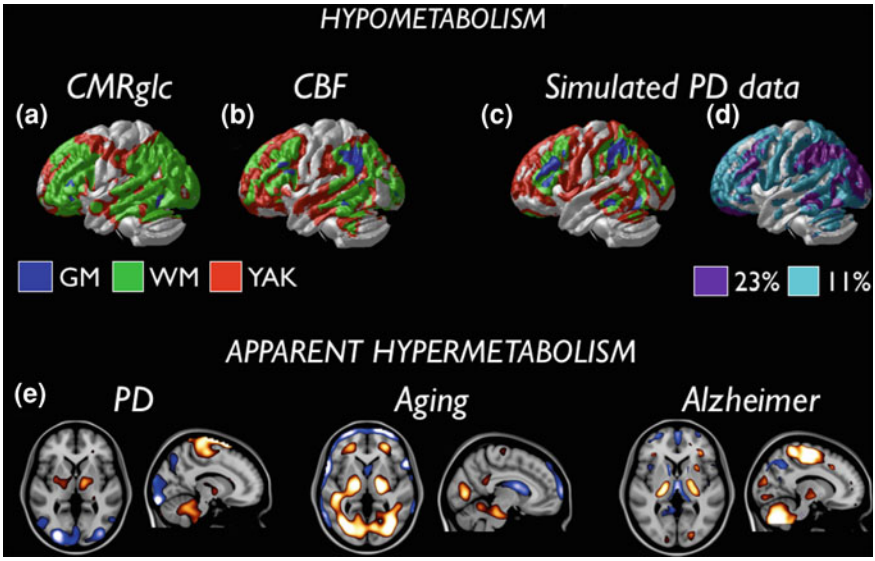


Fig. 3 **a**, **b** The patterns of relative CBF and CMRglc decreases in PD are closely matched. These patterns are only robustly detected when normalization to white matter (WM; *green*) or data-driven Yakushev (YAK; *red*) normalization is applied. **c**, **d** Using global mean (GM; *blue*) normalization only residual traces of the pattern are detected. This figure shows results of a simulation study in which isolated cortical decreases of 11% (*light blue*) and 23% (*purple*) were applied in a group of 20 subjects, and then compared to 20 unchanged control images. Here, WM and particularly YAK normalization recovered much more of the true signal than did GM normalization. **e** When GM normalization is employed (and only then), most CBF and CMRglc PET studies of PD have detected a pattern of relative increases in the thalamic-capsula internalentiform intersection, motor cortices, WM structures, pons, and central cerebellum. However, similar patterns have been reported in healthy aging, Alzheimer's disease, and other disorders. Thus, the pattern arises as a general consequence of GM normalization, and the correct interpretation of the finding is most likely that metabolism in these regions is unchanged or even decreased, but to a lesser degree than is the global mean. [Adapted from Borghammer et al. (2010, 2009b) with permission.]

neurodegenerative disorders. Recently, a data-driven normalization strategy for identification of useful normalization regions a posteriori was devised by Yakushev and colleagues (Borghammer et al. 2009a; Yakushev et al. 2009). Figure 3 summarizes the effect of different normalization strategies on the extent of the detected pattern of perturbed metabolism in PD. In brief, normalization to the cerebellum, the white matter, or Yakushev normalization yields evidence for widespread cortical hypometabolism (Fig. 3a) and hypoperfusion (Fig. 3b), notably in the lateral and medial prefrontal, and parieto-occipital regions, and also in the lateral temporal lobe. Metabolism in the medial temporal lobe, sensory-motor cortex, basal ganglia, brainstem and cerebellum is apparently unchanged in PD. For two reasons, it seems likely that this pattern of relative cortical hypometabolism is a more accurate description of true, absolute hypometabolism. First, the quantitative PET literature

supports that cortical regions display absolute decreases of CBF and CMRglc. Second, the pattern is in agreement with the animal literature, as discussed above. Interestingly, this cortical pattern, which is already present in early-stage patients (Borghammer et al. 2010) seems to coincide at least in part with the pattern of of Lewy Body deposition at later disease stages (Braak et al. 2003). This observation suggests that early perturbation of cerebral cortical metabolism could be causally involved in the subsequent deposition of inclusion bodies.

13 Hypermetabolism in Normalized PET Studies

A number of PET and SPECT studies of PD have been performed, in which GM normalization was used. However, since the GM metabolism and blood flow are most likely decreased in PD, the use of GM normalization will necessarily lead to the appearance of seemingly hypermetabolic foci in brain, relative to the undetected decline in GM (Borghammer et al. 2009b). Thus, the GM studies have without exception reported a pattern (Fig. 3e) of widespread relative hypermetabolism in the thalamic-capsula-interna-lentiform intersection, primary motor sensory cortex, white matter, pons, and central cerebellum (Eidelberg et al. 1994; Hosey et al. 2005; Huang et al. 2007; Imon et al. 1999; Nagano-Saito et al. 2004). As detailed above, this widespread pattern finds little overlap with the 2DG autoradiographic results in parkinsonian animals, in which robust hypermetabolism was seen only in a few discrete subcortical structures—structures too small to have been detected in nearly all PET studies performed to date. In addition, a very similar pattern of hypermetabolism has been reported in a range of other neurological conditions, but only when GM normalization is used (Borghammer et al. 2008). As illustrated in Fig. 3e, similar patterns were reported when aged subjects were compared to young controls (Borghammer et al. 2009b; Kalpouzos et al. 2009; Moeller et al. 1996) and also in Alzheimer's disease patients (Borghammer et al. 2009b; Dukart et al. 2010; Habeck 2010). There is no theoretical basis for expecting such subcortical hypermetabolism in healthy aging or Alzheimer's disease. The parsimonious explanation for the commonality of these patterns is therefore that it represents regions of preserved metabolism, which were similarly inflated by biased GM normalization. This interpretation was recently verified in a large quantitative MRI study in PD patients (Melzer et al. 2011). Here, Melzer and colleagues demonstrated that the apparently hypermetabolic regions demonstrated in Fig. 3e are in reality the only metabolically conserved regions in PD, whereas most of the cerebral cortex displays small or large absolute deficit in perfusion, as demonstrated in Fig. 3a and b. Moreover, we recently compared FDG uptake in a group of PD patients and healthy controls using a brain-dedicated high-resolution PET scanner with sufficient spatial resolution to investigate very small subcortical structures (Borghammer et al. 2011a). In this study, absolute hypermetabolism was suggested only in the GPe, which is also in accordance with the 2DG autoradiographic evidence in animal models of PD.

It must be noted that, although GM normalization may yield patterns that are not strictly physiologically meaningful, these patterns can nevertheless be very disease-specific and of great diagnostic utility. For instance, disease-specific pattern reliably separates PD patients from healthy controls (Ma et al. 2007) and from patients with atypical movement disorders (Tang et al. 2010). Changes in the pattern have also been successfully used to evaluate treatment effects of levodopa and deep brain stimulation in PD patients (Asanuma et al. 2006).

14 Cerebral Oxygen Consumption

The resting cerebral metabolic rate of oxygen consumption ($CMRO_2$) has been investigated in only few PET studies of PD patients. This parameter is however of some interest since decreased activity in complex I of the mitochondrial electron transport chain (ETC) has been reported in post-mortem studies of PD patients (Henchcliffe and Beal 2008; Keeney et al. 2006). Dysfunction of the ETC would under most circumstances not only lead to reduced $CMRO_2$, but also to reductions of the CMRglc according to the stoichiometric relationship for $CMRO_2$:CMRglc of 6:1 for the complete oxidation of glucose. Specific defects in the ETC would likely result in proportionally greater deficits in $CMRO_2$ than CMRglc, i.e. a shift to anaerobic respiration (Frackowiak et al. 1988). Four PET studies reported non-significant global $CMRO_2$ decreases and significant decreases in cortical regions in early- to moderate-stage PD patients (Kitamura et al. 1988; Leenders et al. 1985; Takahashi et al. 1999; Borghammer et al. 2011b). Thus, the results of these studies could be consistent with a dysfunctional ETC in PD. However, a recent study surprisingly detected significantly increased global $CMRO_2$ and near-significant increase in global CMRglc ($p = 0.056$) in 12 early-stage, drug na PD patients (Powers et al. 2008). The authors speculated that an uncoupling of ATP production from oxidative phosphorylation could potentially explain this unexpected finding. However, one of the earlier $CMRO_2$ in early-stage previously unmedicated PD patients reported a non-significant decrease in the $CMRO_2$ (Takahashi et al. 1999). So, considering that the entire quantitative PET literature reports only significant or non-significant decreases of metabolism and blood flow (Borghammer et al. 2010), the report of globally increased $CMRO_2$ in drug na patients is an isolated finding.

Deep brain stimulation (DBS) targeting the overactive subthalamic nucleus can markedly relieve the rigidity and tremor of PD. However, the net cerebrometabolic effects of DBS have been a matter of some controversy. We have predicted that effective DBS, by blocking or entraining the activity of subthalamic neurons, should rectify a putative focal hypermetabolism. However, the treatment proved to evoke no discernible change in the magnitude of $CMRO_2$ in the target structure, producing instead unexpected metabolic activations in distal cortical regions linked to the perception of motion (Vafaee et al. 2004). In FDG-PET studies of similar design, DBS evoked activation of the relative CMRglc in the

target structure and in some limbic and associative projection territories of the basal ganglia (Hilker et al. 2004), or had no effect in the target structure, while evoking increases and decreases in distal cortical regions (Le Jeune et al. 2010). These discrepant findings highlight the difficulties in interpreting PET measurements of brain energy metabolism in the basal ganglia of PD patients on accordance with heuristic models of the underlying cerebrometabolic disturbances.

15 Conclusions

The theme of this review is that nigrostriatal degeneration, while of key importance for the motor symptoms of PD, constitutes only part of PD pathology. A full understanding of the clinical presentation should be informed by knowledge about the spectrum of pathophysiological changes in the parkinsonian brain, and also in diverse peripheral tissues. Thus, the presence of widespread cortical hypometabolism in frontal and parietal cortical regions early in the disease could underlie the early onset of cognitive decline reported in PD. Newly diagnosed PD patients most often display deficits in frontal lobe cognitive domains, such as executive functions and psychomotor speed (Muslimovic et al. 2005; Rodriguez-Ferreiro et al. 2010). Other studies have reported deficits in visuoconstructive abilities (Levin et al. 1991; Stella et al. 2007; Williams-Gray et al. 2007), which are widely accepted to be reflective of parietal lobe dysfunction (Makuuchi et al. 2003). Moreover, evidence is accumulating that working memory, which is also often impaired in early PD (Koerts et al. 2009; Whittington et al. 2006), relies heavily upon superior parietal cortex (Koenigs et al. 2009). As such, the pattern of cortical hypometabolism displayed in Fig. 3a seems to overlap fairly well with cortical regions responsible for the particular cognitive functions known to be compromised in early PD. However, the causality of this link is presently uncertain; are cognitive deficits in PD due to primary cortical hypometabolism, or are both phenomena down-stream effects of progressive loss of monoaminergic cortical innervations?

References

Aarsland D, Zaccai J, Brayne C (2005) A systematic review of prevalence studies of dementia in Parkinson's disease. Mov Disord 20(10):1255–1263

Antonini A, Leenders KL, Reist H, Thomann R, Beer HF, Locher J (1993) Effect of age on D_2 dopamine receptors in normal human brain measured by positron emission tomography and ^{11}C-raclopride. Arch Neurol 50(5):474–480

Antonini A, Schwarz J, Oertel WH, Beer HF, Madeja UD, Leenders KL (1994) [^{11}C]raclopride and positron emission tomography in previously untreated patients with Parkinson's disease: influence of L-dopa and lisuride therapy on striatal dopamine D_2-receptors. Neurology 44(7):1325–1329

Antonini A, Schwarz J, Oertel WH, Pogarell O, Leenders KL (1997) Long-term changes of striatal dopamine D_2 receptors in patients with Parkinson's disease: a study with positron emission tomography and [^{11}C]raclopride. Mov Disord 12(1):33–38

Antonini A, Kazumata K, Feigin A, Mandel F, Dhawan V, Margouleff C, Eidelberg D (1998) Differential diagnosis of parkinsonism with [^{18}F]fluorodeoxyglucose and PET. Mov Disord 13(2):268–274

Araki I, Kitahara M, Oida T, Kuno S (2000) Voiding dysfunction and Parkinson's disease: urodynamic abnormalities and urinary symptoms. J Urol 164(5):1640–1643

Asanuma K, Tang C, Ma Y, Dhawan V, Mattis P, Edwards C, Kaplitt MG, Feigin A, Eidelberg D (2006) Network modulation in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. Brain 129(Pt 10): 2667–2678

Attwell D, Laughlin SB (2001) An energy budget for signaling in the grey matter of the brain. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 21(10):1133–1145

Aubin N, Curet O, Deffois A, Carter C (1998) Aspirin and salicylate protect against MPTP-induced dopamine depletion in mice. J Neurochem 71(4):1635–1642

Bartels AL, Willemsen AT, Doorduin J, de Vries EF, Dierckx RA, Leenders KL (2010) [^{11}C]-PK11195 PET: quantification of neuroinflammation and a monitor of anti-inflammatory treatment in Parkinson's disease? Parkinsonism Relat Disord 16(1):57–59

Berding G, Odin P, Brooks DJ, Nikkhah G, Matthies C, Peschel T, Shing M, Kolbe H, van Den Hoff J, Fricke H, Dengler R, Samii M, Knapp WH (2001) Resting regional cerebral glucose metabolism in advanced Parkinson's disease studied in the off and on conditions with [(18)F]FDG-PET. Mov Disord 16(6):1014–1022

Berger B, Trottier S, Gaspar P, Verney C, Alvarez C (1986) Major dopamine innervation of the cortical motor areas in the cynomolgus monkey. A radioautographic study with comparative assessment of serotonergic afferents. Neurosci Lett 72(2):121–127

Bergman H, Wichmann T, Karmon B, DeLong MR (1994) The primate subthalamic nucleus II. Neuronal activity in the MPTP model of parkinsonism. J Neurophysiol 72(2):507–520

Bohnen NI, Minoshima S, Giordani B, Frey KA, Kuhl DE (1999) Motor correlates of occipital glucose hypometabolism in Parkinson's disease without dementia. Neurology 52(3):541–546

Boileau I, Warsh JJ, Guttman M, Saint-Cyr JA, McCluskey T, Rusjan P, Houle S, Wilson AA, Meyer JH, Kish SJ (2008) Elevated serotonin transporter binding in depressed patients with Parkinson's disease: a preliminary PET study with [^{11}C]DASB. Mov Disord 23(12): 1776–1780

Bokobza B, Ruberg M, Scatton B, Javoy-Agid F, Agid Y (1984) [^{3}H]spiperone binding, dopamine and HVA concentrations in Parkinson's disease and supranuclear palsy. Eur J Pharmacol 99(2–3):167–175

Borghammer P, Jonsdottir KY, Cumming P, Ostergaard K, Vang K, Ashkanian M, Vafaee M, Iversen P, Gjedde A (2008) Normalization in PET group comparison studies—the importance of a valid reference region. Neuroimage 40(2):529–540

Borghammer P, Aanerud J, Gjedde A (2009a) Data-driven intensity normalization of PET group comparison studies is superior to global mean normalization. Neuroimage 46(4):981–988

Borghammer P, Cumming P, Aanerud J, Forster S, Gjedde A (2009b) Subcortical elevation of metabolism in Parkinson's disease—a critical reappraisal in the context of global mean normalization. Neuroimage 47(4):1514–1521

Borghammer P, Chakravarty M, Jonsdottir KY, Sato N, Matsuda H, Ito K, Arahata Y, Kato T, Gjedde A (2010) Cortical hypometabolism and hypoperfusion in Parkinson's disease is extensive: probably even at early disease stages. Brain Struct Funct 214(4):303–317

Borghammer P, Hansen SB, Eggers C, Chakravarty M, Vang K, Aanerud J, Hilker R, Heiss WD, Rodell A, Munk OL, Keator D, Gjedde A (2011a) Glucose metabolism in small subcortical structures in Parkinson's disease. Acta Neurologica Scandinavica. doi:10.1111/j.1600-0404.2011.01556.x.

Borghammer P, Cumming P, Ostergaard K, Gjedde A, Rodell A, Bailey CJ, Vafaee MS (2011b) Cerebral oxygen metabolism in patients with early Parkinson's disease. J Neurol Sci. [Epub ahead of print]

Braak H, Del Tredici K, Rub U, de Vos RA, Jansen Steur EN, Braak E (2003) Staging of brain pathology related to sporadic Parkinson's disease. Neurobiol Aging 24(2):197–211

Braskie MN, Wilcox CE, Landau SM, O'Neil JP, Baker SL, Madison CM, Kluth JT, Jagust WJ (2008) Relationship of striatal dopamine synthesis capacity to age and cognition. J Neurosci 28(52):14320–14328

Bruck A, Aalto S, Nurmi E, Bergman J, Rinne JO (2005) Cortical 6-[^{18}F]fluoro-L-dopa uptake and frontal cognitive functions in early Parkinson's disease. Neurobiol Aging 26(6):891–898

Bucerius J, Joe AY, Schmaljohann J, Gundisch D, Minnerop M, Biersack HJ, Wullner U, Reinhardt MJ (2006) Feasibility of 2-deoxy-2-[^{18}F]fluoro-D-glucose- A85380-PET for imaging of human cardiac nicotinic acetylcholine receptors in vivo. Clin Res Cardiol 95(2):105–109

Burn DJ, Rinne JO, Quinn NP, Lees AJ, Marsden CD, Brooks DJ (1995) Striatal opioid receptor binding in Parkinson's disease, striatonigral degeneration and Steele–Richardson–Olszewski syndrome, a [^{11}C]diprenorphine PET study. Brain 118(Pt 4):951–958

Campos-Sousa RN, Quagliato E, da Silva BB, de Carvalho RM Jr, Ribeiro SC, de Carvalho DF (2003) Urinary symptoms in Parkinson's disease: prevalence and associated factors. Arq Neuropsiquiatr 61(2B):359–363

Carlsson A, Falck B, Hillarp NA (1962) Cellular localization of brain monoamines. Acta Physiol Scand Suppl 56(196):1–28

Cash R, Ruberg M, Raisman R, Agid Y (1984) Adrenergic receptors in Parkinson's disease. Brain Res 322(2):269–275

Cash R, Dennis T, L'Heureux R, Raisman R, Javoy-Agid F, Scatton B (1987) Parkinson's disease and dementia: norepinephrine and dopamine in locus ceruleus. Neurology 37(1):42–46

Chan-Palay V (1988) Galanin hyperinnervates surviving neurons of the human basal nucleus of Meynert in dementias of Alzheimer's and Parkinson's disease: a hypothesis for the role of galanin in accentuating cholinergic dysfunction in dementia. J Comp Neurol 273(4):543–557

Chan-Palay V, Asan E (1989) Alterations in catecholamine neurons of the locus coeruleus in senile dementia of the Alzheimer type and in Parkinson's disease with and without dementia and depression. J Comp Neurol 287(3):373–392

Chen H, Jacobs E, Schwarzschild MA, McCullough ML, Calle EE, Thun MJ, Ascherio A (2005) Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug use and the risk for Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 58(6):963–967

Cheng AV, Ferrier IN, Morris CM, Jabeen S, Sahgal A, McKeith IG, Edwardson JA, Perry RH, Perry EK (1991) Cortical serotonin-S2 receptor binding in Lewy body dementia, Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases. J Neurol Sci 106(1):50–55

Chinaglia G, Landwehrmeyer B, Probst A, Palacios JM (1993) Serotoninergic terminal transporters are differentially affected in Parkinson's disease and progressive supranuclear palsy: an autoradiographic study with [^{3}H]citalopram. Neuroscience 54(3):691–699

Cicchetti F, Brownell AL, Williams K, Chen YI, Livni E, Isacson O (2002) Neuroinflammation of the nigrostriatal pathway during progressive 6-OHDA dopamine degeneration in rats monitored by immunohistochemistry and PET imaging. Eur J Neurosci 15(6):991–998

Cools R, Gibbs SE, Miyakawa A, Jagust W, D'Esposito M (2008) Working memory capacity predicts dopamine synthesis capacity in the human striatum. J Neurosci 28(5):1208–1212

Coyle JT, Price DL, DeLong MR (1983) Alzheimer's disease: a disorder of cortical cholinergic innervation. Science 219(4589):1184–1190

Cumming P, Von Krosigk M, Reiner PB, McGeer EG, Vincent SR (1986) Absence of adrenaline neurons in the guinea pig brain: a combined immunohistochemical and high-performance liquid chromatography study. Neurosci Lett 63(2):125–130

Cumming P, Munk OL, Doudet D (2001) Loss of metabolites from monkey striatum during PET with FDOPA. Synapse 41(3):212–218

Cumming P, Pedersen MD, Minuzzi L, Mezzomo K, Danielsen EH, Iversen P, Aagaard D, Keiding S, Munk OL, Finsen B (2006) Distribution of PK11195 binding sites in porcine brain studied by autoradiography in vitro and by positron emission tomography. Synapse 59(7):418–426

Defebvre LJ, Leduc V, Duhamel A, Lecouffe P, Pasquier F, Lamy-Lhullier C, Steinling M, Destee A (1999) Technetium HMPAO SPECT study in dementia with Lewy bodies, Alzheimer's disease and idiopathic Parkinson's disease. J Nucl Med 40(6):956–962

Deguchi K, Sasaki I, Tsukaguchi M, Kamoda M, Touge T, Takeuchi H, Kuriyama S (2002) Abnormalities of rate-corrected QT intervals in Parkinson's disease-a comparison with multiple system atrophy and progressive supranuclear palsy. J Neurol Sci 199(1–2):31–37

Ding YS, Singhal T, Planeta-Wilson B, Gallezot JD, Nabulsi N, Labaree D, Ropchan J, Henry S, Williams W, Carson RE, Neumeister A, Malison RT (2010) PET imaging of the effects of age and cocaine on the norepinephrine transporter in the human brain using (S, S)-[(11)C] O-methylreboxetine and HRRT. Synapse 64(1):30–38

Doudet DJ, Rosa-Neto P, Munk OL, Ruth TJ, Jivan S, Cumming P (2006) Effect of age on markers for monoaminergic neurons of normal and MPTP-lesioned rhesus monkeys: a multi-tracer PET study. Neuroimage 30(1):26–35

Dukart J, Mueller K, Horstmann A, Vogt B, Frisch S, Barthel H, Becker G, Moller HE, Villringer A, Sabri O, Schroeter ML (2010) Differential effects of global and cerebellar normalization on detection and differentiation of dementia in FDG-PET studies. Neuroimage 49(2):1490–1495

Eberling JL, Richardson BC, Reed BR, Wolfe N, Jagust WJ (1994) Cortical glucose metabolism in Parkinson's disease without dementia. Neurobiol Aging 15(3):329–335

Eidelberg D, Moeller JR, Dhawan V, Spetsieris P, Takikawa S, Ishikawa T, Chaly T, Robeson W, Margouleff D, Przedborski S et al (1994) The metabolic topography of parkinsonism. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 14(5):783–801

Ellis JR, Nathan PJ, Villemagne VL, Mulligan RS, Saunder T, Young K, Smith CL, Welch J, Woodward M, Wesnes KA, Savage G, Rowe CC (2009) Galantamine-induced improvements in cognitive function are not related to alterations in alpha(4)beta (2) nicotinic receptors in early Alzheimer's disease as measured in vivo by 2-[^{18}F]fluoro-A-85380 PET. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 202(1–3):79–91

Engber TM, Susel Z, Kuo S, Gerfen CR, Chase TN (1991) Levodopa replacement therapy alters enzyme activities in striatum and neuropeptide content in striatal output regions of 6-hydroxydopamine lesioned rats. Brain Res 552(1):113–118

Fernandez A, de Ceballos ML, Rose S, Jenner P, Marsden CD (1996) Alterations in peptide levels in Parkinson's disease and incidental Lewy body disease. Brain 119(Pt 3):823–830

Fornai F, di Poggio AB, Pellegrini A, Ruggieri S, Paparelli A (2007) Noradrenaline in Parkinson's disease: from disease progression to current therapeutics. Curr Med Chem 14(22):2330–2334

Fox PT, Mintun MA, Reiman EM, Raichle ME (1988) Enhanced detection of focal brain responses using intersubject averaging and change-distribution analysis of subtracted PET images. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 8(5):642–653

Frackowiak RS, Herold S, Petty RK, Morgan-Hughes JA (1988) The cerebral metabolism of glucose and oxygen measured with positron tomography in patients with mitochondrial diseases. Brain 111(Pt 5):1009–1024

Frisina PG, Haroutunian V, Libow LS (2009) The neuropathological basis for depression in Parkinson's disease. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 15(2):144–148

Gai WP, Halliday GM, Blumbergs PC, Geffen LB, Blessing WW (1991) Substance P-containing neurons in the mesopontine tegmentum are severely affected in Parkinson's disease. Brain 114(Pt 5):2253–2267

Gai WP, Geffen LB, Denoroy L, Blessing WW (1993) Loss of C1 and C3 epinephrine-synthesizing neurons in the medulla oblongata in Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 33(4):357–367

Gaspar P, Duyckaerts C, Alvarez C, Javoy-Agid F, Berger B (1991) Alterations of dopaminergic and noradrenergic innervations in motor cortex in Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 30(3):365–374

Gerhard A, Pavese N, Hotton G, Turkheimer F, Es M, Hammers A, Eggert K, Oertel W, Banati RB, Brooks DJ (2006) In vivo imaging of microglial activation with [^{11}C](R)-PK11195 PET in idiopathic Parkinson's disease. Neurobiol Dis 21(2):404–412

Ghaemi M, Raethjen J, Hilker R, Rudolf J, Sobesky J, Deuschl G, Heiss WD (2002) Monosymptomatic resting tremor and Parkinson's disease: a multitracer positron emission tomographic study. Mov Disord 17(4):782–788

Goldstein DS, Holmes CS, Dendi R, Bruce SR, Li ST (2002) Orthostatic hypotension from sympathetic denervation in Parkinson's disease. Neurology 58(8):1247–1255

Goto S, Hirano A (1991) Catecholaminergic neurons in the parabrachial nucleus of normal individuals and patients with idiopathic Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 30(2):192–196

Gulyas B, Brockschnieder D, Nag S, Pavlova E, Kasa P, Beliczai Z, Legradi A, Gulya K, Thiele A, Dyrks T, Halldin C (2010) The norepinephrine transporter (NET) radioligand (S, S)-[^{18}F]FMeNER-D_2 shows significant decreases in NET density in the human brain in Alzheimer's disease: a post-mortem autoradiographic study. Neurochem Int 56(6–7):789–798

Guttman M, Boileau I, Warsh J, Saint-Cyr JA, Ginovart N, McCluskey T, Houle S, Wilson A, Mundo E, Rusjan P, Meyer J, Kish SJ (2007) Brain serotonin transporter binding in non-depressed patients with Parkinson's disease. Eur J Neurol 14(5):523–528

Habeck CG (2010) Basics of multivariate analysis in neuroimaging data. J Vis Exp (41). pii. 1988. doi:10.3791/1988

Henchcliffe C, Beal MF (2008) Mitochondrial biology and oxidative stress in Parkinson disease pathogenesis. Nat Clin Pract Neurol 4(11):600–609

Hilker R, Voges J, Weisenbach S, Kalbe E, Burghaus L, Ghaemi M, Lehrke R, Koulousakis A, Herholz K, Sturm V, Heiss WD (2004) Subthalamic nucleus stimulation restores glucose metabolism in associative and limbic cortices and in cerebellum: evidence from a FDG-PET study in advanced Parkinson's disease. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 24(1):7–16

Hosey LA, Thompson JL, Metman LV, van den Munckhof P, Braun AR (2005) Temporal dynamics of cortical and subcortical responses to apomorphine in Parkinson disease: an H_2(15)O PET study. Clin Neuropharmacol 28(1):18–27

Hu MT, Taylor-Robinson SD, Chaudhuri KR, Bell JD, Labbe C, Cunningham VJ, Koepp MJ, Hammers A, Morris RG, Turjanski N, Brooks DJ (2000) Cortical dysfunction in non-demented Parkinson's disease patients: a combined (31)P-MRS and (18)FDG-PET study. Brain 123(Pt 2):340–352

Huang C, Tang C, Feigin A, Lesser M, Ma Y, Pourfar M, Dhawan V, Eidelberg D (2007) Changes in network activity with the progression of Parkinson's disease. Brain 130(Pt 7):1834–1846

Imon Y, Matsuda H, Ogawa M, Kogure D, Sunohara N (1999) SPECT image analysis using statistical parametric mapping in patients with Parkinson's disease. J Nucl Med 40(10): 1583–1589

Iwanaga K, Wakabayashi K, Yoshimoto M, Tomita I, Satoh H, Takashima H, Satoh A, Seto M, Tsujihata M, Takahashi H (1999) Lewy body-type degeneration in cardiac plexus in Parkinson's and incidental Lewy body diseases. Neurology 52(6):1269–1271

Jakobsen S, Pedersen K, Smith DF, Jensen SB, Munk OL, Cumming P (2006) Detection of alpha2-adrenergic receptors in brain of living pig with ^{11}C-yohimbine. J Nucl Med 47(12):2008–2015

Javoy-Agid F, Ploska A, Agid Y (1981) Microtopography of tyrosine hydroxylase, glutamic acid decarboxylase, and choline acetyltransferase in the substantia nigra and ventral tegmental area of control and Parkinsonian brains. J Neurochem 37(5):1218–1227

Jenner P, Taquet H, Mauborgne A, Benoliel JT, Cesselin F, Rose S, Javoy-Agid F, Agid Y, Marsden CD (1986) Lack of change in basal ganglia neuropeptide content following subacute 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1, 2, 3, 6-tetrahydropyridine treatment of the common marmoset. J Neurochem 47(5):1548–1551

Jokinen P, Bruck A, Aalto S, Forsback S, Parkkola R, Rinne JO (2009) Impaired cognitive performance in Parkinson's disease is related to caudate dopaminergic hypofunction and hippocampal atrophy. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 15(2):88–93

Kadir A, Almkvist O, Wall A, Langstrom B, Nordberg A (2006) PET imaging of cortical ^{11}C-nicotine binding correlates with the cognitive function of attention in Alzheimer's disease. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 188(4):509–520

Kallio M, Suominen K, Haapaniemi T, Sotaniemi K, Myllyla VV, Astafiev S, Tolonen U (2004) Nocturnal cardiac autonomic regulation in Parkinson's disease. Clin Auton Res 14(2): 119–124

Kalpouzos G, Chetelat G, Baron JC, Landeau B, Mevel K, Godeau C, Barre L, Constans JM, Viader F, Eustache F, Desgranges B (2009) Voxel-based mapping of brain gray matter volume and glucose metabolism profiles in normal aging. Neurobiol Aging 30(1):112–124

Kas A, Bottlaender M, Gallezot JD, Vidailhet M, Villafane G, Gregoire MC, Coulon C, Valette H, Dolle F, Ribeiro MJ, Hantraye P, Remy P (2009) Decrease of nicotinic receptors in the nigrostriatal system in Parkinson's disease. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 29(9):1601–1608

Kawabata K, Tachibana H (1997) Evaluation of benzodiazepine receptor in the cerebral cortex of Parkinson's disease using 123I-iomazenil SPECT. Nippon Rinsho 55(1):244–248

Keeney PM, Xie J, Capaldi RA, Bennett JP Jr (2006) Parkinson's disease brain mitochondrial complex I has oxidatively damaged subunits and is functionally impaired and misassembled. J Neurosci 26(19):5256–5264

Kitamura S, Ujike T, Kuroki S, Sakamoto S, Soeda T, Iio M, Terashi A (1988) Cerebral blood flow and oxygen metabolism in patients with Parkinson's disease. No To Shinkei 40(10):979–985

Koenigs M, Barbey AK, Postle BR, Grafman J (2009) Superior parietal cortex is critical for the manipulation of information in working memory. J Neurosci 29(47):14980–14986

Koerts J, Leenders KL, Koning M, Portman AT, van Beilen M (2007) Striatal dopaminergic activity (FDOPA-PET) associated with cognitive items of a depression scale (MADRS) in Parkinson's disease. Eur J Neurosci 25(10):3132–3136

Koerts J, Leenders KL, Brouwer WH (2009) Cognitive dysfunction in non-demented Parkinson's disease patients: controlled and automatic behavior. Cortex 45(8):922–929

Koike Y, Takahashi A (1997) Autonomic dysfunction in Parkinson's disease. Eur Neurol 38(2):8–12

Kostic VS, Lecic D, Doder M, Marinkovic J, Filipovic S (1996) Prolactin and cortisol responses to fenfluramine in Parkinson's disease. Biol Psychiatry 40(8):769–775

Kumakura Y, Cumming P (2009) PET studies of cerebral levodopa metabolism: a review of clinical findings and modeling approaches. Neuroscientist 15(6):635–650

Kumakura Y, Gjedde A, Danielsen EH, Christensen S, Cumming P (2006) Dopamine storage capacity in caudate and putamen of patients with early Parkinson's disease: correlation with asymmetry of motor symptoms. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 26(3):358–370

Kumakura Y, Danielsen EH, Gjedde A, Vernaleken I, Buchholz HG, Heinz A, Grunder G, Bartenstein P, Cumming P (2010a) Elevated [(18)F]FDOPA utilization in the periaqueductal gray and medial nucleus accumbens of patients with early Parkinson's disease. Neuroimage 49(4):2933–2939

Kumakura Y, Vernaleken I, Buchholz HG, Borghammer P, Danielsen E, Grunder G, Heinz A, Bartenstein P, Cumming P (2010b) Age-dependent decline of steady state dopamine storage capacity of human brain: an FDOPA PET study. Neurobiol Aging 31(3):447–463

la Fougere C, Grant S, Kostikov A, Schirrmacher R, Gravel P, Schipper H, Reader AEvans A, Thiel A (2010a) Where in vivo imaging meets cytoarchitectonics: the relationship between cortical thickness and neuronal density measured with high-resolution [(18)F]flumazenil-PET. Neuroimage 56(3):951–960

la Fougere C, Popperl G, Levin J, Wangler B, Boning G, Uebleis C, Cumming P, Bartenstein P, Botzel K, Tatsch K (2010b) The value of the dopamine $D_{2/3}$ receptor ligand ^{18}F-desmethoxyfallypride for the differentiation of idiopathic and nonidiopathic parkinsonian syndromes. J Nucl Med 51(4):581–587

Le Jeune F, Péron J, Grandjean D, Drapier S, Haegelen C, Garin E, Millet B, Vérin M (2010) Subthalamic nucleus stimulation affects limbic and associative circuits: a PET study. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imag 37(8):1512–1520

Lee CS, Samii A, Sossi V, Ruth TJ, Schulzer M, Holden JE, Wudel J, Pal PK, de la Fuente-Fernandez R, Calne DB, Stoessl AJ (2000) In vivo positron emission tomographic evidence

for compensatory changes in presynaptic dopaminergic nerve terminals in Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 47(4):493–503
Leenders KL, Wolfson L, Gibbs JM, Wise RJ, Causon R, Jones T, Legg NJ (1985) The effects of L-DOPA on regional cerebral blood flow and oxygen metabolism in patients with Parkinson's disease. Brain 108(Pt 1):171–191
Leenders KL, Perani D, Lammertsma AA, Heather JD, Buckingham P, Healy MJ, Gibbs JM, Wise RJ, Hatazawa J, Herold S et al (1990) Cerebral blood flow, blood volume and oxygen utilization. Normal values and effect of age. Brain 113(Pt 1):27–47
Levin BE, Llabre MM, Reisman S, Weiner WJ, Sanchez-Ramos J, Singer C, Brown MC (1991) Visuospatial impairment in Parkinson's disease. Neurology 41(3):365–369
Lloyd K, Hornykiewicz O (1970) Parkinson's disease: activity of L-dopa decarboxylase in discrete brain regions. Science 170(963):1212–1213
Lotze M, Reimold M, Heymans U, Laihinen A, Patt M, Halsband U (2009) Reduced ventrolateral fMRI response during observation of emotional gestures related to the degree of dopaminergic impairment in Parkinson disease. J Cogn Neurosci 21(7):1321–1331
Loughlin SE, Foote SL, Fallon JH (1982) Locus coeruleus projections to cortex: topography, morphology and collateralization. Brain Res Bull 9(1–6):287–294
Ma Y, Tang C, Spetsieris PG, Dhawan V, Eidelberg D (2007) Abnormal metabolic network activity in Parkinson's disease: test–retest reproducibility. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 27(3):597–605
Makuuchi M, Kaminaga T, Sugishita M (2003) Both parietal lobes are involved in drawing: a functional MRI study and implications for constructional apraxia. Brain Res Cogn Brain Res 16(3):338–347
Malessa S, Hirsch EC, Cervera P, Duyckaerts C, Agid Y (1990) Catecholaminergic systems in the medulla oblongata in parkinsonian syndromes: a quantitative immunohistochemical study in Parkinson's disease, progressive supranuclear palsy, and striatonigral degeneration. Neurology 40(11):1739–1743
Maloteaux JM, Laterre EC, Laduron PM, Javoy-Agid F, Agid Y (1988a) Decrease of serotonin-S2 receptors in temporal cortex of patients with Parkinson's disease and progressive supranuclear palsy. Mov Disord 3(3):255–262
Maloteaux JM, Luabeya MA, Vanisberg MA, Laterre EC, Laduron PM, Javoy-Agid F, Agid Y (1988b) Benzodiazepine receptors in normal human brain, in Parkinson's disease and in progressive supranuclear palsy. Brain Res 446(2):321–332
Marie RM, Barre L, Rioux P, Allain P, Lechevalier B, Baron JC (1995) PET imaging of neocortical monoaminergic terminals in Parkinson's disease. J Neural Transm Park Dis Dement Sect 9(1):55–71
Marie RM, Barre L, Dupuy B, Viader F, Defer G, Baron JC (1999) Relationships between striatal dopamine denervation and frontal executive tests in Parkinson's disease. Neurosci Lett 260(2):77–80
Mattila PM, Roytta M, Lonnberg P, Marjamaki P, Helenius H, Rinne JO (2001) Choline acetytransferase activity and striatal dopamine receptors in Parkinson's disease in relation to cognitive impairment. Acta Neuropathol 102(2):160–166
Mavridis M, Degryse AD, Lategan AJ, Marien MR, Colpaert FC (1991) Effects of locus coeruleus lesions on parkinsonian signs, striatal dopamine and substantia nigra cell loss after 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1, 2, 3, 6-tetrahydropyridine in monkeys: a possible role for the locus coeruleus in the progression of Parkinson's disease. Neuroscience 41(2–3):507–523
McGeer PL, Schwab C, Parent A, Doudet D (2003) Presence of reactive microglia in monkey substantia nigra years after 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1, 2, 3, 6-tetrahydropyridine administration. Ann Neurol 54(5):599–604
Mehta MA, Sahakian BJ, McKenna PJ, Robbins TW (1999) Systemic sulpiride in young adult volunteers simulates the profile of cognitive deficits in Parkinson's disease. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 146(2):162–174

Mehta MA, Montgomery AJ, Kitamura Y, Grasby PM (2008) Dopamine D_2 receptor occupancy levels of acute sulpiride challenges that produce working memory and learning impairments in healthy volunteers. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 196(1):157–165

Melzer TR, Watts R, Macaskill MR, Pearson JF, Rueger S, Pitcher TL, Livingston L, Graham C, Keenan R, Shankaranarayanan A, Alsop DC, Dalrymple-Alford JC, Anderson TJ (2011) Arterial spin labelling reveals an abnormal cerebral perfusion pattern in Parkinson's disease. Brain 134(Pt 3):845–855

Minoshima S, Frey KA, Foster NL, Kuhl DE (1995) Preserved pontine glucose metabolism in Alzheimer disease: a reference region for functional brain image (PET) analysis. J Comput Assist Tomogr 19(4):541–547

Moeller JR, Ishikawa T, Dhawan V, Spetsieris P, Mandel F, Alexander GE, Grady C, Pietrini P, Eidelberg D (1996) The metabolic topography of normal aging. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 16(3):385–398

Mohanakumar KP, Muralikrishnan D, Thomas B (2000) Neuroprotection by sodium salicylate against 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1, 2, 3, 6-tetrahydropyridine-induced neurotoxicity. Brain Res 864(2):281–290

Moore RY, Whone AL, Brooks DJ (2008) Extrastriatal monoamine neuron function in Parkinson's disease: an ^{18}F-dopa PET study. Neurobiol Dis 29(3):381–390

Muslimovic D, Post B, Speelman JD, Schmand B (2005) Cognitive profile of patients with newly diagnosed Parkinson disease. Neurology 65(8):1239–1245

Nagano-Saito A, Kato T, Arahata Y, Washimi Y, Nakamura A, Abe Y, Yamada T, Iwai K, Hatano K, Kawasumi Y, Kachi T, Dagher A, Ito K (2004) Cognitive- and motor-related regions in Parkinson's disease: FDOPA and FDG PET studies. Neuroimage 22(2):553–561

Nagatsu T, Kato T, Numata Y, Ikuta K, Sano M (1977) Phenylethanolamine N-methyltransferase and other enzymes of catecholamine metabolism in human brain. Clin Chim Acta 75(2):221–232

Nahmias C, Garnett ES, Firnau G, Lang A (1985) Striatal dopamine distribution in parkinsonian patients during life. J Neurol Sci 69(3):223–230

Obeso JA, Marin C, Rodriguez-Oroz C, Blesa J, Benitez-Temino B, Mena-Segovia J, Rodriguez M, Olanow CW (2008) The basal ganglia in Parkinson's disease: current concepts and unexplained observations. Ann Neurol 64(2):S30–S46

Ohama E, Ikuta F (1976) Parkinson's disease: distribution of Lewy bodies and monoamine neuron system. Acta Neuropathol 34(4):311–319

Ohm TG, Busch C, Bohl J (1997) Unbiased estimation of neuronal numbers in the human nucleus coeruleus during aging. Neurobiol Aging 18(4):393–399

Ohyama M, Senda M, Ishiwata K, Kitamura S, Mishina M, Ishii K, Toyama H, Oda K, Katayama Y (1999) Preserved benzodiazepine receptors in Alzheimer's disease measured with C-11 flumazenil PET and I-123 iomazenil SPECT in comparison with CBF. Ann Nucl Med 13(5):309–315

Orskov L, Jakobsen J, Dupont E, de Fine Olivarius B, Christensen NJ (1987) Autonomic function in parkinsonian patients relates to duration of disease. Neurology 37(7):1173–1178

Ouchi Y, Yoshikawa E, Sekine Y, Futatsubashi M, Kanno T, Ogusu T, Torizuka T (2005) Microglial activation and dopamine terminal loss in early Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 57(2):168–175

Palner M, Kjaerby C, Knudsen GM, Cumming P (2010) Effects of unilateral 6-OHDA lesions on [(3)H]-N-propylnorapomorphine binding in striatum ex vivo and vulnerability to amphetamine-evoked dopamine release in rat. Neurochem Int 58(3):243–247

Paulus W, Jellinger K (1991) The neuropathologic basis of different clinical subgroups of Parkinson's disease. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 50(6):743–755

Pavese N, Metta V, Bose SK, Chaudhuri KR, Brooks DJ (2010) Fatigue in Parkinson's disease is linked to striatal and limbic serotonergic dysfunction. Brain 133(11):3434–3443

Perez-Otano I, Luquin MR, Oset C, Herrero MT, Kupsch A, Oertel W, Obeso JA, Del Rio J (1995) Neurotoxicity induced by prenatal exposure to MPTP on the monoaminergic and peptidergic systems of the marmoset brain. Exp Neurol 131(1):108–113

Perry EK, Perry RH, Candy JM, Fairbairn AF, Blessed G, Dick DJ, Tomlinson BE (1984) Cortical serotonin-S2 receptor binding abnormalities in patients with Alzheimer's disease: comparisons with Parkinson's disease. Neurosci Lett 51(3):353–357

Perry EK, McKeith I, Thompson P, Marshall E, Kerwin J, Jabeen S, Edwardson JA, Ince P, Blessed G, Irving D et al (1991) Topography, extent, and clinical relevance of neurochemical deficits in dementia of Lewy body type, Parkinson's disease, and Alzheimer's disease. Ann N Y Acad Sci 640:197–202

Piccini P, Weeks RA, Brooks DJ (1997) Alterations in opioid receptor binding in Parkinson's disease patients with levodopa-induced dyskinesias. Ann Neurol 42(5):720–726

Pifl C, Hornykiewicz O (2006) Dopamine turnover is upregulated in the caudate/putamen of asymptomatic MPTP-treated rhesus monkeys. Neurochem Int 49(5):519–524

Politis M, Wu K, Loane C, Turkheimer FE, Molloy S, Brooks DJ, Piccini P (2010) Depressive symptoms in PD correlate with higher 5-HTT binding in raphe and limbic structures. Neurology 75(21):1920–1927

Powers WJ, Videen TO, Markham J, Black KJ, Golchin N, Perlmutter JS (2008) Cerebral mitochondrial metabolism in early Parkinson's disease. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 28(10):1754–1760

Purba JS, Hofman MA, Swaab DF (1994) Decreased number of oxytocin-immunoreactive neurons in the paraventricular nucleus of the hypothalamus in Parkinson's disease. Neurology 44(1):84–89

Raffel DM, Koeppe RA, Little R, Wang CN, Liu S, Junck L, Heumann M, Gilman S (2006) PET measurement of cardiac and nigrostriatal denervation in Parkinsonian syndromes. J Nucl Med 47(11):1769–1777

Rektorova I, Srovnalova H, Kubikova R, Prasek J (2008) Striatal dopamine transporter imaging correlates with depressive symptoms and tower of London task performance in Parkinson's disease. Mov Disord 23(11):1580–1587

Remy P, Doder M, Lees A, Turjanski N, Brooks D (2005) Depression in Parkinson's disease: loss of dopamine and noradrenaline innervation in the limbic system. Brain 128(Pt 6):1314–1322

Rodriguez-Ferreiro J, Cuetos F, Herrera E, Menendez M, Ribacoba R (2010) Cognitive impairment in Parkinson's disease without dementia. Mov Disord 25(13):2136–2141

Rommelfanger KS, Weinshenker D (2007) Norepinephrine: the redheaded stepchild of Parkinson's disease. Biochem Pharmacol 74(2):177–190

Sakakibara R, Shinotoh H, Uchiyama T, Yoshiyama M, Hattori T, Yamanishi T (2001) SPECT imaging of the dopamine transporter with [(123)I]-beta-CIT reveals marked decline of nigrostriatal dopaminergic function in Parkinson's disease with urinary dysfunction. J Neurol Sci 187(1–2):55–59

Sakakibara R, Odaka T, Uchiyama T, Asahina M, Yamaguchi K, Yamaguchi T, Yamanishi T, Hattori T (2003) Colonic transit time and rectoanal videomanometry in Parkinson's disease. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 74(2):268–272

Saper CB, Sorrentino DM, German DC, de Lacalle S (1991) Medullary catecholaminergic neurons in the normal human brain and in Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 29(6):577–584

Scatton B, Javoy-Agid F, Rouquier L, Dubois B, Agid Y (1983) Reduction of cortical dopamine, noradrenaline, serotonin and their metabolites in Parkinson's disease. Brain Res 275(2):321–328

Scatton B, Dennis T, L'Heureux R, Monfort JC, Duyckaerts C, Javoy-Agid F (1986) Degeneration of noradrenergic and serotonergic but not dopaminergic neurones in the lumbar spinal cord of parkinsonian patients. Brain Res 380(1):181–185

Schenck CH, Bundlie SR, Mahowald MW (1996) Delayed emergence of a parkinsonian disorder in 38% of 29 older men initially diagnosed with idiopathic rapid eye movement sleep behaviour disorder. Neurology 46(2):388–393

Schneider JS (1990) Chronic exposure to low doses of MPTP II. Neurochemical and pathological consequences in cognitively-impaired, motor asymptomatic monkeys. Brain Res 534(1–2):25–36

Selby G (1968) Stereotactic surgery for the relief of Parkinson's disease. 2. An analysis of the results in a series of 303 patients (413 operations). J Neurol Sci 5(2):343–375

Shannak K, Rajput A, Rozdilsky B, Kish S, Gilbert J, Hornykiewicz O (1994) Noradrenaline, dopamine and serotonin levels and metabolism in the human hypothalamus: observations in Parkinson's disease and normal subjects. Brain Res 639(1):33–41

Siessmeier T, Kienast T, Wrase J, Larsen JL, Braus DF, Smolka MN, Buchholz HG, Schreckenberger M, Rosch F, Cumming P, Mann K, Bartenstein P, Heinz A (2006) Net influx of plasma 6-[^{18}F]fluoro-L-DOPA (FDOPA) to the ventral striatum correlates with prefrontal processing of affective stimuli. Eur J Neurosci 24(1):305–313

Singaram C, Ashraf W, Gaumnitz EA, Torbey C, Sengupta A, Pfeiffer R, Quigley EM (1995) Dopaminergic defect of enteric nervous system in Parkinson's disease patients with chronic constipation. Lancet 346(8979):861–864

Singer C, Weiner WJ, Sanchez-Ramos JR (1992) Autonomic dysfunction in men with Parkinson's disease. Eur Neurol 32(3):134–140

Smith DF, Dyve S, Minuzzi L, Jakobsen S, Munk OL, Marthi K, Cumming P (2006) Inhibition of [^{11}C]mirtazapine binding by alpha2-adrenoceptor antagonists studied by positron emission tomography in living porcine brain. Synapse 59(8):463–471

Smith DF, Stork BS, Wegener G, Ashkanian M, Jakobsen S, Bender D, Audrain H, Vase KH, Hansen SB, Videbech P, Rosenberg R (2009) [^{11}C]Mirtazapine binding in depressed antidepressant nonresponders studied by PET neuroimaging. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 206(1):133–140

Sokoloff L, Reivich M, Kennedy C, Des Rosiers MH, Patlak CS, Pettigrew KD, Sakurada O, Shinohara M (1977) The [^{14}C]deoxyglucose method for the measurement of local cerebral glucose utilization: theory, procedure, and normal values in the conscious and anesthetized albino rat. J Neurochem 28(5):897–916

Stella F, Gobbi LT, Gobbi S, Oliani MM, Tanaka K, Pieruccini-Faria F (2007) Early impairment of cognitive functions in Parkinson's disease. Arq Neuropsiquiatr 65(2B):406–410

Stiasny-Kolster K, Doerr Y, Moller JC, Hoffken H, Behr TM, Oertel WH, Mayer G (2005) Combination of 'idiopathic' REM sleep behaviour disorder and olfactory dysfunction as possible indicator for alpha-synucleinopathy demonstrated by dopamine transporter FP-CIT-SPECT. Brain 128(Pt 1):126–137

Suzuki M, Kurita A, Hashimoto M, Fukumitsu N, Abo M, Ito Y, Urashima M, Inoue K (2006) Impaired myocardial 123I-metaiodobenzylguanidine uptake in Lewy body disease: comparison between dementia with Lewy bodies and Parkinson's disease. J Neurol Sci 240(1–2): 15–19

Swinn L, Schrag A, Viswanathan R, Bloem BR, Lees A, Quinn N (2003) Sweating dysfunction in Parkinson's disease. Mov Disord 18(12):1459–1463

Takahashi H, Kato M, Takano H, Arakawa R, Okumura M, Otsuka T, Kodaka F, Hayashi M, Okubo Y, Ito H, Suhara T (2008) Differential contributions of prefrontal and hippocampal dopamine D(1) and D(2) receptors in human cognitive functions. J Neurosci 28(46): 12032–12038

Takahashi S, Tohgi H, Yonezawa H, Obara S, Yamazaki E (1999) The effect of trihexyphenidyl, an anticholinergic agent, on regional cerebral blood flow and oxygen metabolism in patients with Parkinson's disease. J Neurol Sci 167(1):56–61

Tang CC, Poston KL, Eckert T, Feigin A, Frucht S, Gudesblatt M, Dhawan V, Lesser M, Vonsattel JP, Fahn S, Eidelberg D (2010) Differential diagnosis of parkinsonism: a metabolic imaging study using pattern analysis. Lancet Neurol 9(2):149–158

Thal LJ, Sharpless NS, Hirschhorn ID, Horowitz SG, Makman MH (1983) Striatal met-enkephalin concentration increases following nigrostriatal denervation. Biochem Pharmacol 32(22):3297–3301

Tohgi H, Abe T, Takahashi S, Takahashi J, Hamato H (1993) Concentrations of serotonin and its related substances in the cerebrospinal fluid of parkinsonian patients and their relations to the severity of symptoms. Neurosci Lett 150(1):71–74

Vafaee MS, Østergaard K, Sunde N, Gjedde A, Dupont E, Cumming P (2004) Focal changes of oxygen consumption in cerebral cortex of patients with Parkinson's disease during subthalamic stimulation. Neuroimage 22(2):966–974

van Beilen M, Portman AT, Kiers HA, Maguire RP, Kaasinen V, Koning M, Pruim J, Leenders KL (2008) Striatal FDOPA uptake and cognition in advanced non-demented Parkinson's disease: a clinical and FDOPA-PET study. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 14(3):224–228

Van Camp N, Boisgard R, Kuhnast B, Theze B, Viel T, Gregoire MC, Chauveau F, Boutin H, Katsifis A, Dolle F, Tavitian B (2010) In vivo imaging of neuroinflammation: a comparative study between [(18)F]PBR111, [(11)C]CLINME and [(11)C]PK11195 in an acute rodent model. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 37(5):962–972

Vernaleken I, Buchholz HG, Kumakura Y, Siessmeier T, Stoeter P, Bartenstein P, Cumming P, Grunder G (2007) 'Prefrontal' cognitive performance of healthy subjects positively correlates with cerebral FDOPA influx: an exploratory [^{18}F]-fluoro-L-DOPA-PET investigation. Hum Brain Mapp 28(10):931–939

Volpi R, Caffarra P, Scaglioni A, Maestri D, Chiodera P, Coiro V (1994) Restoration of ACTH/cortisol and LH responses to naloxone by chronic dopaminergic treatment in Parkinson's disease. J Neural Transm Park Dis Dement Sect 7(1):1–11

Volpi R, Caffarra P, Boni S, Scaglioni A, Malvezzi L, Saginario A, Chiodera P, Coiro V (1997a) ACTH/cortisol involvement in the serotonergic disorder affecting the parkinsonian brain. Neuropsychobiology 35(2):73–78

Volpi R, Caffarra P, Scaglioni A, Boni S, Saginario A, Chiodera P, Coiro V (1997b) Defective 5-HT 1-receptor-mediated neurotransmission in the control of growth hormone secretion in Parkinson's disease. Neuropsychobiology 35(2):79–83

von Economo C (1931) Encephalitis lethargica. Its sequelae and treatment.(trans: Newman KO). Oxford University Press, London

Wakabayashi K, Takahashi H (1997) The intermediolateral nucleus and Clarke's column in Parkinson's disease. Acta Neuropathol 94(3):287–289

Weder B, Azari NP, Knorr U, Seitz RJ, Keel A, Nienhusmeier M, Maguire RP, Leenders KL, Ludin HP (2000) Disturbed functional brain interactions underlying deficient tactile object discrimination in Parkinson's disease. Hum Brain Mapp 11(3):131–145

Weihe E, Schutz B, Hartschuh W, Anlauf M, Schafer MK, Eiden LE (2005) Coexpression of cholinergic and noradrenergic phenotypes in human and nonhuman autonomic nervous system. J Comp Neurol 492(3):370–379

Weintraub D, Newberg AB, Cary MS, Siderowf AD, Moberg PJ, Kleiner-Fisman G, Duda JE, Stern MB, Mozley D, Katz IR (2005) Striatal dopamine transporter imaging correlates with anxiety and depression symptoms in Parkinson's disease. J Nucl Med 46(2):227–232

Whittington CJ, Podd J, Stewart-Williams S (2006) Memory deficits in Parkinson's disease. J Clin Exp Neuropsychol 28(5):738–754

Williams-Gray CH, Foltynie T, Brayne CE, Robbins TW, Barker RA (2007) Evolution of cognitive dysfunction in an incident Parkinson's disease cohort. Brain 130(Pt 7):1787–1798

Winge K, Werdelin LM, Nielsen KK, Stimpel H (2004) Effects of dopaminergic treatment on bladder function in Parkinson's disease. Neurourol Urodyn 23(7):689–696

Winge K, Friberg L, Werdelin L, Nielsen KK, Stimpel H (2005) Relationship between nigrostriatal dopaminergic degeneration, urinary symptoms, and bladder control in Parkinson's disease. Eur J Neurol 12(11):842–850

Wong KK, Muller ML, Kuwabara H, Studenski SA, Bohnen NI (2010) Olfactory loss and nigrostriatal dopaminergic denervation in the elderly. Neurosci Lett 484(3):163–167

Yakushev I, Hammers A, Fellgiebel A, Schmidtmann I, Scheurich A, Buchholz HG, Peters J, Bartenstein P, Lieb K, Schreckenberger M (2009) SPM-based count normalization provides excellent discrimination of mild Alzheimer's disease and amnestic mild cognitive impairment from healthy aging. Neuroimage 44(1):43–50

Yoshita M (1998) Differentiation of idiopathic Parkinson's disease from striatonigral degeneration and progressive supranuclear palsy using iodine-123 meta-iodobenzylguanidine myocardial scintigraphy. J Neurol Sci 155(1):60–67

Zarow C, Lyness SA, Mortimer JA, Chui HC (2003) Neuronal loss is greater in the locus coeruleus than nucleus basalis and substantia nigra in Alzheimer and Parkinson diseases. Arch Neurol 60(3):337–341

Zweig RM, Cardillo JE, Cohen M, Giere S, Hedreen JC (1993) The locus ceruleus and dementia in Parkinson's disease. Neurology 43(5):986–991

Imaging of Seasonal Affective Disorder and Seasonality Effects on Serotonin and Dopamine Function in the Human Brain

Nicole Praschak-Rieder and Matthaeus Willeit

Abstract According to current knowledge, disturbances in brain monoamine transmission play a major role in many psychiatric disorders, and many of the radioligands used for investigating these disorders bind to targets within the brain monoamine systems. However, a phylogenetically ancient and prevailing function of monoamines is to mediate the adaptation of organisms and cells to rhythmical changes in light conditions, and to other environmental rhythms, such as changes in temperature, or the availability of energy resources throughout the seasons. The physiological systems mediating these changes are highly conserved throughout species, including humans. Here we review the literature on seasonal changes in binding of monoaminergic ligands in the human brain. Moreover, we argue for the importance of considering possible effects of season when investigating brain monoamines in healthy subjects and subjects with psychiatric disorders.

Keywords PET · SPECT · monoamine transporters · season · SAD

Contents

N. Praschak-Rieder · M. Willeit (✉)
Department of Biological Psychiatry, Medical University Vienna,
Währinger Gürtel 18-20, 1090 Vienna, Austria
e-mail: matthaeus.willeit@meduniwien.ac.at

N. Praschak-Rieder
e-mail: nicole.praschak-rieder@meduniwien.ac.at

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 149–167
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2011_174

Published Online: 5 January 2012

1 Introduction

Organisms living in temperate and polar zones undergo profound seasonal changes in their metabolism and behaviour. These oscillations are a necessary evolutionary adaptation that allows for coping with dramatic changes in temperature, lighting conditions, and food availability. Humans show a wide range of behaviors that vary with seasons. This includes variations in eating behavior and sleep, mood, and energy balance. The degree of seasonal changes in these parameters is termed "seasonality". Individuals with particularly high seasonality scores are highly vulnerable for seasonal affective disorder (Hardin et al. 1991; Winkler et al. 2002). Seasonal affective disorder (SAD), and in particular winter type SAD (the most common form of the disorder) is a special form of recurrent major depression, with regular depressive episodes during autumn and winter, alternating with euthymia or hypomanic phases in spring and summer (Rosenthal et al. 1984). Frequently, patients with SAD suffer from atypical depression, a condition characterized by an increase in sleep, hyperphagia, and subsequent weight gain. This symptom profile, together with the high proportion of female patients with SAD, has led to the hypothesis that seasonality is an adaptive response regulating reproductive cycles in populations that migrated to Northern or Southern temperate and polar zones (Davis and Levitan 2005; Pjrek et al. 2007).

Seasonality *per se* is not necessarily associated with clinical symptoms; rather, it is normally distributed in the general population (Kasper et al. 1989; Winkler et al. 2002; Hardin et al. 1991). In contrast to many animal species who show more dramatic changes in behaviour, such as hibernation or the exclusive restriction of mating behaviour to a certain period of the year, humans living in temperate or polar zones show much more subtle changes. Still, many events show a clear seasonal distribution, and most of the time, we do not know the mechanisms involved in the rhythmic expression of phenomena as diverse as suicide (see below for further discussion), metabolic changes (Au-Yong et al. 2009), activity of disorders such as multiple sclerosis (Meier et al. 2010), or the incidence of sudden infant death syndrome (Douglas et al. 1996; Osmond and Murphy 1988).

Some physiological and pathological conditions show rhythmic patterns oscillating at different discernable frequencies. A good example is sleep. Sleep follows an obvious circadian rhythm, with another seasonal rhythm that is superimposed in large parts of the population, showing a regular increase in sleep duration during winter, and reductions in sleep duration in summer (Kasper et al. 1989). At times, systems regulating circadian oscillations—some of the components are well characterized—are also involved in mediating the effects of changing seasons and varying light schedules (Balzer and Hardeland 1991; Wehr et al. 2001; Gonzalez and Aston-Jones 2006, 2008). Indoleamines (tryptophan, serotonin, melatonin) and other monoamines (e.g., dopamine, norepinephrine) are of special importance in signaling change of seasons in plants, animals, and humans (Azmitia 2001). Today, there is solid evidence that a dysregulation in brain monoamine systems contributes to the pathogenesis of SAD (for review see

Neumeister et al. 2001a; Lam and Levitan 2000; Sohn and Lam 2005). SAD is regarded as an extreme reaction to seasonal changes. Seasonal changes in mood, drive, and wellbeing also occur in the general population, although to a lesser degree (Kasper et al. 1989). As a consequence, studies on monoamine systems in psychiatric disorders may substantially profit from studies on biological rhythms, and failing to take into account the effects of season may limit the progress otherwise made possible by new brain imaging methods.

2 Brain Imaging of Seasonal Affective Disorder

There are only a limited number of studies specifically investigating SAD. Two early studies measured cerebral metabolic rates using [^{11}F]-deoxy-glucose ([^{11}F]FDG) and PET in winter SAD (Cohen et al. 1992) and summer seasonal affective disorder (Goyer et al. 1992), a rare condition where subjects suffer from depressive episodes regularly reoccurring in summer. The Cohen et al. study found globally reduced cerebral metabolic rates and relative reductions in frontal cortical areas. The Goyer et al. study described reduced overall cerebral metabolic rates, decreased rates in the left inferior parietal lobule but an increase in the orbitofrontal cortex in patients with summer depression. Our group has conducted a small study on regional cerebral blood flow (rCBF) using [^{99m}Tc]HMPAO and single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) in patients with SAD and healthy subjects, suggesting increased left frontal rCBF in untreated patients with SAD, and subsequent normalization in rCBF after successful light therapy (Praschak-Rieder et al. 1998).

Studies using SPECT and the nonspecific monoamine transporter ligand [^{123}I]β-CIT showed decreased [^{123}I]β-CIT binding in the midbrain (Willeit et al. 2000) and striatum (Neumeister et al. 2001b) in SAD. Midbrain binding of [^{123}I]β-CIT is predominantly to serotonin transporters (SERT), while binding in the striatum—where equilibrium binding is achieved substantially later than in midbrain—is predominantly to dopamine transporters (DAT). In sum, these studies show reduced [^{123}I]β-CIT in a relatively small sample of depressed patients with SAD. However, independent replication and studies using more specific ligands are needed before firm conclusions can be drawn.

3 Seasonal Effects on the Brain Serotonin Systems

Serotonin neurotransmission has been implicated in several neuropsychiatric disorders, and the serotonergic system is certainly among the best studied transmitter systems with regard to seasonal changes and their behavioral and medical consequences. Indeed, some of the key molecules of the serotonergic system are accessible to molecular imaging studies: one of the most important molecules for

regulation of serotonin transmission is the serotonin transporter (SERT or 5-HTT; Ramamoorthy et al. 1993). By taking up serotonin into the presynaptic neuron soon after its release, SERT controls spatial and temporal spread of the serotonergic signal. Blocking SERT is one of the most important pharmacological principles in antidepressant drug therapy, and the successful clinical use of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) in the last decades suggests that SERT blockade is sufficient for antidepressant actions of a drug.

Much less is known on the role of SERT in the pathogenesis of psychiatric disorders. Indirect evidence is derived from studying genetic polymorphisms of the SERT gene. A polymorphism in the promoter region of the SERT gene (5-HTTLPR; Heils et al. 1996) has been shown to be functional in human cell lines, with the long (L) variant being associated with substantially higher 5-HTT expression than the short (S)-allele. 5-HTTLPR has been extensively studied for possible associations with personality traits (Lesch et al. 1996), brain function (Pezawas et al. 2005), suicide (Bondy et al. 2000, 2006; Anguelova et al. 2003), affective disorders (Collier et al. 1996), and their relation to traumatic life events (Caspi et al. 2003) and seasonality (Rosenthal et al. 1998; Willeit et al. 2003). Recently, another functional single nucleotide variant within the 5-HTTLPR L allele has been described, designated LA and LG (Kraft et al. 2005; Nakamura et al. 2000) Only LA is associated with high levels of SERT mRNA transcription and SERT expression in vitro, whereas LG is as low expressing as the S-allele indicating that 5-HTTLPR is functionally triallelic (Hu et al. 2006). In contrast to older studies using less refined imaging technologies (Willeit et al. 2001), three newer studies using the selective SERT ligand [11C]DASB (Wilson et al. 2000), and considering the triallelic nature of 5-HTTLPR, were able to show an association of the 5-HTTLPR LongA/LongA (LA/LA) genotype and high SERT binding in the living human brain (Praschak-Rieder et al. 2007; Reimold et al. 2007). However, a recent [^{11}C]DASB study gave negative results for both the bi- and triallelic 5-HTTLPR polymorphism (Murthy et al. 2010). Thus, the effect of the triallelic 5-HTTLPR on SERT density in the human brain seems to be rather limited, in that three positive [^{11}C]DASB PET studies describe only moderate elevations (approximately 10–20%) in SERT binding for high-expressing genotypes, and the studies disagree on the brain regions displaying higher binding. In contrast to cell lines, several conditions other than genetic ones have been shown to influence or associate with SERT binding in vivo. These include ethnicity (Praschak-Rieder et al. 2007), personality (Kalbitzer et al. 2009), biography (Miller et al. 2009), psychiatric diagnoses (Malison et al. 1998; Willeit et al. 2000, for review see Meyer 2007 and Stockmeier 2003), and season (Praschak-Rieder et al. 2008).

One of the first studies to investigate seasonal effects on brain SERT binding evaluated a small sample of healthy females ($n = 11$) using the nonspecific monoamine transporter ligand [^{123}I]β-CIT and SPECT. Evidence was found for higher binding in subjects scanned in spring and summer as compared to those scanned in autumn (Neumeister et al. 2000). However, using the more specific radioligand [^{11}C]DASB and PET in a much larger group of healthy subjects ($n = 88$), we were able to show that [^{11}C]DASB binding potential (BP_{ND}) values

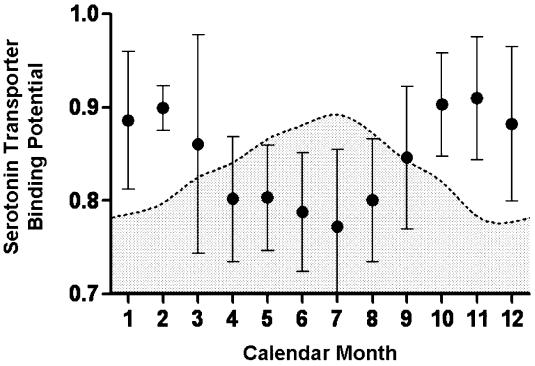


Fig. 1 Reciprocal peaks and troughs of brain serotonin transporter (SERT) binding in 88 healthy subjects and duration of sunshine in Toronto, Ontario (shaded area; range: 2.4 h (minimum) to 9.2 h (maximum) a day. SERT binding potential (BP) values were measured using the selective SERT radioligand [^{11}C]DASB and Positron Emission Tomography. *Circles* represent bimonthly moving averages of mean binding potential values derived from six predefined brain regions (prefrontal cortex, anterior cingulate, caudate, putamen, thalamus, and midbrain). Numbers on x-axis are calendar months

show considerable seasonal variation (Praschak-Rieder et al. 2008), in that [^{11}C]DASB BP_{ND} values are high in autumn and winter, and decrease with increasing duration of sunshine in spring for reaching a nadir in summer (Fig. 1).

In this study and another study on the influence of light on brain SERT binding (Kalbitzer et al. 2010), [^{11}C]DASB BP_{ND} values showed a negative correlation with average daily duration of sunshine, with higher values occurring at times of lesser sunlight. Peak differences in [^{11}C]DASB BP_{ND} values between the months with highest and lowest binding values in the Praschak-Rieder et al. were as high as 40% (Fig. 2).

Higher SERT binding in autumn/winter as compared to spring/summer has been found in several recent studies. For example, in a study involving 29 healthy subjects that examined the effects of age on SERT binding using the radioligand [^{11}]C-(+)McN5652 and PET (Buchert et al. 2006), in a [^{123}I]β-CIT SPECT study involving 98 subjects (49 of them with major depression; (Ruhe et al. 2009)), and in a recent [^{11}C]DASB-PET study involving 54 healthy subjects who were also genotyped for the 5-HTTLPR polymorphism (Kalbitzer et al. 2010). The latter study found seasonal variation in [^{11}C]DASB binding in carriers of the 5-HTTLPR s-allele only, while no significant effects of season were found in 5-HTTLPR *l*-allele homozygous subjects. A small SPECT study comparing binding of the selective SERT ligand [^{123}I]ADAM in 12 individuals assessed in winter and summer (Koskela et al. 2008) did not detect significant seasonal changes.

Thus far, higher brain SERT binding in autumn and winter as compared to spring and summer has been found in four studies using three different imaging methods A direct consequence of this finding is that studies on group differences in

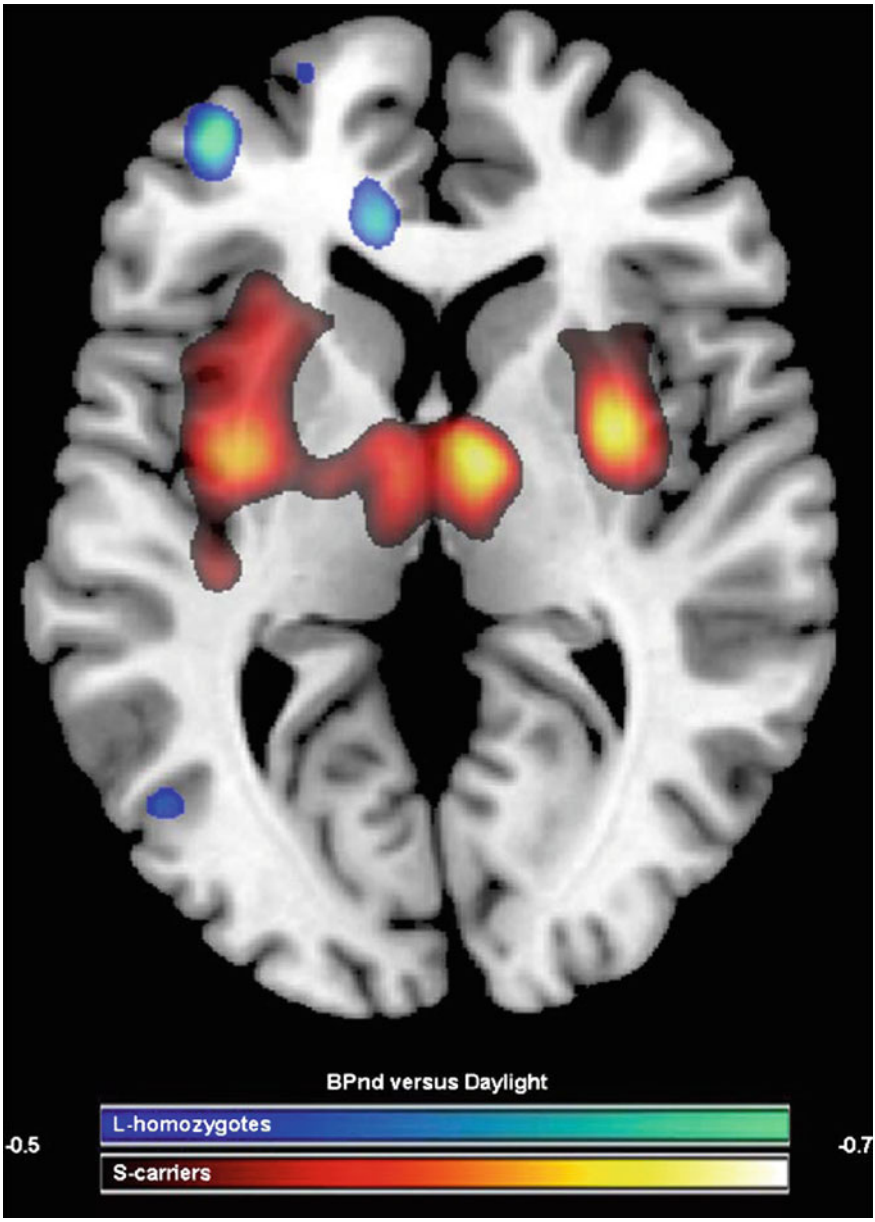


Fig. 2 Results of a voxel-based analysis of parametric images representing binding of the selective serotonin transporter (SERT) radioligand [^{11}C]DASB. The image represents a map of voxels with significant negative correlation between the local amount of daylight on the day of the positron emission tomography (PET) scan and [^{11}C]DASB nondisplaceable binding potential (BP_{ND}) values in carriers of the 5-HTTLPR S-allele. Brain structures with the strongest correlation are putamen and thalamus. Correlations between daylight and SERT binding in L-homozygotes (*blue*) failed to reach level of significance (Kalbitzer et al. 2010)

brain SERT binding, such as studies on the difference between depressed and healthy subjects, or studies on the effects of genetic polymorphisms on brain SERT binding, need to control for the effects of season. A good example is a study by Praschak-Rieder et al. (2007) that investigated the effects of 5-HTTLPR on [^{11}C]DASB binding in the brain. The study found significantly higher binding in subjects with high-expressing 5-HTTLPR variants. A post hoc analysis controlling for the effects of season as a confounding variable (Praschak-Rieder et al. 2008) found an enhanced effect of genotype as compared to the analysis that did not take into account seasonal variance in SERT binding.

While it is now well supported by evidence that there exists a seasonal variation in brain SERT ligand binding, much less is known on the behavioral consequences or molecular mechanisms associated with this finding. Still, the finding of a seasonal variation in SERT binding might help to explain seasonal variation in physiological and behavioral parameters observed in clinical and non-clinical populations. It is, for instance, a remarkable and highly replicated finding that suicide numbers in temperate and polar zones show a peak in spring (Durkheim 1897; Chew and McCleary 1995; Partonen et al. 2004; Bjorksten et al. 2005; Rocchi et al. 2007; Preti and Miotto 1998; Vyssoki et al. 2011). The peak is shifted for 6 months in the southern hemisphere (also occurring in spring; Heerlein et al. (2006)) and it seems to be absent in equatorial regions (Parker et al. 2001). Some studies relate the suicide peak to the rapid increase of environmental light in spring, with suicide numbers increasing parallel to the duration of daily sunshine (Linkowski et al. 1992; Petridou et al. 2002; Papadopoulos et al. 2005; Lambert et al. 2003; Vyssoki et al. 2011). Consistent with this perspective, suicide attempts (Praschak-Rieder et al. 1997; Haffmans et al. 1998), although rare (Lam et al. 2000), are described as an early complication of bright light therapy in SAD.

The literature offers extensive evidence for a close relationship between brain serotonin function, impulsivity, and violent suicide (see for example (Asberg et al. 1976, 1986; Coccaro et al. 1989; Mann and Malone 1997; Mann et al. 1996; Malone et al. 1996; Walderhaug et al. 2007). Post-mortem studies have found reduced SERT binding in several brain areas of suicide victims (Leake et al. 1991; Joyce et al. 1993; Laruelle et al. 1993; Arango et al. 1995; Mann et al. 2000), and the low-expressing allele of the serotonin transporter promoter polymorphism 5-HTTLPR (Heils et al. 1996) has repeatedly been associated with violent suicides (Bellivier et al. 2000; Bondy et al. 2000; Courtet et al. 2001; Lin and Tsai 2004 see Anguelova et al. 2003; Bondy et al. 2006 for review). Converging evidence from brain imaging (Tiihonen et al. 1997; Lindstrom et al. 2004; Frankle et al. 2005; Ryding et al. 2006; Sekine et al. 2006) and peripheral SERT binding studies (for example Coccaro et al. 1989; Patkar et al. 2004; Callaway et al. 2005) suggests a close relationship between reduced SERT binding and impulsivity. Our data show a uniform reduction in SERT BP values from winter and early spring towards June. This coincides remarkably with the timing of the suicide peak in late spring found in epidemiological studies (Chew and McCleary 1995; Rocchi et al. 2007; Partonen et al. 2004; Bjorksten et al. 2005; Preti and Miotto 1998; Vyssoki et al. 2011). Our findings could thus suggest that reductions in SERT binding in spring

favor a state of heightened impulsivity in some subjects, who might then be more prone to enact on suicidal thoughts than they would have been during other times of the year.

However, the evidence for seasonal variation in brain SERT binding has some caveats that should be addressed in future studies: the above-mentioned studies (Praschak-Rieder et al. 2008; Ruhe et al. 2009; Kalbitzer et al. 2010; Buchert et al. 2006) rely on a comparison of subjects who underwent one single PET scan and were then grouped according to season. None of these studies measured SERT binding repeatedly in the same subjects at various times of the year. Since brain SERT binding shows high interindividual variability, it is not possible at present to quantify the true effect size of intraindividual seasonal variation in brain SERT binding. Given that individuals differ greatly in their behavioral and psychological response to seasonal changes in the environment, it is to be expected that seasonal variation in brain SERT binding might vary from individual to individual as well. The mechanism leading to seasonal changes in brain SERT binding is another unresolved scientific question.

In our view, this problem involves three interrelated issues. First, what do the outcome parameters of these studies (BP_{ND} or specific to nonspecific binding ratio) really measure? Second, which one of the many seasonal changes in the environment influences brain SERT binding? And third, what are the molecular mechanisms that connect brain SERT binding with seasonal changes in the environment?

The BP_{ND} values used in the [^{11}C]DASB studies are calculated as B_{max}/k_d, where B_{max} is the maximal binding capacity of SERT molecules in the region of interest and k_d is the equilibrium dissociation constant between SERT and the radioligand and thus a measure for the 'affinity' of SERT for its ligand. Only saturation experiments with low versus high amounts of cold ligand can help distinguish between seasonal changes in SERT affinity for [^{11}C]DASB and seasonal changes in the amount of extracellular SERT protein. Another possible confound are changes in radioligand binding due to competition between the radioligand and endogenous or "natural" ligands. Changes in binding of dopamine $D_{2/3}$ receptor radioligands have successfully been used to obtain estimates on fluctuations in endogenous dopamine levels in the living human brain (see for example Laruelle et al. 1995; Breier et al. 1997; Abi-Dargham et al. 2000; Willeit et al. 2008a; see Laruelle 2000 for critical review of the method). In theory, it would thus be possible that seasonal changes in [^{11}C]DASB binding are secondary to changes in extracellular serotonin levels. A study in non-human primates has indeed found reductions in brain [^{11}C]DASB binding after administration of a high dose of the serotonin precursor 5-hydroxy-L-tryptophan. However, results from a study in humans combining [^{11}C]DASB PET and tryptophan depletion (Praschak-Rieder et al. 2005), a research paradigm where serotonin levels are artificially reduced by dietary measures, suggest that extracellular serotonin levels do not significantly influence [^{11}C]DASB binding in the living human brain. Ideally, seasonal variations in SERT expression levels should thus be investigated in post-mortem brain samples, where an earlier study found considerable seasonal changes

in serotonin availability and metabolism (Carlsson et al. 1980). Some preliminary evidence on possible implications of a seasonal variation in SERT binding is derived from a study on platelet SERT function in depressed patients with SAD and healthy control subjects (Willeit et al. 2008b). The study found significant seasonal variation in platelet SERT function in patients and healthy control subjects but no significant differences in SERT B_{max} or k_d values between autumn/winter and spring/summer. However, in good accordance with brain imaging studies, if a parameter analogous to the BP_{ND} (B_{max}/k_d) used for PET imaging is calculated, the parameter is significantly greater in fall/winter than in spring/summer (M. Willeit, unpublished observation). However, the increase in SERT binding (Praschak-Rieder et al. 2008; Ruhe et al. 2009; Kalbitzer et al. 2010; Buchert et al. 2006), SERT activity (Willeit et al. 2008b), and metabolic turnover of serotonin (Lambert et al. 2002), has the potential to explain the emergence of depressive symptoms during the dark season, especially in those individuals who have other predisposing factors, such as an increase in brain monoamine-oxidase activity (Meyer et al. 2006).

The second unresolved question is which of the many seasonally varying environmental factors cause the changes observed in brain SERT binding. Although it seems somewhat obvious at first sight that it is the different amount of light that leads to changes in brain SERT binding, it is methodologically quite difficult to disentangle the influence of factors such as the amount of light, temperature, day-length, rate of change in day-length, and so on. The main reason for this is that all those factors show high cross-correlation, since they all are secondary to the main astronomical changes during the course of the year. However, one study using the nonspecific SERT ligand [^{3}H]imipramine has shown higher SERT binding in the brain of rodents kept at long night–short day conditions when compared to animals kept at short night–long day conditions (i.e., lighting conditions that resemble summer). To a certain degree, the Praschak-Rieder et al. 2008 study also supports an important role of light, as duration of sunshine correlated significantly more strongly with brain [^{11}C]DASB binding than with average temperature values (Praschak-Rieder et al. 2008).

The third aspect of this problem is to propose and prove a plausible causal mechanism connecting changes in the environment with SERT binding in the brain. A solution to this problem is contingent on the above described steps, and requires animal testing with prospectively manipulated environmental conditions. There exist several potential pathways, but a first step will be to clarify whether changes in brain SERT binding are induced by a systemic factor (in this case most likely humoral) or a factor affecting the brain only, thus possibly involving neuronal signaling into the brain (for instance via the retino-hypothalamic tract). The above-mentioned parallel changes in brain and platelet B_{max}/k_d values rather point to a common, possibly humoral factor regulating SERT in the brain and periphery at the same time.

A recent study (Spindelegger et al. 2011) also suggests that brain serotonin 1_A ($5\text{-}HT1_A$) receptor binding of the selective radioligand [^{11}C]WAY-100635 might show light-dependent changes. In contrast to SERT binding, $5\text{-}HT1_A$ receptor

binding showed a positive correlation with the amount of sunlight, such that higher binding occurred in individuals exposed to more light in the week before PET scanning. However, this finding needs independent replication.

In summary, PET and SPECT imaging of serotonergic target structures has yielded fascinating results, with many of the results still waiting for replication studies. An increase in SERT binding in the dark season as compared to spring and summer has been shown by four studies using three different imaging methods. This finding is also a good example for the importance of this string of research for the entire field, as it advances our understanding of regulatory processes in serotonin neurotransmission that may be relevant in physiological and pathological processes.

4 Seasonal Effects on the Brain Dopamine Systems

Dopamine is a monoamine transmitter formed from the essential amino acid tyrosine. It is of preeminent importance for physiological functions such as motor control, motivated behavior, and implicit and explicit learning processes (Dalley and Everitt 2009). Several components of dopamine signaling show clear circadian oscillations, and some of them have been shown to be regulated by the photoperiod via a mechanism depending on the integrity of the hypothalamic suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN), the main zeitgeber-structure in mammalians. This includes dopamine transporter (DAT) binding and expression of dopamine hydroxylase, the rate-limiting enzyme for dopamine synthesis, in the ventral-striatal nucleus accumbens (Sleipness et al. 2007b). Consistently with these effects it has been shown that primary cocaine reinforcement, which depends on the mesolimbic dopamine system (Espana et al. 2010), also shows photoperiodic regulation (Sorg et al. 2011; Sleipness et al. 2007a). Dopamine and dopamine metabolites show a clear circadian rhythm in the rodent and avian retina (Doyle et al. 2002; Lorenc-Duda et al. 2009), with dopaminergic retinal neurons being regulated by non-visual photoreception via intrinsically photosensitive retinal ganglion cells (ipRGCs; Zhang et al. 2008). In humans, polymorphisms in the dopamine D_4 receptor gene interact with season of birth to influence psychological traits and body mass index (Chotai et al. 2003; Eisenberg et al. 2007; Roussos et al. 2010; Levitan et al. 2006, 2010). In summary, there is strong evidence that dopamine neurotransmission is regulated in part by photoperiodic and light-dependent rhythms.

However, there is only limited evidence on seasonal or light-dependent changes in dopamine neurotransmission in humans. One SPECT study showed reduced [^{123}I]β-CIT binding in the DAT rich striatum in patients with SAD, suggesting that besides serotonin (Willeit et al. 2000), changes in dopamine transmission may be involved in the pathogenesis of SAD (Neumeister et al. 2001b). Two recent studies have investigated light-dependent changes in dopamine $D_{2/3}$ receptor binding (Tsai et al. 2011) and seasonal changes in uptake of the radiolabeled dopamine precursor [^{18}F]DOPA (Eisenberg et al. 2010) in the striatum of healthy subjects.

The Tsai et al. study, conducted in subtropical Taiwan, investigated a total of 68 healthy subjects and analyzed subjects in the lowest and highest quartile of average sunshine duration in the 30 days prior to their SPECT scans, leaving 35 subjects for final analysis. Subjects scanned at times of more sunshine had higher striatal [^{123}I]iodobenzamide ([^{123}I]IBZM) binding than subjects with lower mean sunshine hours during the month prior to SPECT scans. The duration of sunshine and day-length varies little during the year in Taiwan. Conducting the study at higher degrees of latitude might thus have improved the power for detecting light-dependent changes in $D_{2/3}$ receptor binding. The result emphasizes the importance of seasonal changes in dopamine transmission in humans. However, its interpretation is somewhat difficult, since it is known that [^{123}I]IBZM is sensitive towards fluctuations in endogenous dopamine levels (Innis et al. 1992; Laruelle et al. 1995, 2000). Higher [^{123}I]IBZM binding could thus indicate either higher dopamine $D_{2/3}$ receptor levels, or a decrease in extracellular dopamine levels. A way to disentangle the two possible interpretations is to decrease competition of endogenous dopamine by catecholamine-depleting procedures.

The Eisenberg et al. study investigated the effects of season on striatal [^{18}F]DOPA uptake in a large sample($n = 86$) of healthy subjects scanned during a period of several years. Subjects scanned in fall and winter ($n = 42$) had significantly higher uptake of [^{18}F]DOPA into the putamen than those scanned in spring and summer, with the difference in the rate constant K_i being approximately 5%. A voxel-wise analysis located the maximal difference in [^{18}F]DOPA uptake in the posterior putamen. The study did not relate [^{18}F]DOPA uptake to sunlight or other environmental parameters. The outcome parameter used in this study, and in most other [^{18}F]DOPA PET studies, the rate constant K_i, is generally interpreted as reflecting presynaptic L-DOPA uptake and storage. The result would thus indicate a greater amount of dopamine stored in presynaptic terminals during fall and winter as compared to spring and summer. This would be in line with the finding of lower striatal [^{123}I]IBZM binding at times of lesser light (Tsai et al. 2011), since competition at postsynaptic $D_{2/3}$ receptors would be greater with levels of synaptic dopamine being higher during fall and winter. However, further studies are needed to support this hypothesis, particularly because—as shown in patients with schizophrenia—higher dopamine synthesis rates can also be associated with reduced steady-state storage of [^{18}F]dopamine (Kumakura et al. 2007).

5 Summary

The change of seasons induces variations in several behaviors and psychological domains in humans living in temperate and polar zones. On the one hand, these variations are part of an adaptive response of the organism to the dramatic changes in temperature, lighting conditions, and food availability between warm and cold seasons. On the other hand, these variations may become maladaptive in some individuals, leading to depressive episodes in seasonal affective disorder, or to an

increase in impulsivity that might be associated with increased risk for suicide. Brain monoamine systems have a key role in modulating all behavioral and psychological domains that vary with the seasons. This, together with the fact that many radioligands for human use target monoaminergic structures in the brain, has led to an increasing number of neuroimaging studies investigating seasonal changes in human brain monoamine systems.

Some intriguing findings, such as a seasonal variation in brain dopamine $D_{2/3}$ receptor binding (Tsai et al. 2011) and striatal [^{18}F]DOPA uptake (Eisenberg et al. 2010) or the finding of light-dependent changes in brain 5-HT_{1A} receptor binding (Spindelegger et al. 2011) still need independent replication. One finding, the seasonal variation in brain SERT binding, has been shown in four studies using three different imaging technologies (Praschak-Rieder et al. 2008; Kalbitzer et al. 2010; Ruhe et al. 2009; Buchert et al. 2006). The strong correlation of SERT binding with the amount of environmental light found in two of the studies (Praschak-Rieder et al. 2008; Kalbitzer et al. 2010) further corroborates the importance of seasonal influences on brain serotonin transmission.

Today, we still lack deeper knowledge on the mechanisms mediating the adaptive—and sometimes maladaptive—changes in brain function following seasonal changes in the environment. Future research on the molecular background of seasonal changes in the human brain will need to establish suitable animal models that allow for a discrete and prospective manipulation of the multitude of environmental parameters that change during the course of a year. Only when integrating knowledge on the effects of season derived from animal models with results from human neuroimaging studies, will we be able to make significant progress in our understanding of brain monoamine function.

Acknowledgments We wish to thank Dr. Jan Kalbitzer for kindly providing Fig. 2 of this manuscript.

References

Abi-Dargham A, Rodenhiser J, Printz D, Zea-Ponce Y, Gil R, Kegeles LS, Weiss R, Cooper TB, Mann JJ, Van Heertum RL, Gorman JM, Laruelle M (2000) Increased baseline occupancy of D2 receptors by dopamine in schizophrenia. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97(14):8104–8109

Anguelova M, Benkelfat C, Turecki G (2003) A systematic review of association studies investigating genes coding for serotonin receptors and the serotonin transporter: II suicidal behavior. Mol Psychiatry 8(7):646–653

Arango V, Underwood MD, Gubbi AV, Mann JJ (1995) Localized alterations in pre- and postsynaptic serotonin binding sites in the ventrolateral prefrontal cortex of suicide victims. Brain Res 688(1–2):121–133

Asberg M, Traskman L, Thoren P (1976) 5-HIAA in the cerebrospinal fluid. A biochemical suicide predictor? Arch Gen Psychiatry 33(10):193–1197

Asberg M, Nordstrom P, Traskman-Bendz L (1986) Cerebrospinal fluid studies in suicide. An overview. Ann N Y Acad Sci 487:243–255

Au-Yong IT, Thorn N, Ganatra R, Perkins AC, Symonds ME (2009) Brown adipose tissue and seasonal variation in humans. Diabetes 58(11):2583–2587. doi:db09-0833[pii]10.2337/db09-0833

Azmitia EC (2001) Modern views on an ancient chemical: serotonin effects on cell proliferation, maturation, and apoptosis. Brain Res Bull 56(5):413–424

Balzer I, Hardeland R (1991) Circadian rhythmicity in the stimulation of bioluminescence by biogenic amines and MAO inhibitors in Gonyaulax polyedra. Int J Biometeorol 34(4): 231–234

Bellivier F, Szoke A, Henry C, Lacoste J, Bottos C, Nosten-Bertrand M, Hardy P, Rouillon F, Launay JM, Laplanche JL, Leboyer M (2000) Possible association between serotonin transporter gene polymorphism and violent suicidal behavior in mood disorders. Biol Psychiatry 48(4): 319–322

Bjorksten KS, Bjerregaard P, Kripke DF (2005) Suicides in the midnight sun–a study of seasonality in suicides in West Greenland. Psychiatry Res 133(2–3):205–213

Bondy B, Erfurth A, de Jonge S, Kruger M, Meyer H (2000) Possible association of the short allele of the serotonin transporter promoter gene polymorphism (5-HTTLPR) with violent suicide. Mol Psychiatry 5(2):193–195

Bondy B, Buettner A, Zill P (2006) Genetics of suicide. Mol Psychiatry 11(4):336–351

Breier A, Su TP, Saunders R, Carson RE, Kolachana BS, de Bartolomeis A, Weinberger DR, Weisenfeld N, Malhotra AK, Eckelman WC, Pickar D (1997) Schizophrenia is associated with elevated amphetamine-induced synaptic dopamine concentrations: evidence from a novel positron emission tomography method. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94(6):2569–2574

Buchert R, Schulze O, Wilke F, Berding G, Thomasius R, Petersen K, Brenner W, Clausen M (2006) Is correction for age necessary in SPECT or PET of the central serotonin transporter in young, healthy adults? J Nucl Med 47(1):38–42

Callaway J, Storvik M, Halonen P, Hakko H, Rasanen P, Tiihonen J (2005) Seasonal variations in [3H]citalopram platelet binding between healthy controls and violent offenders in Finland. Hum Psychopharmacol 20(7):467–472

Carlsson A, Svennerholm L, Winblad B (1980) Seasonal and circadian monoamine variations in human brains examined post mortem. Acta Psychiatr Scand Suppl 280:75–85

Caspi A, Sugden K, Moffitt TE, Taylor A, Craig IW, Harrington H, McClay J, Mill J, Martin J, Braithwaite A, Poulton R (2003) Influence of life stress on depression: moderation by a polymorphism in the 5-HTT gene. Science 301(5631):386–389

Chew KS, McCleary R (1995) The spring peak in suicides: a cross-national analysis. Soc Sci Med 40(2):223–230

Chotai J, Serretti A, Lattuada E, Lorenzi C, Lilli R (2003) Gene-environment interaction in psychiatric disorders as indicated by season of birth variations in tryptophan hydroxylase (TPH), serotonin transporter (5-HTTLPR) and dopamine receptor (DRD4) gene polymorphisms. Psychiatry Res 119(1–2):99–111. doi:S0165178103001124[pii]

Coccaro EF, Siever LJ, Klar HM, Maurer G, Cochrane K, Cooper TB, Mohs RC, Davis KL (1989) Serotonergic studies in patients with affective and personality disorders. Correlates with suicidal and impulsive aggressive behavior. Arch Gen Psychiatry 46 (7):587–599

Cohen RM, Gross M, Nordahl TE, Semple WE, Oren DA, Rosenthal N (1992) Preliminary data on the metabolic brain pattern of patients with winter seasonal affective disorder. Arch Gen Psychiatry 49(7):545–552

Collier DA, Stober G, Li T, Heils A, Catalano M, Di Bella D, Arranz MJ, Murray RM, Vallada HP, Bengel D, Muller CR, Roberts GW, Smeraldi E, Kirov G, Sham P, Lesch KP (1996) A novel functional polymorphism within the promoter of the serotonin transporter gene: possible role in susceptibility to affective disorders. Mol Psychiatry 1(6):453–460

Courtet P, Baud P, Abbar M, Boulenger JP, Castelnau D, Mouthon D, Malafosse A, Buresi C (2001) Association between violent suicidal behavior and the low activity allele of the serotonin transporter gene. Mol Psychiatry 6(3):338–341

Dalley JW, Everitt BJ (2009) Dopamine receptors in the learning, memory and drug reward circuitry. Semin Cell Dev Biol 20(4):403–410. doi:S1084-9521(09)00006-8[pii]10.1016/j.semcdb.2009.01.002

Davis C, Levitan RD (2005) Seasonality and seasonal affective disorder (SAD): an evolutionary viewpoint tied to energy conservation and reproductive cycles. J Affect Disord 87(1):3–10. doi:S0165-0327(05)00079-0[pii]10.1016/j.jad.2005.03.006

Douglas AS, Allan TM, Helms PJ (1996) Seasonality and the sudden infant death syndrome during 1987–9 and 1991–3 in Australia and Britain. BMJ 312(7043):1381–1383

Doyle SE, Grace MS, McIvor W, Menaker M (2002) Circadian rhythms of dopamine in mouse retina: the role of melatonin. Vis Neurosci 19(5):593–601

Durkheim E (1897) Le Suicide: Etude de Sociologie. Presses Universitaires de France, Paris

Eisenberg DT, Campbell B, Mackillop J, Lum JK, Wilson DS (2007) Season of birth and dopamine receptor gene associations with impulsivity, sensation seeking and reproductive behaviors. PLoS One 2(11):e1216. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0001216

Eisenberg DP, Kohn PD, Baller EB, Bronstein JA, Masdeu JC, Berman KF (2010) Seasonal effects on human striatal presynaptic dopamine synthesis. J Neurosci 30(44):14691–14694. doi:30/44/14691[pii]10.1523/JNEUROSCI.1953-10.2010

Espana RA, Oleson EB, Locke JL, Brookshire BR, Roberts DC, Jones SR (2010) The hypocretin-orexin system regulates cocaine self-administration via actions on the mesolimbic dopamine system. Eur J Neurosci 31(2):336–348. doi:doi:EJN7065[pii]10.1111/j.1460-9568.2009.07065.x

Frankle WG, Lombardo I, New AS, Goodman M, Talbot PS, Huang Y, Hwang DR, Slifstein M, Curry S, Abi-Dargham A, Laruelle M, Siever LJ (2005) Brain serotonin transporter distribution in subjects with impulsive aggressivity: a positron emission study with [11C]McN 5652. Am J Psychiatry 162(5):915–923. doi:162/5/915[pii]10.1176/appi.ajp.162.5.915

Gonzalez MM, Aston-Jones G (2006) Circadian regulation of arousal: role of the noradrenergic locus coeruleus system and light exposure. Sleep 29(10):1327–1336

Gonzalez MM, Aston-Jones G (2008) Light deprivation damages monoamine neurons and produces a depressive behavioral phenotype in rats. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105(12): 4898–4903. doi:0703615105[pii]10.1073/pnas.0703615105

Goyer PF, Schulz PM, Semple WE, Gross M, Nordahl TE, King AC, Wehr TA, Cohen RM (1992) Cerebral glucose metabolism in patients with summer seasonal affective disorder. Neuropsychopharmacology 7(3):233–240

Haffmans J, Lucius S, Ham N (1998) Suicide after bright light treatment in seasonal affective disorder: a case report. J Clin Psychiatry 59(9):478

Hardin TA, Wehr TA, Brewerton T, Kasper S, Berrettini W, Rabkin J, Rosenthal NE (1991) Evaluation of seasonality in six clinical populations and two normal populations. J Psychiatr Res 25(3):75–87

Heerlein A, Valeria C, Medina B (2006) Seasonal variation in suicidal deaths in Chile: its relationship to latitude. Psychopathology 39(2):75–79

Heils A, Teufel A, Petri S, Stober G, Riederer P, Bengel D, Lesch KP (1996) Allelic variation of human serotonin transporter gene expression. J Neurochem 66(6):2621–2624

Hu XZ, Lipsky RH, Zhu G, Akhtar LA, Taubman J, Greenberg BD, Xu K, Arnold PD, Richter MA, Kennedy JL, Murphy DL, Goldman D (2006) Serotonin transporter promoter gain-of-function genotypes are linked to obsessive-compulsive disorder. Am J Hum Genet 78(5):815–826

Innis RB, Malison RT, al-Tikriti M, Hoffer PB, Sybirska EH, Seibyl JP, Zoghbi SS, Baldwin RM, Laruelle M, Smith EO et al (1992) Amphetamine-stimulated dopamine release competes in vivo for [123I]IBZM binding to the D2 receptor in nonhuman primates. Synapse 10(3): 177–184. doi:10.1002/syn.890100302

Joyce JN, Shane A, Lexow N, Winokur A, Casanova MF, Kleinman JE (1993) Serotonin uptake sites and serotonin receptors are altered in the limbic system of schizophrenics. Neuropsychopharmacology 8(4):315–336

Kalbitzer J, Erritzoe D, Holst KK, Nielsen FA, Marner L, Lehel S, Arentzen T, Jernigan TL, Knudsen GM (2010) Seasonal changes in brain serotonin transporter binding in short serotonin transporter linked polymorphic region-allele carriers but not in long-allele homozygotes. Biol Psychiatry 67(11):1033–1039. doi:S0006-3223(09)01425-5[pii]10.1016/j.biopsych.2009.11.027

Kalbitzer J, Frokjaer VG, Erritzoe D, Svarer C, Cumming P, Nielsen FA, Hashemi SH, Baaré WF, Madsen J, Hasselbalch SG, Kringelbach ML, Mortensen EL, Knudsen GM (2009) The personality trait openness is related to cerebral 5-HTT levels. Neuroimage 45(2): 280–285

Kasper S, Wehr TA, Bartko JJ, Gaist PA, Rosenthal NE (1989) Epidemiological findings of seasonal changes in mood and behavior. A telephone survey of Montgomery County, Maryland. Arch Gen Psychiatry 46(9):823–833

Koskela A, Kauppinen T, Keski-Rahkonen A, Sihvola E, Kaprio J, Rissanen A, Ahonen A (2008) Brain serotonin transporter binding of [123I]ADAM: within-subject variation between summer and winter data. Chronobiol Int 25(5):657–665. doi:902339290[pii]10.1080/07420520802380000

Kraft JB, Slager SL, McGrath PJ, Hamilton SP (2005) Sequence analysis of the serotonin transporter and associations with antidepressant response. Biol Psychiatry 58(5):374–378

Kumakura Y, Cumming P, Vernaleken I, Buchholz HG, Siessmeier T, Heinz A, Kienast T, Bartenstein P, Grunder G (2007) Elevated [18F]fluorodopamine turnover in brain of patients with schizophrenia: an [18F]fluorodopa/positron emission tomography study. J Neurosci 27(30):8080–8087. doi:27/30/8080[pii]10.1523/JNEUROSCI.0805-07.2007

Lam RW, Levitan RD (2000) Pathophysiology of seasonal affective disorder: a review. J Psychiatry Neurosci 25(5):469–480

Lam RW, Tam EM, Shiah IS, Yatham LN, Zis AP (2000) Effects of light therapy on suicidal ideation in patients with winter depression. J Clin Psychiatry 61(1):30–32

Lambert GW, Reid C, Kaye DM, Jennings GL, Esler MD (2002) Effect of sunlight and season on serotonin turnover in the brain. Lancet 360(9348):1840–1842

Lambert G, Reid C, Kaye D, Jennings G, Esler M (2003) Increased suicide rate in the middle-aged and its association with hours of sunlight. Am J Psychiatry 160(4):793–795

Laruelle M (2000) Imaging synaptic neurotransmission with in vivo binding competition techniques: a critical review. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 20(3):423–451. doi:10.1097/00004647-200003000-00001

Laruelle M, Abi-Dargham A, Casanova MF, Toti R, Weinberger DR, Kleinman JE (1993) Selective abnormalities of prefrontal serotonergic receptors in schizophrenia. A postmortem study. Arch Gen Psychiatry 50(10):810–818

Laruelle M, Abi-Dargham A, van Dyck CH, Rosenblatt W, Zea-Ponce Y, Zoghbi SS, Baldwin RM, Charney DS, Hoffer PB, Kung HF et al (1995) SPECT imaging of striatal dopamine release after amphetamine challenge. J Nucl Med 36(7):1182–1190

Leake A, Fairbairn AF, McKeith IG, Ferrier IN (1991) Studies on the serotonin uptake binding site in major depressive disorder and control post-mortem brain: neurochemical and clinical correlates. Psychiatry Res 39(2):155–165

Lesch KP, Bengel D, Heils A, Sabol SZ, Greenberg BD, Petri S, Benjamin J, Muller CR, Hamer DH, Murphy DL (1996) Association of anxiety-related traits with a polymorphism in the serotonin transporter gene regulatory region. Science 274(5292):1527–1531

Levitan RD, Masellis M, Lam RW, Kaplan AS, Davis C, Tharmalingam S, Mackenzie B, Basile VS, Kennedy JL (2006) A birth-season/DRD4 gene interaction predicts weight gain and obesity in women with seasonal affective disorder: a seasonal thrifty phenotype hypothesis. Neuropsychopharmacology 31(11):2498–2503. doi:1301121[pii]10.1038/sj.npp.1301121

Levitan RD, Kaplan AS, Davis C, Lam RW, Kennedy JL (2010) A season-of-birth/DRD4 interaction predicts maximal body mass index in women with bulimia nervosa. Neuropsychopharmacology 35(8):1729–1733. doi:npp201038[pii]10.1038/npp.2010.38

Lin PY, Tsai G (2004) Association between serotonin transporter gene promoter polymorphism and suicide: results of a meta-analysis. Biol Psychiatry 55(10):1023–1030

Lindstrom MB, Ryding E, Bosson P, Ahnlide JA, Rosen I, Traskman-Bendz L (2004) Impulsivity related to brain serotonin transporter binding capacity in suicide attempters. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 14(4):295–300. doi:10.1016/j.euroneuro.2003.11.001S0924977X03002189[pii]

Linkowski P, Martin F, De Maertelaer V (1992) Effect of some climatic factors on violent and non-violent suicides in Belgium. J Affect Disord 25(3):161–166

Lorenc-Duda A, Berezinska M, Urbanska A, Golembiowska K, Zawilska JB (2009) Dopamine in the Turkey retina-an impact of environmental light, circadian clock, and melatonin. J Mol Neurosci 38(1):12–18. doi:10.1007/s12031-008-9153-8

Malison RT, Price LH, Berman R, van Dyck CH, Pelton GH, Carpenter L, Sanacora G, Owens MJ, Nemeroff CB, Rajeevan N, Baldwin RM, Seibyl JP, Innis RB, Charney DS (1998) Reduced brain serotonin transporter availability in major depression as measured by [123I]-2 beta-carbomethoxy-3 beta-(4-iodophenyl)tropane and single photon emission computed tomography. Biol Psychiatry 44(11):1090–1098

Malone KM, Corbitt EM, Li S, Mann JJ (1996) Prolactin response to fenfluramine and suicide attempt lethality in major depression. Br J Psychiatry 168(3):324–329

Mann JJ, Malone KM (1997) Cerebrospinal fluid amines and higher-lethality suicide attempts in depressed inpatients. Biol Psychiatry 41(2):162–171

Mann JJ, Malone KM, Psych MR, Sweeney JA, Brown RP, Linnoila M, Stanley B, Stanley M (1996) Attempted suicide characteristics and cerebrospinal fluid amine metabolites in depressed inpatients. Neuropsychopharmacology 15(6):576–586

Mann JJ, Huang YY, Underwood MD, Kassir SA, Oppenheim S, Kelly TM, Dwork AJ, Arango V (2000) A serotonin transporter gene promoter polymorphism (5-HTTLPR) and prefrontal cortical binding in major depression and suicide. Arch Gen Psychiatry 57(8):729–738

Meier DS, Balashov KE, Healy B, Weiner HL, Guttmann CR (2010) Seasonal prevalence of MS disease activity. Neurology 75(9):799–806. doi:75/9/799[pii]10.1212/WNL.0b013e3181f0734c

Meyer JH (2007) Imaging the serotonin transporter during major depressive disorder and antidepressant treatment. J Psychiatry Neurosci 32(2):86–102

Meyer JH, Ginovart N, Boovariwala A, Sagrati S, Hussey D, Garcia A, Young T, Praschak-Rieder N, Wilson AA, Houle S (2006) Elevated monoamine oxidase a levels in the brain: an explanation for the monoamine imbalance of major depression. Arch Gen Psychiatry 63(11): 1209–1216

Miller JM, Kinnally EL, Ogden RT, Oquendo MA, Mann JJ, Parsey RV (2009) Reported childhood abuse is associated with low serotonin transporter binding in vivo in major depressive disorder. Synapse 63(7):565–573

Murthy NV, Selvaraj S, Cowen PJ, Bhagwagar Z, Riedel WJ, Peers P, Kennedy JL, Sahakian BJ, Laruelle MA, Rabiner EA, Grasby PM (2010) Serotonin transporter polymorphisms (SLC6A4 insertion/deletion and rs25531) do not affect the availability of 5-HTT to [11C] DASB binding in the living human brain. Neuroimage 52(1):50–54

Nakamura M, Ueno S, Sano A, Tanabe H (2000) The human serotonin transporter gene linked polymorphism (5-HTTLPR) shows ten novel allelic variants. Mol Psychiatry 5(1):32–38

Neumeister A, Pirker W, Willeit M, Praschak-Rieder N, Asenbaum S, Brucke T, Kasper S (2000) Seasonal variation of availability of serotonin transporter binding sites in healthy female subjects as measured by [123I]-2 beta-carbomethoxy-3 beta-(4-iodophenyl)tropane and single photon emission computed tomography. Biol Psychiatry 47(2):158–160

Neumeister A, Konstantinidis A, Praschak-Rieder N, Willeit M, Hilger E, Stastny J, Kasper S (2001a) Monoaminergic function in the pathogenesis of seasonal affective disorder. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 4(4):409–420. doi:10.1017/S1461145701002644S1461145701002644[pii]

Neumeister A, Willeit M, Praschak-Rieder N, Asenbaum S, Stastny J, Hilger E, Pirker W, Konstantinidis A, Kasper S (2001b) Dopamine transporter availability in symptomatic depressed patients with seasonal affective disorder and healthy controls. Psychol Med 31(8): 1467–1473

Osmond C, Murphy M (1988) Seasonality in the sudden infant death syndrome. Paediatr Perinat Epidemiol 2(4):337–345

Papadopoulos FC, Frangakis CE, Skalkidou A, Petridou E, Stevens RG, Trichopoulos D (2005) Exploring lag and duration effect of sunshine in triggering suicide. J Affect Disord 88(3): 287–297

Parker G, Gao F, Machin D (2001) Seasonality of suicide in Singapore: data from the equator. Psychol Med 31(3):549–553

Partonen T, Haukka J, Nevanlinna H, Lonnqvist J (2004) Analysis of the seasonal pattern in suicide. J Affect Disord 81(2):133–139

Patkar AA, Berrettini WH, Mannelli P, Gopalakrishnan R, Hoehe MR, Bilal L, Weinstein S, Vergare MJ (2004) Relationship between serotonin transporter gene polymorphisms and platelet serotonin transporter sites among African-American cocaine-dependent individuals and healthy volunteers. Psychiatr Genet 14(1):25–32. doi:00041444-200403000-00004[pii]

Petridou E, Papadopoulos FC, Frangakis CE, Skalkidou A, Trichopoulos D (2002) A role of sunshine in the triggering of suicide. Epidemiology 13(1):106–109

Pezawas L, Meyer-Lindenberg A, Drabant EM, Verchinski BA, Munoz KE, Kolachana BS, Egan MF, Mattay VS, Hariri AR, Weinberger DR (2005) 5-HTTLPR polymorphism impacts human cingulate-amygdala interactions: a genetic susceptibility mechanism for depression. Nat Neurosci 8(6):828–834. doi:nn1463[pii]10.1038/nn1463

Pjrek E, Winkler D, Praschak-Rieder N, Willeit M, Stastny J, Konstantinidis A, Kasper S (2007) Season of birth in siblings of patients with seasonal affective disorder. A test of the parental conception habits hypothesis. Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci 257(7):378–382. doi:10.1007/s00406-007-0720-8

Praschak-Rieder N, Neumeister A, Hesselmann B, Willeit M, Barnas C, Kasper S (1997) Suicidal tendencies as a complication of light therapy for seasonal affective disorder: a report of three cases. J Clin Psychiatry 58(9):389–392

Praschak-Rieder N, Neumeister A, Willeit M, Podreka I, Vitouch O, Asenbaum S, Kasper S (1998) HMPAO-SPECT in SAD patients before and after light therapy. Biol Psychiatry 43:17S. doi:10.1016/s0006-3223(98)90503-0 (abstract)

Praschak-Rieder N, Wilson AA, Hussey D, Carella A, Wei C, Ginovart N, Schwarz MJ, Zach J, Houle S, Meyer JH (2005) Effects of tryptophan depletion on the serotonin transporter in healthy humans. Biol Psychiatry 58(10):825–830

Praschak-Rieder N, Kennedy J, Wilson AA, Hussey D, Boovariwala A, Willeit M, Ginovart N, Tharmalingam S, Masellis M, Houle S, Meyer JH (2007) Novel 5-HTTLPR allele associates with higher serotonin transporter binding in putamen: a [(11)C] DASB positron emission tomography study. Biol Psychiatry 62(4):327–331

Praschak-Rieder N, Willeit M, Wilson AA, Houle S, Meyer JH (2008) Seasonal variation in human brain serotonin transporter binding. Arch Gen Psychiatry 65(9):1072–1078. doi:65/9/1072[pii]10.1001/archpsyc.65.9.1072

Preti A, Miotto P (1998) Seasonality in suicides: the influence of suicide method, gender and age on suicide distribution in Italy. Psychiatry Res 81(2):219–231

Ramamoorthy S, Bauman AL, Moore KR, Han H, Yang-Feng T, Chang AS, Ganapathy V, Blakely RD (1993) Antidepressant- and cocaine-sensitive human serotonin transporter: molecular cloning, expression, and chromosomal localization. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 90(6):2542–2546

Reimold M, Smolka MN, Schumann G, Zimmer A, Wrase J, Mann K, Hu XZ, Goldman D, Reischl G, Solbach C, Machulla HJ, Bares R, Heinz A (2007) Midbrain serotonin transporter binding potential measured with [11C]DASB is affected by serotonin transporter genotype. J Neural Transm 114(5):635–639. doi:10.1007/s00702-006-0609-0

Rocchi MB, Sisti D, Cascio MT, Preti A (2007) Seasonality and suicide in Italy: amplitude is positively related to suicide rates. J Affect Disord 100(1–3):129–136

Rosenthal NE, Sack DA, Gillin JC, Lewy AJ, Goodwin FK, Davenport Y, Mueller PS, Newsome DA, Wehr TA (1984) Seasonal affective disorder. A description of the syndrome and preliminary findings with light therapy. Arch Gen Psychiatry 41(1):72–80

Rosenthal NE, Mazzanti CM, Barnett RL, Hardin TA, Turner EH, Lam GK, Ozaki N, Goldman D (1998) Role of serotonin transporter promoter repeat length polymorphism (5-HTTLPR) in seasonality and seasonal affective disorder. Mol Psychiatry 3(2):175–177

Roussos P, Giakoumaki SG, Bitsios P (2010) Cognitive and emotional processing associated with the season of birth and dopamine D4 receptor gene. Neuropsychologia 48(13):3926–3933. doi:S0028-3932(10)00411-2[pii]10.1016/j.neuropsychologia.2010.09.021

Ruhe HG, Booij J, Reitsma JB, Schene AH (2009) Serotonin transporter binding with [123I]beta-CIT SPECT in major depressive disorder versus controls: effect of season and gender. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 36(5):841–849. doi:10.1007/s00259-008-1057-x

Ryding E, Ahnlide JA, Lindstrom M, Rosen I, Traskman-Bendz L (2006) Regional brain serotonin and dopamine transporter binding capacity in suicide attempters relate to impulsiveness and mental energy. Psychiatry Res 148(2–3):195–203. doi:S0925-4927(06)00099-0[pii]10.1016/j.pscychresns.2006.06.001

Sekine Y, Ouchi Y, Takei N, Yoshikawa E, Nakamura K, Futatsubashi M, Okada H, Minabe Y, Suzuki K, Iwata Y, Tsuchiya KJ, Tsukada H, Iyo M, Mori N (2006) Brain serotonin transporter density and aggression in abstinent methamphetamine abusers. Arch Gen Psychiatry 63(1):90–100. doi:63/1/90[pii]10.1001/archpsyc.63.1.90

Sleipness EP, Sorg BA, Jansen HT (2007a) Contribution of the suprachiasmatic nucleus to day:night variation in cocaine-seeking behavior. Physiol Behav 91(5):523–530. doi:S0031-9384(07)00077-7[pii]10.1016/j.physbeh.2007.02.013

Sleipness EP, Sorg BA, Jansen HT (2007b) Diurnal differences in dopamine transporter and tyrosine hydroxylase levels in rat brain: dependence on the suprachiasmatic nucleus. Brain Res 1129(1):34–42. doi:S0006-8993(06)03184-2[pii]10.1016/j.brainres.2006.10.063

Sohn CH, Lam RW (2005) Update on the biology of seasonal affective disorder. CNS Spectr 10(8):635–646 quiz 631–614

Sorg BA, Stark G, Sergeeva A, Jansen HT (2011) Photoperiodic suppression of drug reinstatement. Neuroscience 176:284–295. doi:S0306-4522(10)01627-1[pii]10.1016/j.neuroscience.2010.12.022

Spindelegger C, Stein P, Wadsak W, Fink M, Mitterhauser M, Moser U, Savli M, Mien LK, Akimova E, Hahn A, Willeit M, Kletter K, Kasper S, Lanzenberger R (2011) Light-dependent alteration of serotonin-1A receptor binding in cortical and subcortical limbic regions in the human brain. World J Biol Psychiatry [PMID: 22111663; Epub ahead of print]

Stockmeier CA (2003) Involvement of serotonin in depression: evidence from postmortem and imaging studies of serotonin receptors and the serotonin transporter. J Psychiatr Res 37(5):357–373

Tiihonen J, Kuikka JT, Bergstrom KA, Karhu J, Viinamaki H, Lehtonen J, Hallikainen T, Yang J, Hakola P (1997) Single-photon emission tomography imaging of monoamine transporters in impulsive violent behaviour. Eur J Nucl Med 24(10):1253–1260

Tsai HY, Chen KC, Yang YK, Chen PS, Yeh TL, Chiu NT, Lee IH (2011) Sunshine-exposure variation of human striatal dopamine D(2)/D(3) receptor availability in healthy volunteers. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 35(1):107–110. doi:S0278-5846(10)00365-9[pii]10.1016/j.pnpbp.2010.09.014

Vyssoki B, Praschak-Rieder N, Sonneck G, Bluml V, Willeit M, Kasper S, Kapusta ND (2011) Effects of sunshine on suicide rates. Compr Psychiatry. doi:S0010-440X(11)00137-4[pii]10.1016/j.comppsych.2011.06.003

Walderhaug E, Magnusson A, Neumeister A, Lappalainen J, Lunde H, Refsum H, Landro NI (2007) Interactive effects of sex and 5-HTTLPR on mood and impulsivity during tryptophan depletion in healthy people. Biol Psychiatry 62(6):593–599

Wehr TA, Duncan WC Jr, Sher L, Aeschbach D, Schwartz PJ, Turner EH, Postolache TT, Rosenthal NE (2001) A circadian signal of change of season in patients with seasonal affective disorder. Arch Gen Psychiatry 58(12):1108–1114

Willeit M, Praschak-Rieder N, Neumeister A, Pirker W, Asenbaum S, Vitouch O, Tauscher J, Hilger E, Stastny J, Brucke T, Kasper S (2000) [123I]-beta-CIT SPECT imaging shows reduced brain serotonin transporter availability in drug-free depressed patients with seasonal affective disorder. Biol Psychiatry 47(6):482–489

Willeit M, Stastny J, Pirker W, Praschak-Rieder N, Neumeister A, Asenbaum S, Tauscher J, Fuchs K, Sieghart W, Hornik K, Aschauer HN, Brucke T, Kasper S (2001) No evidence for in vivo regulation of midbrain serotonin transporter availability by serotonin transporter promoter gene polymorphism. Biol Psychiatry 50(1):8–12. doi:S0006322300011239[pii]

Willeit M, Praschak-Rieder N, Neumeister A, Zill P, Leisch F, Stastny J, Hilger E, Thierry N, Konstantinidis A, Winkler D, Fuchs K, Sieghart W, Aschauer H, Ackenheil M, Bondy B,

Kasper S (2003) A polymorphism (5-HTTLPR) in the serotonin transporter promoter gene is associated with DSM-IV depression subtypes in seasonal affective disorder. Mol Psychiatry 8(11):942–946. doi:10.1038/sj.mp.40013924001392[pii]

Willeit M, Ginovart N, Graff A, Rusjan P, Vitcu I, Houle S, Seeman P, Wilson AA, Kapur S (2008a) First human evidence of d-amphetamine induced displacement of a D2/3 agonist radioligand: a [11C]-(+)-PHNO positron emission tomography study. Neuropsychopharmacology 33(2):279–289. doi:1301400[pii]10.1038/sj.npp.1301400

Willeit M, Sitte HH, Thierry N, Michalek K, Praschak-Rieder N, Zill P, Winkler D, Brannath W, Fischer MB, Bondy B, Kasper S, Singer EA (2008b) Enhanced serotonin transporter function during depression in seasonal affective disorder. Neuropsychopharmacology 33(7):1503–1513

Wilson AA, Ginovart N, Schmidt M, Meyer JH, Threlkeld PG, Houle S (2000) Novel radiotracers for imaging the serotonin transporter by positron emission tomography: synthesis, radiosynthesis, and in vitro and ex vivo evaluation of (11)C-labeled 2-(phenylthio)araalkylamines. J Med Chem 43(16):3103–3110. doi:jm000079i[pii]

Winkler D, Willeit M, Praschak-Rieder N, Lucht MJ, Hilger E, Konstantinidis A, Stastny J, Thierry N, Pjrek E, Neumeister A, Moller HJ, Kasper S (2002) Changes of clinical pattern in seasonal affective disorder (SAD) over time in a German-speaking sample. Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci 252(2):54–62. doi:10.1007/s004060200012

Zhang DQ, Wong KY, Sollars PJ, Berson DM, Pickard GE, McMahon DG (2008) Intraretinal signaling by ganglion cell photoreceptors to dopaminergic amacrine neurons. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105(37):14181–14186. doi:0803893105[pii]10.1073/pnas.0803893105

Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopic Methods for the Assessment of Metabolic Functions in the Diseased Brain

Hélène Hall, Sandra Cuellar-Baena, Carina Dahlberg, René in't Zandt, Vladimir Denisov and Deniz Kirik

Abstract Magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS) is a non-invasive technique that can be used to detect and quantify multiple metabolites. This chapter will review some of the applications of MRS to the study of brain functions. Typically, ^{1}H-MRS can detect metabolites reflecting neuronal density and integrity, markers of energy metabolism or inflammation, as well as neurotransmitters. The complexity of the proton spectrum has however led to the development of other nuclei-based methods, such as ^{31}P- and ^{13}C-MRS, which offer a broader chemical shift range and therefore can provide more detailed information at the level of single metabolites. The versatility of MRS allows for a wide range of clinical applications, of which neurodegeneration is an interesting target for spectroscopy-based studies. In particular, MRS can identify patterns of altered brain chemistry in Alzheimer's patients and can help establish differential diagnosis in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases. Using MRS to follow less abundant neurotransmitters is currently out of reach and will most likely depend on the development of methods such as hyperpolarization that can increase the sensitivity of detection. In particular, dynamic nuclear polarization has opened up a new and exciting area of medical research, with developments that could greatly impact on the real-time monitoring of in vivo metabolic processes in the brain.

Keywords Brain · Neurodegeneration · Metabolism · Alzheimer's disease · Parkinson's disease · ^{13}C · ^{15}N

H. Hall (✉) · S. Cuellar-Baena · D. Kirik
Department of Experimental Medical Science,
Brain Repair and Imaging in Neural Systems (B.R.A.I.N.S),
Lund University, 22184 Lund, Sweden
e-mail: deniz.kirik@med.lu.se

C. Dahlberg · R. in't Zandt · V. Denisov · D. Kirik
Lund University BioImaging Center, Lund University,
22184 Lund, Sweden

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 169–198
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2011_166

Published Online: 11 November 2011

Abbreviations

ACh	Acetylcholine
AD	Alzheimer's disease
Ala	Alanine
CDR	Clinical dementia rating
DA	Dopamine
DNP	Dynamic nuclear polarization
DRS	Dementia rating scale
Glc	Glucose
Gln	Glutamine
Glu	Glutamate
Glx	Glutamate/glutamine/GABA
GPC	Glycerophosphocholine
Lac	Lactate
mIns	Myo-inositol
MCI	Mild cognitive impairment
MMSE	Mini mental state examination
MRI	Magnetic resonance imaging
MRS	Magnetic resonance spectroscopy
NAA	N-acetylaspartate
NMR	Nuclear magnetic resonance
PC	Phosphocholine
PCr	Phosphocreatine
PD	Parkinson's disease
PDD	Parkinsons's disease with dementia
PET	Positron emission tomography
Pi	Free phosphate
RF	Radio-frequency
SNR	Signal to noise ratio
Tau	Taurine
TCA	Tricarboxylic-acid
tCr	Total creatine
TE	Echo time

Contents

1 Introduction

Neurodegenerative diseases cover a heterogeneous group of neurological disorders presenting various clinical and pathological phenotypes. They are characterized by a selective and progressive neuronal dysfunction, which is typically followed by the degeneration of cells in specific functional and anatomical systems in the central nervous system (Aarsland and Kurz 2010; Przedborski et al. 2003). The prevalence of degenerative brain disorders is increasing worldwide, which is closely correlated with the ageing population. The resulting health-related impact on patients and caregivers along with the substantial financial cost to society makes their management a challenge and a major burden.

There is currently no cure available for neurodegenerative diseases and the main relief to patients resides in symptomatic treatments. Development of more advanced treatment modalities that can slow the progression of the disease has been defined as a priority in the scientific community. However, this goal comes with great challenges. The requirement to assess parameters that can report the progression of the disease over time on individual subjects renders the commonly used biochemical and histological post mortem analysis insufficient, as they can only provide cross-sectional information of mainly the end-stage disease. Therefore there is a critical need to develop better diagnostic methods as well as better ways to follow the patients up.

The establishment and refinement of various noninvasive imaging techniques over the last decade provide a unique potential in longitudinal assessment of patients as subjects can be submitted to examinations repeatedly. Consequently, we now have the opportunity to explore dynamic changes in the brain over time as the disease advances. Several imaging methods relying on positron emission tomography (PET) tracers and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) are currently used in preclinical and clinical studies to assess disease-related changes in patients suffering from neurodegenerative diseases. PET is a very sensitive imaging technique based on the intravenous injection of radiolabeled ligands, their tissue uptake and subsequent binding to specific molecular targets (e.g., neurotransmitter receptors or transporters) (Kirik et al. 2005; Strome and Doudet 2007). PET can provide information about the regional distribution and affinity of receptors in the brain and enables the measurement of the local rates of chemical processes in vivo (Hutchinson et al. 2002), making it possible to detect molecules in a noninvasive

way with a very high sensitivity (10^{-9} to 10^{-12} M) in the living brain (Fumita and Innis 2002). PET has been widely used to study several neurological disorders, e.g. in applications characterizing the role of the dopaminergic system in Parkinson's disease (PD) and its involvement in motor control [for review see (Brooks 2003)], or in differential diagnosis of uncommon forms of neurodegenerative diseases, such as typical PD and other Parkinsonian syndromes or dementia (Herholz et al. 2007). It has also been applied to in vivo monitoring of disease progression in PD (Morrish et al. 1996). Finally, one of the advantages of in vivo imaging relates in the long-term evaluation of therapeutic efficacy in the living brain. For instance, PET has been applied to visualize the viability and function of striatal implants in PD [for review see (Brooks 2003; Olanow et al. 1996; Sawle and Myers 1993)] and the metabolic effects of intrastriatal grafting in Huntington's disease patients (Gaura et al. 2004; Reuter et al. 2008).

Despite these strengths, the utility of PET imaging is limited by a relatively low spatial resolution, the production of ionizing radiations and the extensive infrastructure required to synthesize the tracers, which often have to be on site due to short half-life of the radionucleotides used. Furthermore, PET cannot provide anatomical information by itself and is often combined with computed tomography in order to show both metabolic functions and accurate anatomical structures. In addition, PET cannot measure the direct levels of multiple neurotransmitters or metabolites separately. For example, using ^{18}F-DOPA as a ligand, the radioactive signal acquired does not distinguish between ^{18}F-DOPA, ^{18}F-DA and ^{18}F-DOPAC. The use of mathematically driven compartment models are required to estimate ^{18}F-DOPA uptake into dopaminergic neurons, conversion to dopamine (DA) or storage in vesicles.

Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR), an ionizing radiation-free technique, can be used to provide complementary information that is not accessible through PET. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and spectroscopy (MRS) techniques have become an essential part of the common tools available to clinicians and researchers in the assessment of normal and diseased brain. The magnetic resonance phenomenon allows a large variety of applications, including analysis of chemical composition, determination of molecular structure and dynamics. It has many advantages because of its molecular specificity, spatial selectivity, high sensitivity to molecular mobility and ability to give quantitative information at the molecular level. The NMR signal is intrinsically weak, but increases in strength with increasing gyromagnetic ratio of the nucleus being observed. Hydrogen (present in fat and water in the body) is by far the most commonly investigated nucleus, having high MR sensitivity. Other common nuclei to be studied are phosphorus, carbon, sodium and fluorine.

MRI has been used to obtain excellent images of brain structures and to identify structural alterations by using the signals from different nuclei within the brain. MRS on the other hand has the potential to detect more subtle pathological changes that cannot be seen with MRI, such as biochemical events that may precede or parallel the anatomical and histological changes (Firbank et al. 2002). Indeed, while MRI provides structural information about regions of interest in the

tissue examined, MRS provides information about the chemical nature of the tissue and can be used to determine levels of substances, which makes it a powerful method for direct and noninvasive identification of major metabolites in the brain. Furthermore, measurement of concentration and synthesis rates of specific biochemical compounds can be obtained, with spatial localization, in defined areas in the brain. This is referred to as localized MRS (Novotny et al. 2003; Rosen and Lenkinski 2007). Typically, most proton MRS studies can achieve a spatial resolution of about 1 cm^3 (Gruber et al. 2003).

This chapter will focus on MRS studies of the brain and on the chemical information currently available to assess brain metabolism in humans and animals, with a particular emphasis on the study of neurodegenerative diseases. In addition, it will cover some of the emerging spectroscopic techniques that are being developed to increase MRS sensitivity and the new research areas triggered by these advances.

2 Theoretical Basis of Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy

Magnetic resonance is a noninvasive technique that in most cases does not require any special treatment or labeling of the subject. The equipment can be tuned to pick up signals from different chemical nuclei within the body. When positioned in an MR scanner, the magnetic moment of the nuclei in the body line up due to the experienced magnetic field. Owing to this polarization, a small rotating net magnetic moment builds up in the object when it is placed into the magnet. Subsequent to a radio-frequency (RF) pulse exposing the object at the resonance frequency of the nuclei under investigation, the net magnetic moment can be measured and transformed into signal information in one, two or three dimensions. Depending on the design of the experiment, biochemical information can be obtained from every position in the subject (Callaghan 1991; de Graaf 2007; Keeler 2005).

Experimentally, the subject is placed inside an RF coil in a highly homogeneous magnetic field of known strength. Nuclei with non-zero spin (such as ^{1}H, ^{2}H, ^{19}F, ^{13}C and ^{31}P) have a nuclear magnetic momentum and will align to some degree in the magnetic field. At thermal equilibrium, each magnetic momentum aligns with the field (lower energy state) or against the field (higher energy state). As the quantity of the magnetic momentum in the direction of the field is slightly higher than those in the opposing direction, this results in a net nuclear magnetisation. To perturb the nuclear magnetisation from thermal equilibrium, the nuclear spins are excited by an RF pulse. The precessing magnetisation after perturbation induces a small voltage in the surrounding tuned coil by the process of electromagnetic induction. It is this voltage that forms the NMR signal (Callaghan 1991; Keeler 2005).

The NMR sensitive nuclei can absorb energy at a frequency corresponding to the difference between their energy levels. The difference between higher and

lower energy states is influenced by the local environment of the nuclei, especially by the neighboring electrons, providing local magnetic fields that differ for each unique nuclear position within a molecule. Their nuclear magnetisation thereby precesses with slightly different characteristic frequencies, Larmor frequencies, $\omega_0 = \gamma B(1-\sigma)$, where γ is the gyromagnetic ratio of the nucleus being observed, B is the applied magnetic field and σ is the shielding factor associated with the chemical environment of the nuclei being observed. The difference between different shielding factors is called chemical shift. The unique resonance frequency (chemical shift) of an active nucleus is dependent on its chemical environment, which is what provides the chemical specificity of NMR (de Graaf 2007; Gadian 1995; Keeler 2005).

Since the NMR signal is the sum of all different characteristic frequencies that the spins are precessing with, the Fourier transform of the signal yields a spectrum in which the integral of each peak is proportional to the number of nuclei having a specific chemical environment.

Generally, after excitation by RF pulses, the precessing nuclear magnetisation returns to equilibrium. Often, this can be characterized by two relaxation times. T_1 is the longitudinal relaxation time, which describes the exponential recovery of the equilibrium longitudinal magnetisation that is aligned with the applied magnetic field. T_2 is the transverse relaxation time, which describes the exponential decay of the precessing component of the net magnetisation, and hence, also the decay of the signal. T_1 and T_2 strongly depend upon the local molecular environment and are sensitive to molecular motion.

3 Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy in the Brain

Spectroscopy methods can be divided into two categories: one based on hydrogen (^{1}H) and another based on all other nuclei with a non-zero spin (referred to as X nuclei, typically ^{31}P, ^{13}C, ^{19}F, ^{23}Na or ^{15}N). Yet, ^{1}H, ^{31}P and ^{13}C account for approximately 99% of all the studies conducted thus far (Choi et al. 2007). It is beyond the scope of this chapter to give an exhaustive list of all compounds detectable through MRS. Instead we will focus on some of the metabolites and neurotransmitters that have proved useful in the study of brain metabolism in the healthy brain as well as in diseased states.

3.1 ^{1}H-MRS

Due to the high natural abundance of protons, ^{1}H-MRS has been the method of choice in most studies of the central nervous system. ^{1}H is also the most sensitive nucleus, as defined by the greater signal to noise ratio (SNR) it produces compared to other nuclei (Gadian 1995). At lower field strengths, such as 1.5 T or 3 T,

the number of metabolites available through ^{1}H-MRS is rather low and highly depends on the acquisition mode. Briefly, two types of acquisitions are possible, depending on the time interval between the excitation pulse and the detection, known as echo time (TE). At long TE, proton MR spectrum of the human brain exhibits quantifiable peaks from *N*-acetylaspartate (NAA), total creatine (tCr) (creatine and phosphocreatine (PCr)), choline containing compounds and in pathological conditions, lactate (Lac). At short TE, the spectrum is richer and signals from further metabolites such as myo-inositol (mIns), glutamate/glutamine/GABA (Glx), glucose (Glc), taurine (Tau) and lipids can be detected (Di Costanzo et al. 2003; Schaeffter and Dahnke 2008), although its interpretation and quantification become more challenging due to overlapping resonance frequencies. The relative levels of these compounds can reflect the cellular state of the tissue so that the established metabolic profile (result of the simultaneous quantification of many metabolites concentration) directly correlates to the health status of the tissue (Schaeffter and Dahnke 2008).

Due to the general complexity of the spectra (containing the resonances of numerous metabolites, as well as overlapping resonances), in most cases quantification of individual metabolites requires the use of a specific method for analysis. These spectral fitting methods, either time domain or frequency domain methods (Mierisova and Ala-Korpela 2001; Vanhamme et al. 2001), aim at calculating the metabolite peak area in a noisy MRS signal. There are different ways to report the results, referred to as absolute or relative quantifications (Brief et al. 2009; Kreis et al. 1993). One common way is to normalize the values in reference to water or creatine or to use the sum of all metabolites in situations where the amplitude of the reference peak (creatine) changes.

With the development of high field NMR (such as at 7 T in humans and 9.4 T or beyond in animals), RF coils, MR sequences, as well as automatic shim routines, it is now possible to have access to an even larger number of previously unresolved brain metabolites (Gruetter et al. 1998; Pfeuffer et al. 1999; Tkac et al. 2001; Mlynarik et al. 2008a). Studies in rats at 9.4 T with short TE (2 ms) provided a neurochemical profile of the brain consisting of 18 metabolites (Pfeuffer et al. 1999; Mlynarik et al. 2008b). The same 18 metabolites can also be identified and reliably quantified in much smaller structures such as the developing mouse cortex at 14.1 T, showing regional alterations in concentration of various metabolites at different postnatal days (Kulak et al. 2010). More remarkable is the detection at 14.1 T of 21 metabolites in the mouse hypothalamus (Lei et al. 2010), a structure challenging to study due to its small dimension and localization in deeper parts of the brain.

The identification of metabolites in the rat brain measured at 9.4 T with short TE and the measurement of their subsequent concentration (Pfeuffer et al. 1999) compose a neurochemical profile of the brain consisting of important presumed markers of energy metabolism (Cr and PCr, Glc, Lac, alanine (Ala)), neurotransmitters and metabolites [GABA, N-acetylaspartylglutamate, glutamate (Glu) and glutamine (Gln)], antioxidants (glutathione and ascorbate), osmolytes (Tau, mIns, scyllo-inositol), phosphoethanolamine, NAA, glycerophosphocholine (GPC)

and phosphocholine (PC) (Mlynarik et al. 2008b). However, only some of these compounds are frequently studied with MRS. The following metabolites are of most relevance to neurodegeneration.

The signal on a typical proton spectrum that arises at 2.0 ppm is attributed to NAA, which is a molecule present predominantly in neurons and synthesized in the mitochondria. Brain NAA is widely accepted as a marker of neuronal density and integrity (Baslow 2003; Urenjak et al. 1993). Therefore reduced NAA concentration can reasonably indicate neuronal loss in neurodegeneration. Because the enzyme involved in NAA synthesis is present in high concentration in mitochondria, altered NAA levels also reflect mitochondrial dysfunction (Clark 1998). The peak observed at 3.2 ppm is referred to as Cho and reflects in fact choline-containing compounds with overlapping resonance frequencies. It primarily consists of the sum of free choline, PC (a phosphatidylcholine precursor), GPC (a byproduct of phosphatidylcholine breakdown) and betaine (Katz-Brull et al. 2005). They play an important role in cell membrane synthesis and lipid metabolism so that Cho is considered a marker of membrane density and integrity. Thus, changes in choline-containing compounds can directly reflect altered cell membrane synthesis and degradation (Galanaud et al. 2007). The tCr signal at 3.0 ppm is assigned to the sum of two different overlapping resonances, Cr and PCr. Cr levels are thought to be very stable (Cr and PCr are in chemical equilibrium), homogeneously distributed throughout the brain and not subjected to change with age so that in clinical setting, the tCr peak is used as a common internal reference, with spectra interpreted as ratio in respect to Cr (such as Cho/Cr and NAA/Cr ratios) (Kauppinen and Williams 1994; Martin 2007). However, it seems that this should be taken with caution, as at least one study reported complete creatine deficiency in the brain of a child suffering from an extrapyramidal movement disorder and metabolic disturbances (Stockler et al. 1994). Further to the left on the proton spectrum, mIns gives rise to a signal at 3.6 ppm. It is a sugar-alcohol putative marker of neuroglia, found almost exclusively in astrocytes where it is recognized as an important cerebral osmolyte (Lien et al. 1990). Its concentrations can fluctuate up to tenfold. Increases in mIns levels have been reported following cellular proliferation (tumors) or in case of inflammation (Galanaud et al. 2007; Rosen and Lenkinski 2007; Ross and Bluml 2001). In the region 2.0-2.5 ppm, Glx gives rise to a complex peak resulting from the signals of Gln, Glu and GABA, three peaks inseparable at 1.5T. Glu is the most abundant excitatory amino acid transmitter in the CNS (Fonnum 1984) and the role of glutamate-mediated excitotoxicity in neurodegenerative disorders has been the center of many studies (Masliah et al. 1996; Cowan and Raymond 2006; Gubellini et al. 2006). It is the precursor of GABA, the major inhibitory neurotransmitter, which plays a crucial role in cerebral physiology (Ben-Ari et al. 2007; Fonnum 1984). Finally, the signal centered at 1.3 ppm is assigned to Lac, the end product of anaerobic glycolysis. Lac is present in physiological conditions in extremely low amounts in the brain so that it is not resolved under normal conditions. This makes its detection significant and suggest a pathological condition (Prichard et al. 1991), typically hypoxia (Edden et al. 2010) or brain ischemia (Vandersprenkel et al. 1988), situations

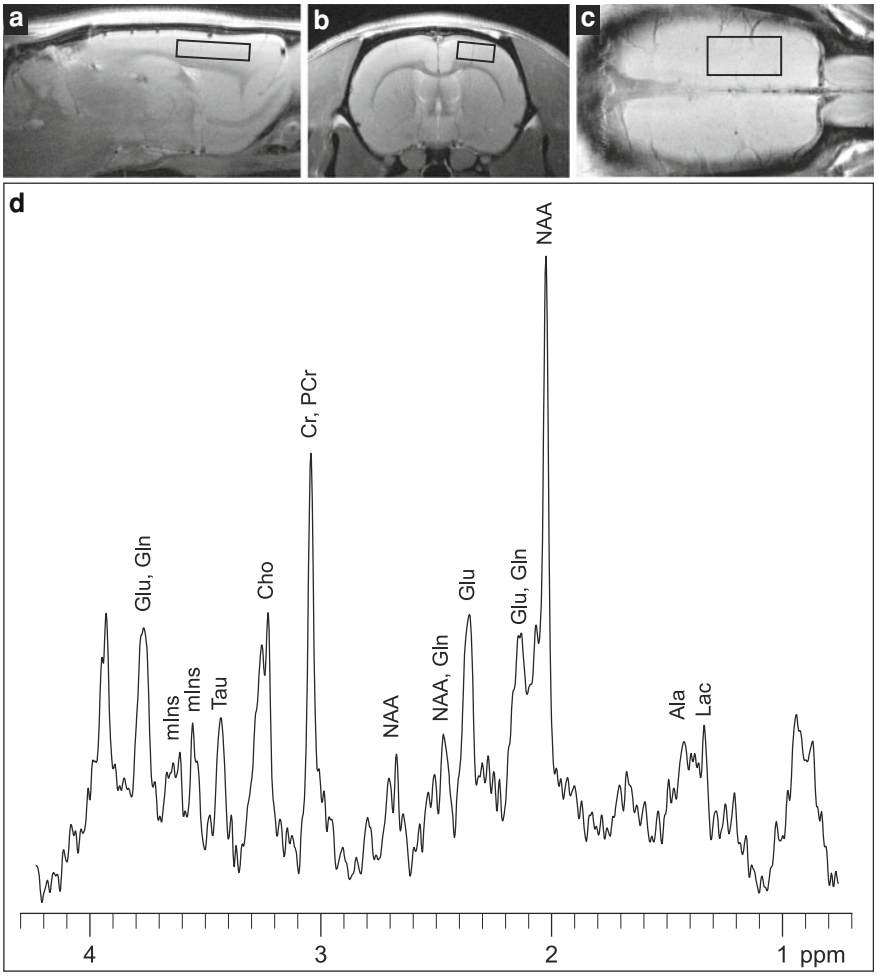


Fig. 1 Localized ^{1}H-NMR spectroscopy of a rat brain in vivo at 9.4 T. Sagittal (**a**) coronal (**b**) and axial (**c**) MRI sections indicating the location of the voxel of interest (VOI). Images were acquired using a fast spin echo sequence. (**d**) ^{1}H-MR spectrum obtained from the indicated VOI [voxel size 1.3 × 2.8 × 5 mm (= 18 μl)] using a STEAM sequence with TE = 2.5 ms, TR = 6 s and water suppression. A 4-element array coil was used and the scans were acquired using 64 averages (6 min blocks). All scans were eddy current corrected (ECC) using the jMRUI software package (http://www.mrui.uab.es/mrui/). A total of eight blocks were performed resulting in a total scan time of 50 min. A total of 32 ECC spectra were summed to give the spectrum shown and the signal was filtered for display purposes using a Lorentzian/Gaussian filter (−3Hz/6Hz) using matNMR/Matlab

where aerobic oxidation fails and anaerobic glycolysis takes over. A ^{1}H-MR spectrum recorded in a rat brain at a field strength of 9.4 T is displayed in Fig. 1 and shows the assignment of the major peaks discussed above. It should be noted that macromolecular resonances are present in the background signal of the

spectrum and therefore underlie the assigned low molecular weight metabolites. This is important to take into consideration in order to avoid the attribution of an elevated signal coming from macromolecules to the metabolites.

As shown, ^{1}H-MRS allows the simultaneous quantification of an increasing number of metabolites in the brain, thus expanding metabolic neurochemical profiling in vivo. However the difficulty in resolving the spectrum has led towards the development of other nuclei-based MRS studies.

3.2 ^{31}P-MRS

^{31}P-MRS is a heteronuclear MRS approach that has proved very useful in the investigation of tissue energy metabolism, especially in skeletal muscle (Kauppinen and Williams 1994; Radda 1986). It has become a valuable tool to evaluate the integrity of the brain through the study of its metabolism and bioenergetics (Chaumeil et al. 2009; Du et al. 2007; Shulman et al. 2004). Although ^{31}P-MRS has a lower sensitivity and spatial resolution than ^{1}H-MRS, it has the advantage of providing a broader chemical-shift range (Schaeffter and Dahnke 2008).

^{31}P-MRS is used to detect and quantify high-energy phosphate (HEP) metabolites (ATP, ADP, PCr) and free Phosphate (Pi), which reflect oxidative phosphorylation and mitochondrial function in vivo (Gadian 1995). Although ADP is not directly visible in the ^{31}P spectrum, its concentration is in fact calculated from the ATP, tCr, and PCr concentrations (Zhu et al. 2009). In addition, the chemical shift difference between the Pi and PCr peaks is used to calculate the value of intracellular pH (Henchcliffe et al. 2008; Hyder 2009). The noninvasiveness of the procedure makes it the method of choice to study the regulation of pH in vivo in the brain (Kauppinen and Williams 1994). Furthermore, it has been shown that HEP metabolites can be used to determine metabolic fluxes of ATP metabolism in the human brain. ATP metabolism is regulated by the chemical exchange network PCr $\leftrightarrow$ ATP $\leftrightarrow$ Pi, which is controlled by two enzymes. Creatine kinase (CK) catalyzes PCr $\leftrightarrow$ ATP and ATP synthase (ATPase) catalyzes Pi $\leftrightarrow$ ATP. In a study using a multiple single-site saturation method together with the solution of three Bloch equations based on the three-spin chemical exchange model, the forward and reverse rate constants for CK and ATPase reactions were calculated in the occipital lobe in humans at 7 T. First, a progressive saturation of the ATP resonance using frequency-selective RF pulses is applied and the forward CK and ATPase rate constants and fluxes calculated. Secondly, a steady-state saturation of Pi is achieved by applying frequency-selective RF pulse train over a long saturation time allowing the calculation of the CK reverse rate constant and flux. Finally, the same procedure (steady-state saturation) is applied to the PCr resonance peak to determine the ATPase reverse rate constant and flux (Du et al. 2007).

Apart from the detection of HEP metabolites, important cations can be detected by ^{31}P-NMR. Among these, magnesium is important in regulating brain energy

metabolism. Its concentration can be calculated from the chemical shift difference between α and β ATP peaks. It has been found that magnesium levels are decreased during subarachnoid hemorrhage. ^{31}P-MRS was shown to be suitable to monitor cortical intracellular magnesium to determine the reversibility of neurological alterations and the response to pharmacological treatment (Yang et al. 2008).

In order to overcome the lower sensitivity of ^{31}P-MRS, several methodological adjustments can be implemented, such as the use of high magnetic fields (Qiao et al. 2006) or polarization transfer methods (Du et al. 2007; Klomp et al. 2008; Wijnen et al. 2010). By increasing the magnetic field from 4 T to 7 T in clinical scanners, the sensitivity and spectral resolution of in vivo ^{31}P-MRS are improved and a gain of 56% in SNR in the signal of PCr can be obtained in the human brain (Qiao et al. 2006). Magnetization transfer from ^{1}H to ^{31}P uses frequency selective refocusing pulses to enhance up to 2.4 times the very low signal of phospholipids like PC, GPC, phosphorylelthanolamine and glycerol-phosphoethanolamine compared to an optimized direct ^{31}P-MRS method at 3 T (Klomp et al. 2008). Technological improvements in the design of ^{31}P head RF coils can also increase the sensitivity of the ^{31}P signal. One version of ^{31}P optimized head coil includes a quadrature birdcage resonator as a ^{1}H transmit receive coil and two free positioning surface coils operating as a ^{31}P transmit receive coil covering approximately half of the brain. In addition, this coil configuration includes ^{1}H blocking circuits to avoid electromagnetic couplings between the ^{1}H and ^{31}P elements (Klomp et al. 2008).

As described, a combination of high magnetic field strength, optimized pulse sequences and hardware development can be used to successfully overcome the lower sensitivity of ^{31}P-MRS. Following these technological developments, ^{31}P-NMR applications based on the assessment of intracellular pH, HEP metabolites and magnesium levels in the brain have been reported in multiple clinical studies. In particular, ^{31}P-MRS has proved very useful in the study of neurodegenerative disorders (Martin 2007), stroke (Schulz et al. 2009) and epilepsy (Hetherington et al. 2002).

3.3 ^{13}C-MRS

^{13}C is an MRS visible isotope, albeit with a natural abundance of only 1.1% and a low gyromagnetic ratio, making ^{13}C-MRS much less sensitive than ^{1}H-MRS and ^{31}P-MRS. The relative sensitivity of proton/phosphorus/carbon is 100:6.7:0.018 (Choi et al. 2007; Klomp et al. 2006). However, it offers a higher spectral resolution than ^{1}H-MRS and a lack of background signal. Due to this low natural abundance, most of the ^{13}C-MRS studies refer to the use of enriched substrates; an obvious advantage being that all labeled metabolites can be individually followed. Indeed, upon its administration, the ^{13}C label can incorporate into several positions in different molecules through metabolism (Ugurbil et al. 2000), which is why ^{13}C-MRS has long been used to detect the metabolism of ^{13}C-labeled compounds in vivo, with an emphasis on the use of ^{13}C-labeled glucose.

One of the first published studies describing the use of ^{13}C-glucose to assess glucose metabolism was performed in *Escherichia Coli* and demonstrated the possibility to monitor the labeling of intracellular compounds in intact cells (Ugurbil et al. 1978). Since then, it has been well established that glucose oxidation is the main mechanism for cerebral energy production under normal conditions and ^{13}C-labeled glucose can be applied to investigate glucose utilization in vivo in the brain. Following the infusion of [1-^{13}C] enriched glucose, MRS can detect the emergence of ^{13}C signal in all metabolites of glucose metabolism in the brain, from intermediates of the tricarboxylic-acid (TCA) cycle to the amino acids Glu, aspartate and Gln. After the first pass through the TCA cycle, the first detectable molecules are ^{13}C-Glu and ^{13}C-Gln labeled in the C4 position, and afterwards [3-^{13}C] and [2-^{13}C] labeled Glu and Gln, before the later appearance of Lac, GABA or NAA (Jenkins et al. 1999). This was demonstrated in ^{13}C-MRS studies in human and animal coupled to the administration of [1-^{13}C]-glucose, that indicated high labeling of [4-^{13}C]-glutamate and [4-^{13}C]-glutamine (Sibson et al. 1997; Sibson et al. 1998; Beckmann et al. 1991) It helped in establishing the glutamate-glutamine cycle between neurons and glia as a major metabolic pathway tightly coupled to glucose oxidation (de Graaf et al. 2003).

^{13}C studies can also estimate the NAA synthesis rate in vivo in humans (^{1}H-MRS can only determine NAA levels), through the infusion of [1-^{13}C]-glucose (Moreno et al. 2001). In the latter study, it was also demonstrated that NAA synthesis is directly coupled to brain glycogen metabolism, thus connecting the rate of synthesis of NAA with energy metabolism in the brain. In addition, ^{13}C-MRS is the only noninvasive way of measuring brain glycogen through incorporation of ^{13}C-labeled glucose (Choi et al. 1999), its normal levels being too low to allow natural abundance ^{13}C-NMR measurement such as in the liver (Gruetter et al. 1994).

4 Current Clinical Applications of MRS to the Study of Neurodegenerative Diseases

Since its introduction in the early 1980s in the clinics, MRS has been applied to different fields of research. Along with other imaging modalities, it is a powerful means of assessing the functionality and viability of organ transplants (e.g. kidney, liver) and is also used to establish the metabolic profile of tumors [for review see (Beckmann et al. 2000; Galanaud et al. 2007; Cox 1996)]. MRS can measure a variety of metabolic changes in the brain and this has been applied to the study of various disorders, such as brain tumors, neurodegenerative disorders, metabolic encephalopathy, ischemia, hypoxia and white matter diseases (Kauppinen and Williams 1994; Ross and Bluml 2001). Figure 2 illustrates metabolic changes detected by ^{1}H-MRS in the white matter of a patient suffering from seizures and short time hypoxia as well as traumatic subdural and subarachnoid hemorrhage.

Alzheimer's disease (AD) and PD are some of the most thoroughly studied neurodegenerative diseases, perhaps because the biochemical mechanisms underlying

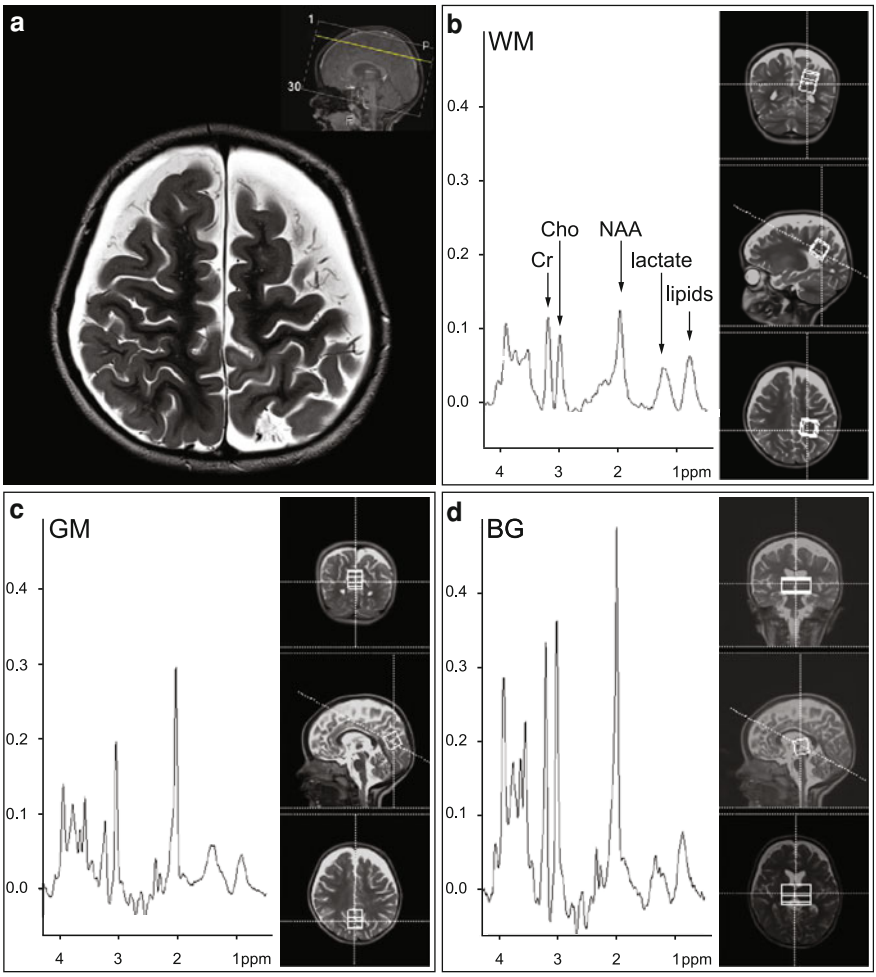


Fig. 2 Example of ^{1}H human in vivo MR spectra obtained from a patient suffering from seizures and short time hypoxia as well as traumatic subdural and subarachnoid hemorrhage. **a** Axial T2-weighted MRI displaying a subcortical lesion (hyperintense) in the medial parietal cortex and bilateral hygromas/CSF interpositions in the subarachnoid and subdural spaces. **b** Pathologic white matter (WM) spectrum with decreased NAA (N-acetyl aspartate; 1.9 ppm) and slightly increased lactate and lipids (1.3 and 0.9 ppm). **c** Normal grey matter (GM) spectrum and **d** normal spectrum from the basal ganglia (BG) in the same patient. Data were acquired in a 3 T human whole body scanner (MAGNETOM Skyra, Siemens AG, Erlangen, Germany) using a SE sequence with TE of 30 ms and TR of 1500 ms. Voxel size: 8 mm^3 for WM and GM spectra and 12 mm^3 for BG spectrum. Courtesy of I.M. Björkman-Burtscher, MD, PhD, Skåne University Hospital, Lund University

their pathology are better characterized as compared with other neurodegenerative conditions. This makes them interesting targets for spectroscopic investigations, a number of which have been reported in humans. In particular and as described

below, MRS is currently used to establish differential diagnosis of various pathologies, to follow up disease progression and more recently there has been a growing interest to apply this technology to monitoring the course of clinical treatments.

4.1 Alzheimer's Disease

AD is clinically defined by a progressive decline of cognitive functions and is considered the leading cause of dementia in the elderly. It is mainly characterized by typical neuropathological lesions in the form of two main protein aggregates: senile plaques and neurofibrillary tangles. The senile plaques are extracellular neuritic amyloid deposits primarily consisting of fibrils of the amyloid β peptide (Glenner and Wong 1984). The neurofibrillary tangles are intracellular aggregates formed mainly by the cytoskeletal microtubule-associated protein tau (Kosik et al. 1986). This is associated with the loss of cholinergic neurons within the basal forebrain (Francis et al. 1999). A noradrenergic deficiency is also described in AD patients and is characterized by a loss of noradrenergic cells in the locus coeruleus (Bondareff et al. 1981) as well as reduced levels of noradrenaline in corresponding innervated areas (Arai et al. 1984, Hoogendijk et al. 1999).

As the definitive diagnosis of AD relies on postmortem neuropathological analysis, the detection of metabolic abnormalities throughout the course of the disease could prove useful in identifying underlying mechanisms as well as following disease progression. The use of proton MRS has provided a wealth of evidence for altered metabolic profiles in different brain regions of AD patients, the most frequent finding being a reduction of NAA levels or a decrease in the NAA/Cr ratios, in both cortical and/or limbic (e.g. hippocampus) structures (Kantarci et al. 2004; Kantarci et al. 2008; Shinno et al. 2007; Ackl et al. 2005; Frederick et al. 2004; Chantal et al. 2004; Dixon et al. 2002). In a comprehensive review looking at data from reports of proton MRS in dementia, the relative decrease in NAA levels was reported to average 20% in the temporal lobe of AD patients, whereas the rest of the brain averaged a 10% drop (Firbank et al. 2002). One of the early indications that the reduction in NAA would indicate neuronal damage in AD came from studies correlating postmortem NAA levels to AD neuropathology (tangles) at necropsy (Mohanakrishnan et al. 1995). Similar conclusions were drawn from more robust studies reporting a strong correlation between reduction of MRS NAA levels and AD pathology confirmed at autopsy (higher Braak stage and neuritic plaque score) (Kantarci et al. 2008). Apart from the reduction in NAA, a consistent increase in mIns levels has been frequently reported as well (Ackl et al. 2005; Chantal et al. 2004; Kantarci et al. 2004), and would suggest that mIns is a marker of glial proliferation in AD. Some authors have shown reduced Cho levels in AD patients (Kantarci et al. 2004; Chantal et al. 2004). However, unlike the NAA and mIns findings, these results are not consistent as some researchers reported elevated Cho/Cr ratios (MacKay et al. 1996) while others failed to report any alteration in Cho measurements (Ackl et al. 2005; Schott et al. 2010), which makes the relevance of following alterations of Cho levels in AD disputable.

Based on these spectroscopic features (decrease in NAA and increase in mIns), MRS can discriminate patients with clinical AD from normal elderly subjects (Lin et al. 2005). However, alterations of NAA and mIns are not specific to AD per se. For example, decreases in NAA/Cr levels are reported in other types of dementia characterized by neuronal loss, such as frontotemporal lobar degeneration or vascular dementia (Kantarci et al. 2004). Nevertheless, the robustness of these measurements makes these two metabolites good candidates to differentiate between dementias that are attributed to AD or to other conditions. In particular, proton MRS has shown an interesting potential in predicting the evolution from mild cognitive impairment (MCI) to AD. MCI patients present memory deficits that are greater than in their normal aged counterparts but that are not severe enough to impair their daily activities (Petersen et al. 1999). MCI is considered as a transitional state between normal aging and AD (Morris et al. 2001). However, not all MCI patients will develop dementia. In terms of brain metabolic abnormalities, the available reports are somewhat conflicting. Some studies state that ^{1}H-MRS can identify a reduction of NAA levels (Chantal et al. 2004) and/or an increase in mIns (Kantarci et al. 2007) in MCI subjects. Others report that the metabolic profile of MCI subjects cannot be distinguished from normal control subjects (Garcia Santos et al. 2008), even though a trend to intermediate values between controls and AD patients can be found (Azevedo et al. 2008). Nevertheless, MRS may have some predictive value in MCI individuals. It has been suggested that baseline NAA/Cr could predict the conversion from MCI to AD, such as in the study from Modrego and colleagues which looked at metabolite ratios in hippocampal, occipital and parietal volumes. The occipital NAA/Cr was significantly lower in MCI converters compared to non-converters over a 3-year follow-up (Modrego et al. 2005). Other longitudinal studies investigating additional cortical areas have indicated similar findings [for review see (Griffith et al. 2009)]. These studies suggest that ^{1}H-MRS can have an impact on monitoring early signs of AD and that the detection of metabolic alterations as the first cognitive symptoms develop can help in the follow-up of elderly subjects with MCI.

Before the postmortem neuropathological evaluation can confirm the AD diagnosis, neuropsychological measures of cognitive functions are used to classify patients as probable AD, based on clinical rating scales such as the Mini Mental State Examination (MMSE) (Folstein et al. 1975). Once dementia is diagnosed, other scales [such as the Dementia Rating Scale (DRS) or the Clinical Dementia Rating (CDR)] can assess progression and severity of the symptoms (Hughes et al. 1982; Marson et al. 1997). Multiple studies have looked for a parallel between metabolite concentrations and MMSE, DRS or CDR scores. Several of them have reported a significant correlation between levels of NAA and/or mIns and the severity of cognitive deficit in AD (Waldman and Rai 2003; Dixon et al. 2002; Doraiswamy et al. 1998; Kantarci et al. 2007), although it should be mentioned that not all of them reached that conclusion (Jessen et al. 2005). The fact that some of these studies were based on longitudinal rather than cross-sectional assessments adds power to the correlation.

The optimal method to assess the efficacy of a therapeutic treatment would be to look at a direct effect at a cellular level in order to determine neuronal survival and/or function. However, this has so far not been possible to do in patients and clinical evaluation remains the main outcome marker. Clinical outcomes of a treatment will only look at purely symptomatic functional effects and cannot distinguish disease-modifying drug effects. This has prompted the development of surrogate markers to derive a correlate of clinical measures of disease severity. As stated above, ^{1}H-MRS offers a way to noninvasively measure markers of neuronal and glial metabolism that are of relevance in the process of AD. Several longitudinal studies have looked at the opportunity to use MRS in monitoring the treatment effect by looking at metabolic changes in AD patients during therapeutic trials with cholinergic agents. Donepezil is an acetylcholinesterase inhibitor (AChEI) shown to provide beneficial (though modest) effects on cognition in AD patients. It is currently used for symptomatic relief in mild to moderate cases along with other AChEI, such as galantamine and rivastigmine (Aderinwale et al. 2010). In a 24-week randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study, treatment with donepezil was associated with an increase in NAA levels in two brain regions and an improvement in performance in cognitive tasks, compared with placebo treated patients (Krishnan et al. 2003). In addition to supporting these data, another study demonstrated that NAA/Cr in the parietal lobe of patients at baseline predicted a positive treatment response: a low ratio correlated to an improvement in cognition, while a high ratio indicated no improvement in the patients (Jessen et al. 2006). Modest but favorable changes in metabolite concentrations (mainly an increase in NAA in the frontal cortex) were also shown to correlate with a modest clinical change following rivastigmine treatment for 4 months. However, the authors speculated that these changes might be transient (Modrego et al. 2006), which was in fact demonstrated by Krishnan and colleagues (Krishnan et al. 2003).

As examined, spectroscopic measures may provide good markers of altered brain chemistry in AD. In particular, markers of neuronal loss (NAA) and gliosis (mIns) that are biologically relevant to the pathology of AD can be followed by proton MRS. This method constitutes an interesting tool for the follow-up of disease progression and for the recognition of early signs of the disease as well as for the differential diagnosis of dementia.

4.2 Parkinson's Disease

PD is a disorder of the extrapyramidal motor system clinically defined by resting tremor, bradykinesia, akinesia, rigidity and postural imbalance. It is characterized by the progressive degeneration of nigrostriatal dopaminergic neurons. This leads to a severe dopamine depletion at the striatal level, responsible for most of the motor disturbances (Hirsch et al. 1988; Fearnley and Lees 1991; Nyberg et al. 1983).

Many studies using proton MRS have investigated brain metabolic profiles of PD patients in an effort to detect pathogenic markers of the disease that could broaden the understanding of the pathology as well as provide help in early diagnosis. However, it appears that quantitative ^{1}H-MRS studies in PD have yielded variable results. Due to the dramatic loss of dopaminergic neurons characteristic of the disease, a substantial loss of NAA (marker of neuronal density) could be anticipated. However, the majority of studies looking at NAA/Cr or NAA/Cho either reported a minor decrease in these ratios or failed to report any significant difference between PD cases and controls [for review see (Clarke and Lowry 2001; Firbank et al. 2002)]. In addition, an increase in NAA/Cr has also been reported in the SN of PD patients (Choe et al. 1998). However, a study using absolute quantification of metabolites showed only a decrease in the Cr level in the SN of PD patients compared to healthy age-matched controls (O'Neill et al. 2002), suggesting that the previously reported increase in NAA/Cr could be due to lower Cr rather than higher NAA. Similarly, the reduction in NAA/Cho ratios reported in some studies might in fact not reflect a reduction in NAA itself as an increase in absolute Cho levels has been observed (Clarke and Lowry 2000; Ellis et al. 1997). In this case, the biological significance of changes in Cho levels remains uncertain. Apart from the more commonly studied metabolites (NAA, Cr, Cho), Lac levels have also been measured by ^{1}H-MRS and found to be elevated in PD patients, suggesting a mitochondrial energy metabolism defect (Henchcliffe et al. 2008). A combined quantitative ^{1}H/^{31}P-MRS study investigating brain energy metabolism measured the concentration of Cr, Pi, ATP, ADP in the midbrain and putamen of PD patients. The depletion of HEP found in the mesostriatal region was in accordance with a mitochondrial dysfunction (Hattingen et al. 2009).

As it appears the results obtained in PD patients are somewhat variable, with studies reporting small changes identified with MRS while others show significant differences between PD and controls. In order to facilitate the interpretation of such data, it is of great importance to determine the origin of such variation. The disparity in the results is more likely to stem from methodological differences. The choice of absolute quantification versus the more popular use of relative ratio to an apparently stable endogenous metabolite like Cr (that has proven to vary in some situations) could be an important contributing factor (Martin 2007). The size and placement of the voxels could also account for some of the variation, especially in the SN, a challenging area to target due to its small size and location in the midbrain. The field strength could also play a major role in the variability of the results. An increasing number of studies operate at high fields, i.e. 3 T and above. Compared to 1.5 T, spectral resolution and SNR are expected to improve considerably, providing a more accurate identification and quantification of the metabolites (Di Costanzo et al. 2003). This is reflected by a study performed at 4 T that demonstrated the possibility to detect and measure GABA in the SN, a metabolite whose resonance usually overlaps with the Glu and Gln peaks. GABA quantification though required the use of a special editing sequence. The same study reported a unique profile in the SN of PD patients compared to the cortex, with high GABA and low Glu levels (Oz et al. 2006).

The relevance of ^{1}H-MRS to the study of PD extends to the investigation of dementia as well. Although PD is primarily defined as a motor syndrome, the clinical expression of the disease is more heterogeneous. Many patients express significant non-motor symptoms including depression, dementia, neuropsychiatric disturbances, olfactory deficits and autonomic dysfunction (Bosboom et al. 2004; Owen et al. 1992). Parkinson's disease with dementia (PDD) is characterized by a progressive dysexecutive syndrome and it is estimated that 30 to 40% of PD patients develop dementia (Aarsland and Kurz 2010). Studies comparing brain MRS profile obtained from PDD patients can indicate an altered brain metabolism compared to non-demented PD patients and healthy age-matched individuals. For example, a study reported occipital NAA values to be significantly reduced in PDD patients compared to PD cases and controls. The NAA levels in this region correlated with the cognitive status of the PDD patients. The authors concluded that cortical NAA level may be used as a biological marker for the severity of cognitive decline in PDD patients (Summerfield et al. 2002). Despite some similarities and overlap in the neuropathological basis of PDD and AD, increased evidence suggests that these two pathologies differ [for review see (Farlow and Cummings 2008)] and information obtained through ^{1}H-MRS tends to support this view. In fact, proton MRS has been suggested to distinguish between AD and PDD. Griffith and colleagues showed a significant reduction in NAA/Cr in the posterior cingulate gyrus of both AD and PDD patients compared to controls (Griffith et al. 2008). However, Glu/Cr was significantly lower in PDD patients versus AD patients and could discriminate between the two conditions, suggesting that these metabolic disturbances could reflect distinct neuropathologies.

Apart from the use of MRS metabolic quantification and profiling to assess disease mechanisms and progression, some studies are further exploring the use of MRS as a tool to evaluate therapeutic efficacy of pharmacological or surgical interventions. Lucetti and colleagues investigated the power of ^{1}H-MRS to assess the influence of dopaminergic treatment that is capable of improving motor functions on motor cortex metabolism. After 6 months of treatment, pergolide was shown to increase previously abnormally low Cho/Cr to normal levels, in the motor cortex of de novo PD patients (Lucetti et al. 2007). In another experiment, the survival and cellular composition of dopaminergic fetal cells transplanted into the striatum of PD patients were followed with ^{1}H-MRS. Restoration of NAA concentration at the graft level (NAA is normally absent from fetal neurons) provided evidence of the neuronal survival and maturation of the transplant (Ross et al. 1999).

Despite the extensive use of ^{1}H-MRS in the investigation of metabolic abnormalities in PD, results have been rather inconclusive when comparing PD patients with controls. Proton MRS might however have an interesting value in differential diagnosis, discriminating PDD from non-demented PD cases and controls, as well as from AD. The refinement of the existing MR methods has already allowed improvement in metabolite separation and quantification. Yet, further developments might be required to allow the detection of metabolites that would be more specific to a particular neurodegenerative disorder.

5 Emerging MRS Methods Based on the Use of Hyperpolarized Tracers: Potential Applications to the Study of Brain Function

Today, MRS has become a powerful technique and one of the most informative tools for direct and noninvasive identification of endogenous and exogenous substances in the body. It is also capable of providing a map of multiple metabolites in various tissues, and giving information about complex metabolic processes in the brain. Its potential applications have so far been hindered mainly by its intrinsically low sensitivity, precluding in vivo quantification of less abundant metabolites. Significant efforts have therefore been made to increase MRS sensitivity by utilizing higher field strength, advanced RF coil designs and sequence development, which helped to increase the list of neurochemicals detected by this method. However, the low abundant true neurotransmitters [such as DA or acetylcholine (ACh)] are far below detection by conventional ^{1}H- and ^{13}C-MRS methods performed at thermal equilibrium. In clinical examination of the brain, the NMR detection limit in terms of concentration of protons is around 0.5−1.0 mM (Ross and Bluml 2001). The low sensitivity of NMR is due to the low degree of polarization of the nuclear spins by experimentally achievable magnetic fields at thermal equilibrium, amounting to just a few parts per million. In addition, if the nucleus of interest is at low natural abundance (such as ^{13}C), MR sensitivity is then severely reduced (Mansson et al. 2006). This intrinsic low sensitivity has motivated the development of new methods, which could enable the detection of less abundant metabolites, including neurotransmitters.

Powerful novel techniques to enhance weak NMR signals from molecular tracers have recently been developed and are referred to as hyperpolarization methods. These techniques can considerably enhance the polarization of nuclear spins, and thereby provide a dramatic increase in the sensitivity of subsequently performed MRS investigations (Golman et al. 2003). One of the methods used to create hyperpolarized (non-equilibrium) nuclear spin states in probe molecules is the solid-state dynamic nuclear polarization (DNP). To use the DNP method for liquid probes (e.g., aqueous solutions of molecular tracers), the probe is doped with free radicals in a glass-forming solvent (e.g. glycerol), frozen to a very low temperature (1 K) inside a magnetic field, and irradiated with microwaves to transfer a high polarization of electron spins residing in low-concentrated free radicals to the surrounding nuclear spins. After creating a “hyper-polarized” nuclear spin state in a frozen probe, the molecular sample is quickly dissolved in water (Ardenkjaer-Larsen et al. 2003). The liquid probe can then be administrated in the body and used as a tracer so that one can visualize its biodistribution and metabolism in vivo.

This novel technology allows amplifying the baseline sensitivity of e.g., ^{13}C-MRS by a factor of up to 10,000 in vitro (Ardenkjaer-Larsen et al. 2003). The so-called DNP polarizer can be used for both in vitro and in vivo MRS and ultra-sensitive molecular imaging, including neurological applications

(Ardenkjaer-Larsen et al. 2003; Ross et al. 2010). The major limitation of the technique arises from the short lifetimes of hyperpolarized spin states in liquids, determined by the relaxation times T_1. This becomes especially critical when considering in vivo applications. Since protons in solutions of biomolecules have too short relaxation times to allow for transport and in vivo injection of hyperpolarized compounds, most applications of the technique have focused on ^{13}C-MRS. Nonprotonated carbons in ^{13}C-enriched tracers have relatively longer relaxation times (20–40 s), and thus the artificially prepared hyper-polarization decays back to the thermal-equilibrium level over a time course of a few minutes. Thus, the injection of the hyperpolarized probe and subsequent MR examination has to be performed rapidly. Despite this time limitation, the huge gain in signal intensity substitutes the need for signal accumulation, thus allowing complete data collection within the time window needed for imaging applications (Golman et al. 2006a; Mansson et al. 2006; Golman et al. 2003).

Several important application areas of metabolic imaging by ^{13}C DNP-MRS have been demonstrated by Golman's group, in particular for investigation of cardiac metabolism (Golman et al. 2008), metabolism in muscle (Golman et al. 2006a) and tumor diagnosis (Golman et al. 2006b; Day et al. 2007). Most of these studies involved ^{13}C-pyruvate as a molecular probe, but the great potential of the ^{13}C DNP-MRS method for metabolic imaging has also been demonstrated with other molecules [e.g. (Gallagher et al. 2008)]. Although no successful clinical applications have been developed yet, current applications of DNP at the pre-clinical level are very encouraging and range from angiography (Svensson et al. 2003) to metabolic imaging of healthy and diseased tissue (Gabellieri et al. 2008; Golman et al. 2006b; Golman et al. 2006a).

In addition to ^{13}C, molecular probes containing other magnetic nuclei with long relaxation times, such as ^{15}N, can be assessed using DNP-MRS, which may allow more time for metabolic conversion and accumulation of products. One of such probes that has gained recent attention is the hyperpolarization of ^{15}N labeled choline. Apart from its role in cellular phospholipid synthesis and metabolism, choline is also the precursor of the neurotransmitter ACh and therefore plays a major role in cholinergic neurotransmission (Cooper et al. 2003). Besides, alterations of the cholinergic neurotransmission are well-recognized features of neurodegenerative diseases such as AD and PD (Nakano and Hirano 1984; Perry et al. 1985; Whitehouse et al. 1982). Monitoring the physiological metabolism of choline and ACh in the brain through in vivo spectroscopy might be of great importance in the study of these diseases and may as well provide a diagnostic tool to detect biomarkers relevant to these conditions. Since ^{15}N relaxation time in choline is relatively long (100−200 s), the use of hyperpolarized ^{15}N-choline bears an exciting potential in reaching such goals. Gabellieri and colleagues first described a method to monitor the in vitro metabolic conversion of hyperpolarized ^{15}N-choline into phosphocholine by choline kinase using ^{15}N-NMR (Gabellieri et al. 2008). In vivo measurements using this method may, however, be hampered by insufficient ^{15}N peak separation of choline metabolites ($\sim$0.2 ppm for phosphocholine vs choline) and by poor sensitivity of ^{15}N-NMR. In an in vivo study the

successful detection of hyperpolarized ^{15}N-choline in a rat head after administration through the rat femoral vein has been reported, but none of the choline metabolites could in fact be detected (the choline signal was discernible above the noise level for about 100 s) (Cudalbu et al. 2010). Bringing the sensitivity of MRS detection of hyperpolarized ^{15}N choline to a level more compatible with in vivo measurements appears essential and is in the center of several studies. An alternative approach based on DNP-enhanced ^{1}H-NMR was developed, in which hyperpolarized ^{15}N choline was detected in vitro by ^{1}H-NMR after polarization transfer from ^{15}N to the distant methylene CH_2O protons, using a reversed INEPT pulse sequence (Sarkar et al. 2009). This method was shown to provide better sensitivity and an increased spectral dispersion of choline metabolites (ACh and phosphocholine) compared to direct ^{15}N detection. A selective polarization transfer strategy has been described to further increase sensitivity of this method for ^{15}N-choline (Pfeilsticker et al. 2010), whereby the polarization is transferred from ^{15}N exclusively to the methyl protons. In another study, the potential of the polarization transfer approach to track metabolic processes was explored in an in vitro experiment that applied the concept of spatially selective transfer to monitor the kinetics of two enzymatic reactions catalyzed by purified enzymes (Harris et al. 2010). The first reaction targeted was the phosphorylation of ^{15}N-choline into PC by choline kinase, also described by Gabellieri and colleagues with direct ^{15}N-NMR (Gabellieri et al. 2008). The second reaction, perhaps more interesting due to its significance of neuronal activity, was the hydrolysis of ^{15}N-ACh into choline by acetylcholine esterase. One of the advantages of using ^{1}H-NMR in that case is the good spectral resolution of the methylene group (close to the reaction hydroxyl group) between the two species. This offers the possibility to follow the kinetics of the reaction, here in a time window of 4 min.

Moving away from ^{15}N-choline, another hyperpolarized labeled choline molecular probe emerged to monitor ACh synthesis (Allouche-Arnon et al. 2010). The metabolic acetylation of a [1,1,2,2-D_4,2-^{13}C] choline chloride by a carnitine acetyltransferase was followed in vitro by ^{13}C-NMR and yielded interesting results. At the hyperpolarized state, [1,1,2,2-D_4,2-^{13}C] ACh was already detectable within 15 s. Kinetics parameters such as the reaction rate constant k were measured and the T_1 relaxation time of the product was found to be sufficiently long (34 s), which would be a clear advantage for in vivo application. Although encouraging, the metabolic conversion monitored was catalyzed by a carnitine acetyltransferase extracted from pigeon breast muscle, an enzyme primarily dedicated to carnitine acetylation. For this reason, extrapolation of the conclusions of this study to any application using choline acetyltransferase (the enzyme catalyzing the synthesis of ACh in the brain) should be made with caution.

Since their introduction in preclinical and clinical examinations, MRS techniques have developed greatly and today they represent an important part of the tools used to investigate metabolic processes noninvasively. In particular, they can provide information about brain functions through measurements of a wide range of neurochemicals. Neurodegenerative diseases in which brain metabolic changes are observed constitute interesting targets for MRS analysis. In pathologies such as

AD or PD, MR spectroscopy can detect altered metabolite levels and has therefore been applied to identify specific pathological markers, monitor longitudinal disease progression or perform differential diagnosis, with mixed outcome. Methods capable of increasing MRS sensitivity in vitro are now receiving increased attention for in vivo application. In particular, the strong signal enhancement provided by hyperpolarization methods applied to the detection of heteronuclei in MRS may have an interest in the measurement of less abundant metabolites, such as brain neurotransmitters. Great methodological advances have already been achieved in the development of DNP-enhanced MRS-based techniques that may further facilitate the detection of important brain metabolic processes in vivo. The future of these methods will depend on the possibility to transfer them to in vivo studies in living biological systems.

Acknowledgments The authors wish to acknowledge the contribution of Isabella Björkman-Burtscher for providing the human ^{1}H spectra used in Fig. 2.

References

Aarsland D, Kurz MW (2010) The epidemiology of dementia associated with Parkinson disease. J Neurol Sci 289(1–2):18–22. doi:S0022-510X(09)00819-3[pii]10.1016/j.jns.2009.08.034

Ackl N, Ising M, Schreiber YA, Atiya M, Sonntag A, Auer DP (2005) Hippocampal metabolic abnormalities in mild cognitive impairment and Alzheimer's disease. Neurosci Lett 384(1–2):23–28. doi:10.1016/j.neulet.2005.04.035

Aderinwale OG, Ernst HW, Mousa SA (2010) Current therapies and new strategies for the management of Alzheimer's disease. Am J Alzheimers Dis Other Demen 25(5):414–424. doi:10.1177/1533317510372372

Allouche-Arnon H, Gamliel A, Barzilay CM, Nalbandian R, Gomori JM, Karlsson M, Lerche MH, Katz-Brull R (2010) A hyperpolarized choline molecular probe for monitoring acetylcholine synthesis. Contrast Media Mol Imaging. doi:10.1002/cmmi.418

Arai H, Kosaka K, Iizuka R (1984) Changes of biogenic amines and their metabolites in postmortem brains from patients with Alzheimer-type dementia. J Neurochem 43:388–393

Ardenkjaer-Larsen JH, Fridlund B, Gram A, Hansson G, Hansson L, Lerche MH, Servin R, Thaning M, Golman K (2003) Increase in signal-to-noise ratio of >10, 000 times in liquid-state NMR. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100(18):10158–10163. doi:10.1073/pnas.1733835100173383510 0[pii]

Azevedo D, Tatsch M, Hototian SR, Bazzarella MC, Castro CC, Bottino CM (2008) Proton spectroscopy in Alzheimer's disease and cognitive impairment no dementia: a community-based study. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 25(6):491–500. doi:10.1159/000128275

Bartha R, Drost DJ, Williamson PC (1999) Factors affecting the quantification of short echo in vivo 1H MR spectra: prior knowledge, peak elimination, and filtering. NMR Biomed 12(4):205–216

Baslow MH (2003) N-acetylaspartate in the vertebrate brain: metabolism and function. Neurochem Res 28(6):941–953

Beckmann N, Turkalj I, Seelig J, Keller U (1991) 13C NMR for the assessment of human brain glucose metabolism in vivo. Biochem 30(26):6362–6366

Beckmann N, Hof RP, Rudin M (2000) The role of magnetic resonance imaging and spectroscopy in transplantation: from animal models to man. NMR Biomed 13(6):329–348. doi:10.1002/1099-1492(200010)13:6<329:AID-NBM653>3.0.CO;2-W[pii]

Ben-Ari Y, Gaiarsa JL, Tyzio R, Khazipov R (2007) GABA: a pioneer transmitter that excites immature neurons and generates primitive oscillations. Physiol Rev 87(4):1215–1284. doi:87/4/1215[pii]10.1152/physrev.00017.2006

Bondareff W, Mountjoy CQ, Roth M (1981) Selective loss of neurones of origin of adrenergic projection to cerebral cortex (nucleus locus coeruleus) in senile dementia. Lancet 1:783–784

Bosboom JL, Stoffers D, Wolters E (2004) Cognitive dysfunction and dementia in Parkinson's disease. J Neural Transm 111(10–11):1303–1315. doi:10.1007/s00702-004-0168-1

Brief EE, Moll R, Li DK, Mackay AL (2009) Absolute metabolite concentrations calibrated using the total water signal in brain (1) H MRS. NMR Biomed 22(3):349–354. doi:10.1002/nbm.1349

Brooks DJ (2003) PET studies on the function of dopamine in health and Parkinson's disease. Ann N Y Acad Sci 991:22–35

Callaghan P (1991) Principles of nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Oxford University Press, New York

Cavassila S, Deval S, Huegen C, van Ormondt D, Graveron-Demilly D (2001) Cramer-Rao bounds: an evaluation tool for quantitation. NMR Biomed 14(4):278–283

Chantal S, Braun CM, Bouchard RW, Labelle M, Boulanger Y (2004) Similar 1H magnetic resonance spectroscopic metabolic pattern in the medial temporal lobes of patients with mild cognitive impairment and Alzheimer disease. Brain Res 1003(1–2):26–35. doi:10.1016/j.brainres.2003.11.074

Chaumeil MM, Valette J, Guillermier M, Brouillet E, Boumezbeur F, Herard AS, Bloch G, Hantraye P, Lebon V (2009) Multimodal neuroimaging provides a highly consistent picture of energy metabolism, validating 31P MRS for measuring brain ATP synthesis. Proc Nat Acad Sci U S A 106 (10):3988−3993. doi:10.1073/pnas.0806516106

Choe BY, Park JW, Lee KS, Son BC, Kim MC, Kim BS, Suh TS, Lee HK, Shinn KS (1998) Neuronal laterality in Parkinson's disease with unilateral symptom by in vivo 1H magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Invest Radiol 33(8):450–455

Choi IY, Tkac I, Ugurbil K, Gruetter R (1999) Noninvasive measurements of [1-(13)C]glycogen concentrations and metabolism in rat brain in vivo. J Neurochem 73(3):1300–1308

Choi JK, Dedeoglu A, Jenkins BG (2007) Application of MRS to mouse models of neurodegenerative illness. NMR Biomed 20(3):216–237. doi:10.1002/nbm.1145

Clark JB (1998) N-acetyl aspartate: a marker for neuronal loss or mitochondrial dysfunction. Dev Neurosci 20(4–5):271–276. doi:dne20271[pii]

Clarke CE, Lowry M (2000) Basal ganglia metabolite concentrations in idiopathic Parkinson's disease and multiple system atrophy measured by proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Eur J Neurol 7(6):661–665. doi:ene111[pii]

Clarke CE, Lowry M (2001) Systematic review of proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy of the striatum in parkinsonian syndromes. Eur J Neurol Soc 8(6):573–577

Cooper J, Bloom F, Roth R (2003) The biochemical basis of neuropharmacology, 8th edn. Oxford University Press, Inc, New York

Cowan CM, Raymond LA (2006) Selective neuronal degeneration in Huntington's disease. Curr Top Dev Biol 75:25–71. doi:S0070-2153(06)75002-5[pii]10.1016/S0070-2153(06)75002-5

Cox IJ (1996) Development and applications of in vivo clinical magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Prog Biophys Mol Biol 65(1–2):45–81. doi:S0079-6107(96)00006-5[pii]

Cudalbu C, Comment A, Kurdzesau F, van Heeswijk RB, Uffmann K, Jannin S, Denisov V, Kirik D, Gruetter R (2010) Feasibility of in vivo 15N MRS detection of hyperpolarized 15N labeled choline in rats. Phys Chem Chem Phys 12(22):5818–5823. doi:10.1039/c002309b

Day SE, Kettunen MI, Gallagher FA, Hu DE, Lerche M, Wolber J, Golman K, Ardenkjaer-Larsen JH, Brindle KM (2007) Detecting tumor response to treatment using hyperpolarized 13C magnetic resonance imaging and spectroscopy. Nat Med 13(11):1382–1387. doi:10.1038/nm1650

de Graaf RA (2007) In vivo NMR spectroscopy, 2nd edn. Wiley, Chicester

de Graaf AA, Bovee WM (1990) Improved quantification of in vivo 1H NMR spectra by optimization of signal acquisition and processing and by incorporation of prior knowledge into the spectral fitting. Magn Reson Med 15(2):305–319

de Graaf RA, Mason GF, Patel AB, Behar KL, Rothman DL (2003) In vivo 1H-[13C]-NMR spectroscopy of cerebral metabolism. NMR Biomed 16(6–7):339–357. doi:10.1002/nbm.847

Di Costanzo A, Trojsi F, Tosetti M, Giannatempo GM, Nemore F, Piccirillo M, Bonavita S, Tedeschi G, Scarabino T (2003) High-field proton MRS of human brain. Eur J Radiol 48(2):146–153. doi:10.1016/j.ejrad.2003.08.009S0720048X03002420[pii]

Dixon RM, Bradley KM, Budge MM, Styles P, Smith AD (2002) Longitudinal quantitative proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy of the hippocampus in Alzheimer's disease. Brain J Neurol 125(Pt 10):2332–2341

Doraiswamy PM, Charles HC, Krishnan KR (1998) Prediction of cognitive decline in early Alzheimer's disease. Lancet 352(9141):1678. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(05)61449-3

Du F, Zhu XH, Qiao H, Zhang X, Chen W (2007) Efficient in vivo 31P magnetization transfer approach for noninvasively determining multiple kinetic parameters and metabolic fluxes of ATP metabolism in the human brain. Magn Reson Med 57(1):103–114. doi:10.1002/mrm.21107

Edden RA, Harris AD, Murphy K, Evans CJ, Saxena N, Hall JE, Bailey DM, Wise RG (2010) Edited MRS is sensitive to changes in lactate concentration during inspiratory hypoxia. J Magn Reson Imaging 32(2):320–325. doi:10.1002/jmri.22233

Ellis CM, Lemmens G, Williams SC, Simmons A, Dawson J, Leigh PN, Chaudhuri KR (1997) Changes in putamen N-acetylaspartate and choline ratios in untreated and levodopa-treated Parkinson's disease: a proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy study. Neurology 49(2):438–444

Farlow MR, Cummings J (2008) A modern hypothesis: The distinct pathologies of dementia associated with Parkinson's disease versus Alzheimer's disease. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 25(4):301–308. doi:10.1159/000119104

Fearnley JM, Lees AJ (1991) Ageing and Parkinson's disease: substantia nigra regional selectivity. Brain J Neurol 114(Pt 5):2283–2301

Firbank MJ, Harrison RM, O'Brien JT (2002) A comprehensive review of proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy studies in dementia and Parkinson's disease. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 14(2):64–76

Folstein MF, Folstein SE, McHugh PR (1975) Mini-mental state. A practical method for grading the cognitive state of patients for the clinician. J Psychiatr Res 12(3):189–198

Fonnum F (1984) Glutamate: a neurotransmitter in mammalian brain. J Neurochem 42(1):1–11

Francis PT, Palmer AM, Snape M, Wilcock GK (1999) The cholinergic hypothesis of Alzheimer's disease: a review of progress. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 66(2):137–147

Frederick BD, Lyoo IK, Satlin A, Ahn KH, Kim MJ, Yurgelun-Todd DA, Cohen BM, Renshaw PF (2004) In vivo proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy of the temporal lobe in Alzheimer's disease. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 28(8):1313–1322. doi:10.1016/j.pnpbp.2004.08.013

Fumita M, Innis RB (2002) In vivo molecular imaging: ligand development and research applications. In: Davis KL, Charney D, Coyle JT, Nemeroff C (eds) Neuropsychopharmacology —the fifth generation of progress. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia

Gabellieri C, Reynolds S, Lavie A, Payne GS, Leach MO, Eykyn TR (2008) Therapeutic target metabolism observed using hyperpolarized 15N choline. J Am Chem Soc 130(14):4598–4599. doi:10.1021/ja8001293

Gadian D (1995) NMR and its applications to living systems, 2nd edn. Oxford university press, Oxford

Galanaud D, Nicoli F, Confort-Gouny S, Le Fur Y, Dormont D, Girard N, Ranjeva J, Cozzone P (2007) [Brain magnetic resonance spectroscopy]. J Radiol 88(3 Pt 2):483–496. doi:MDOI-JR-03-2007-88-3-C2-0221-0363-101019-200700145 [pii]

Gallagher FA, Kettunen MI, Day SE, Hu DE, Ardenkjaer-Larsen JH, Zandt R, Jensen PR, Karlsson M, Golman K, Lerche MH, Brindle KM (2008) Magnetic resonance imaging of pH in vivo using hyperpolarized 13C-labelled bicarbonate. Nature 453(7197):940–943. doi:10.1038/nature07017

Garcia Santos JM, Gavrila D, Antunez C, Tormo MJ, Salmeron D, Carles R, Jimenez Veiga J, Parrilla G, Torres del Rio S, Fortuna L, Navarro C (2008) Magnetic resonance spectroscopy

performance for detection of dementia, Alzheimer's disease and mild cognitive impairment in a community-based survey. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 26(1):15–25. doi:10.1159/000140624

Gaura V, Bachoud-Levi AC, Ribeiro MJ, Nguyen JP, Frouin V, Baudic S, Brugieres P, Mangin JF, Boisse MF, Palfi S, Cesaro P, Samson Y, Hantraye P, Peschanski M, Remy P (2004) Striatal neural grafting improves cortical metabolism in Huntington's disease patients. Brain J Neurol 127(Pt 1):65–72. doi:10.1093/brain/awh003

Golman K, Olsson LE, Axelsson O, Mansson S, Karlsson M, Petersson JS (2003) Molecular imaging using hyperpolarized 13C. Br J Radiol 76 Spec No 2:S118–127

Golman K, in'tZandt R, Thaning M (2006a) Real-time metabolic imaging. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103(30):11270–11275. doi:0601319103[pii]10.1073/pnas.0601319103

Golman K, Zandt RI, Lerche M, Pehrson R, Ardenkjaer-Larsen JH (2006b) Metabolic imaging by hyperpolarized 13C magnetic resonance imaging for in vivo tumor diagnosis. Cancer Res 66(22):10855–10860. doi:66/22/10855[pii]10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-06-2564

Golman K, Petersson JS, Magnusson P, Johansson E, Akeson P, Chai CM, Hansson G, Mansson S (2008) Cardiac metabolism measured noninvasively by hyperpolarized 13C MRI. Magn Reson Med 59(5):1005–1013. doi:10.1002/mrm.21460

Griffith HR, den Hollander JA, Okonkwo OC, O'Brien T, Watts RL, Marson DC (2008) Brain metabolism differs in Alzheimer's disease and Parkinson's disease dementia. Alzheimers Dement 4(6):421–427. doi:S1552-5260(08)00128-3[pii]10.1016/j.jalz.2008.04.008

Griffith HR, Stewart CC, den Hollander JA (2009) Proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy in dementias and mild cognitive impairment. Int Rev Neurobiol 84:105–131. doi:S0074-7742(09)00406-1[pii]10.1016/S0074-7742(09)00406-1

Gruber S, Mlynarik V, Moser E (2003) High-resolution 3D proton spectroscopic imaging of the human brain at 3 T: SNR issues and application for anatomy-matched voxel sizes. Magn Reson Med 49:299–306

Gruetter R, Magnusson I, Rothman DL, Avison MJ, Shulman RG, Shulman GI (1994) Validation of 13C NMR measurements of liver glycogen in vivo. Magn Reson Med 31(6):583–588

Gruetter R, Weisdorf SA, Rajanayagan V, Terpstra M, Merkle H, Truwit CL, Garwood M, Nyberg SL, Ugurbil K (1998) Resolution improvements in in vivo 1H NMR spectra with increased magnetic field strength. J Magn Reson 135(1):260–264. doi:S1090-7807(98)91542-7[pii]10.1006/jmre.1998.1542

Gubellini P, Eusebio A, Oueslati A, Melon C, Kerkerian-Le Goff L, Salin P (2006) Chronic high-frequency stimulation of the subthalamic nucleus and L-DOPA treatment in experimental parkinsonism: effects on motor behaviour and striatal glutamate transmission. Eur J Neurosci 24(6):1802–1814. doi:EJN5047[pii]10.1111/j.1460-9568.2006.05047.x

Harris T, Giraudeau P, Frydman L (2010) Kinetics from indirectly detected hyperpolarized NMR spectroscopy by using spatially selective coherence transfers. Chemistry. doi:10.1002/chem.201002151

Hattingen E, Magerkurth J, Pilatus U, Mozer A, Seifried C, Steinmetz H, Zanella F, Hilker R (2009) Phosphorus and proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy demonstrates mitochondrial dysfunction in early and advanced Parkinson's disease. Brain 132(Pt 12):3285–3297. doi:awp293[pii]10.1093/brain/awp293

Henchcliffe C, Shungu DC, Mao X, Huang C, Nirenberg MJ, Jenkins BG, Beal MF (2008) Multinuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy for in vivo assessment of mitochondrial dysfunction in Parkinson's disease. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1147:206–220. doi:NYAS1147037[pii]10.1196/annals.1427.037

Herholz K, Carter SF, Jones M (2007) Positron emission tomography imaging in dementia. Br J Radiol 80 Spec No 2:S160–167. doi:80/Special_Issue_2/S160 [pii] 10.1259/bjr/97295129

Hetherington HP, Pan JW, Spencer DD (2002) 1H and 31P spectroscopy and bioenergetics in the lateralization of seizures in temporal lobe epilepsy. J Magn Reson Imaging 16(4):477–483. doi:10.1002/jmri.10177

Hirsch E, Graybiel AM, Agid YA (1988) Melanized dopaminergic neurons are differentially susceptible to degeneration in Parkinson's disease. Nature 334(6180):345–348. doi:10.1038/334345a0

Hoogendijk WJ, Feenstra MG, Botterblom MH, Gilhuis J, Sommer IE, Kamphorst W, Eikelenboom P, Swaab DF (1999) Increased activity of surviving locus ceruleus neurons in Alzheimer's disease. Ann Neurol 45:82–91

Hughes CP, Berg L, Danziger WL, Coben LA, Martin RL (1982) A new clinical scale for the staging of dementia. Br J Psychiatry 140:566–572

Hutchinson PJ, O'Connell MT, Kirkpatrick PJ, Pickard JD (2002) How can we measure substrate, metabolite and neurotransmitter concentrations in the human brain? Physiol Meas 23(2):R75–109

Hyder F (2009) Dynamic imaging of brain function. Methods Mol Biol 489:3–21. doi:10.1007/978-1-59745-543-5_1

Jenkins BG, Chen YI, Kuestermann E, Makris NM, Nguyen TV, Kraft E, Brownell AL, Rosas HD, Kennedy DN, Rosen BR, Koroshetz WJ, Beal MF (1999) An integrated strategy for evaluation of metabolic and oxidative defects in neurodegenerative illness using magnetic resonance techniques. Ann N Y Acad Sci 893:214–242

Jessen F, Traeber F, Freymann N, Maier W, Schild H, Heun R, Block W (2005) A comparative study of the different N-acetylaspartate measures of the medial temporal lobe in Alzheimer's disease. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 20(2–3):178–183

Jessen F, Traeber F, Freymann K, Maier W, Schild HH, Block W (2006) Treatment monitoring and response prediction with proton MR spectroscopy in AD. Neurology 67(3):528–530. doi:10.1212/01.wnl.0000228218.68451.31

Kantarci K, Petersen RC, Boeve BF, Knopman DS, Tang-Wai DF, O'Brien PC, Weigand SD, Edland SD, Smith GE, Ivnik RJ, Ferman TJ, Tangalos EG, Jack CR Jr (2004) 1H MR spectroscopy in common dementias. Neurology 63(8):1393–1398. doi:63/8/1393[pii]

Kantarci K, Weigand SD, Petersen RC, Boeve BF, Knopman DS, Gunter J, Reyes D, Shiung M, O'Brien PC, Smith GE, Ivnik RJ, Tangalos EG, Jack CR Jr (2007) Longitudinal 1H MRS changes in mild cognitive impairment and Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging 28(9):1330–1339. doi:10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2006.06.018

Kantarci K, Knopman DS, Dickson DW, Parisi JE, Whitwell JL, Weigand SD, Josephs KA, Boeve BF, Petersen RC, Jack CR Jr (2008) Alzheimer disease: postmortem neuropathologic correlates of antemortem 1H MR spectroscopy metabolite measurements. Radiology 248(1):210–220. doi:248/1/210[pii]10.1148/radiol.2481071590

Katz-Brull R, Koudinov AR, Degani H (2005) Direct detection of brain acetylcholine synthesis by magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Brain Res 1048(1–2):202–210. doi:S0006-8993(05)00684-0[pii]10.1016/j.brainres.2005.04.080

Kauppinen RA, Williams SR (1994) Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy studies of the brain. Prog Neurobiol 44(1):87–118. doi:0301-0082(94)90058-2[pii]

Keeler J (2005) Understanding NMR spectroscopy. 1st edn, Wiley, Chicester

Kirik D, Breysse N, Bjorklund T, Besret L, Hantraye P (2005) Imaging in cell-based therapy for neurodegenerative diseases. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 32 Suppl 2:S417–434. doi:10.1007/s00259-005-1909-6

Klomp DW, Renema WK, van der Graaf M, de Galan BE, Kentgens AP, Heerschap A (2006) Sensitivity-enhanced 13C MR spectroscopy of the human brain at 3 Tesla. Magn Reson Med 55(2):271–278. doi:10.1002/mrm.20745

Klomp DW, Wijnen JP, Scheenen TW, Heerschap A (2008) Efficient 1H to 31P polarization transfer on a clinical 3T MR system. Magn Reson Med 60(6):1298–1305. doi:10.1002/mrm.21733

Kosik KS, Joachim CL, Selkoe DJ (1986) Microtubule-associated protein tau (tau) is a major antigenic component of paired helical filaments in Alzheimer disease. Proc Nat Acad Sci U S A 83(11):4044–4048

Kreis R, Ernst HW, Ross BD (1993) absolute quantitation of water and metabolites in the human brain. II. Metabolite concentrations J Magn Reson—Series B 102:9–19

Krishnan KR, Charles HC, Doraiswamy PM, Mintzer J, Weisler R, Yu X, Perdomo C, Ieni JR, Rogers S (2003) Randomized, placebo-controlled trial of the effects of donepezil on neuronal markers and hippocampal volumes in Alzheimer's disease. Am J Psychiatry 160(11):2003–2011

Kulak A, Duarte JM, Do KQ, Gruetter R (2010) Neurochemical profile of the developing mouse cortex determined by in vivo 1H NMR spectroscopy at 14.1 T and the effect of recurrent anaesthesia. J Neurochem 115(6):1466–1477. doi:10.1111/j.1471-4159.2010.07051.x

Lei H, Poitry-Yamate C, Preitner F, Thorens B, Gruetter R (2010) Neurochemical profile of the mouse hypothalamus using in vivo 1H MRS at 14.1 T. NMR Biomed 23(6):578–583. doi:10.1002/nbm.1498

Lien YH, Shapiro JI, Chan L (1990) Effects of hypernatremia on organic brain osmoles. J Clin Invest 85(5):1427–1435. doi:10.1172/JCI114587

Lin A, Ross BD, Harris K, Wong W (2005) Efficacy of proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy in neurological diagnosis and neurotherapeutic decision making. NeuroRx 2(2):197–214

Lucetti C, Del Dotto P, Gambaccini G, Ceravolo R, Logi C, Berti C, Rossi G, Bianchi MC, Tosetti M, Murri L, Bonuccelli U (2007) Influences of dopaminergic treatment on motor cortex in Parkinson disease: a MRI/MRS study. Mov Disord 22(15):2170–2175. doi:10.1002/mds.21576

MacKay S, Ezekiel F, Di Sclafani V, Meyerhoff DJ, Gerson J, Norman D, Fein G, Weiner MW (1996) Alzheimer disease and subcortical ischemic vascular dementia: evaluation by combining MR imaging segmentation and H-1 MR spectroscopic imaging. Radiology 198(2):537–545

Mansson S, Johansson E, Magnusson P, Chai CM, Hansson G, Petersson JS, Stahlberg F, Golman K (2006) 13C imaging-a new diagnostic platform. Eur Radiol 16(1):57–67. doi:10.1007/s00330-005-2806-x

Marson DC, Dymek MP, Duke LW, Harrell LE (1997) Subscale validity of the Mattis Dementia Rating Scale. Arch Clin Neuropsychol 12(3):269–275

Martin WR (2007) MR spectroscopy in neurodegenerative disease. Mol Imaging Biol 9(4):196–203. doi:10.1007/s11307-007-0087-2

Masliah E, Alford M, DeTeresa R, Mallory M, Hansen L (1996) Deficient glutamate transport is associated with neurodegeneration in Alzheimer's disease. Ann Neurol 40(5):759–766. doi:10.1002/ana.410400512

Mierisova S, Ala-Korpela M (2001) MR spectroscopy quantitation: a review of frequency domain methods. NMR Biomed 14(4):247–259

Mlynarik V, Cudalbu C, Xin L, Gruetter R (2008a) 1H NMR spectroscopy of rat brain in vivo at 14.1Tesla: improvements in quantification of the neurochemical profile. J Magn Reson 194 (2):163-168. doi:S1090-7807(08)00205-X [pii] 10.1016/j.jmr.2008.06.019

Mlynarik V, Kohler I, Gambarota G, Vaslin A, Clarke PG, Gruetter R (2008b) Quantitative proton spectroscopic imaging of the neurochemical profile in rat brain with microliter resolution at ultra-short echo times. Magn Reson Med 59(1):52–58. doi:10.1002/mrm.21447

Modrego PJ, Fayed N, Pina MA (2005) Conversion from mild cognitive impairment to probable Alzheimer's disease predicted by brain magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Am J Psychiatry 162(4):667–675. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp.162.4.667

Modrego PJ, Pina MA, Fayed N, Diaz M (2006) Changes in metabolite ratios after treatment with rivastigmine in Alzheimer's disease: a nonrandomised controlled trial with magnetic resonance spectroscopy. CNS Drugs 20(10):867–877

Mohanakrishnan P, Fowler AH, Vonsattel JP, Husain MM, Jolles PR, Liem P, Komoroski RA (1995) An in vitro 1H nuclear magnetic resonance study of the temporoparietal cortex of Alzheimer brains. Exp Brain Res 102(3):503–510

Moreno A, Ross BD, Bluml S (2001) Direct determination of the N-acetyl-L-aspartate synthesis rate in the human brain by (13)C MRS and [1-(13)C]glucose infusion. J Neurochem 77(1):347–350

Morris JC, Storandt M, Miller JP, McKeel DW, Price JL, Rubin EH, Berg L (2001) Mild cognitive impairment represents early-stage Alzheimer disease. Archives of neurology 58(3):397–405

Morrish PK, Sawle GV, Brooks DJ (1996) An [18F]dopa-PET and clinical study of the rate of progression in Parkinson's disease. Brain 119(Pt 2):585–591

Nakano I, Hirano A (1984) Parkinson's disease: neuron loss in the nucleus basalis without concomitant Alzheimer's disease. Ann Neurol 15(5):415–418. doi:10.1002/ana.410150503

Naressi A, Couturier C, Devos JM, Janssen M, Mangeat C, de Beer R, Graveron-Demilly D (2001) Java-based graphical user interface for the MRUI quantitation package. Magma 12(2–3):141–152

Novotny EJ, Jr., Fulbright RK, Pearl PL, Gibson KM, Rothman DL (2003) Magnetic resonance spectroscopy of neurotransmitters in human brain. Ann Neurol 54 Suppl 6:S25–31. doi:10.1002/ana.10697

Nyberg P, Nordberg A, Wester P, Winblad B (1983) Dopaminergic deficiency is more pronounced in putamen than in nucleus caudatus in Parkinson's disease. Neurochem Pathology 1(3):193–202. doi:10.1007/BF02834244

Olanow CW, Kordower JH, Freeman TB (1996) Fetal nigral transplantation as a therapy for Parkinson's disease. Trends Neurosci 19(3):102–109

O'Neill J, Schuff N, Marks WJ Jr, Feiwell R, Aminoff MJ, Weiner MW (2002) Quantitative 1H magnetic resonance spectroscopy and MRI of Parkinson's disease. Mov Disord 17(5):917–927. doi:10.1002/mds.10214

Owen AM, James M, Leigh PN, Summers BA, Marsden CD, Quinn NP, Lange KW, Robbins TW (1992) Fronto-striatal cognitive deficits at different stages of Parkinson's disease. Brain 115(Pt 6):1727–1751

Oz G, Terpstra M, Tkac I, Aia P, Lowary J, Tuite PJ, Gruetter R (2006) Proton MRS of the unilateral substantia nigra in the human brain at 4 tesla: detection of high GABA concentrations. Magn Reson Med 55(2):296–301. doi:10.1002/mrm.20761

Perry EK, Curtis M, Dick DJ, Candy JM, Atack JR, Bloxham CA, Blessed G, Fairbairn A, Tomlinson BE, Perry RH (1985) Cholinergic correlates of cognitive impairment in Parkinson's disease: comparisons with Alzheimer's disease. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 48(5):413–421

Petersen RC, Smith GE, Waring SC, Ivnik RJ, Tangalos EG, Kokmen E (1999) Mild cognitive impairment: clinical characterization and outcome. Arch Neurol 56(3):303–308

Pfeilsticker JA, Ollerenshaw JE, Norton VA, Weitekamp DP (2010) A selective 15N-to-(1)H polarization transfer sequence for more sensitive detection of 15N-choline. J Magn Reson 205(1):125–129. doi:S1090-7807(10)00112-6[pii]10.1016/j.jmr.2010.04.010

Pfeuffer J, Tkac I, Provencher SW, Gruetter R (1999) Toward an in vivo neurochemical profile: quantification of 18 metabolites in short-echo-time (1)H NMR spectra of the rat brain. J Magn Reson 141(1):104–120. doi:10.1006/jmre.1999.1895S1090-7807(99)91895-5[pii]

Prichard J, Rothman D, Novotny E, Petroff O, Kuwabara T, Avison M, Howseman A, Hanstock C, Shulman R (1991) Lactate rise detected by 1H NMR in human visual cortex during physiologic stimulation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 88(13):5829–5831

Provencher SW (2001) Automatic quantitation of localized in vivo 1H spectra with LC Model. NMR biomed 14(4):260–264

Przedborski S, Vila M, Jackson-Lewis V (2003) Neurodegeneration: what is it and where are we? J Clin Invest 111(1):3–10. doi:10.1172/JCI17522

Qiao H, Zhang X, Zhu XH, Du F, Chen W (2006) In vivo 31P MRS of human brain at high/ultrahigh fields: a quantitative comparison of NMR detection sensitivity and spectral resolution between 4 T and 7 T. Magn Reson Imaging 24(10):1281–1286. doi:10.1016/j.mri.2006.08.002

Radda GK (1986) The use of NMR spectroscopy for the understanding of disease. Science 233(4764):640–645

Reuter I, Tai YF, Pavese N, Chaudhuri KR, Mason S, Polkey CE, Clough C, Brooks DJ, Barker RA, Piccini P (2008) Long-term clinical and positron emission tomography outcome of fetal striatal transplantation in Huntington's disease. J Neurol, Neurosurg, Psychiatry 79(8):948–951. doi:10.1136/jnnp.2007.142380

Rosen Y, Lenkinski RE (2007) Recent advances in magnetic resonance neurospectroscopy. Neurotherapeutics 4(3):330–345. doi:S1933-7213(07)00082-7[pii]10.1016/j.nurt.2007.04.009

Ross B, Bluml S (2001) Magnetic resonance spectroscopy of the human brain. Anat Rec 265(2):54–84. doi:10.1002/ar.1058[pii]

Ross BD, Hoang TQ, Bluml S, Dubowitz D, Kopyov OV, Jacques DB, Lin A, Seymour K, Tan J (1999) In vivo magnetic resonance spectroscopy of human fetal neural transplants. NMR Biomed 12(4):221–236. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1099-1492(199906)12:4<221:AID-NBM582>3.0.CO;2-Q[pii]

Ross BD, Bhattacharya P, Wagner S, Tran T, Sailasuta N (2010) Hyperpolarized MR imaging: neurologic applications of hyperpolarized metabolism. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol 31(1):24–33. doi:ajnr.A1790[pii]10.3174/ajnr.A1790

Sarkar R, Comment A, Vasos PR, Jannin S, Gruetter R, Bodenhausen G, Hall H, Kirik D, Denisov VP (2009) Proton NMR of (15)N-choline metabolites enhanced by dynamic nuclear polarization. J Am Chem Soc 131(44):16014–16015. doi:10.1021/ja9021304

Sawle GV, Myers R (1993) The role of positron emission tomography in the assessment of human neurotransplantation. Trends Neurosci 16(5):172–176

Schaeffter T, Dahnke H (2008) Magnetic resonance imaging and spectroscopy. Handb Exp Pharmacol (185 Pt 1):75–90. doi:10.1007/978-3-540-72718-7_4

Schott JM, Frost C, MacManus DG, Ibrahim F, Waldman AD, Fox NC (2010) Short echo time proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy in Alzheimer's disease: a longitudinal multiple time point study. Brain J Neurol 133(11):3315–3322. doi:10.1093/brain/awq208

Schulz UG, Blamire AM, Davies P, Styles P, Rothwell PM (2009) Normal cortical energy metabolism in migrainous stroke: A 31P-MR spectroscopy study. Stroke J cereb circ 40(12):3740–3744. doi:10.1161/STROKEAHA.109.558163

Shinno H, Inagaki T, Miyaoka T, Okazaki S, Kawamukai T, Utani E, Inami Y, Horiguchi J (2007) A decrease in N-acetylaspartate and an increase in myoinositol in the anterior cingulate gyrus are associated with behavioral and psychological symptoms in Alzheimer's disease. J Neurol Sci 260(1–2):132–138. doi:10.1016/j.jns.2007.04.017

Shulman RG, Rothman DL, Behar KL, Hyder F (2004) Energetic basis of brain activity: implications for neuroimaging. Trends Neurosci 27(8):489–495. doi:10.1016/j.tins.2004.06.005

Sibson NR, Dhankhar A, Mason GF, Behar KL, Rothman DL, Shulman RG (1997) In vivo 13C NMR measurements of cerebral glutamine synthesis as evidence for glutamate-glutamine cycling. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94(6):2699–2704

Sibson NR, Dhankhar A, Mason GF, Rothman DL, Behar KL, Shulman RG (1998) Stoichiometric coupling of brain glucose metabolism and glutamatergic neuronal activity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 95(1):316–321

Stanley JA, Drost DJ, Williamson PC, Thompson RT (1995) The use of a priori knowledge to quantify short echo in vivo 1H MR spectra. Magn Reson Med 34(1):17–24

Stockler S, Holzbach U, Hanefeld F, Marquardt I, Helms G, Requart M, Hanicke W, Frahm J (1994) Creatine deficiency in the brain: a new, treatable inborn error of metabolism. Pediatr Res 36(3):409–413

Strome EM, Doudet DJ (2007) Animal models of neurodegenerative disease: insights from in vivo imaging studies. Mol Imaging Biol 9(4):186–195. doi:10.1007/s11307-007-0093-4

Summerfield C, Gomez-Anson B, Tolosa E, Mercader JM, Marti MJ, Pastor P, Junque C (2002) Dementia in Parkinson disease: a proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy study. Arch Neurol 59(9):1415–1420. doi:noc10313[pii]

Svensson J, Mansson S, Johansson E, Petersson JS, Olsson LE (2003) Hyperpolarized 13C MR angiography using true FISP. Magn Reson Med 50(2):256–262. doi:10.1002/mrm.10530

Tkac I, Andersen P, Adriany G, Merkle H, Ugurbil K, Gruetter R (2001) In vivo 1H NMR spectroscopy of the human brain at 7 T. Magn Reson Med 46(3):451–456. doi:10.1002/mrm.1213[pii]

Ugurbil K, Brown TR, den Hollander JA, Glynn P, Shulman RG (1978) High-resolution 13C nuclear magnetic resonance studies of glucose metabolism in Escherichia coli. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 75(8):3742–3746

Ugurbil K, Adriany G, Andersen P, Chen W, Gruetter R, Hu X, Merkle H, Kim DS, Kim SG, Strupp J, Zhu XH, Ogawa S (2000) Magnetic resonance studies of brain function and neurochemistry. Annu Rev Biomed Eng 2:633–660. doi:2/1/633[pii]10.1146/annurev.bioeng.2.1.633

Urenjak J, Williams SR, Gadian DG, Noble M (1993) Proton nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy unambiguously identifies different neural cell types. J Neurosci 13(3):981–989

Vandersprenkel JWB, Luyten PR, Vanrijen PC, Tulleken CAF, Denhollander JA (1988) Cerebral lactate detected by regional proton magnetic-resonance spectroscopy in a patient with cerebral infarction. Stroke 19(12):1556–1560

Vanhamme L, Sundin T, Hecke PV, Huffel SV (2001) MR spectroscopy quantitation: a review of time-domain methods. NMR Biomed 14(4):233–246

Waldman AD, Rai GS (2003) The relationship between cognitive impairment and in vivo metabolite ratios in patients with clinical Alzheimer's disease and vascular dementia: a proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy study. Neuroradiol 45(8):507–512. doi:10.1007/s00234-003-1040-y

Whitehouse PJ, Price DL, Struble RG, Clark AW, Coyle JT, Delon MR (1982) Alzheimer's disease and senile dementia: loss of neurons in the basal forebrain. Science 215(4537):1237–1239

Wijnen JP, Scheenen TW, Klomp DW, Heerschap A (2010) 31P magnetic resonance spectroscopic imaging with polarisation transfer of phosphomono- and diesters at 3 T in the human brain: relation with age and spatial differences. NMR Biomed 23(8):968–976. doi:10.1002/nbm.1523

Yang H, Tang X, Tan L, Zeng L, Hu Z (2008) Use of 31P magnetic resonance spectroscopy to study the effect of cortical magnesium and energy metabolism after subarachnoid hemorrhage. Cerebrovasc Dis 26(3):223–230. doi:10.1159/000147448

Zhu XH, Du F, Zhang N, Zhang Y, Lei H, Zhang X, Qiao H, Ugurbil K, Chen W (2009) Advanced in vivo heteronuclear MRS approaches for studying brain bioenergetics driven by mitochondria. Methods Mol Biol 489:317–357. doi:10.1007/978-1-59745-543-5_15

MR Spectroscopic Studies of the Brain in Psychiatric Disorders

Richard J. Maddock and Michael H. Buonocore

Abstract The measurement of brain metabolites with magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS) provides a unique perspective on the brain bases of neuropsychiatric disorders. As a context for interpreting MRS studies of neuropsychiatric disorders, we review the characteristic MRS signals, the metabolic dynamics, and the neurobiological significance of the major brain metabolites that can be measured using clinical MRS systems. These metabolites include *N*-acetylaspartate (NAA), creatine, choline-containing compounds, myo-inositol, glutamate and glutamine, lactate, and gamma-amino butyric acid (GABA). For the major adult neuropsychiatric disorders (schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, major depression, and the anxiety disorders), we highlight the most consistent MRS findings, with an emphasis on those with potential clinical or translational significance. Reduced NAA in specific brain regions in schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, post-traumatic stress disorder, and obsessive–compulsive disorder corroborate findings of reduced brain volumes in the same regions. Future MRS studies may help determine the extent to which the neuronal dysfunction suggested by these findings is reversible in these disorders. Elevated glutamate and glutamine (Glx) in patients with bipolar disorder and reduced Glx in patients with unipolar major depression support models of increased and decreased glutamatergic function, respectively, in those conditions. Reduced phosphomonoesters and intracellular pH in bipolar disorder and elevated dynamic lactate responses in panic disorder are consistent with metabolic models of pathogenesis in those disorders. Preliminary findings of an increased glutamine/glutamate ratio and decreased GABA in patients with schizophrenia are consistent with a model of NMDA hypofunction in that disorder.

R. J. Maddock (✉) · M. H. Buonocore
University of California Davis Medical Center, Sacramento, CA, USA
e-mail: rjmaddock@ucdavis.edu

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 199–251
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2011_197

Published Online: 1 February 2012

As MRS methods continue to improve, future studies may further advance our understanding of the natural history of psychiatric illnesses, improve our ability to test translational models of pathogenesis, clarify therapeutic mechanisms of action, and allow clinical monitoring of the effects of interventions on brain metabolic markers.

Keywords Frontal · Limbic · Cortex · Neural · Glial · Metabolism

Abbreviations

1H-MRS	Proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy
2D	Two dimensional
31P-MRS	Phosphorous magnetic resonance spectroscopy
ADP	Adenosine diphosphate
AGAT	Arginine-glycine aminotransferase
ASICs	Acid sensing ion channels
ASPA	Aspartoacylase
Asp-NAT	Aspartate N-acetyltransferase
ATP	Adenosine triphosphate
CK	Creatine kinase
CNS	Central nervous system
CO2	Carbon dioxide
CSF	Cerebrospinal fluid
CSI	Chemical shift imaging
EAAT1	Excitatory amino acid transporter 1
EAAT2	Excitatory amino acid transporter 2
ECF	Extracellular fluid
EEG	Electroencephalogram
GAA	Guanidinoacetate
GABA	Gamma aminobutyric acid
GABA-T	Gamma aminobutyric acid transaminase
GAD	Glutamic acid decarboxylase
GAD65	65 kilodalton form of GAD
GAD67	67 kilodalton form of GAD
GAMT	Guanidinoacetate methyltransferase
GAT	GABA transporter
Glx	The combined signal from glutamate and glutamine
GPCho	Glycerophosphorylcholine
H+	Hydrogen ions
Hz	Hertz, or cycles per second
Km	Michaelis-Menten constant
MCT	Monocarboxylate transporter
MEGA	Mescher-Garwood
mM	Millimoles
MR	Magnetic resonance

MRI	Magnetic resonance imaging
mRNA	Messenger ribonucleic acid
MRS	Magnetic resonance spectroscopy
MRSI	Magnetic resonance spectroscopic imaging
MRUI	Magnetic Resonance User Interface
ms	Milliseconds
NAA	N-acetylaspartate
NAAG	N-acetylaspartylglutamate
NMDA	N-methyl-D-aspartic acid
OCD	Obsessive compulsive disorder
PCho	Phosphorylcholine
PEPSI	Proton echoplanar spectroscopic imaging
pH	Negative logarithm of hydrogen ion concentration
PMEs	Phosphomonoesters
ppm	Parts per million
PRESS	Point resolved spectroscopic sequence
PTSD	Post traumatic stress disorder
SSRI	Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
TCA	Tricarboxylic acid
TE	Echo time
VGluT	Vesicular glutamate transporter

Contents

1 Introduction

Approximately 60% of the human body is water. Most clinical applications of magnetic resonance phenomena involve creating images based primarily on the magnetic properties of the nuclei of hydrogen atoms in water molecules. In contrast, magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS) provides information based on the magnetic properties of atomic nuclei present in other molecules in addition to water. Generally, this information is in the form of MR spectra, which display a series of resonance signals. The strength of each signal is proportional to the concentration of molecules containing nuclei that resonate at the indicated frequency. Although MR spectra from the atomic nuclei of several different elements in the body can be measured, most MRS studies using clinical MR systems measure spectra from the nucleus of the hydrogen atom. In this review, the MR spectra from hydrogen nuclei are referred to as 1H-MRS. MRS information can also be displayed as low-resolution images [chemical shift imaging (CSI) or magnetic resonance spectroscopic imaging (MRSI)], in which image contrast is based on regional differences in the concentration of a specific molecule.

The substance of this review is divided into two sections. The first section reviews the molecules most commonly studied with MRS in the human brain. It describes the pattern of MRS resonance peaks arising from each such molecule, the pathways for biosynthesis and degradation of each molecule, and reviews current understandings of the neurobiological function and the significance of abnormal concentrations of each molecule. This section is intended to provide the metabolic and neurobiologic background for interpreting MRS observations about each of the major metabolites studied with 1H-MRS in the human brain. In discussing each metabolite, special emphasis is given to metabolic and signaling functions that may be relevant to translational models of psychiatric disorders. The second section reviews and summarizes the scientific literature on brain MRS studies of major psychiatric disorders, including schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, unipolar major depression, and anxiety disorders. In order to provide a context for interpreting these MRS findings, this section also provides an overview of the literature on brain structure and function in each disorder and current concepts of the pathophysiology of each condition. While the MRS literature in psychiatric disorders has grown quite large, our review will attempt to identify the most consistently replicated experimental observations and will give priority to findings that address specific translational questions of theoretical or clinical importance. In addition, a discussion of the physics of MRS and a technical description of MRS methods commonly used in neuropsychiatric research today is provided as supplementary material (link below). The supplementary material assumes a basic familiarity with MR principles and concepts such as longitudinal and transverse magnetization, nutation of magnetization by radiofrequency pulses, and precession of transverse magnetization by the application of the main magnetic field and fields due to the gradient pulses. For the reader equipped with this background, this material offers an in-depth introduction to the unique physical principles

underlying MRS experiments. Supplement: http://ucdirc.ucdavis.edu/CLR327bgt/maddock-buonocore-CTBNsuppl.pdf.

2 Metabolites Observable in Normal Brain

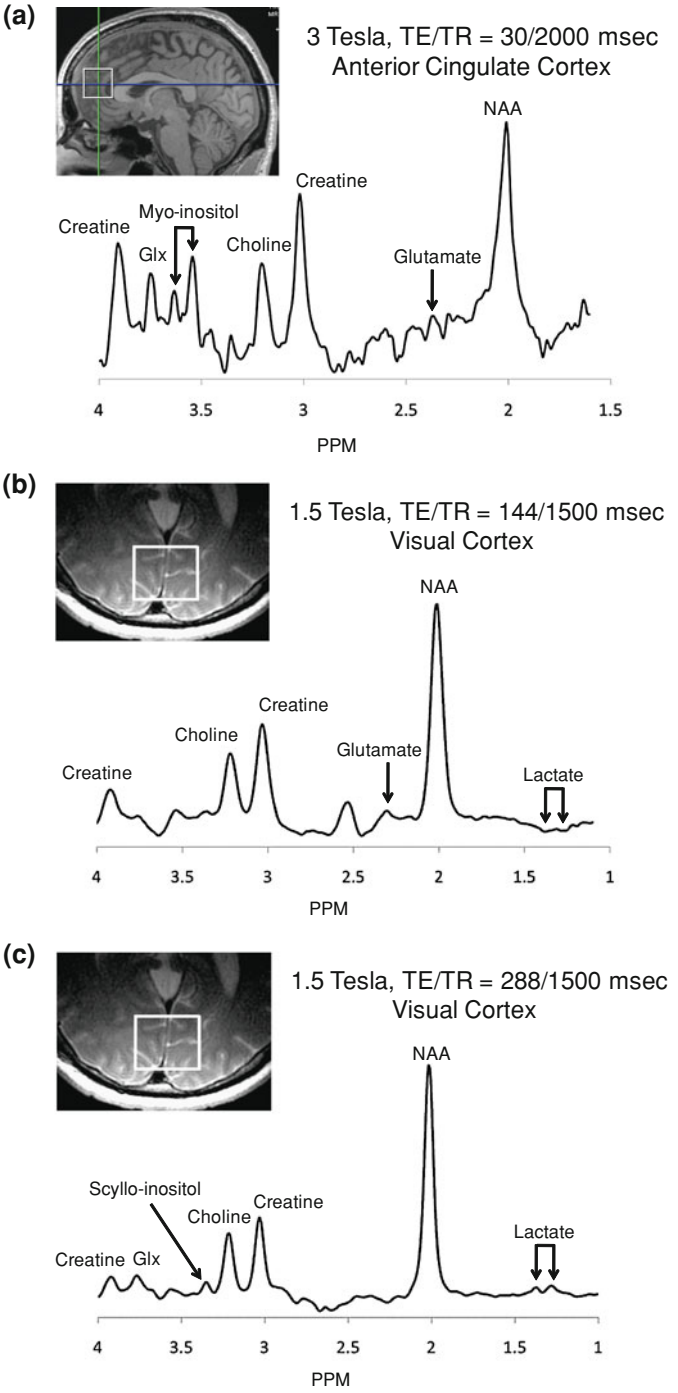
For a brain metabolite to be reliably measured with MRS methods currently available on clinical MRI systems, its concentration must be in the millimolar range and it must be in a freely mobile form (not anchored to a membrane or organelle). Molecules that are not free to rotate rapidly in solution generally do not generate a resonance that can be detected with clinical MRI systems. The brain is a densely cellular organ with a high rate of resting energy consumption. Its primary functions require complex signaling mechanisms for communication both within and between cells. Accordingly, many of the mobile molecules present in sufficiently high concentration to be reliably observed with MRS are involved in energy metabolism, signaling, and cell membrane metabolism. Figure 1 portrays examples of 1H-MRS data acquired from 3 and 1.5 T scanners using several different echo times (TEs). Each of the metabolites commonly studied with 1H-MRS in patients with neuropsychiatric disorders is discussed below in detail.

2.1 NAA

The molecular structure of *N*-acetylaspartate (NAA) is shown in Fig. 2. Other than water, the most prominent peak in the 1H-MRS spectrum of brain tissue is the singlet peak of NAA at about 2.01 ppm (Fig. 1). This large peak arises from the three hydrogen nuclei in the methyl group within the acetyl moiety of NAA. Hydrogen nuclei from the aspartate moiety of NAA give rise to several other much smaller peaks, but only the multiplet with peaks at about 2.49 and 2.67 ppm is generally visible in in vivo spectra (Govindaraju et al. 2000).

NAA is often considered to be a marker of the density of viable neuronal tissue in the brain region under study (Meyerhoff et al. 1993). However, there is accumulating evidence that NAA levels also reflect reversible changes in neuronal health (Clark 1998; Gasparovic et al. 2001; Demougeot et al. 2004). For example, reduced NAA levels are observed in the context of acute brain injury or illness, or chronic methamphetamine abuse. However, a normalization of NAA levels can be observed following a period of recovery, treatment, or extended abstinence from drug abuse (De Stefano et al. 1995; Kalra et al. 1998; Narayanan et al. 2001; Salo et al. 2010; Yoon et al. 2010b). Thus, reduced NAA is more accurately interpreted as reflecting *either* permanent loss *or* reversible dysfunction of neuronal tissue (Moffett et al. 2007).

NAA is synthesized from aspartate and acetyl-coenzyme A in a reaction catalyzed by aspartate *N*-acetyltransferase (Asp-NAT) (Moffett et al. 2007;


(a)
3 Tesla, TE/TR = 30/2000 msec
Anterior Cingulate Cortex
NAA
Creatine
Myo-inositol
Creatine
Glx
Choline
Glutamate
4
3.5
3
2.5
2
1.5
PPM
(b)
1.5 Tesla, TE/TR = 144/1500 msec
Visual Cortex
NAA
Creatine
Choline
Creatine
Glutamate
Lactate
4
3.5
3
2.5
2
1.5
1
PPM
(c)
1.5 Tesla, TE/TR = 288/1500 msec
Visual Cortex
NAA
Scyllo-inositol
Choline
Creatine
Lactate
Creatine
Glx
4
3.5
3
2.5
2
1.5
1
PPM

◀**Fig. 1** Representative 1H-MRS spectra acquired from human brain using three different TEs are shown. The spectrum in (**a**) was acquired at TE = 30 ms from the anterior cingulate cortex at 3 Tesla. The spectra in (**b** and **c**) were acquired at TE = 144 and 288 ms respectively from the primary visual cortex at 1.5 Tesla. Selected metabolite peaks are indicated. Note that the ppm value on the horizontal axis increases to the left, not the right. Spectral peaks that appear on the *right side* of the graph arise from nuclei that are relatively more shielded from the main magnetic field by nearby electrons. Spectral peaks on the *left side* of the graph arise from relatively less shielded nuclei (discussed in Supplement Sect. 4.2)

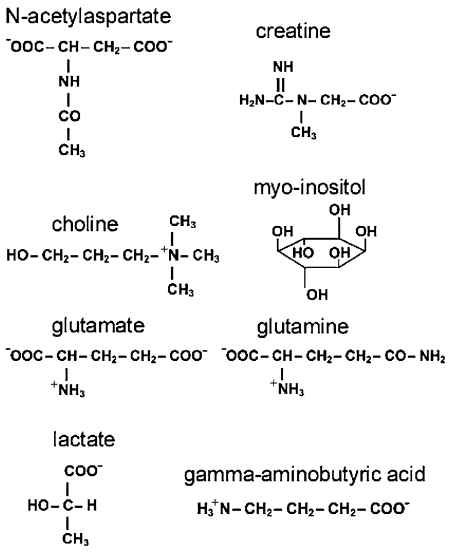


Fig. 2 The molecular structures of eight brain metabolites commonly studied with 1H-MRS are shown

Ariyannur et al. 2010). There is not yet a consensus about the subcellular localization of NAA synthesis or about the physiological functions of NAA. However, there is general agreement that NAA is synthesized predominantly in neurons, and that its substrates are found together primarily within mitochondria. Therefore, it is likely that most NAA is synthesized in neuronal mitochondria, although there may be some Asp-NAT and NAA synthesis in neuronal cytoplasm. Many investigations have shown that NAA synthesis is coupled to the capacity of neuronal mitochondria for oxidative metabolism and ATP synthesis (Bates et al. 1996; Clark 1998; Moffett et al. 2007). Animal studies of experimental brain trauma show that the acute decrease and later recovery of ATP and other indicators of mitochondrial energy metabolism were temporally correlated with changes in NAA levels (Gasparovic et al. 2001; Signoretti et al. 2010). This evidence supports the use of brain 1H-MRS NAA levels as a marker for the integrity and functional capacity of neuronal mitochondria.

Aspartoacylase (ASPA) is the enzyme that catalyzes the hydrolysis of NAA to aspartate and acetate in human brain (Bitto et al. 2007). ASPA is found predominantly in oligodendrocytes, the glial cells that constitute the myelin sheaths around axons. The important role of acetate in the synthesis of myelin and converging evidence from a wide range of studies support the hypothesis that one

important function of NAA is to transport acetate from neuronal mitochondria to oligodendrocytes for use in myelin synthesis (Moffett et al. 2007). NAA may also contribute to other aspects of oligodendrocyte lipid and energy metabolism. Several other proposed neurobiological functions of NAA have been the subject of experimental study, including participation in an alternate pathway of neuronal mitochondrial respiration in which glutamine substitutes for glucose, providing a reservoir for glutamate, functioning as an organic osmolyte for regulating cell volume, and serving as an anion to ameliorate the "anion deficit" within neurons (Clark et al. 2006; Moffett et al. 2007).

NAA is an immediate precursor for the biosynthesis of the neuronal dipeptide *N*-actelyaspartylglutamate (NAAG). NAAG is the most highly concentrated peptide in the human brain and may serve a cell-signaling function (Neale et al. 2000). It generates a small peak in the brain 1H-MRS spectrum that is difficult to distinguish from the NAA peak (Edden et al. 2007). Measures of the percent contribution of NAAG to the combined signal from NAA and NAAG range from about 9% in gray matter to about 30% in white matter (Pouwels and Frahm 1997; Edden et al. 2007). NAAG is synthesized in neurons from NAA and glutamate. It is stored in vesicles and released from neurons by a calcium-dependent mechanism, and it is hydrolyzed to glutamate and NAA by the enzyme NAAG peptidase, which resides on the extracellular surface of astrocytes (Baslow 2007; Chopra et al. 2009). Considerable evidence suggests that NAAG interacts with group II metabotropic glutamate receptors prior to hydrolysis. However, the nature and significance of this interaction is not yet clear (Neale et al. 2000; Chopra et al. 2009).

In summary, the NAA singlet at 2.02 ppm is the most prominent peak in normal brain 1H-MRS spectra. In most cases, this NAA signal represents "total NAA," as it includes the combined signals from both NAA and NAAG. The 1H-MRS signal arising from the total pool of NAA + NAAG can be interpreted as a marker for the health, viability and/or number of neurons, and it may more specifically reflect the functional capacity of neuronal mitochondria.

2.2 Creatine

Together, creatine and phosphocreatine give rise to a prominent singlet peak at approximately 3.03 ppm (Fig. 1). This peak arises from the three hydrogen nuclei in the methyl group of the creatine moiety (Fig. 2). Another smaller but distinct peak is evident at approximately 3.91 ppm. This singlet peak arises from the methylene hydrogen nuclei of the creatine moiety (Govindaraju et al. 2000). In general, creatine and phosphocreatine cannot be reliably distinguished by 1H-MRS. In this review, the term "creatine" used in the context of 1H-MRS measurements refers to the combined signal from creatine and phosphocreatine.

Creatine and phosphocreatine are present in both gray matter and white matter, and in all of the major cell types of brain parenchyma, including neurons, astrocytes, and oligodendrocytes. The pool of creatine in the body is maintained by a

combination of dietary uptake and endogenous synthesis. Although it was previously thought that the brain's supply of creatine was primarily maintained by uptake from the blood, it now appears that local synthesis within the brain may contribute substantially to its supply (Andres et al. 2008; Beard and Braissant 2010). Two enzymes are required for the synthesis of creatine. Arginine–glycine aminotransferase (AGAT) generates ornithine and guanidinoacetate (GAA), the immediate precursor of creatine. GAA is then methylated by guanidinoacetate methyltransferase (GAMT) to produce creatine. AGAT and GAMT are widely expressed throughout the brain, but it appears that they are not often co-expressed in the same cells. This suggests that the transporter for GAA and creatine is also required for the final synthesis and distribution of creatine throughout the brain (Braissant et al. 2010). Some studies have found high levels of GAMT in glial cells and suggest that the final step in creatine synthesis may occur mainly in glia. However, this and other questions regarding the precise compartmentation of creatine synthesis and transport remain unresolved (Andres et al. 2008; Beard and Braissant 2010).

Creatine has an essential role in CNS energy homeostasis. In the presence of ATP, creatine can be phosphorylated by the enzyme creatine kinase (CK). This reaction is reversible, so that ATP can be regenerated from phosphocreatine, in the presence of ADP. The creatine/phosphocreatine system has two essential functions in brain energetics. It provides a buffer, or storage mechanism, for high-energy phosphate bonds generated in subcellular regions where ATP production is high, and it provides a means for transport of high-energy phosphate bonds from subcellular regions of net energy production to subcellular regions of net energy consumption. Unlike ATP and ADP, phosphocreatine and creatine can diffuse rapidly across subcellular regions (Andres et al. 2008). This relatively rapid rate of diffusion makes the creatine/phosphocreatine system an efficient mechanism for shuttling high-energy phosphate bonds between subcellular compartments.

In addition to its central role in energetics, creatine appears to have important functions in other fundamental aspects of cellular metabolism in brain parenchyma. In combination with the CK isoform expressed in brain mitochondria, creatine has an important antiapoptotic effect by stabilizing mitochondrial membrane pores (Dolder et al. 2003). Creatine also helps suppress free radical (reactive oxygen species) formation within mitochondria by facilitating the recycling of ADP during periods of increased glucose utilization (Meyer et al. 2006). Furthermore, creatine appears to be released from neurons by a depolarization-induced, calcium-dependent mechanism (Almeida et al. 2006) suggesting that it functions as a neuromodulator. In this regard, there have been reports that creatine may act as a partial agonist at the GABA-A receptor (Koga et al. 2005; Almeida et al. 2006) and may interact with the NMDA receptor (Royes et al. 2008).

The 1H-MRS signal attributable to creatine and phosphocreatine (total creatine) is generally interpreted as a measure of the global health of brain parenchyma, with reductions indicative of impairment of function or integrity. While a measurement of the ratio of phosphocreatine to creatine would provide information about the current status of energy metabolism and high-energy phosphate bonds in the brain, this ratio generally cannot be reliably measured by 1H-MRS alone, but

requires additional measurements with phosphorous MRS (31P-MRS). In studies of patients with multiple sclerosis, increased creatine (as observed, for example, in normal-appearing white matter) has been interpreted as an indication of the proliferation of astrocytes (Caramanos et al. 2005). This interpretation is supported, in part, by in vitro studies of cultured neuronal and glial cells suggesting that the concentration of creatine in astrocytes is higher than in neurons (Urenjak et al. 1993; Bhakoo et al. 1996). However, a subsequent in vitro study did not confirm this (Griffin et al. 2002) and uncertainty remains about the relative concentration of creatine in different brain cell types.

In general, the concentration of total creatine is relatively similar throughout the brain and tends to be stable over time in the absence of major pathology. For these reasons, the 1H-MRS signal from creatine is commonly used as an "internal standard" to normalize the signals from other metabolites measured within the same voxel. There are several advantages of this approach. It partially corrects for some of the variation in metabolite signal intensity that is due to the location of the voxel, such as the proportion of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) within the voxel and the sensitivity of the coil to signal from a specific location within the brain. The main disadvantage of this approach is that the creatine signal may increase or decrease in association with a pathologic condition, as has been demonstrated for ischemic stroke and brain trauma (Lei et al. 2009; Signoretti et al. 2010).

In summary, the combined signals from creatine and phosphocreatine give rise to singlet peaks at 3.03 and 3.91 in 1H-MRS spectra. Creatine and phosphocreatine are present in all types of brain cells. The total creatine signal is relatively similar across brain regions and reflects the global health of the underlying tissue. Creatine signal intensity is often used for within-voxel normalization of the signals arising from other metabolites of interest.

2.3 Choline-Containing Compounds

Many molecular compounds in the brain contain a choline moiety. The nine hydrogen nuclei associated with the trimethylammonium group within the choline moiety of choline-containing compounds (Fig. 2) give rise to a prominent singlet peak at about 3.21 ppm (Fig. 1) (Govindaraju et al. 2000). In brain, phosphorylcholine (PCho) and glycerophosphorylcholine (GPCho) are the primary sources of this resonance peak. Choline-containing phospholipids in myelin and cell membranes (primarily phosphotidylcholine) are present in brain parenchyma in higher concentration than PCho and GPCho (Boulanger et al. 2000). However, these compounds are not freely mobile and therefore cannot generate a measurable magnetic resonance signal during a 1H-MRS acquisition. Thus, these choline-containing phospholipids do not directly contribute to the choline resonance at 3.21 ppm. Free choline, acetylcholine, and cytidine diphosphate choline are mobile choline-containing compounds present at much lower concentrations than PCho and GPCho (Boulanger et al. 2000). They contribute directly, but to a

minor degree, to the choline peak at about 3.21 ppm. Betaine is produced by the oxidation of choline. Like choline, betaine contains nine hydrogen nuclei within a trimethylammonium group. Betaine makes a minor contribution to the total choline signal. Phosphorylethanolamine, another precursor of membrane phospholipids, also contributes in a minor way to the choline signal at 3.21 ppm.

Although 1H-MRS does not directly measure the concentration of membrane phospholipids, the observed choline peak is influenced by both the density of cell membranes and the rate of cell membrane and myelin turnover. PCho is a precursor of the synthesis of membrane phospholipids. Both GPCho and, to a lesser extent, PCho are generated during the breakdown of membrane phospholipids. Thus, an increase in either the synthesis or the breakdown of membrane phospholipids can be associated with an increase in the concentrations of PCho and/or GPCho (Geddes et al. 1997; Boulanger et al. 2000). For this reason, increases in the breakdown or turnover rate of membrane or myelin phospholipids are believed to be associated with increases in the 1H-MRS choline signal. Furthermore, at a constant rate of turnover of phospholipids, the concentrations of PCho and GPCho vary in proportion to the density of cell membranes within the voxel (Yue et al. 2009). Thus, the 1H-MRS choline signal is often interpreted as a measure of overall cell density and/or the rate of membrane turnover. Increased choline signal can also result from the accumulation of myelin breakdown products, as occurs during active demyelination.

2.4 Myo-Inositol

Inositol is a six-carbon ring sugar with an alcohol group attached to each carbon (a six-fold alcohol of cyclohexane) (Fig. 2). Myo-inositol is the most abundant stereoisomer of inositol in mammalian systems. In the brain, about 90% of the inositol is myo-inositol, less than 10% is scyllo-inositol, and trace amounts of other stereoisomers are also present (Govindaraju et al. 2000; Fisher et al. 2002). The most prominent 1H-MRS signal from myo-inositol is a pair of multiplet peaks arising at about 3.52 and 3.61 ppm (Fig. 1a). The myo-inositol peaks are generally not observable in long TE 1H-MRS acquisitions (Fig. 1b, c). The scyllo-inositol singlet peak is variably present at about 3.3 ppm. It can often be observed when using a long TE (Fig. 1c).

The myo-inositol content of brain cells is governed by several physiological mechanisms, including the recycling of inositol phosphate second messengers, de novo synthesis of inositol from glucose, carrier-mediated energy-coupled transport of inositol into cells against a concentration gradient, and efflux of inositol out of cells during hypotonic stress as part of cell volume regulation (Fisher et al. 2002). In healthy brain tissue under normal osmotic conditions, the former two mechanisms predominate (Williams et al. 2002). Myo-inositol is synthesized from glucose-6-phosphate in two steps. The final step is catalyzed by inositol monophosphatase. This same enzyme is responsible for generating free myo-inositol during the recycling of

inositol phosphate second messengers. Free inositol is required to regenerate phosphotidylinositol, a key component of the second messenger system. Interestingly, inositol monophosphatase is inhibited by lithium. Indeed lithium, valproate and carbamazepine all alter inositol phosphate metabolism to cause a reduction in intraneuronal free inositol levels (Williams et al. 2002).

In addition to its key role as a precursor for the regeneration of phosphotidylinositol in the inositol phosphate second messenger system, myo-inositol has other important functions in the brain. Free myo-inositol serves as a "non-perturbing" osmolyte that is normally maintained at a manyfold higher concentration within brain cells than in CSF (>25:1) or blood (>50:1). In response to hypotonic stress (e.g. hyponatremia), myo-inositol can efflux from brain cells (or enter brain cells in the case of hypertonic stress) to preserve cell volume without altering the function of intracellular processes (Fisher et al. 2002). Additionally, myo-inositol, similar to choline, is an intermediate in the metabolism of membrane and myelin phospholipids.

Although the myo-inositol signal in brain 1H-MRS is often considered to be a glial marker, its distribution across brain cell types is more complex than is suggested by that characterization. Currently, the extent to which myo-inositol may be preferentially concentrated within neuronal or glial cell types remains uncertain (Fisher et al. 2002). One of the strongest assertions of an exclusively glial source for the 1H-MRS myo-inositol signal comes from a 1H-MRS study of cultured brain cells that showed a high concentration of myo-inositol in astrocytes and negligible myo-inositol in neurons (Brand et al. 1993). The conclusions of this study are widely cited in support of the characterization of myo-inositol as a glial marker. Thus, it is worthwhile to examine their limitations. The cultured neurons studied were in an embryonic stage of development, as evidenced by the observation they contained only trace amounts of NAA. In contrast, the cultured astrocytes studied were in a more mature stage of development and exhibited a spectral pattern more similar to in vivo brain 1H-MRS studies (more prominent Cr and Choline peaks than observed in the embryonic neurons). Neither type of cultured cell (neurons or astrocytes) were able to synthesize myo-inositol from glucose (Brand et al. 1993), although this is known to occur in mature neurons (Schmidt et al. 2005). Since the cultured cells could not synthesize it, myo-inositol was added to the culture medium. Thus, the Brand et al. results reflect the relative uptake of myo-inositol into mature astrocytes compared to its uptake into embryonic neurons in a cell culture environment. Mature neurons and glia are both known to express myo-inositol transport proteins. Two such transporters have been described. One is present in both cell types and the other is observed only in astrocytes. Under acidic conditions, the former is less active while the exclusively astrocytic transporter is more active (Fisher et al. 2002). Acidic conditions (10% CO_2) in the culture media may have favored preferential uptake of myo-inositol by the cultured astrocytes in the Brand et al. experiment. The comparison of relatively immature neurons to relatively mature astrocytes, the absence of normal neuronal myo-inositol synthesis, and cell culture conditions favoring selective myo-inositol uptake by astrocytes limit the generalizability of their findings. In their systematic

review, Fisher et al. (2002) summarized findings from seven prior experiments on neuronal cells and five prior experiments on glial cells. There was no significant difference in the estimated myo-inositol concentrations in glia compared to neurons, but the median estimated concentration was 38% lower in the neuronal cells than in the glial cells.

Although myo-inositol may not be a specific glial marker, clinical observations often support an association between elevated 1H-MRS myo-inositol signal and gliosis in neurodegenerative disorders (e.g. multiple sclerosis and Alzheimer's disease) (Bitsch et al. 1999; Yang et al. 2010). However, elevated inositol is found in a range of pathological conditions not involving gliosis, including Down's syndrome, increased myelin breakdown, and hypertonic stress (Fisher et al. 2002). It is important to note that high concentrations of myo-inositol are observed in some types of cultured neurons, and that myo-inositol is actively taken up into most types of mature brain cells, including neurons and glia (Fisher et al. 2002). Furthermore, neurons can both synthesize inositol from glucose and regenerate it during the recycling of inositol phosphates (Schmidt et al. 2005), Thus, there is little evidence to support the characterization of myo-inositol as a specific glial marker, and increases or decreases in the brain inositol 1H-MRS signal must be interpreted in the context of the specific condition under study.

2.5 Glutamate and Glutamine

The amino acid neurotransmitter glutamate is one of the most abundant mobile metabolites present in the brain, being second only to NAA in concentration (Govindaraju et al. 2000). However, it lacks methyl groups, and the J-coupled signals from its methylene and methine groups (Fig. 2) produce broad complex peaks. For these reasons, glutamate does not generate a prominent single peak in the 1H-MRS spectrum of the brain. A multiplet peak centered at about 2.34 ppm arises from the methylene protons near the carboxy terminal of glutamate and is often the most readily recognized glutamate peak in brain 1H-MRS spectra (Fig. 1). A second methylene multiplet centered at about 2.08 ppm is typically obscured by the large NAA peak at 2.01 ppm. A third complex glutamate peak arises from its methine proton at about 3.74 ppm (Fig. 1) (Govindaraju et al. 2000).

These signals from glutamate are difficult to distinguish from the analogous peaks arising from glutamine at about 2.44, 2.12, and 3.75 ppm. The concentration of brain glutamine is estimated to be about 40% to 60% of the concentration of glutamate (Govindaraju et al. 2000; Jensen et al. 2009), thus signal arising from glutamine often confounds measures of glutamate. Hancu recently compared a range of specialized 1H-MRS methods for measuring brain glutamate on a 3 T scanner. A conventional short TE point resolved spectroscopic sequence (PRESS) and the specialized Carr-Purcell PRESS sequence provided measurements with the best repeatability. J-resolved PRESS was the most accurate for measuring absolute values of glutamate, but at the cost of reduced repeatability (Hancu 2009)

(see Sects. 4.3.1, and 4.5.3 of the Supplement for discussions of PRESS and J-resolved MRS techniques). Unless optimized 1H-MRS methods are used (e.g. a high-field scanner with a short echo time and long acquisition time, or a specialized J-editing or J-resolved sequence), the measurements obtained are generally considered to reflect the combined signal from glutamate and glutamine, with minor contributions from glutathione and GABA. This combined signal measurement is often abbreviated as "Glx."

In the resting awake state, up to 20% of brain glucose metabolism is directed toward the de novo synthesis of glutamate, which occurs primarily in astrocytes (Hertz 2006). Pyruvate carboxylase, which is located exclusively in glial cells (probably within their mitochondria), has a key role in directing pyruvate toward de novo glutamate synthesis. Thus astrocytes, unlike glutamatergic neurons, are capable of net synthesis of glutamate without depletion of tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle intermediates (Hertz 2004; Waagepetersen et al. 2007). The TCA cycle intermediate, alpha ketoglutarate, is the immediate precursor of glutamate via exchange reactions such as transamination (by aspartate aminotransferase) and possibly by reductive amination (by glutamate dehydrogenase). Once synthesized in astrocytes, some glutamate are used as a metabolic intermediate and some are directed toward the synthesis of glutathione, a major intracellular antioxidant in the brain that is present in much higher concentrations in glia than in neurons (Janaky et al. 2007). However, most astrocytic glutamate is converted to glutamine by the astrocyte-specific enzyme, glutamine synthase, and released for uptake into glutamatergic neurons. These neurons then convert glutamine back to glutamate (via phosphate-activated glutaminase) (Waagepetersen et al. 2007). In neurons, glutamate has both metabolic and neurotransmitter functions. Glutamate can reenter the TCA cycle for oxidative energy production or be used in the synthesis of other amino acids, including GABA. Glutamate is the most abundant excitatory neurotransmitter in the brain. For use in neurotransmission, it is first transported into synaptic vesicles, where concentrations are about 10-fold higher than whole-brain glutamate concentrations. Vesicular glutamate can then be exocytotically released into the synaptic cleft during neurotransmission. The neurotransmitter action of glutamate is quickly terminated by its rapid uptake from the synaptic zone into astrocytes. Most of the glutamate taken up by astrocytes reenters the glutamate–glutamine cycle to be returned to neurons and reused in neurotransmission (Waagepetersen et al. 2007). However, some glutamate is directed toward other metabolic fates and is lost from this cycle, necessitating the continuous de novo synthesis of glutamate in astrocytes. Possible additional components of the cycling of glutamate and glutamine between neurons and astrocytes are under investigation (Maciejewski and Rothman 2008). Recent studies suggest that astrocytes also store glutamate in vesicles for exocytotic release in the service of intercellular communication (Hertz 2006; Waagepetersen et al. 2007).

Current models of the compartmentation of brain glutamate metabolism suggest a time-limited segregation into two cellular pools: a smaller astrocytic pool (comprising about 20% of total glutamate), in which glutamate is rapidly converted to glutamine, and a larger neuronal pool (about 80% of total glutamate),

which has a slower turnover time (Waagepetersen et al. 2007). Glutamate is further compartmentalized into cytosolic, mitochondrial, and vesicular subcellular compartments. It is important to note that only about 80% of glutamate in brain tissue appears to be observable by 1H-MRS. It is possible that low MRS visibility of glutamate in the vesicular compartment accounts for this finding (Kauppinen and Williams 1991). A small amount of glutamate is present in the extracellular fluid (ECF) of the brain. However, elevated ECF concentrations of glutamate can have excitotoxic effects. Because of the rapid clearance of glutamate from the ECF, primarily by astrocytes, ECF glutamate concentration in healthy brain is maintained three to four orders of magnitude less than whole-brain concentrations (Waagepetersen et al. 2007). Some studies suggest that most glutamate observable by MRS is in rapid exchange across compartments on a timescale of seconds to minutes (Rothman et al. 2003; Hertz 2004). If this is so, then glutamate as measured over several minutes by MRS may represent a single, integrated pool of the metabolite in ongoing exchange between neuronal and glial cytoplasm.

Glutamine's primary role in the brain is as a non-neuroactive intermediate in the recycling of amino acid neurotransmitters, most abundantly glutamate and GABA. In addition, it has an important role in the regulation of brain ammonia metabolism (Waagepetersen et al. 2007). However, the synthesis and catabolism of brain glutamine are strictly yoked to glutamate metabolism. All brain glutamine synthesis is via glutamate and takes place within astrocytes. Brain glutamine participates in no metabolic pathways other than via its initial conversion back to glutamate. Thus, the 1H-MRS measure of Glx represents a good approximation of the total glutamate–glutamine pool available for the integrated metabolic and neurotransmitter functions of glutamate in the brain (Rothman et al. 2003; Yuksel and Ongur 2010).

Glutamate is one of several brain metabolites that exhibit acute changes in MRS signal strength in response to sensory, cognitive, or pharmacological manipulations. The general paradigm of measuring dynamic changes in brain metabolites in response to behavioral or drug conditions is known as dynamic MRS or functional MRS. An extensive animal literature demonstrates that changes in local cortical glutamate and glutamine concentrations are activity dependent, meaning that they increase or decrease according to the degree of local neural activity (Carder and Hendry 1994; Arckens et al. 2000; Qu et al. 2003; Hertz 2004). Dynamic 1H-MRS studies in normal human volunteers have similarly found local activity-dependent increases in cortical glutamate. Mullins et al. (2005) observed a 9% increase in glutamate in the anterior cingulate cortex during cold pressor pain. Gussaw et al. (2010) subsequently showed an 18% increase in anterior insular cortex glutamate during thermal pain. Using a 7 T system, Mangia et al. (2007) reported a small but statistically significant increase in glutamate in the visual cortex while subjects viewed a flickering checkerboard stimulus. Our laboratory has observed a similar significant 5% increase in visual cortex Glx during visual stimulation (Maddock et al., unpublished data). We recently found that vigorous aerobic exercise, which is known to cause a widespread brain metabolic activation (Fukuyama et al. 1997; Delp et al. 2001), leads to an 18% increase in Glx in the visual cortex (Maddock et al. 2011).

1H-MRS measures of glutamate or Glx arise from both neuronal and glial cells and primarily reflect cytoplasmic concentrations. Measures of glutamate or Glx can provide information about both activity-dependent changes in the size of the MRS-visible metabolite pool and about the enduring integrity of glutaminergic neurons and astrocytes that sustain this pool of glutamate and glutamine. Brain MRS measures of glutamate, glutamine, and Glx may have particular value in testing translational hypotheses about dysfunction of glutamatergic systems in neuropsychiatric disorders.

2.6 GABA

Gamma aminobutyric acid (GABA) is the most abundant inhibitory neurotransmitter in the brain. It is present in brain parenchyma at about 15% to 20% of the concentration of glutamate (Govindaraju et al. 2000). GABA contains three methylene groups (Fig. 2), each of which gives rise to a complex signal in 1H-MRS spectra. A GABA multiplet peak at about 3.01 ppm is normally obscured by the creatine singlet at 3.03 ppm. A GABA triplet at about 2.28 ppm is partially overlapped by the glutamate multiplet centered at about 2.34 ppm. A GABA multiplet peak at 1.89 ppm is obscured by the large NAA singlet centered at 2.01 ppm. Because of their extensive overlap with larger signals from other metabolites, none of the three GABA peaks can be reliably distinguished or quantified with conventional brain 1H-MRS acquisitions at 1.5 or 3.0 T field strengths. The GABA resonance at 2.28 may contribute in a small way to the total Glx signal measured with conventional acquisitions. However, specialized pulse sequences including J-resolved and J-difference editing sequences can render some or all of the GABA peaks visible and isolate them from larger overlapping signals, even when used on clinical MRI systems. Perhaps the most commonly used sequence for measuring GABA is the MEGA-PRESS J-difference editing sequence (Mescher et al. 1998). Figure 3 shows the broad GABA peak at about 3.01 ppm after the creatine resonance has been removed by the MEGA-PRESS J-difference editing method.

GABA is synthesized from glutamate by the enzyme glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD), a reaction that occurs almost exclusively in GABAergic neurons. After it is released during neurotransmission, GABA is taken up by both GABAergic neurons and by astrocytes. Current evidence suggests that neuronal reuptake of GABA predominates and that it occurs primarily in the nerve terminal region (Waagepetersen et al. 2007). After reuptake into neurons, GABA either reenters synaptic vesicles for reuse in neurotransmission, or it is degraded by the mitochondrial enzyme GABA transaminase (GABA-T) and enters the TCA cycle, from which it can be recycled to glutamate and then GABA again. This latter cycle is known as the GABA shunt. The fraction of GABA that is taken up by astrocytes is also metabolized via the GABA shunt, but the resulting glutamate is converted to glutamine and released into the ECF. The glutamine is taken up by either

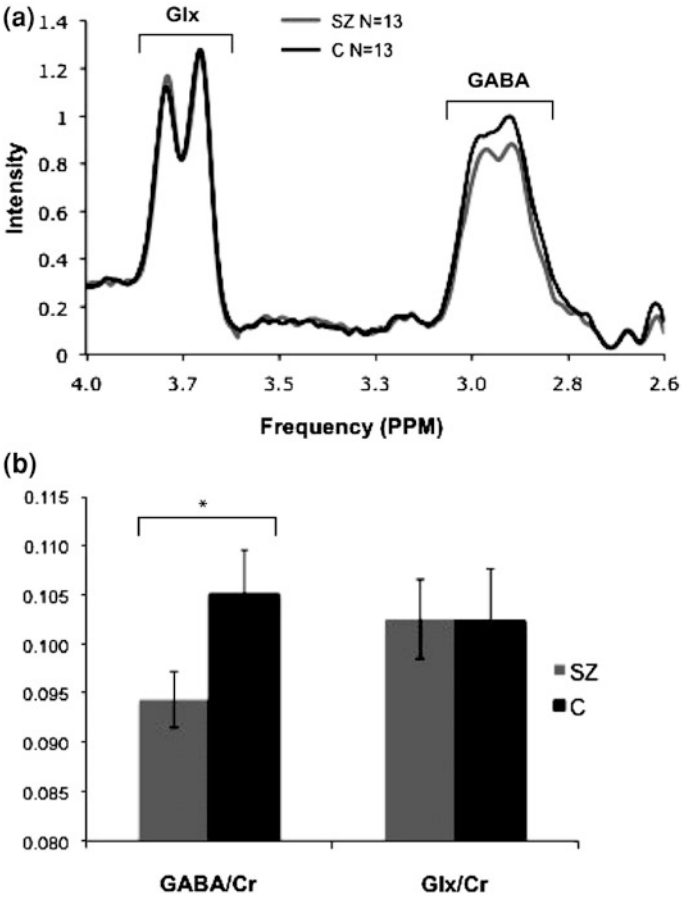


Fig. 3 **a** shows peaks for GABA and Glx from 1H-MRS difference spectra acquired using the MEGA-PRESS pulse sequence for GABA editing (TE = 68 ms) on a 3 Tesla system. The mean difference spectra are shown for 13 schizophrenia patients and 13 healthy comparison subjects. **b** illustrates the finding of significantly lower GABA signal in the patient group ($p<.05$ two-tailed), but no group difference in the Glx signal

glutamatergic or GABAergic neurons, where it either enters energy metabolism or serves as the substrate for neurotransmitter synthesis (Waagepetersen et al. 2007). De novo synthesis of GABA depends on both the anaplerotic production of glutamate by astrocytes, and the conversion of glutamate to GABA by GABAergic neurons (Hertz 2004).

There appear to be at least two distinct pools of GABA in GABAergic neurons, a large cytoplasmic pool and a smaller vesicular pool. Furthermore, two forms of the GABA synthetic enzyme GAD are known, GAD67 and GAD65. GAD67 is widely distributed throughout the cytoplasm and nerve terminals of GABAergic

neurons, and it contributes to the generation of both the cytoplasmic and the vesicular pools of GABA. In contrast, GAD65 is localized to nerve terminals, and it contributes only to the vesicular pool of GABA. Under basal conditions, most GABA are synthesized by GAD67. However, the activity of GAD65 can be upregulated on demand to increase GABA in the vesicular pool (Waagepetersen et al. 2007; Dericioglu et al. 2008).

While it appears that vesicular glutamate may not be detectable by MRS (Kauppinen and Williams 1991), whether or to what extent the vesicular pool of GABA can be detected by MRS is not known. Thus, the 1H-MRS GABA signal arises either mostly or almost entirely from the large cytoplasmic GABA pool in GABAergic neurons under basal conditions. The functional significance of the considerable cytoplasmic store of GABA is not known. It may have metabolic functions or it may act as a reservoir from which to replenish vesicular stores of GABA. However, some evidence suggests that cytoplasmic GABA serves as an important source for "extrasynaptic" GABA release via the neuronal GABA transporter (GAT) from cell membrane regions not associated with synaptic structures or vesicles (Wu et al. 2007; Dericioglu et al. 2008). Extrasynaptic GABA mediates a tonic inhibitory process and plays a key role in regulating both tonic and phasic excitability in GABAergic circuits (Farrant and Nusser 2005; Wu et al. 2007).

Neurophysiological, behavioral, and pharmacological studies indicate that cortical GABA content as measured in human volunteers by 1H-MRS is predictive of the functional status of GABA-mediated processes. It is generally agreed that oscillations in the EEG gamma band (30–90 Hz) depend on the rhythmic activity of local networks of GABAergic interneurons via their synchronizing effects on the output of glutamatergic excitatory neurons (Mann and Mody 2010). Three recent human studies of visual and motor cortices have reported a significant positive correlation between GABA content as measured by 1H-MRS using a MEGA-PRESS sequence and the frequency of evoked activity in the EEG gamma band (Edden et al. 2009; Muthukumaraswamy et al. 2009; Gaetz et al. 2011). Two psychophysical studies have shown that performance on visual tasks mediated by the activity of GABAergic interneurons is significantly correlated with GABA content in the primary visual cortex as measured by 1H-MRS using a MEGA-PRESS sequence (Edden et al. 2009; Yoon et al. 2010a). In addition, several studies have shown that anticonvulsant medications that appear to increase GABAergic tone cause an increase in brain GABA as measured with 1H-MRS (Weber et al. 1999; Petroff et al. 2001). It is worth noting that several studies have found evidence that the 1H-MRS GABA signal varies over the course of the menstrual cycle in women, with GABA signal reduced during the luteal phase (Epperson et al. 2002; Harada et al. 2010). Overall, it appears that 1H-MRS measures of GABA acquired with specialized pulse sequences can provide information about a pool of cortical GABA with a predictive relationship to GABA-mediated responses. It also appears that such measures reflect the functional integrity and capacity of the underlying GABAergic neurons.

2.7 Lactate

Lactate is a three-carbon product of the glycolytic metabolism of glucose (Fig. 2). Its methyl hydrogens give rise to a doublet signal at about 1.32 ppm (Fig. 1b, c). A smaller complex peak from its methine hydrogen arises at about 4.10 ppm but cannot be detected in brain with conventional 1H-MRS methods. Lactate detected at 1.32 ppm in a clinical 1H-MRS acquisition is widely assumed to indicate brain pathology. Indeed, the concentration of lactate in normal brain is rarely greater than 1 mM. The appearance of an obvious lactate signal when no special attempt has been made to optimize its detection strongly suggests that ischemia, tumor, trauma, infection, mitochondrial disease, or other pathological process is present.

Although a high concentration of lactate is a sign of pathology, lactate is a normal and essential component of brain energy metabolism. When measures of brain lactate are of interest in studies of neuropsychiatric disorders, slight modifications to conventional procedures are recommended for its detection with clinical MRI systems. The lactate peak at 1.32 ppm overlaps and is often obscured by the methylene resonances of lipids centered at about 1.30 ppm. Several adjustments to conventional procedures can reduce or eliminate this potentially obscuring lipid signal. Since the relaxation time for the lipid methylene protons is much shorter than for the methyl protons of lactate, much of the lactate signal will be retained while most of the lipid signal will be lost by using a long TE acquisition (such as 144 or 288 ms). Although the inversion of the lactate doublet (due to J-coupling, see Supplement Sect. 4.2.2) at TE = 144 ms can be an aid to the visual identification of the lactate signal, elimination of lipid is more complete and lactate quantification appears to be more reliable when spectra are acquired with TE = 288 ms (Fig. 1b, c) (Roelants-Van Rijn et al. 2001; Maddock and Buonocore 2008). Tissues of the scalp and skull contain high concentrations of lipid. Lipid signal from these and other tissues outside of the voxel of interest can contaminate 1H-MRS data. Use of specialized lipid suppression pulses and attention to optimizing the gradient order can minimize lipid signal originating from outside of the prescribed voxel (Maddock et al. 2006). Because the concentration of lactate in the brain is normally near the low end of the sensitivity range of clinical MRI systems, increasing the signal-to-noise ratio will improve detection of the lactate signal. Thus, 1H-MRS studies of brain lactate often use large voxel sizes and long acquisition times. The use of surface or phased array coils can also improve signal-to-noise ratio from voxels close to the coil (Maddock and Buonocore 2008). Specialized pulse sequences, such as the J-difference editing approach described in Supplement Sect. 4.5.1, can provide even more sensitive and specific measures of brain lactate (Star-Lack et al. 1998).

Although once considered a “dead end” metabolite produced only under anaerobic conditions (e.g. hypoxia), lactate is now recognized as being an essential intermediate in the energy metabolism of organs with high-energy requirements, including muscle, heart, and brain (Brooks 2002; Gladden 2004). In all brain cells,

the first sequence of steps in the generation of ATP from glucose occurs in cytoplasm and proceeds without a requirement for oxygen (glycolysis). The end products of glycolysis are lactate and pyruvate, which are in equilibrium with respect to the reaction catalyzed by lactate dehydrogenase. This equilibrium strongly favors the production of lactate under basal conditions. However, pyruvate is the primary substrate for the oxidative generation of ATP in mitochondria via the TCA cycle and oxidative phosphorylation. The aerobic consumption of pyruvate as part of the mitochondrial TCA cycle promotes the conversion of lactate to pyruvate.

One of the most energy-intensive components of neurotransmission is the clearance of glutamate from the synaptic cleft by astrocytes and the subsequent conversion of glutamate to glutamine for release back into the ECF. This process occurs, in part, in the thread-like filopodia of astrocytes that surround synapses. The filopodia of astrocytes are too narrow to accommodate mitochondria, but they are highly enriched in glycogen granules (a storage form of glucose). Thus, a significant fraction of the ATP required for the astrocytic recycling of glutamate during neural activation is derived from the glycolytic conversion of glucose (and glycogen during strong activation) to lactate (Brown 2004; Pellerin et al. 2007). During neural activation, lactate levels increase and lactate is released into the ECF for uptake into intracellular compartments containing mitochondria, where it can be converted to pyruvate for subsequent metabolism and ATP generation (Hu and Wilson 1997). Although specific details regarding the production and consumption of lactate during neural activity remain to be clarified, it is clear that lactate levels increase during and after neural activation, and that lactate constitutes an important energy source for neuronal oxidative metabolism. It is also clear that astrocytes are the major cell type in the brain for storage of carbohydrate energy as glycogen and that the abundance of lactate transporters in astrocytic and neuronal cell membranes makes lactate a likely vehicle by which carbohydrate energy can be shuttled from cell to cell during times of high-energy demand. 1H-MRS studies in humans using appropriate methods have consistently observed increases in cortical lactate during neural activation (e.g. visual stimulation by a pattern reversal checkerboard) (Prichard et al. 1991; Sappey-Marinier et al. 1992; Maddock et al. 2006; Maddock and Buonocore 2008).

A 1H-MRS finding of substantially elevated brain lactate in the absence of an activation condition is most likely a sign of major pathology. However, small increases in basal lactate may reflect subclinical inflammation, impairment of oxidative metabolism, or increased neural activity. Converging evidence suggests that brain lactate levels increase acutely (over a period of several minutes) in proportion to the degree of glutamatergic activity (Hu and Wilson 1997; Pellerin et al. 2007). Thus, dynamic 1H-MRS studies of the brain lactate response to an experimental activation paradigm can provide insight into the functional state of basic neural and metabolic processes.

2.8 31Phosphorous-MRS

With suitable equipment, clinical scanners can be modified to collect brain MRS data from metabolites containing the 31Phosphorous nucleus (31P-MRS) including phosphocreatine, ATP, phosphomonoesters (mainly phosphorylethanolamine and phosphorylcholine) that are precursors for membrane phospholipid synthesis, phosphodiesters that are breakdown products of membrane phospholipids, and inorganic phosphate. When available, these measurements can provide insight into the status of high-energy phosphates and membrane turnover. The resonance frequency of inorganic phosphate is sensitive to the pH of its microenvironment. Thus, accurate measures of the resonance frequency of inorganic phosphate can be used to estimate the pH of the intracellular compartment in brain tissue (Petroff et al. 1985).

3 MRS Findings in Major Psychiatric Disorders

Since the early 1990s, the non-invasive measurement of brain metabolite concentrations with MRS has provided a unique avenue for extending our understanding of the pathogenesis of neuropsychiatric disorders. There is now a large literature describing the findings of brain MRS studies in the major psychiatric disorders. In this section, we provide an overview of this literature and summarize the most consistent findings in patients with schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, major depression, and anxiety disorders, with an emphasis on findings with potential translational significance.

3.1 Schizophrenia

Schizophrenia is a mental disorder characterized by disordered thinking, perceptual disturbances, and impairment of affect, cognition, and cognitive control. The disorder typically begins in late adolescence or early adulthood and is most often chronic. Of all psychiatric disorders, schizophrenia has been the most extensively studied with MRS methods. Anatomical brain imaging studies and postmortem neuropathological studies of brain tissue provide clear evidence for structural and neuropathological abnormalities in patients with schizophrenia. Recent progress in identifying the neuropathological abnormalities associated with schizophrenia suggests that brain MRS may be a particularly valuable tool for in vivo studies of pathophysiology and treatment effects in this disorder.

The most consistent findings from structural brain imaging studies in schizophrenia include an overall reduction in brain volume, enlarged cerebral ventricles, and regional gray and white matter volume reductions, primarily in medial temporal structures, but also in the lateral temporal lobes, thalamus, and parts of the frontal

lobes (Wright et al. 2000; Ellison-Wright et al. 2008; Jaaro-Peled et al. 2010). Reliable evidence also shows that the reduction in hippocampal volume occurs early in the illness and is also observed in the relatives of patients with schizophrenia, implicating a genetic vulnerability to this phenotypic feature (Jaaro-Peled et al. 2010; Meyer-Lindenberg 2010). Although statistically significant in large samples of patients, these volume reductions are small, and there is extensive overlap between patient and control groups. Several consistent neuropathological findings may account for some of these macroscopic structural observations in schizophrenia. The pyramidal neurons of the frontal cortex, which are the main source of excitatory neurotransmission between cortical regions, are reduced in size and packed more densely without any change in the total number of such neurons (Selemon and Goldman-Rakic 1999). There is similar evidence for reduced size of the pyramidal neurons in the hippocampus. These findings suggest a reduction in neuronal tissue in schizophrenic patients, which would be expected to be associated with a reduced concentration of NAA. Consistent neuropathological abnormalities have also been observed in the GABAergic interneurons of the cerebral cortex in schizophrenia. These observations are discussed in Sect. 3.1.2.

3.1.1 NAA

Steen et al. (2005) conducted an extensive review and meta-analysis of published 1H-MRS data on brain NAA content that spanned over 1,250 patients with schizophrenia and over 1,200 control subjects. They found consistent evidence that NAA is reduced in many brain regions in schizophrenia patients compared to control subjects. In general, the extent of reduction of NAA appeared to be similar in gray matter and white matter. However, they found evidence that the degree of schizophrenia-related NAA reductions varied across brain regions. Specifically, NAA levels did not appear to be reduced in the basal ganglia, occipital cortex, or posterior cingulate cortex. In contrast, NAA levels were consistently and substantially reduced (>5% reduction compared to control subjects) in temporal gray and white matter, hippocampus, frontal gray and white matter, and cerebellum, with the largest reductions (>10%) in temporal white matter and the hippocampus. Smaller, but consistent, reductions were also seen in the anterior cingulate cortex and thalamus. The authors reported no compelling evidence to suggest that NAA is significantly elevated in any brain region in schizophrenia. Although most patients in the studies they reviewed had chronic schizophrenia, over 200 of the patients had been studied while in their first episode of the illness. There was no robust evidence for a difference between first episode and chronic patients. However, in a comparison of 74 first episode and 171 chronic schizophrenia patients in whom frontal cortex NAA levels were measured, the authors noted a trend toward lower NAA in the first-episode patients.

The 1H-MRS studies of NAA compliment the findings of structural imaging and neuropathological studies and offer further evidence of reduced neuronal tissue in schizophrenia, especially in the temporal lobes, frontal lobes, hippocampus, and

cerebellum. The reduction in NAA is present from the onset of clinically overt illness and there is little evidence to suggest that it is attributable to treatment with antipsychotic medications (Steen et al. 2005).

MRS studies showing that reductions in NAA levels are reversible in some disorders (Sect. 2.1) and neuropathological findings of reduced size but not number of pyramidal neurons in schizophrenia leaves open the possibility that reduced NAA in specific brain regions in schizophrenia may represent a neurotrophic change rather than an irreversible loss of viable neurons. If correct, it is conceivable that NAA levels could increase toward normal with effective treatments for schizophrenia. However, longitudinal studies of treatment effects on NAA levels in schizophrenia have yielded mixed results. A few small longitudinal studies of treatment with antipsychotic medications have found increased NAA in selected brain regions, but the studies with larger samples and longer treatment intervals have generally found no effect (Bertolino et al. 2001; Pae et al. 2004; Bustillo et al. 2008, 2010). Only a few small studies have looked at the effect of non-pharmacological treatments on brain NAA in schizophrenia. Premkumar et al. (2010) examined the effects of adding cognitive-behavioral therapy to ongoing treatment with antipsychotic medication in outpatients with schizophrenia. Following 8 months of add-on psychotherapy, they observed a decrease in positive symptoms and an 8% increase in anterior cingulate cortex NAA (the only region they studied). Also in a small sample, Pajonk et al. (2010) observed a 35% increase in hippocampal NAA in schizophrenia patients following three months of aerobic exercise training. No change was seen in a control group of patients who did not participate in exercise training. No randomized, controlled studies have compared the effects of different treatments on brain NAA in schizophrenia, although naturalistic cross-sectional studies suggest NAA levels may be higher in patients taking atypical compared to typical antipsychotic medications (Fannon et al. 2003; Braus et al. 2002; Bustillo et al. 2001). Further studies will be necessary to determine whether NAA levels can be reliably increased by treatment in schizophrenia, and whether such increases are associated with clinically meaningful improvement.

3.1.2 GABA

In a development that has stimulated much theoretical and translational work, postmortem studies on brain tissue have consistently demonstrated a reduction in the GABAergic potential of specific interneurons in many cortical regions, including the frontal cortex and hippocampus in patients with schizophrenia. In particular, the concentration of cortical GABA and the activity of the 67 kDa form of glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD67, the enzyme responsible for most GABA synthesis in the brain) are reduced in postmortem cortical tissue from patients with schizophrenia (Lisman et al. 2008). Low GABA activity is most consistently observed in the fast-spiking, parvalbumin-positive interneurons. These interneurons are functionally coupled to excitatory pyramidal neurons and

regulate their activity (Lisman et al. 2008). The coordinated activity of these two types of neurons gives rise to EEG activity in the gamma band (30–80 Hz), which appears to be essential for communication and processing of information across cortical regions. Thus, gamma band activity is critically dependent on GABAergic inhibition mediated by the fast-spiking interneurons that are deficient in schizophrenia. Accordingly, gamma band activity is consistently found to be abnormal in patients with schizophrenia (Uhlhaas and Singer 2010).

Several 1H-MRS studies have examined the relationship between cortical GABA and measures of brain function believed to depend on the fast-spiking GABAergic interneurons that are deficient in schizophrenic patients. Muthukumaraswamy et al. (2009) used the MEGA-PRESS method to measure GABA concentration in the visual cortex in normal subjects. They demonstrated a significant positive correlation between resting GABA concentration and the frequency of stimulus-induced visual gamma band EEG oscillations. A second study used the same 1H-MRS method to measure GABA concentration in the visual cortex in normal volunteers who also underwent psychophysical testing on a visual orientation discrimination task. GABAergic inhibition appears to play a key role in visual orientation discrimination. The investigators reported significant positive correlations between oblique orientation discrimination and both visual cortex GABA and the frequency of visual stimulus-induced gamma oscillations in the visual cortex. GABA concentration was also correlated with gamma frequency (Edden et al. 2009). In a psychophysical study of patients with schizophrenia, Yoon et al. (2009) demonstrated a deficiency in visual orientation processing using an orientation-specific surround suppression task. In a subsequent study, Yoon et al. (2010a) measured visual cortex GABA with 1H-MRS using the MEGA-PRESS method and demonstrated significantly lower GABA levels in the schizophrenic patients compared to healthy comparison subjects (Fig. 3). They also found a significant positive correlation between orientation-specific surround suppression and visual cortex GABA levels. These studies suggest that 1H-MRS can be used to measure a pool of cortical GABA that has a direct, functional relationship with GABA-mediated behavioral and physiological responses, at least in the visual cortex, and that these measurements can be used in patient populations to test translational models of schizophrenia. It must be noted that other recent 1H-MRS studies have not observed significantly reduced cortical GABA levels in patients with schizophrenia (Goto et al. 2009; Ongur et al. 2010; Tayoshi et al. 2011). A variety of different MRS acquisition and post-processing procedures were used in these studies, which may account for the differing results. However, only the Yoon et al. study measured GABA in the primary visual cortex and included a parallel behavioral measure to validate the GABA measurements (Yoon et al. 2010a). Although 1H-MRS measures of cortical GABA in schizophrenia appear to have great potential, it is clear that further work is needed to provide more definitive answers to critical translational research questions, such as (1) Does 1H-MRS reliably demonstrate a cortical GABA deficiency in patients with schizophrenia in vivo as has been observed in postmortem brain tissue? (2) If so, do in vivo cortical GABA deficits vary by brain region? (3) Do cortical GABA

deficits predict clinical symptoms or information processing deficits? (4) Do treatment-related changes in cortical GABA predict treatment response in schizophrenia? (5) Can 1H-MRS measures of cortical GABA be used to test GABA-related predictions of the NMDA hypofunction model of schizophrenia? Future studies will clarify the value of 1H-MRS measures of brain GABA in translational studies of schizophrenia.

3.1.3 Glutamate and Glutamine

1H-MRS studies have reported decreased, increased, or no difference in observable brain glutamate or Glx levels in schizophrenia patients compared to healthy comparison subjects (Abbott and Bustillo 2006; Stone 2009; Yoon et al. 2010a). At present, there is no consistent 1H-MRS evidence implicating a specific pattern of abnormal brain glutamate or Glx in schizophrenia. However, models of the neuropathology of schizophrenia suggest that an underlying disturbance of glutamatergic function may be present. Basic studies in animals and 1H-MRS studies in normal volunteers have demonstrated activity-dependent increases in MRS-visible cortical glutamate (Carder and Hendry 1994; Arckens et al. 2000; Qu et al. 2003; Hertz 2004; Mullins et al. 2005; Mangia et al. 2007; Gussew et al. 2010). That is, regional cortical glutamate (or Glx) is observed to increase during neuronal activation. In the NMDA receptor hypofunction model of schizophrenia, NMDA receptor hypofunction leads to both a reduced output from GABAergic interneurons and a downstream hyperglutamatergic state (Lisman et al. 2008). The associated increase in flux through the glutamate/glutamine cycle might be expected to lead to a measurable increase in the levels of these amino acids in the brain. On the other hand, glutamate levels, like NAA levels, may vary with the functional integrity of neurons, most of which are glutamatergic. Neuronal integrity appears to be compromised in many cortical regions in schizophrenia. Impaired functional integrity of glutamatergic neurons could reduce Glx levels in schizophrenia patients. Thus, a combination of factors may predispose to both increased and decreased brain Glx levels in schizophrenia patients. Such counterbalancing effects would make it difficult to detect Glx abnormalities with conventional 1H-MRS approaches.

Glutamate release during neurotransmission leads to astrocytic uptake and conversion of glutamate to glutamine by the enzyme glutamine synthase. NMDA receptor hypofunction appears to increase the activity of glutamine synthase, and thus to increase glutamine levels (Rodrigo and Felipo 2007). Pharmacological blockade of NMDA receptors in animals leads to an increase in cortical glutamine (Kosenko et al. 2003; Rodrigo and Felipo 2007) and in the glutamine/glutamate ratio (Brenner et al. 2005; Iltis et al. 2009). High-field 1H-MRS studies suggest that NMDA receptor blockade has similar effects in the anterior cingulate cortex of human volunteers (Rowland et al. 2005). There have been mixed results from 1H-MRS studies of glutamine measured in patients with schizophrenia. The 1H-MRS signals from glutamate and glutamine partially overlap, and it is difficult to reliably quantify brain glutamine as distinct from glutamate. However, it may be

achievable with higher field scanners, short echo times, and long acquisition times. In this regard, one study using a high-field scanner observed elevated glutamine in the anterior cingulate cortex in treatment naïve patients with schizophrenia (Theberge et al. 2002). However, a second study by the same group found lower glutamine levels in the anterior cingulate cortex in chronic schizophrenia patients (Theberge et al. 2003). Two recent studies (Bustillo et al. 2010; Shirayama et al. 2010) specifically measured the glutamine/glutamate ratio with high-field scanners and both found an elevated glutamine/glutamate ratio in the medial prefrontal cortex or anterior cingulate cortex of the patients with schizophrenia. Both studies also reported a significantly reduced NAA/Cr ratio. In addition, a study of CSF in first episode, drug-naïve patients with schizophrenia also found an increase in the glutamine/glutamate ratio in CSF in the patient group (Hashimoto et al. 2005). The glutamine/glutamate ratio may provide a more useful reflection of the functional status of the glutamine/glutamate cycle in astrocytes and neurons in the context of compromised neuronal integrity in patients with schizophrenia. Similarly, repeated measures, dynamic 1H-MRS studies of activity-dependent increases in glutamate or Glx during an activation paradigm may also offer a useful means of testing hypotheses about NMDA receptor hypofunction and hyperglutamatergic states in the context of compromised neural integrity in patients with schizophrenia.

3.1.4 Other Metabolites

Early 31P-MRS studies suggested that phosphomonoesters were low and phosphodiesters were high in the frontal lobes of patients with schizophrenia, a pattern consistent with increased membrane breakdown in this brain region (Fukuzako 2001). However, more recent studies have not found this to be a consistent finding (Yacubian et al. 2002; Jensen et al. 2006; Smesny et al. 2007). No consistent patterns of abnormalities in brain creatine, choline, or myo-inositol have been observed in schizophrenia (Deicken et al. 2000; Kim et al. 2005; Steen et al. 2005).

3.2 Bipolar Disorder

Bipolar disorder is characterized by episodes of manic and depressed moods interspersed with periods of relatively normal mood. There is strong evidence for a genetic vulnerability to this disorder, which typically follows a relapsing and remitting course in the absence of treatment with lithium or other mood stabilizing medication. High-resolution brain imaging studies demonstrate both global and regional structural abnormalities in bipolar disorder. A recent meta-analysis found evidence for a small but reliable reduction in whole-brain volume (effect size $= -0.15$) and in volume of the frontal cortex (effect size $= -0.42$) in bipolar patients (Arnone et al. 2009). The patient group also showed an increase in the size of the lateral ventricles (effect size $= +0.27$), although lateral ventricle size was

significantly smaller than in patients with schizophrenia across studies directly comparing the two diagnostic groups (Arnone et al. 2009). The bilateral volume of the globus pallidus was found to be significantly larger in bipolar patients across 5 studies, and this effect was associated with the use of mood stabilizer medications (Arnone et al. 2009). A meta-analysis of voxel-based morphometry studies of gray matter observed reduced volume of anterior cingulate and fronto-insular cortex in bipolar disorder (Bora et al. 2010), along with increased basal ganglia volume associated with duration of illness. Mood stabilizers in general, and lithium in particular, have been shown to have neurotrophic effects and to promote neuroplasticity (Manji et al. 2000; Quiroz et al. 2010). The use of lithium by bipolar patients has consistently been associated with increased volume of the anterior cingulate cortex and the hippocampus (Emsell and McDonald 2009). These brain morphometry differences and the neurotrophic effects of mood stabilizing medications should be kept in mind when interpreting the 1H-MRS findings in bipolar disorder.

3.2.1 NAA

There have been many 1H-MRS studies of bipolar patients and, in general, this literature supports the conclusion that NAA levels are reduced in some brain regions. However, variations in MRS acquisition methods, brain regions investigated, metabolite quantification and normalization strategies, sample characteristics, and medication status make it difficult to interpret conflicting findings. Medication status is a particularly important source of variance in studies of NAA, since considerable evidence suggests that lithium and other mood stabilizers may increase brain levels of NAA. We found five published 1H-MRS studies reporting on NAA levels in adult bipolar patients free of recent medication use and matched control subjects. Four of the five studies demonstrated significantly reduced NAA levels in their patient groups. These studies included a total of 53 patients and 65 healthy comparison subjects and observed reduced NAA levels in regions including the hippocampus (2 studies), the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex, and the occipital cortex (Winsberg et al. 2000; Bertolino et al. 2003; Atmaca et al. 2007; Bhagwagar et al. 2007). One study, including 29 patients and 26 healthy comparison subjects, observed no significant difference in NAA levels in composite gray matter and white matter regions obtained from an axial 1H-MRSI slab acquired at the level of the corpus callosum (Dager et al. 2004). Many studies of bipolar patients taking mood stabilizers also show a decrement in NAA levels in frontal and hippocampal regions (Yildiz-Yesiloglu and Ankerst 2006a). In general, these findings are consistent with the meta-analytic evidence for a reduction in global brain and frontal lobe volume in this condition.

The neurotrophic effects of mood stabilizers may include increasing levels of NAA in brain regions where NAA and gray matter volume are reduced in bipolar disorder (Manji et al. 2000). Many cross-sectional studies comparing unmedicated bipolar patients to patients taking lithium have found that NAA levels are higher in the lithium-treated patients (Yildiz-Yesiloglu and Ankerst 2006a). However,

longitudinal studies of the same individuals before and during lithium treatment can provide a more conclusive test of the effects of lithium on regional brain NAA content. One study of 12 adult bipolar patients and 9 healthy volunteers found that 4 weeks of treatment with lithium led to an increase in NAA levels in all regions studied (frontal, temporal, parietal, and occipital lobes) (Moore et al. 2000). However, this effect was not observed in studies of children or adolescents with bipolar disorder (Patel et al. 2008; Dickstein et al. 2009) or in a group of healthy volunteers (Brambilla et al. 2004). There is less consistent evidence for increased NAA with other mood stabilizers (Yildiz-Yesiloglu and Ankerst 2006a).

3.2.2 Glutamate and Glutamine

Elevated gray matter Glx has been consistently observed across a range of brain regions and clinical conditions in patients with bipolar disorder. Yuksel and Ongur recently reviewed the published literature on Glx in bipolar adults through 2009 (Yuksel and Ongur 2010). They found nine 1H-MRS studies that measured Glx in various brain regions, medication conditions, and mood states (depressed, manic, and euthymic) in bipolar patients. Six of the nine studies observed significantly elevated Glx (in cingulate, prefrontal, insular, parietal, occipital, and hippocampal gray matter) in the bipolar patients (Michael et al. 2003b; Dager et al. 2004; Bhagwagar et al. 2007; Frye et al. 2007; Ongur et al. 2008; Senaratne et al. 2009). A seventh study examined Glx in the left dorsolateral PFC in both rapid cycling and non-rapid cycling bipolar II patients. They found elevated Glx in the rapid cycling but not in the non-rapid cycling patients. However, they did not report on the results across all of the bipolar patients (Michael et al. 2009). An eighth study examined only the left amygdala, and found no difference in Glx in the bipolar patients (Michael et al. 2003a). The ninth study found reduced Glx in the right lentiform nucleus in the bipolar patients (Port et al. 2008). Four other studies reported results for glutamate, but not for the combined Glx signal. Two of these reported elevated glutamate in bipolar patients (Colla et al. 2009; Lan et al. 2009). One additional study examined Glx in older adolescents and young adults (mean age = 22) and found elevated Glx in the bipolar patients (Cecil et al. 2002). Considering the variation in technical and quantitative methods used, brain regions examined, and clinical mood state of the patients, these studies provide compelling evidence for a consistent pattern of elevated brain Glx in adult patients with bipolar disorder. Fewer studies have examined Glx in pediatric bipolar patients, and the results are inconsistent (Yildiz-Yesiloglu and Ankerst 2006a; Capizzano et al. 2007). 1H-MRS studies of brain GABA in bipolar patients have produced inconsistent results.

There have been only a few studies examining the effects of medication treatments for bipolar disorder on 1H-MRS measures of Glx. Longitudinal studies in bipolar patients (Friedman et al. 2004), normal volunteers (Shibuya-Tayoshi et al. 2008), and rats (O'Donnell et al. 2003) found evidence for a reduction in brain Glx following lithium treatment. A longitudinal study of lamotrigine

observed no effect on Glx levels in bipolar patients (Frye et al. 2007). A cross-sectional study found no differences in Glx levels attributable to treatment with lithium, anticonvulsants, or benzodiazepines (Ongur et al. 2008). In six cross-sectional 1H-MRS studies, at least 75% of the bipolar patients studied were medication free. Three of these studies observed significantly elevated Glx levels in the bipolar patients compared to the healthy comparison subjects (Michael et al. 2003b; Dager et al. 2004; Bhagwagar et al. 2007). It remains to be determined whether mood stabilizers reduce brain Glx in bipolar patients. However, it appears unlikely that the reliable elevation of brain Glx seen in bipolar disorder is an artifact of medication treatment.

The singular importance of glutamate in neurotransmission, the evidence that some mood stabilizers act, in part, by reducing glutamatergic activity, and the contrasting finding that brain Glx is consistently reduced during episodes of unipolar depression (reviewed below) all support the hypothesis that elevated brain Glx has pathophysiological significance in bipolar disorder. Glutamate and glutamine have important functions in both metabolism and neurotransmission. However, some evidence suggests that 1H-MRS measures a single, integrated pool of cytoplasmic Glx in neurons and glia participating in both metabolic and cell-signaling processes (Hertz 2004). This consideration further supports the possibility that elevated Glx in bipolar disorder may reflect a pathophysiologically significant abnormality. Eastwood and Harrison recently found that bipolar patients have elevated levels of vesicular glutamate transporter 1 (VGluT1) mRNA in the anterior cingulate cortex compared to healthy comparison subjects and schizophrenia patients (Eastwood and Harrison 2010). Their finding reinforces the idea that elevated Glx in bipolar patients reflects an increase in glutamatergic neurotransmission, at least in the anterior cingulate cortex. Assessing the utility of 1H-MRS measures of Glx or glutamate in interrogating pathophysiological models of bipolar disorder or in aiding the diagnostic discrimination between bipolar disorder and other mood disorders will be important objectives of future studies (Yuksel and Ongur 2010).

3.2.3 Choline

There have been consistent demonstrations of elevated choline signal in the basal ganglia of patients with bipolar disorder (Kato et al. 1996; Hamakawa et al. 1998; Dager et al. 2004; Yildiz-Yesiloglu and Ankerst 2006a). Although most evidence suggests that lithium does not change the brain 1H-MRS choline signal (Stork and Renshaw 2005), it is possible that other medications in common use could have such an effect. Thus, studies in unmedicated patients are of particular value. In the only study that reported choline data from the basal ganglia in unmedicated bipolar patients, Dager et al. (2004) found significantly increased choline in the patient group. The 1H-MRS evidence of an increase in mobile choline-containing compounds in the basal ganglia of bipolar patients is consistent with the results of the meta-analysis by Bora et al. (2010) showing that a longer duration of illness is

associated with a larger gray matter volume in the basal ganglia of bipolar patients. Altered metabolism or increased cell density in this region could lead to an increase in the choline signal. Further studies will be necessary to clarify the significance of basal ganglia changes in bipolar disorder. In other brain regions, there is no consistent evidence for an alteration in choline levels in bipolar disorder (Stork and Renshaw 2005; Yildiz-Yesiloglu and Ankerst 2006a).

3.2.4 Myo-Inositol

Lithium can acutely reduce myo-inositol levels by inhibiting the enzyme inositol monophosphatase, which regenerates myo-inositol from inositol monophosphates as part of the phosphoinositol second messenger cycle (Hallcher and Sherman 1980). Recognition of this effect of lithium suggested two related hypotheses: (1) that bipolar disorder may be characterized by elevated levels of myo-inositol; and (2) that depletion of myo-inositol may be an important component of the therapeutic effect of lithium and other mood stabilizers (Berridge 1989). If lithium and other mood stabilizers decrease myo-inositol levels, then the hypothesized elevation of myo-inositol levels may be obscured in studies of medicated patients. However, 1H-MRS studies of sustained lithium administration have not found that it decreases brain myo-inositol (Brambilla et al. 2004; Patel et al. 2006; Silverstone and McGrath 2009) and myo-inositol levels are not consistently lower in untreated than treated bipolar patients (Yildiz-Yesiloglu and Ankerst 2006a; Silverstone and McGrath 2009). This suggests that sustained treatment may not be a significant confound in studies of myo-inositol levels. Generally, neither unmedicated nor medicated bipolar patients show consistent abnormalities of brain myo-inositol levels (Yildiz-Yesiloglu and Ankerst 2006a; Silverstone and McGrath 2009).

3.2.5 Other Metabolites

Two publications have systematically reviewed brain 31P-MRS studies in bipolar patients. From these meta-analyses, the most consistent finding is a decrease in phosphomonoesters (PMEs) in euthymic bipolar patients, which has been observed in four of six studies of the frontal lobe and in one temporal lobe study (Yildiz et al. 2001; Stork and Renshaw 2005). This effect appears to be mood state specific, as frontal lobe PMEs are frequently observed to be higher in currently depressed or manic patients than in currently euthymic bipolar patients. The apparent, state-specific alterations of brain PMEs may reflect an underlying abnormality affecting membrane metabolism in bipolar disorder. 31P-MRS can also be used to measure intracellular pH in the brain. This derives from the effect of pH on the chemical shift of inorganic phosphate, which has a primarily intracellular localization. Five out of five studies (albeit from the same group) have observed lower intracellular pH in euthymic bipolar patients. Most of these studies

examined whole-brain pH, but one study also found lower pH in the basal ganglia region (Stork and Renshaw 2005). There is preliminary evidence that low intracellular pH may be specific to the euthymic state, as pH has been observed to be higher in currently depressed or manic patients than in currently euthymic patients. Both the PME and pH abnormalities may be evidence of mitochondrial dysfunction in bipolar disorder (Stork and Renshaw 2005). The relative normalization of PMEs and pH during periods of active mood disturbance could reflect dysregulatory processes triggered by homeostatic mechanisms attempting to compensate for the mitochondrial deficiency. The 1H-MRS finding that brain lactate is elevated in bipolar patients is also consistent with a mitochondrial deficiency and compensation model (Dager et al. 2004).

3.3 Unipolar Major Depression

Unipolar major depressive disorder is characterized by episodes of sustained depressed mood, loss of motivation, and the associated somatic, emotional, and cognitive symptoms of depression. There is clear evidence for a genetic vulnerability to this condition, and most patients have recurrent episodes of illness. Brain morphometric studies have found no reliable evidence for a global reduction in brain volume in major depression (Konarski et al. 2008). However, there is consistent evidence for a volume reduction in prefrontal regions, especially the orbital frontal cortex, the anterior cingulate cortex, and its rostroventral terminus, the subgenual cingulate cortex, in patients with major depression (Hajek et al. 2008; Konarski et al. 2008; Savitz and Drevets 2009). Volume reduction in the hippocampus also appears to be a consistent pattern in major depression, although this finding may be most marked in older or chronically depressed patients (Konarski et al. 2008; Savitz and Drevets 2009). There is some evidence for volume loss as well as consistently reduced metabolic activity in the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex and for volume loss in the basal ganglia in major depression (Konarski et al. 2008; Savitz and Drevets 2009). Neuropathological studies in postmortem brain tissue from patients with major depression report generally consistent evidence for reduced glial cell number and/or density in frontal and limbic regions, including orbital, anterior cingulate, subgenual and dorsolateral prefrontal cortices, and the amygdala (Hercher et al. 2009; Yuksel and Ongur 2010). Molecular neurobiology studies have found evidence consistent with reduced neuroplasticity in frontal and limbic regions in major depression (Krishnan and Nestler 2008). Together, the findings from structural neuroimaging, neuropathological, and molecular studies suggest that frontal and limbic regions, including the hippocampus and basal ganglia, may be specifically implicated in the pathophysiology of major depression and that impairments in glial functions and neuroplasticity may be involved.

3.3.1 NAA

Reviews and meta-analyses of the 1H-MRS literature on major depression through 2006 found no consistent evidence that NAA was either increased or decreased in adult or pediatric patients with major depression (Yildiz-Yesiloglu and Ankerst 2006b; Capizzano et al. 2007; Kondo et al. 2011). Most of the studies reviewed examined the frontal lobes and most included only medication-free patients. Few studies have examined the medial temporal region, but preliminary evidence suggests it may be characterized by reduced NAA levels in major depression (MacMaster et al. 2008; Reynolds and Reynolds 2011). There is little evidence that antidepressant medications alter NAA in frontal regions (Capizzano et al. 2007). The observations of volume loss in prefrontal regions without a corresponding loss of NAA signal are consistent with the hypothesis that the pathophysiology of major depression involves an impairment of prefrontal glial integrity.

3.3.2 Glutamate and Glutamine

The most frequently replicated brain 1H-MRS finding in major depression is reduced glutamate and Glx in prefrontal and limbic regions when patients are currently in a depressive episode. In their 2010 comprehensive review, Yuksel and Ongur (2010) identified 9 studies that measured Glx levels in prefrontal or limbic regions in currently depressed adult patients with major depression. Although there was substantial variation in the 1H-MRS methods used and the specific brain regions examined, 6 of the 9 studies reported significantly reduced Glx in prefrontal regions, the hippocampus and the amygdala. A similar consistent reduction in prefrontal Glx was recently described by Kondo and colleagues in their review of 1H-MRS studies of major depression in children and adolescents (Kondo et al. 2011). A recent study found that diabetic patients with major depression also showed a significant reduction in basal ganglia Glx compared to non-depressed diabetic control patients and compared to healthy volunteers (Ajilore et al. 2007). Another recent study reported a specific decrease in glutamine in the anterior cingulate cortex of highly anhedonic patients with major depression, but this finding was based on only five patients (Walter et al. 2009).

The reduction in Glx in prefrontal and limbic regions appears to be a state-specific characteristic of major depression. Two studies reviewed by Yuksel and Ongur and an additional more recent study scanned euthymic patients subsequent to the remission of their major depressive episode. Two reported normal Glx levels in prefrontal regions, while one observed elevated Glx in the occipital cortex (Taylor et al. 2009; Yuksel and Ongur 2010). Two additional studies showed a normalization of prefrontal Glx levels following successful treatment with electroconvulsive therapy (Yuksel and Ongur 2010). A more recent study examined 22 depressed patients with varying degrees of response to antidepressant medication and found that Glx levels in the pregenual cingulate cortex, but not in the anterior

insula, demonstrated a significant negative correlation with Hamilton depression rating scores (Horn et al. 2010).

Converging observations support the hypothesis that reduced prefrontal and limbic Glx has pathophysiological importance during active episodes of major depression. Glx levels appear to normalize during clinical remission, and the apparently state-dependent reduction of prefrontal and limbic Glx in unipolar depression contrasts sharply with the state-independent elevation of Glx seen in bipolar disorder. Furthermore, blockade of the NMDA receptor by ketamine leads to a hyperglutamatergic state, and also leads to rapid improvement of symptoms in patients with major depression (Zarate et al. 2006). The apparent anatomical specificity of reduced Glx for frontal and limbic regions in major depression is concordant with the selective volume loss seen in these brain regions with structural MRI studies (Hajek et al. 2008; Konarski et al. 2008; Savitz and Drevets 2009). MRS-visible Glx largely reflects the sum of glutamate and glutamine in neuronal and astrocytic cytoplasm. Brain glutamine participates in no metabolic reactions other than those involving its initial conversion to glutamate, primarily within glutamatergic neurons (Albrecht et al. 2007). Thus, the reduced prefrontal and limbic Glx seen during major depressive episodes suggest a pathological process occurring within glutamatergic neurons or their associated glia. Normal levels of prefrontal NAA combined with MRI evidence for prefrontal volume loss suggest an impairment of glial integrity in major depression. Postmortem studies of brain tissue from patients who suffered from major depression have found consistent evidence for reduced number and/or density of glia in prefrontal and limbic regions. Two of the major functions of astrocytes are the de novo synthesis of glutamate from glucose (via the anaplerotic reaction catalyzed by pyruvate carboxylase) to replenish the glutamate–glutamine pool and the uptake and conversion of neurotransmitter glutamate to glutamine (via glutamine synthase) for recycling glutamate back to neurons (Hertz 2004). A deficit in these astrocyte-specific processes would be expected to compromise glutamatergic activity and lead to a reduction in the pool of glutamate and glutamine. Recent gene expression studies in postmortem brain tissue have found consistent evidence for a decrease in the expression of the astrocyte-specific enzyme glutamine synthase in patients with major depression (Choudary et al. 2005; Klempan et al. 2009; Sequeira et al. 2009). Similarly, expression of the glial excitatory amino acid transporters, EAAT1 and EAAT2, which are responsible for most glial glutamate uptake, has been found to be reduced in patients with major depression (Choudary et al. 2005; Miguel-Hidalgo et al. 2010) and in an animal model of depression (Zink et al. 2010). A reduced capacity of the astrocytic components of the glutamate–glutamine cycle could either cause, or be a trophic consequence of, reduced glutamatergic activity. In either case, the consistent 1H-MRS finding of low prefrontal and limbic Glx along with postmortem evidence for a loss of prefrontal glial integrity and deficits in the molecular mechanisms required for glutamate recycling support the hypothesis that glial dysfunction and dysregulation of glutamatergic function are important factors in the pathophysiology of major depression (Hercher et al. 2009; Valentine and Sanacora 2009; Yuksel and Ongur 2010). Continued MRS studies

of prefrontal and limbic glutamatergic function are likely to further advance understanding of the role of this system in the mechanisms of pathogenesis and treatment response in major depression.

3.3.3 GABA

Although the published 1H-MRS literature on GABA in major depression is not extensive, it suggests that cortical GABA is reduced during episodes of depression and normalized following successful somatic treatment. Two studies have examined occipital cortex GABA levels in drug-free depressed patients, and both observed decreased GABA levels (Sanacora et al. 1999; Sanacora et al. 2004). A subsequent study examined dorsal and ventral regions of the prefrontal cortex in drug-free depressed patients, and found decreased GABA only in the dorsal prefrontal voxel (Hasler et al. 2007). A recent study of occipital and anterior cingulate cortical GABA in treatment-resistant MDD, non-treatment resistant MDD, and control subjects found reduced GABA only in the treatment-resistant patients (Price et al. 2009). One study examined GABA levels only in frontal white matter in drug-free elderly depressed patients (ages 61–91), but found no difference between the patient and control groups (Binesh et al. 2004). Four studies have examined the effect of treatment on cortical GABA in patients with major depression. Two studies found that SSRI's increased occipital GABA (Sanacora et al. 2002; Bhagwagar et al. 2004) and one found that electroconvulsive therapy increased occipital GABA (Sanacora et al. 2003). In contrast, depressed patients showed a trend toward decreased occipital GABA following effective treatment with cognitive-behavioral therapy (Sanacora et al. 2006). In unmedicated, remitted patients, one study noted a normal level of GABA in the prefrontal cortex (Hasler et al. 2005) and one study found significantly reduced GABA in the occipital cortex (Bhagwagar et al. 2007) compared to healthy controls. In general, the evidence suggests that cortical GABA is reduced during episodes of major depression and that effective somatic treatment of depression is associated with a normalization of cortical GABA. This pattern of 1H-MRS findings is congruent with evidence from postmortem studies showing reduced size and density of calbindin-positive, GABAergic interneurons (Rajkowska et al. 2007) and reduced levels of GAD67 (Karolewicz et al. 2010) in prefrontal cortex, as well as reduced density of calbindin-positive, GABAergic interneurons in occipital cortex (Maciag et al. 2010) from patients with major depression. Given the evidence for glial dysfunction in major depression, it is important to note that GABA recycling and metabolism rely on the functional integrity of astrocytes, although to a lesser extent than glutamate recycling, This promising literature suggests that dysfunction of GABAergic systems may have an important role in the pathophysiology of major depression. If this work is substantiated and extended by further research, it may provide a translational rationale for studies of treatments targeting GABAergic systems.

3.3.4 Other Metabolites

Although not quite as consistent a finding as in bipolar disorder, a number of studies have observed elevated choline-containing compounds in the basal ganglia of patients with major depression (Yildiz-Yesiloglu and Ankerst 2006b). In light of the basal ganglia volume loss observed in major depression, choline elevation suggests increased membrane metabolism is occurring in this region. It is unclear to what extent this effect is influenced by medication use. Of three 31P-MRS studies of patients with major depression, two have found evidence for reduced ATP levels in the basal ganglia of unmedicated patients (Moore et al. 1997) and in the frontal lobes of medicated patients (Volz et al. 1998). A third study found no evidence for a group difference in ATP levels in medicated depressed patients and control subjects (Iosifescu et al. 2008). If consistent, low ATP levels would suggest a brain bioenergetic deficit is present in untreated major depression. There is no consistent evidence for alterations in brain creatine or myo-inositol in major depression (Yildiz-Yesiloglu and Ankerst 2006b).

3.4 Anxiety Disorders

The anxiety disorders that have been investigated by MRS experiments include panic disorder, posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD), obsessive–compulsive disorder (OCD), social phobia, and generalized anxiety disorder. Of these, OCD, PTSD, and panic disorder have been the most extensively studied, and some consistent findings with translational implications have emerged from MRS studies of these disorders. However, none of the anxiety disorders have been studied as extensively with MRS as schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, or major depression. Brain MRI morphometry studies of patients with anxiety disorders have often grouped together patients with different anxiety disorders. Across anxiety disorders, the most consistent morphometric finding has been reduced gray matter volume in the anterior cingulate cortex and dorsomedial prefrontal cortex (Radua et al. 2010; van Tol et al. 2010).

3.4.1 Panic Disorder

Panic disorder is a condition characterized by the repeated occurrence of panic attacks, at least some of which are spontaneous (unprovoked). Panic disorder is often accompanied by agoraphobia—the fear and avoidance of situations that would be difficult to escape from or in which it would be difficult to get help in case of sudden incapacitation. There is strong evidence that the vulnerability to panic disorder is partly genetic, with heritability estimated to be about 48% (Hettema et al. 2001). In addition to the gray matter reduction in medial prefrontal regions seen across anxiety disorders, replicated brain morphometric findings in panic disorder include reduced volume of lateral and medial temporal lobe regions

(Ferrari et al. 2008) and increased gray matter volume of the midbrain and pons (Protopopescu et al. 2006; Uchida et al. 2008). We could find no published studies of postmortem brain tissue from patients with panic disorder. Neurobiological models of panic disorder often propose a role for increased reactivity of amygdala, hypothalamic, midbrain, or brainstem regions in the generation of panic attacks and a role for reduced function of orbital and medial prefrontal regions in the relative inability to regulate the anxiety originating in lower regions (Coplan and Lydiard 1998; Gorman et al. 2000). Patients with panic disorder are unusually sensitive to the panic-inducing effects of agents that increase brain acidity or respiratory drive, including CO_2 inhalation and intravenous sodium lactate infusion (Esquivel et al. 2010). Several models have specifically posited an important role for increased reactivity of acid-sensitive chemoreceptor systems in subcortical and brainstem nuclei in the generation of panic attacks (Klein 1993; Coplan and Lydiard 1998; Maddock 2001; Ziemann et al. 2009; Esquivel et al. 2010).

The most consistently replicated MRS finding in studies of patients with panic disorder has been an elevated brain lactate response to metabolic challenges. Prior to the first MRS studies in panic disorder patients, several investigators had demonstrated exaggerated systemic lactate responses to metabolic challenges in panic disorder (Maddock 2001). Dager and colleagues were the first to use 1H-MRS to examine brain lactate responses in panic disorder. In a series of studies examining the brain lactate response during an intravenous lactate infusion, the panic patients were consistently observed to have significantly greater increases in brain lactate in spite of receiving the same dose of intravenous sodium lactate. This effect was observed in both symptomatic, unmedicated patients (Dager et al. 1997, 1999), and asymptomatic medicated patients (Dager et al. 1997; Layton et al. 2001). While several of these studies examined a single voxel placed in the insular cortex, one study used the PEPSI sequence (discussed in Supplement Sect. 4.3.3) to obtain a 2D multivoxel axial slab of spectral data and concluded that the exaggerated increase in lactate in the panic patients was generalized across all brain regions studied (Dager et al. 1999). Hyperventilation is a metabolic challenge that leads to increases in brain lactate in normal volunteers. Panic patients demonstrate a significantly greater brain lactate response to hyperventilation than healthy comparison subjects, despite similar degrees of hypocapnia in the two groups (Dager et al. 1995). It was initially suggested that these findings of elevated brain lactate may have resulted from ischemic cerebral hypoxia due to excessive vasoconstriction triggered by the metabolic disturbance and anxiety induced by the lactate infusion and hyperventilation procedures. However, more recent studies have demonstrated significantly increased brain lactate responses in the visual cortex during visual stimulation in patients with panic disorder, a paradigm in which hyperemia, rather than ischemic vasoconstriction, is known to occur. Maddock and colleagues demonstrated significantly greater increases in visual cortex lactate during a 10 min period of viewing a flashing checkerboard pattern in a group of symptomatic, unmedicated panic patients compared to matched control subjects (Maddock et al. 2009). The visual stimulation procedure did not provoke more anxiety in the patient group than the control group. A second study showed

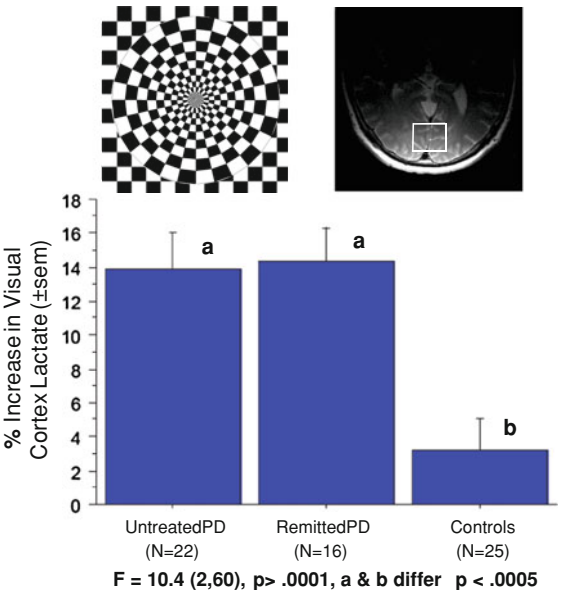


Fig. 4 An 8 Hz pattern reversal checkerboard stimulus was used to stimulate visual cortex lactate production in 22 symptomatic, untreated panic disorder patients, 16 remitted panic disorder patients, and 25 healthy comparison subjects. Percent change in lactate/creatine ratio averaged across 10 min of visual stimulation and 12 min of post-stimulation eyes-closed rest was calculated relative to a pre-stimulation eyes-closed resting baseline. Lactate accumulation was significantly greater in both patient groups compared to control subjects

that remitted panic patients (medicated and unmedicated) demonstrated the same significantly exaggerated visual cortex lactate response to visual stimulation (Maddock and Buonocore 2010). Figure 4 summarizes the visual cortex lactate responses in 22 symptomatic panic patients, 16 remitted panic patients, and 25 matched control subjects. Increased visual cortex lactate accumulation during visual stimulation in panic patients suggests that this metabolic abnormality is evident even during ordinary neural activity. The observation that exaggerated brain lactate responses are seen in both symptomatic and remitted panic patients suggests that it is an enduring or "trait" feature of the disorder and is consistent with metabolic models of the vulnerability to panic disorder.

As discussed in Sect. 2.5, glutamatergic neurotransmission triggers the glycolytic production of lactate from glucose and glycogen, most likely by astrocytes. The lactate is subsequently taken up by neurons for oxidative metabolism. A family of monocarboxylate transporters (MCTs) mediates the co-transport of lactate and hydrogen ions (H+) across glial and neuronal cell membranes. MCT-1 and MCT-4 are expressed in astrocytes, while MCT-2 is the primary form expressed in neurons (Pierre and Pellerin 2005; Bergersen 2007; Hashimoto et al. 2008). MCT-2 has a higher affinity for lactate (Km $\sim$ 0.7 mM) than MCT-1 (Km $\sim$ 4-6 mM) or MCT-4 (Km $\sim$ 32 mM) (reviewed in (Erlichman et al. 2008). When astrocytic production of lactate is stimulated, the relative affinities of these cell-specific subtypes of MCTs favors the rapid movement of lactate and H+ out of astrocytes into the ECF and then more slowly into neurons (Bergersen 2007; Erlichman et al. 2008; Hashimoto et al. 2008). Thus, lactate and H+ accumulate temporarily in the ECF of the synaptic zone, with the magnitude and duration of

the pH change determined by the amount of lactate transported and the buffering characteristics of the ECF. Acid-sensing ion channels (ASICs) respond to ECF pH changes associated with neural activity and are widely distributed in brainstem and hypothalamic regions and in the amygdala (Coryell et al. 2007). ASICs have been demonstrated to mediate fear responses in mice, including the fear response to CO_2 inhalation (Ziemann et al. 2009). Similarly, acid-sensing chemoreceptor systems in the brainstem have been shown to increase their activity in response to increased lactate accumulation (Erlichman et al. 2008). If increased accumulation of lactate during neural activation in panic disorder patients occurs in brain regions mediating fear and arousal responses and is accompanied by a temporary acidification of brain ECF, then the resulting stimulation of acid-sensing chemoreceptor systems might have an important role in triggering "spontaneous" panic attacks, as posited in some models (Klein 1993; Esquivel et al. 2010). In this regard, it is of interest that a recent 31P-MRS study examined the pH-related resonance shift of inorganic phosphate during hyperventilation and found suggestive evidence for altered acid–base regulation in the direction of increased brain acidity in patients with panic disorder (Friedman et al. 2006). 1H-MRS and 31P-MRS are likely to have an important role in future studies testing models of metabolic and acid/base mechanisms in the pathophysiology of panic disorder.

Brain GABA levels have been studied in two samples of unmedicated patients with panic disorder using validated GABA-editing 1H-MRS methods. In the first study, Goddard and colleagues demonstrated significantly lower GABA concentrations in the occipital cortex in panic patients (Goddard et al. 2001). In the second study, Hasler and colleagues found no difference in GABA levels in dorsal prefrontal or ventrolateral prefrontal regions (Hasler et al. 2009). In an extension of their original study and using the same patients, Goddard and colleagues reported that occipital cortex GABA in panic patients did not change following an acute oral dose of clonazepam, while GABA levels decreased significantly in the control group (Goddard et al. 2004). Some pharmacodynamic and PET studies have implicated reduced sensitivity of the GABA-A linked benzodiazepine receptor system in patients with panic disorder (Hasler et al. 2008). However, this abnormality may not involve a reduced concentration of cytoplasmic GABA, as measured by 1H-MRS. Future studies will be needed to establish whether and in which brain regions reduced GABA is a consistent finding in patients with panic disorder.

3.4.2 Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder

Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) is a condition that develops in some individuals following exposure to a traumatic event that threatens a person's life or personal integrity. It is characterized by specific symptom patterns, including intrusive re-experiencing of the event, emotional blunting or avoidance, and generalized hyperarousal. In addition to the bilateral reduction in gray matter volume in medial prefrontal regions observed in common with other anxiety disorders, patients with PTSD also consistently demonstrate reduced volume of the hippocampus compared

to both trauma exposed controls without PTSD and healthy controls (Karl et al. 2006). Based on existing evidence, it appears that antidepressant medication ameliorates the reduction in hippocampal volume in PTSD patients compared to trauma exposed control subjects (Karl et al. 2006). Consistent volume reduction is also seen in the left amygdala in adults and in the corpus callosum in children with PTSD (Karl et al. 2006). Very few postmortem brain studies have been conducted in patients with PTSD, and none have examined hippocampal or amygdala tissue. However, studies showing dysregulation of the hippocampal–hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal axis and impairments in declarative memory, along with brain volumetric studies, support the basic hypothesis that impairment in hippocampal function has a key role in the pathophysiology of PTSD (Bremner 2006). Functional imaging and lesion studies also support central roles for the amygdala and medial prefrontal cortex in PTSD (Etkin and Wager 2007; Koenigs et al. 2008; Liberzon and Sripada 2008).

In agreement with the results of other neurobiological studies, the most consistent 1H-MRS finding in patients with PTSD has been a reduction in NAA levels in the hippocampus. This effect has been reported as significant in nine of the 10 published 1H-MRS studies that have investigated the hippocampus in patients with PTSD (Schuff et al. 2008; Trzesniak et al. 2008). A recent 1H-MRS study in a mouse model of PTSD found that low NAA in the left dorsal hippocampus prior to electrical footshock trauma predicted the development of persistent PTSD-like symptoms (Siegmund et al. 2009). It is not yet clear whether antidepressant treatment influences hippocampal NAA in PTSD patients. A consistent finding of reduced NAA in the anterior cingulate cortex has also been observed in PTSD patients. This effect has been reported as significant in 4 of the 5 published PTSD studies that have investigated the anterior cingulate cortex (Schuff et al. 2008; Trzesniak et al. 2008). An episode of single, prolonged stress in a rat model of PTSD was recently shown to cause a reduction of glutamate and glutamine in medial prefrontal cortex (Knox et al. 2010). Overall, the 1H-MRS studies of patients with PTSD provide strong support for models of pathogenesis in which dysfunction of the hippocampus and anterior cingulate cortex play central roles. Notable gaps in the current literature include the absence of postmortem tissue studies of the hippocampus, amygdala, or medial prefrontal cortex in PTSD and no 1H-MRS studies of Glx or GABA in any brain regions in PTSD. Because of the unambiguous role of trauma in the pathogenesis of PTSD, it is a psychiatric disorder for which the use of animal models may be particularly fruitful. MRS studies in animals may have an increasingly valuable role in advancing our understanding of PTSD.

3.4.3 Obsessive Compulsive Disorder

Obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD) is a condition characterized by the persistent recurrence of obsessions (intrusive, unwanted thoughts, or images), compulsions (ritualized, repetitive behaviors), or both. The vulnerability to OCD is strongly genetic (Pauls 2010). In addition to bilateral gray matter volume reduction in the medial prefrontal and anterior cingulate cortices, as seen in other anxiety

disorders, patients with OCD also show decreased volume of the orbital frontal cortex and increased volume of the thalami and basal ganglia (lenticular and caudate nuclei) bilaterally (Rotge et al. 2009; Radua et al. 2010). Many of these morphometric findings appear to be independent of the use of antidepressant medications (Radua and Mataix-Cols 2009). Neuroimaging and neurosurgical studies support a general model of involvement of prefrontal cortex–basal ganglia–thalamic–prefrontal cortex circuits in the pathogenesis of OCD (Huey et al. 2008).

Although over 20 1H-MRS studies of pediatric and adult patients with OCD have been published, only a few findings have been consistently replicated. Four studies have demonstrated reduced NAA in the anterior cingulate cortex in adult patients with OCD (Yucel et al. 2007; Trzesniak et al. 2008). One of these studies showed that anterior cingulate NAA normalized after 12 weeks of treatment with citalopram (Jang et al. 2006). However, a recent study reported that NAA levels are increased in this region in OCD (Fan et al. 2010). A relatively large series ($N = 27$) of pediatric OCD patients demonstrated increased choline-containing compounds in the medial thalamus (Smith et al. 2003). A small group of adult SSRI non-responders with OCD showed increased thalamic choline compared to responders (Mohamed et al. 2007). Consistent 1H-MRS abnormalities have not been reported in the basal ganglia in OCD (Trzesniak et al. 2008). Further study will be needed to establish whether abnormalities in MRS-measurable brain metabolites are consistently observed in specific brain regions in OCD patients.

3.5 Summary

This review of the brain MRS literature highlights a number of frequently replicated findings in patients with psychiatric disorders. Some of these consistent findings are convergent with other neurobiological observations. For example, NAA is reduced in many but not all brain regions in patients with schizophrenia, in frontal and hippocampal regions in patients with bipolar disorder, in the hippocampus in patients with PTSD, and in the anterior cingulate cortex in patients with OCD. In each disorder, the reduction in NAA is congruent with evidence for reduced brain volume in similar regions. While irreversible neuronal damage is an important cause of reduced NAA, consistent evidence indicates that reversible reductions in neuronal function can also lead to reduced NAA. Serial 1H-MRS measures of NAA may have value in discerning whether or not specific interventions have remediating effects on an underlying, reversible neuronal dysfunction in psychiatric disorders. Preliminary evidence suggests that this may be the case for the effect of cognitive-behavioral treatment on the anterior cingulate cortex (Premkumar et al. 2010) and exercise on the hippocampus (Pajonk et al. 2010) in schizophrenia, lithium treatment on many brain regions in bipolar disorder (Moore et al. 2000), and SSRI treatment on anterior cingulate cortex in OCD (Jang et al. 2006). However, larger controlled longitudinal studies will be needed to confirm these preliminary findings.

Some of the MRS findings reviewed here provide support for specific models of pathogenesis. Elevated Glx in patients with bipolar disorder and reduced Glx in patients with unipolar major depression accord with models of increased and decreased glutamatergic function, respectively, in those conditions. Reduced phosphomonoesters and intracellular pH in euthymic bipolar patients and elevated dynamic lactate responses in panic disorder patients are consistent with metabolic models of pathogenesis in those conditions. Preliminary findings of an increased glutamine/glutamate ratio and decreased GABA in patients with schizophrenia are consistent with a model of NMDA hypofunction in that disorder. Additional studies are needed to fill in important gaps in this literature. As the sensitivity and specificity of methods continue to improve, MRS studies can be expected to play an important role in the testing of translational models of the pathogenesis of psychiatric disorders.

4 Conclusions

MRS provides a unique, non-invasive method for assessing the metabolic state of the living human brain. Steady growth of the technical capabilities of MRS systems is increasing the range of metabolites that can be measured and the sensitivity and reliability of these measurements. A growing understanding of the pathophysiological significance of abnormalities of the observable metabolite signals, especially with regard to those arising from amino acid neurotransmitter pools, is increasing the value of MRS experiments in neuropsychiatric research. The information gained from MRS studies can be used in conjunction with other non-invasive clinical imaging methods, neuropathological studies, and animal studies to achieve more complete understandings of the natural history of psychiatric illnesses and to test translational models of their pathogenesis. In addition, MRS has the potential to increase understanding of the therapeutic mechanisms of action of effective treatments and to allow clinical monitoring of the neurobiological effects of interventions on brain metabolic markers of psychiatric illnesses.

References

Abbott C, Bustillo J (2006) What have we learned from proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy about schizophrenia? A critical update. Curr Opin Psychiatry 19:135–139

Ajilore O, Haroon E, Kumaran S et al (2007) Measurement of brain metabolites in patients with type 2 diabetes and major depression using proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Neuropsychopharmacology 32:1224–1231

Albrecht J, Sonnewald U, Waagepetersen HS, Schousboe A (2007) Glutamine in the central nervous system: function and dysfunction. Front Biosci 12:332–343

Almeida LS, Salomons GS, Hogenboom F, Jakobs C, Schoffelmeer AN (2006) Exocytotic release of creatine in rat brain. Synapse 60:118–123

Andres RH, Ducray AD, Schlattner U, Wallimann T, Widmer HR (2008) Functions and effects of creatine in the central nervous system. Brain Res Bull 76:329–343

Arckens L, Schweigart G, Qu Y et al (2000) Cooperative changes in GABA, glutamate and activity levels: the missing link in cortical plasticity. Eur J Neurosci 12:4222–4232

Ariyannur PS, Moffett JR, Manickam P et al (2010) Methamphetamine-induced neuronal protein NAT8L is the NAA biosynthetic enzyme: implications for specialized acetyl coenzyme A metabolism in the CNS. Brain Res 1335:1–13

Arnone D, Cavanagh J, Gerber D, Lawrie SM, Ebmeier KP, McIntosh AM (2009) Magnetic resonance imaging studies in bipolar disorder and schizophrenia: meta-analysis. Br J Psychiatry 195:194–201

Atmaca M, Yildirim H, Ozdemir H, Ogur E, Tezcan E (2007) Hippocampal 1H MRS in patients with bipolar disorder taking valproate versus valproate plus quetiapine. Psychol Med 37: 121–129

Baslow MH (2007) N-acetylaspartate and N-acetylaspartylglutamate. In: Lajtha A, Oja S, Schousboe A, Saransaari P (eds) Handbook of neurochemistry and molecular neurobiology: amino acids and peptides in the nervous system. Springer, New York, pp 305–346

Bates TE, Strangward M, Keelan J, Davey GP, Munro PM, Clark JB (1996) Inhibition of N-acetylaspartate production: implications for 1H MRS studies in vivo. Neuroreport 7:1397–1400

Beard E, Braissant O (2010) Synthesis and transport of creatine in the CNS: importance for cerebral functions. J Neurochem 115:297–313

Bergersen LH (2007) Is lactate food for neurons? Comparison of monocarboxylate transporter subtypes in brain and muscle. Neuroscience 145:11–19

Berridge MJ (1989) The Albert Lasker medical awards: inositol trisphosphate, calcium, lithium, and cell signaling. JAMA 262:1834–1841

Bertolino A, Callicott JH, Mattay VS, Weidenhammer KM, Rakow R, Egan MF, Weinberger DR (2001) The effect of treatment with antipsychotic drugs on brain N-acetylaspartate measures in patients with schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 49:39–46

Bertolino A, Frye M, Callicott JH et al (2003) Neuronal pathology in the hippocampal area of patients with bipolar disorder: a study with proton magnetic resonance spectroscopic imaging. Biol Psychiatry 53:906–913

Bhagwagar Z, Wylezinska M, Taylor M, Jezzard P, Matthews PM, Cowen PJ (2004) Increased brain GABA concentrations following acute administration of a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor. Am J Psychiatry 161:368–370

Bhagwagar Z, Wylezinska M, Jezzard P et al (2007) Reduction in occipital cortex gamma-aminobutyric acid concentrations in medication-free recovered unipolar depressed and bipolar subjects. Biol Psychiatry 61:806–812

Bhakoo KK, Williams IT, Williams SR, Gadian DG, Noble MD (1996) Proton nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy of primary cells derived from nervous tissue. J Neurochem 66:1254–1263

Binesh N, Kumar A, Hwang S, Mintz J, Thomas MA (2004) Neurochemistry of late-life major depression: a pilot two-dimensional MR spectroscopic study. J Magn Reson Imaging 20:1039–1045

Bitsch A, Bruhn H, Vougioukas V, Stringaris A, Lassmann H, Frahm J, Bruck W (1999) Inflammatory CNS demyelination: histopathologic correlation with in vivo quantitative proton MR spectroscopy. Am J Neuroradiol 20:1619–1627

Bitto E, Bingman CA, Wesenberg GE, McCoy JG, Phillips GN Jr (2007) Structure of aspartoacylase, the brain enzyme impaired in Canavan disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:456–461

Bora E, Fornito A, Yucel M, Pantelis C (2010) Voxelwise meta-analysis of gray matter abnormalities in bipolar disorder. Biol Psychiatry 67:1097–1105

Boulanger Y, Labelle M, Khiat A (2000) Role of phospholipase A(2) on the variations of the choline signal intensity observed by 1H magnetic resonance spectroscopy in brain diseases. Brain Res Brain Res Rev 33:380–389

Braissant O, Beard E, Torrent C, Henry H (2010) Dissociation of AGAT, GAMT and SLC6A8 in CNS: relevance to creatine deficiency syndromes. Neurobiol Dis 37:423–433

Brambilla P, Stanley JA, Sassi RB, Nicoletti MA, Mallinger AG, Keshavan MS, Soares JC (2004) 1H MRS study of dorsolateral prefrontal cortex in healthy individuals before and after lithium administration. Neuropsychopharmacology 29:1918–1924

Brand A, Richter-Landsberg C, Leibfritz D (1993) Multinuclear NMR studies on the energy metabolism of glial and neuronal cells. Dev Neurosci 15:289–298

Bremner JD (2006) Traumatic stress: effects on the brain. Dialogues Clin Neurosci 8:445–461

Brenner E, Kondziella D, Haberg A, Sonnewald U (2005) Impaired glutamine metabolism in NMDA receptor hypofunction induced by MK801. J Neurochem 94:1594–1603

Brooks GA (2002) Lactate shuttles in nature. Biochem Soc Trans 30:258–264

Brown AM (2004) Brain glycogen re-awakened. J Neurochem 89:537–552

Bustillo JR, Rowland LM, Jung R et al (2008) Proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy during initial treatment with antipsychotic medication in schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:2456–2466

Bustillo JR, Rowland LM, Mullins P et al (2010) 1H-MRS at 4 Tesla in minimally treated early schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 15:629–636

Capizzano AA, Jorge RE, Acion LC, Robinson RG (2007) In vivo proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy in patients with mood disorders: a technically oriented review. J Magn Reson Imaging 26:1378–1389

Caramanos Z, Narayanan S, Arnold DL (2005) 1H-MRS quantification of tNA and tCr in patients with multiple sclerosis: a meta-analytic review. Brain 128:2483–2506

Carder RK, Hendry SH (1994) Neuronal characterization, compartmental distribution, and activity-dependent regulation of glutamate immunoreactivity in adult monkey striate cortex. J Neurosci 14:242–262

Cecil KM, DelBello MP, Morey R, Strakowski SM (2002) Frontal lobe differences in bipolar disorder as determined by proton MR spectroscopy. Bipolar Disord 4:357–365

Chopra M, Yao Y, Blake TJ, Hampson DR, Johnson EC (2009) The neuroactive peptide N-acetylaspartylglutamate is not an agonist at the metabotropic glutamate receptor subtype 3 of metabotropic glutamate receptor. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 330:212–219

Choudary PV, Molnar M, Evans SJ et al (2005) Altered cortical glutamatergic and GABAergic signal transmission with glial involvement in depression. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102:15653–15658

Clark JB (1998) N-acetyl aspartate: a marker for neuronal loss or mitochondrial dysfunction. Dev Neurosci 20:271–276

Clark JF, Doepke A, Filosa JA, Wardle RL, Lu A, Meeker TJ, Pyne-Geithman GJ (2006) N-acetylaspartate as a reservoir for glutamate. Med Hypotheses 67:506–512

Colla M, Schubert F, Bubner M et al (2009) Glutamate as a spectroscopic marker of hippocampal structural plasticity is elevated in long-term euthymic bipolar patients on chronic lithium therapy and correlates inversely with diurnal cortisol. Mol Psychiatry 14:696–704, 647

Coplan JD, Lydiard RB (1998) Brain circuits in panic disorder. Biol Psychiatry 44:1264–1276

Coryell MW, Ziemann AE, Westmoreland PJ et al (2007) Targeting ASIC1a reduces innate fear and alters neuronal activity in the fear circuit. Biol Psychiatry 62:1140–1148

Dager SR, Strauss WL, Marro KI, Richards TL, Metzger GD, Artru AA (1995) Proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy investigation of hyperventilation in subjects with panic disorder and comparison subjects. Am J Psychiatry 152:666–672

Dager SR, Richards T, Strauss W, Artru A (1997) Single-voxel 1H-MRS investigation of brain metabolic changes during lactate-induced panic. Psychiatry Res 30:89–99

Dager SR, Friedman SD, Heide A et al (1999) Two-dimensional proton echo-planar spectroscopic imaging of brain metabolic changes during lactate-induced panic. Arch Gen Psychiatry 56:70–77

Dager SR, Friedman SD, Parow A et al (2004) Brain metabolic alterations in medication-free patients with bipolar disorder. Arch Gen Psychiatry 61:450–458

De Stefano N, Matthews PM, Arnold DL (1995) Reversible decreases in N-acetylaspartate after acute brain injury. Magn Reson Med 34:721–727

Deicken RF, Johnson C, Pegues M (2000) Proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy of the human brain in schizophrenia. Rev Neurosci 11:147–158

Delp MD, Armstrong RB, Godfrey DA, Laughlin MH, Ross CD, Wilkerson MK (2001) Exercise increases blood flow to locomotor, vestibular, cardiorespiratory and visual regions of the brain in miniature swine. J Physiol 533:849–859

Demougeot C, Marie C, Giroud M, Beley A (2004) N-acetylaspartate: a literature review of animal research on brain ischaemia. J Neurochem 90:776–783

Dericioglu N, Garganta CL, Petroff OA, Mendelsohn D, Williamson A (2008) Blockade of GABA synthesis only affects neural excitability under activated conditions in rat hippocampal slices. Neurochem Int 53:22–32

Dickstein DP, Towbin KE, Van Der Veen JW et al (2009) Randomized double-blind placebo-controlled trial of lithium in youths with severe mood dysregulation. J Child Adolesc Psychopharmacol 19:61–73

Dolder M, Walzel B, Speer O, Schlattner U, Wallimann T (2003) Inhibition of the mitochondrial permeability transition by creatine kinase substrates: requirement for microcompartmentation. J Biol Chem 278:17760–17766

Eastwood SL, Harrison PJ (2010) Markers of glutamate synaptic transmission and plasticity are increased in the anterior cingulate cortex in bipolar disorder. Biol Psychiatry 67:1010–1016

Edden RA, Pomper MG, Barker PB (2007) In vivo differentiation of N-acetyl aspartyl glutamate from N-acetyl aspartate at 3 Tesla. Magn Reson Med 57:977–982

Edden RA, Muthukumaraswamy SD, Freeman TC, Singh KD (2009) Orientation discrimination performance is predicted by GABA concentration and gamma oscillation frequency in human primary visual cortex. J Neurosci 29:15721–15726

Ellison-Wright I, Glahn DC, Laird AR, Thelen SM, Bullmore E (2008) The anatomy of first-episode and chronic schizophrenia: an anatomical likelihood estimation meta-analysis. Am J Psychiatry 165:1015–1023

Emsell L, McDonald C (2009) The structural neuroimaging of bipolar disorder. Int Rev Psychiatry 21:297–313

Epperson CN, Haga K, Mason GF et al (2002) Cortical gamma-aminobutyric acid levels across the menstrual cycle in healthy women and those with premenstrual dysphoric disorder: a proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy study. Arch Gen Psychiatry 59:851–858

Erlichman JS, Hewitt A, Damon TL, Hart M, Kurascz J, Li A, Leiter JC (2008) Inhibition of monocarboxylate transporter 2 in the retrotrapezoid nucleus in rats: a test of the astrocyte-neuron lactate-shuttle hypothesis. J Neurosci 28:4888–4896

Esquivel G, Schruers KR, Maddock RJ, Colasanti A, Griez EJ (2010) Review: Acids in the brain: a factor in panic? J Psychopharmacol 24:639–647

Etkin A, Wager TD (2007) Functional neuroimaging of anxiety: a meta-analysis of emotional processing in PTSD, social anxiety disorder, and specific phobia. Am J Psychiatry 164: 1476–1488

Fan Q, Tan L, You C et al (2010) Increased N-Acetylaspartate/creatine ratio in the medial prefrontal cortex among unmedicated obsessive-compulsive disorder patients. Psychiatry Clin Neurosci 64:483–490

Farrant M, Nusser Z (2005) Variations on an inhibitory theme: phasic and tonic activation of GABA(A) receptors. Nat Rev Neurosci 6:215–229

Ferrari MC, Busatto GF, McGuire PK, Crippa JA (2008) Structural magnetic resonance imaging in anxiety disorders: an update of research findings. Rev Bras Psiquiatr 30:251–264

Fisher SK, Novak JE, Agranoff BW (2002) Inositol and higher inositol phosphates in neural tissues: homeostasis, metabolism and functional significance. J Neurochem 82:736–754

Friedman SD, Dager SR, Parow A et al (2004) Lithium and valproic acid treatment effects on brain chemistry in bipolar disorder. Biol Psychiatry 56:340–348

Friedman SD, Mathis CM, Hayes C, Renshaw P, Dager SR (2006) Brain pH response to hyperventilation in panic disorder: preliminary evidence for altered acid-base regulation. Am J Psychiatry 163:710–715

Frye MA, Watzl J, Banakar S et al (2007) Increased anterior cingulate/medial prefrontal cortical glutamate and creatine in bipolar depression. Neuropsychopharmacology 32:2490–2499
Fukuyama H, Ouchi Y, Matsuzaki S et al (1997) Brain functional activity during gait in normal subjects: a SPECT study. Neurosci Lett 228:183–186
Fukuzako H (2001) Neurochemical investigation of the schizophrenic brain by in vivo phosphorus magnetic resonance spectroscopy. World J Biol Psychiatry 2:70–82
Gaetz W, Edgar JC, Wang DJ, Roberts TP (2011) Relating MEG measured motor cortical oscillations to resting gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) concentration. Neuroimage 55:616–621. doi:10.1016/j.neuroimage.2010.12.077
Gasparovic C, Arfai N, Smid N, Feeney DM (2001) Decrease and recovery of N-acetylaspartate/creatine in rat brain remote from focal injury. J Neurotrauma 18:241–246
Geddes JW, Panchalingam K, Keller JN, Pettegrew JW (1997) Elevated phosphocholine and phosphatidylcholine following rat entorhinal cortex lesions. Neurobiol Aging 18:305–308
Gladden LB (2004) Lactate metabolism: a new paradigm for the third millennium. J Physiol 558:5–30
Goddard AW, Mason GF, Almai A et al (2001) Reductions in occipital cortex GABA levels in panic disorder detected with 1H-magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Arch Gen Psychiatry 58:556–561
Goddard AW, Mason GF, Appel M, Rothman DL, Gueorguieva R, Behar KL, Krystal JH (2004) Impaired GABA neuronal response to acute benzodiazepine administration in panic disorder. Am J Psychiatry 161:2186–2193
Gorman JM, Kent JM, Sullivan GM, Coplan JD (2000) Neuroanatomical hypothesis of panic disorder, revised. Am J Psychiatry 157:493–505
Goto N, Yoshimura R, Moriya J et al (2009) Reduction of brain gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) concentrations in early-stage schizophrenia patients: 3T proton MRS study. Schizophr Res 112:192–193
Govindaraju V, Young K, Maudsley AA (2000) Proton NMR chemical shifts and coupling constants for brain metabolites. NMR Biomed 13:129–153
Griffin JL, Bollard M, Nicholson JK, Bhakoo K (2002) Spectral profiles of cultured neuronal and glial cells derived from HRMAS (1)H NMR spectroscopy. NMR Biomed 15:375–384
Gussew A, Rzanny R, Erdtel M, Scholle HC, Kaiser WA, Mentzel HJ, Reichenbach JR (2010) Time-resolved functional 1H MR spectroscopic detection of glutamate concentration changes in the brain during acute heat pain stimulation. Neuroimage 49:1895–1902
Hajek T, Kozeny J, Kopecek M, Alda M, Hoschl C (2008) Reduced subgenual cingulate volumes in mood disorders: a meta-analysis. J Psychiatry Neurosci 33:91–99
Hallcher LM, Sherman WR (1980) The effects of lithium ion and other agents on the activity of myo-inositol-1-phosphatase from bovine brain. J Biol Chem 255:10896–10901
Hamakawa H, Kato T, Murashita J, Kato N (1998) Quantitative proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy of the basal ganglia in patients with affective disorders. Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci 248:53–58
Hancu I (2009) Optimized glutamate detection at 3T. J Magn Reson Imaging 30:1155–1162
Harada M, Kubo H, Nose A, Nishitani H, Matsuda T (2010) Measurement of variation in the human cerebral GABA level by in vivo MEGA-editing proton MR spectroscopy using a clinical 3 T instrument and its dependence on brain region and the female menstrual cycle. Hum Brain Mapp 32:828–833
Hashimoto K, Engberg G, Shimizu E, Nordin C, Lindstrom LH, Iyo M (2005) Elevated glutamine/glutamate ratio in cerebrospinal fluid of first episode and drug naive schizophrenic patients. BMC Psychiatry 5:6
Hashimoto T, Hussien R, Cho HS, Kaufer D, Brooks GA (2008) Evidence for the mitochondrial lactate oxidation complex in rat neurons: demonstration of an essential component of brain lactate shuttles. PLoS ONE 3:e2915
Hasler G, Neumeister A, van der Veen JW et al (2005) Normal prefrontal gamma-aminobutyric acid levels in remitted depressed subjects determined by proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Biol Psychiatry 58:969–973

Hasler G, van der Veen JW, Tumonis T, Meyers N, Shen J, Drevets WC (2007) Reduced prefrontal glutamate/glutamine and gamma-aminobutyric acid levels in major depression determined using proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Arch Gen Psychiatry 64: 193–200

Hasler G, Nugent AC, Carlson PJ, Carson RE, Geraci M, Drevets WC (2008) Altered cerebral gamma-aminobutyric acid type A-benzodiazepine receptor binding in panic disorder determined by [11C]flumazenil positron emission tomography. Arch Gen Psychiatry 65:1166–1175

Hasler G, van der Veen JW, Geraci M, Shen J, Pine D, Drevets WC (2009) Prefrontal cortical gamma-aminobutyric acid levels in panic disorder determined by proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Biol Psychiatry 65:273–275

Hercher C, Turecki G, Mechawar N (2009) Through the looking glass: examining neuroanatomical evidence for cellular alterations in major depression. J Psychiatr Res 43: 947–961

Hertz L (2004) Intercellular metabolic compartmentation in the brain: past, present and future. Neurochem Int 45:285–296

Hertz L (2006) Glutamate, a neurotransmitter—and so much more: a synopsis of Wierzba III. Neurochem Int 48:416–425

Hettema JM, Neale MC, Kendler KS (2001) A review and meta-analysis of the genetic epidemiology of anxiety disorders. Am J Psychiatry 158:1568–1578

Horn DI, Yu C, Steiner J et al (2010) Glutamatergic and resting-state functional connectivity correlates of severity in major depression—the role of pregenual anterior cingulate cortex and anterior insula. Front Syst Neurosci 4:33

Hu Y, Wilson GS (1997) A temporary local energy pool coupled to neuronal activity: fluctuations of extracellular lactate levels in rat brain monitored with rapid-response enzyme-based sensor. J Neurochem 69:1484–1490

Huey ED, Zahn R, Krueger F, Moll J, Kapogiannis D, Wassermann EM, Grafman J (2008) A psychological and neuroanatomical model of obsessive-compulsive disorder. J Neuropsychiatry Clin Neurosci 20:390–408

Iltis I, Koski DM, Eberly LE et al (2009) Neurochemical changes in the rat prefrontal cortex following acute phencyclidine treatment: an in vivo localized (1)H MRS study. NMR Biomed 22:737–744

Iosifescu DV, Bolo NR, Nierenberg AA, Jensen JE, Fava M, Renshaw PF (2008) Brain bioenergetics and response to triiodothyronine augmentation in major depressive disorder. Biol Psychiatry 63:1127–1134

Jaaro-Peled H, Ayhan Y, Pletnikov MV, Sawa A (2010) Review of pathological hallmarks of schizophrenia: comparison of genetic models with patients and nongenetic models. Schizophr Bull 36:301–313

Janaky R, Cruz-Aguado R, Oja SS, Shaw CA (2007) Glutathione in the nervous system: roles in neural function and health and implications for neurological disease. In: Lajtha A, Oja S, Schousboe A, Saransaari P (eds) Handbook of neurochemistry and molecular neurobiology: amino acids and peptides in the nervous system. Springer, New York

Jang JH, Kwon JS, Jang DP et al (2006) A proton MRSI study of brain N-acetylaspartate level after 12 weeks of citalopram treatment in drug-naive patients with obsessive-compulsive disorder. Am J Psychiatry 163:1202–1207

Jensen JE, Miller J, Williamson PC et al (2006) Grey and white matter differences in brain energy metabolism in first episode schizophrenia: 31P-MRS chemical shift imaging at 4 Tesla. Psychiatry Res 146:127–135

Jensen JE, Licata SC, Ongur D, Friedman SD, Prescot AP, Henry ME, Renshaw PF (2009) Quantification of J-resolved proton spectra in two-dimensions with LCModel using GAMMA-simulated basis sets at 4 Tesla. NMR Biomed 22:762–769

Kalra S, Cashman NR, Genge A, Arnold DL (1998) Recovery of N-acetylaspartate in corticomotor neurons of patients with ALS after riluzole therapy. Neuroreport 9:1757–1761

Karl A, Schaefer M, Malta LS, Dorfel D, Rohleder N, Werner A (2006) A meta-analysis of structural brain abnormalities in PTSD. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 30:1004–1031

Karolewicz B, Maciag D, O'Dwyer G, Stockmeier CA, Feyissa AM, Rajkowska G (2010) Reduced level of glutamic acid decarboxylase-67 kDa in the prefrontal cortex in major depression. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 13:411–420

Kato T, Hamakawa H, Shioiri T, Murashita J, Takahashi Y, Takahashi S, Inubushi T (1996) Choline-containing compounds detected by proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy in the basal ganglia in bipolar disorder. J Psychiatry Neurosci 21:248–254

Kauppinen RA, Williams SR (1991) Nondestructive detection of glutamate by 1H nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy in cortical brain slices from the guinea pig: evidence for changes in detectability during severe anoxic insults. J Neurochem 57:1136–1144

Kim H, McGrath BM, Silverstone PH (2005) A review of the possible relevance of inositol and the phosphatidylinositol second messenger system (PI-cycle) to psychiatric disorders—focus on magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS) studies. Hum Psychopharmacol 20:309–326

Klein DF (1993) False suffocation alarms, spontaneous panics, and related conditions: an integrative hypothesis. Arch Gen Psychiatry 50:306–317

Klempan TA, Sequeira A, Canetti L, Lalovic A, Ernst C, Ffrench-Mullen J, Turecki G (2009) Altered expression of genes involved in ATP biosynthesis and GABAergic neurotransmission in the ventral prefrontal cortex of suicides with and without major depression. Mol Psychiatry 14:175–189

Knox D, Perrine SA, George SA, Galloway MP, Liberzon I (2010) Single prolonged stress decreases glutamate, glutamine, and creatine concentrations in the rat medial prefrontal cortex. Neurosci Lett 480:16–20

Koenigs M, Huey ED, Raymont V, Cheon B, Solomon J, Wassermann EM, Grafman J (2008) Focal brain damage protects against post-traumatic stress disorder in combat veterans. Nat Neurosci 11:232–237

Koga Y, Takahashi H, Oikawa D, Tachibana T, Denbow DM, Furuse M (2005) Brain creatine functions to attenuate acute stress responses through GABAnergic system in chicks. Neuroscience 132:65–71

Konarski JZ, McIntyre RS, Kennedy SH, Rafi-Tari S, Soczynska JK, Ketter TA (2008) Volumetric neuroimaging investigations in mood disorders: bipolar disorder versus major depressive disorder. Bipolar Disord 10:1–37

Kondo DG, Hellem TL, Sung YH et al (2011) Review: magnetic resonance spectroscopy studies of pediatric major depressive disorder. Depress Res Treat 2011:650450

Kosenko E, Llansola M, Montoliu C et al (2003) Glutamine synthetase activity and glutamine content in brain: modulation by NMDA receptors and nitric oxide. Neurochem Int 43:493–499

Krishnan V, Nestler EJ (2008) The molecular neurobiology of depression. Nature 455:894–902

Lan MJ, McLoughlin GA, Griffin JL et al (2009) Metabonomic analysis identifies molecular changes associated with the pathophysiology and drug treatment of bipolar disorder. Mol Psychiatry 14:269–279

Layton ME, Friedman SD, Dager SR (2001) Brain metabolic changes during lactate-induced panic: effects of gabapentin treatment. Dep Anxiety 14:251–254

Lei H, Berthet C, Hirt L, Gruetter R (2009) Evolution of the neurochemical profile after transient focal cerebral ischemia in the mouse brain. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 29:811–819

Liberzon I, Sripada CS (2008) The functional neuroanatomy of PTSD: a critical review. Prog Brain Res 167:151–169

Lisman JE, Coyle JT, Green RW, Javitt DC, Benes FM, Heckers S, Grace AA (2008) Circuit-based framework for understanding neurotransmitter and risk gene interactions in schizophrenia. Trends Neurosci 31:234–242

Maciag D, Hughes J, O'Dwyer G, Pride Y, Stockmeier CA, Sanacora G, Rajkowska G (2010) Reduced density of calbindin immunoreactive GABAergic neurons in the occipital cortex in major depression: relevance to neuroimaging studies. Biol Psychiatry 67:465–470

Maciejewski PK, Rothman DL (2008) Proposed cycles for functional glutamate trafficking in synaptic neurotransmission. Neurochem Int 52:809–825

MacMaster FP, Moore GJ, Russell A, Mirza Y, Taormina SP, Buhagiar C, Rosenberg DR (2008) Medial temporal N-acetyl-aspartate in pediatric major depression. Psychiatry Res 164:86–89

Maddock RJ (2001) The lactic acid response to alkalosis in panic disorder: an integrative review. J Neuropsychiatry Clin Neurosci 13:22–34

Maddock RJ, Buonocore MH (2008) Measuring brain lactate at rest and during visual stimulation. Psychiatry Res 162:175–179

Maddock RJ, Buonocore MH (2010) Abnormal metabolic activation of fear and arousal responses as a model of vulnerability to panic disorder. In: Anxiety disorders association of America annual meeting, Baltimore, MA

Maddock RJ, Buonocore MH, Lavoie SP, Copeland LE, Kile SJ, Richards AL, Ryan JM (2006) Brain lactate responses during visual stimulation in fasting and hyperglycemic subjects: a proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy study at 1.5 Tesla. Psychiatry Research: Neuroimaging 148: 47–54

Maddock RJ, Buonocore MH, Copeland LE, Richards AL (2009) Elevated brain lactate responses to neural activation in panic disorder: a dynamic 1H-MRS study. Mol Psychiatry 14:537–545

Maddock RJ, Casazza GA, Buonocore MH, Tanase C (2011) Vigorous exercise increases brain lactate and Glx (glutamate + glutamine): a dynamic 1H-MRS study. Neuroimage. doi:10.1016/j.neuroimage.2011.05.048

Mangia S, Tkac I, Gruetter R, Van de Moortele PF, Maraviglia B, Ugurbil K (2007) Sustained neuronal activation raises oxidative metabolism to a new steady-state level: evidence from 1H NMR spectroscopy in the human visual cortex. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 27:1055–1063

Manji HK, Moore GJ, Chen G (2000) Clinical and preclinical evidence for the neurotrophic effects of mood stabilizers: implications for the pathophysiology and treatment of manic-depressive illness. Biol Psychiatry 48:740–754

Mann EO, Mody I (2010) Control of hippocampal gamma oscillation frequency by tonic inhibition and excitation of interneurons. Nat Neurosci 13:205–212

Mescher M, Merkle H, Kirsch J, Garwood M, Gruetter R (1998) Simultaneous in vivo spectral editing and water suppression. NMR Biomed 11:266–272

Meyer LE, Machado LB, Santiago AP et al (2006) Mitochondrial creatine kinase activity prevents reactive oxygen species generation: antioxidant role of mitochondrial kinase-dependent ADP re-cycling activity. J Biol Chem 281:37361–37371

Meyerhoff DJ, MacKay S, Bachman L, Poole N, Dillon WP, Weiner MW, Fein G (1993) Reduced brain N-acetylaspartate suggests neuronal loss in cognitively impaired human immunodeficiency virus-seropositive individuals: in vivo 1H magnetic resonance spectroscopic imaging. Neurology 43:509–515

Meyer-Lindenberg A (2010) From maps to mechanisms through neuroimaging of schizophrenia. Nature 468:194–202

Michael N, Erfurth A, Ohrmann P, Arolt V, Heindel W, Pfleiderer B (2003a) Neurotrophic effects of electroconvulsive therapy: a proton magnetic resonance study of the left amygdalar region in patients with treatment-resistant depression. Neuropsychopharmacology 28:720–725

Michael N, Erfurth A, Ohrmann P, Gossling M, Arolt V, Heindel W, Pfleiderer B (2003b) Acute mania is accompanied by elevated glutamate/glutamine levels within the left dorsolateral prefrontal cortex. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 168:344–346

Michael N, Erfurth A, Pfleiderer B (2009) Elevated metabolites within dorsolateral prefrontal cortex in rapid cycling bipolar disorder. Psychiatry Res 172:78–81

Miguel-Hidalgo JJ, Waltzer R, Whittom AA, Austin MC, Rajkowska G, Stockmeier CA (2010) Glial and glutamatergic markers in depression, alcoholism, and their comorbidity. J Affect Disord 127:230–240

Moffett JR, Ross B, Arun P, Madhavarao CN, Namboodiri AM (2007) N-Acetylaspartate in the CNS: from neurodiagnostics to neurobiology. Prog Neurobiol 81:89–131

Mohamed MA, Smith MA, Schlund MW, Nestadt G, Barker PB, Hoehn-Saric R (2007) Proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy in obsessive-compulsive disorder: a pilot investigation comparing treatment responders and non-responders. Psychiatry Res 156:175–179

Moore CM, Christensen JD, Lafer B, Fava M, Renshaw PF (1997) Lower levels of nucleoside triphosphate in the basal ganglia of depressed subjects: a phosphorous-31 magnetic resonance spectroscopy study. Am J Psychiatry 154:116–118

Moore GJ, Bebchuk JM, Hasanat K et al (2000) Lithium increases N-acetyl-aspartate in the human brain: in vivo evidence in support of bcl-2's neurotrophic effects? Biol Psychiatry 48:1–8
Mullins PG, Rowland LM, Jung RE, Sibbitt WL Jr (2005) A novel technique to study the brain's response to pain: proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Neuroimage 26:642–646
Muthukumaraswamy SD, Edden RA, Jones DK, Swettenham JB, Singh KD (2009) Resting GABA concentration predicts peak gamma frequency and fMRI amplitude in response to visual stimulation in humans. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:8356–8361
Narayanan S, De Stefano N, Francis GS et al (2001) Axonal metabolic recovery in multiple sclerosis patients treated with interferon beta-1b. J Neurol 248:979–986
Neale JH, Bzdega T, Wroblewska B (2000) N-Acetylaspartylglutamate: the most abundant peptide neurotransmitter in the mammalian central nervous system. J Neurochem 75:443–452
O'Donnell T, Rotzinger S, Ulrich M, Hanstock CC, Nakashima TT, Silverstone PH (2003) Effects of chronic lithium and sodium valproate on concentrations of brain amino acids. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 13:220–227
Ongur D, Jensen JE, Prescot AP, Stork C, Lundy M, Cohen BM, Renshaw PF (2008) Abnormal glutamatergic neurotransmission and neuronal-glial interactions in acute mania. Biol Psychiatry 64:718–726
Ongur D, Prescot AP, McCarthy J, Cohen BM, Renshaw PF (2010) Elevated gamma-aminobutyric acid levels in chronic schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 68:667–670
Pae CU, Choe BY, Joo RH et al (2004) Neuronal dysfunction of the frontal lobe in schizophrenia. Neuropsychobiology 50:211–215
Pajonk FG, Wobrock T, Gruber O et al (2010) Hippocampal plasticity in response to exercise in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 67:133–143
Patel NC, DelBello MP, Cecil KM, Adler CM, Bryan HS, Stanford KE, Strakowski SM (2006) Lithium treatment effects on myo-inositol in adolescents with bipolar depression. Biol Psychiatry 60:998–1004
Patel NC, DelBello MP, Cecil KM, Stanford KE, Adler CM, Strakowski SM (2008) Temporal change in N-acetyl-aspartate concentrations in adolescents with bipolar depression treated with lithium. J Child Adolesc Psychopharmacol 18:132–139
Pauls DL (2010) The genetics of obsessive-compulsive disorder: a review. Dialogues Clin Neurosci 12:149–163
Pellerin L, Bouzier-Sore AK, Aubert A, Serres S, Merle M, Costalat R, Magistretti PJ (2007) Activity-dependent regulation of energy metabolism by astrocytes: an update. Glia 55:1251–1262
Petroff OA, Prichard JW, Behar KL, Alger JR, den Hollander JA, Shulman RG (1985) Cerebral intracellular pH by 31P nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Neurology 35:781–788
Petroff OA, Hyder F, Rothman DL, Mattson RH (2001) Topiramate rapidly raises brain GABA in epilepsy patients. Epilepsia 42:543–548
Pierre K, Pellerin L (2005) Monocarboxylate transporters in the central nervous system: distribution, regulation and function. J Neurochem 94:1–14
Port JD, Unal SS, Mrazek DA, Marcus SM (2008) Metabolic alterations in medication-free patients with bipolar disorder: a 3T CSF-corrected magnetic resonance spectroscopic imaging study. Psychiatry Res 162:113–121
Pouwels PJ, Frahm J (1997) Differential distribution of NAA and NAAG in human brain as determined by quantitative localized proton MRS. NMR Biomed 10:73–78
Premkumar P, Parbhakar VA, Fannon D, Lythgoe D, Williams SC, Kuipers E, Kumari V (2010) N-acetyl aspartate concentration in the anterior cingulate cortex in patients with schizophrenia: a study of clinical and neuropsychological correlates and preliminary exploration of cognitive behaviour therapy effects. Psychiatry Res 182:251–260
Price RB, Shungu DC, Mao X et al (2009) Amino acid neurotransmitters assessed by proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy: relationship to treatment resistance in major depressive disorder. Biol Psychiatry 65:792–800
Prichard J, Rothman D, Novotny E et al (1991) Lactate rise detected by 1H NMR in human visual cortex during physiologic stimulation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 88:5829–5831

Protopopescu X, Pan H, Tuescher O et al (2006) Increased brainstem volume in panic disorder: a voxel-based morphometric study. Neuroreport 17:361–363

Qu Y, Massie A, Van der Gucht E et al (2003) Retinal lesions affect extracellular glutamate levels in sensory-deprived and remote non-deprived regions of cat area 17 as revealed by in vivo microdialysis. Brain Res 962:199–206

Quiroz JA, Machado-Vieira R, Zarate CA Jr, Manji HK (2010) Novel insights into lithium's mechanism of action: neurotrophic and neuroprotective effects. Neuropsychobiology 62: 50–60

Radua J, Mataix-Cols D (2009) Voxel-wise meta-analysis of grey matter changes in obsessive-compulsive disorder. Br J Psychiatry 195:393–402

Radua J, van den Heuvel OA, Surguladze S, Mataix-Cols D (2010) Meta-analytical comparison of voxel-based morphometry studies in obsessive-compulsive disorder vs other anxiety disorders. Arch Gen Psychiatry 67:701–711

Rajkowska G, O'Dwyer G, Teleki Z, Stockmeier CA, Miguel-Hidalgo JJ (2007) GABAergic neurons immunoreactive for calcium binding proteins are reduced in the prefrontal cortex in major depression. Neuropsychopharmacology 32:471–482

Reynolds LM, Reynolds GP (2011) Differential regional N-acetylaspartate deficits in postmortem brain in schizophrenia, bipolar disorder and major depressive disorder. J Psychiatr Res 45: 54–59

Rodrigo R, Felipo V (2007) Control of brain glutamine synthesis by NMDA receptors. Front Biosci 12:883–890

Roelants-Van Rijn AM, van der Grond J, de Vries LS, Groenendaal F (2001) Value of (1)H-MRS using different echo times in neonates with cerebral hypoxia-ischemia. Pediatr Res 49:356–362

Rotge JY, Guehl D, Dilharreguy B et al (2009) Meta-analysis of brain volume changes in obsessive-compulsive disorder. Biol Psychiatry 65:75–83

Rothman DL, Behar KL, Hyder F, Shulman RG (2003) In vivo NMR studies of the glutamate neurotransmitter flux and neuroenergetics: implications for brain function. Annu Rev Physiol 65:401–427

Rowland LM, Bustillo JR, Mullins PG et al (2005) Effects of ketamine on anterior cingulate glutamate metabolism in healthy humans: a 4-T proton MRS study. Am J Psychiatry 162: 394–396

Royes LF, Fighera MR, Furian AF et al (2008) Neuromodulatory effect of creatine on extracellular action potentials in rat hippocampus: role of NMDA receptors. Neurochem Int 53:33–37

Salo R, Buonocore MH, Leamon M et al (2011) Extended findings of brain metabolite normalization in MA-dependent subjects across sustained abstinence: a proton MRS study. Drug Alcohol Depend 113:133–138

Sanacora G, Mason GF, Rothman DL et al (1999) Reduced cortical gamma-aminobutyric acid levels in depressed patients determined by proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Arch Gen Psychiatry 56:1043–1047

Sanacora G, Mason GF, Rothman DL, Krystal JH (2002) Increased occipital cortex GABA concentrations in depressed patients after therapy with selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors. Am J Psychiatry 159:663–665

Sanacora G, Mason GF, Rothman DL et al (2003) Increased cortical GABA concentrations in depressed patients receiving ECT. Am J Psychiatry 160:577–579

Sanacora G, Gueorguieva R, Epperson CN et al (2004) Subtype-specific alterations of gamma-aminobutyric acid and glutamate in patients with major depression. Arch Gen Psychiatry 61:705–713

Sanacora G, Fenton LR, Fasula MK, Rothman DL, Levin Y, Krystal JH, Mason GF (2006) Cortical gamma-aminobutyric acid concentrations in depressed patients receiving cognitive behavioral therapy. Biol Psychiatry 59:284–286

Sappey-Marinier D, Calabrese G, Fein G, Hugg JW, Biggins C, Weiner MW (1992) Effect of photic stimulation on human visual cortex lactate and phosphates using 1H and 31P magnetic resonance spectroscopy. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 12:584–592

Savitz J, Drevets WC (2009) Bipolar and major depressive disorder: neuroimaging the developmental-degenerative divide. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 33:699–771

Schmidt H, Schwaller B, Eilers J (2005) Calbindin D28k targets myo-inositol monophosphatase in spines and dendrites of cerebellar Purkinje neurons. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102: 5850–5855

Schuff N, Neylan TC, Fox-Bosetti S et al (2008) Abnormal N-acetylaspartate in hippocampus and anterior cingulate in posttraumatic stress disorder. Psychiatry Res 162:147–157

Selemon LD, Goldman-Rakic PS (1999) The reduced neuropil hypothesis: a circuit based model of schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 45:17–25

Senaratne R, Milne AM, MacQueen GM, Hall GB (2009) Increased choline-containing compounds in the orbitofrontal cortex and hippocampus in euthymic patients with bipolar disorder: a proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy study. Psychiatry Res 172:205–209

Sequeira A, Mamdani F, Ernst C et al (2009) Global brain gene expression analysis links glutamatergic and GABAergic alterations to suicide and major depression. PLoS One 4:e6585

Shibuya-Tayoshi S, Tayoshi S, Sumitani S, Ueno S, Harada M, Ohmori T (2008) Lithium effects on brain glutamatergic and GABAergic systems of healthy volunteers as measured by proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 32:249–256

Shirayama Y, Obata T, Matsuzawa D et al (2010) Specific metabolites in the medial prefrontal cortex are associated with the neurocognitive deficits in schizophrenia: a preliminary study. Neuroimage 49:2783–2790

Siegmund A, Kaltwasser SF, Holsboer F, Czisch M, Wotjak CT (2009) Hippocampal N-acetylaspartate levels before trauma predict the development of long-lasting posttraumatic stress disorder-like symptoms in mice. Biol Psychiatry 65:258–262

Signoretti S, Di Pietro V, Vagnozzi R et al (2010) Transient alterations of creatine, creatine phosphate, N-acetylaspartate and high-energy phosphates after mild traumatic brain injury in the rat. Mol Cell Biochem 333:269–277

Silverstone PH, McGrath BM (2009) Lithium and valproate and their possible effects on themyo-inositol second messenger system in healthy volunteers and bipolar patients. Int Rev Psychiatry 21:414–423

Smesny S, Rosburg T, Nenadic I et al (2007) Metabolic mapping using 2D 31P-MR spectroscopy reveals frontal and thalamic metabolic abnormalities in schizophrenia. Neuroimage 35:729–737

Smith EA, Russell A, Lorch E et al (2003) Increased medial thalamic choline found in pediatric patients with obsessive-compulsive disorder versus major depression or healthy control subjects: a magnetic resonance spectroscopy study. Biol Psychiatry 54:1399–1405

Star-Lack J, Spielman D, Adalsteinsson E, Kurhanewicz J, Terris DJ, Vigneron DB (1998) In vivo lactate editing with simultaneous detection of choline, creatine, NAA, and lipid singlets at 1.5 T using PRESS excitation with applications to the study of brain and head and neck tumors. J Magn Reson 133:243–254

Steen RG, Hamer RM, Lieberman JA (2005) Measurement of brain metabolites by 1H magnetic resonance spectroscopy in patients with schizophrenia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Neuropsychopharmacology 30:1949–1962

Stone JM (2009) Imaging the glutamate system in humans: relevance to drug discovery for schizophrenia. Curr Pharm Des 15:2594–2602

Stork C, Renshaw PF (2005) Mitochondrial dysfunction in bipolar disorder: evidence from magnetic resonance spectroscopy research. Mol Psychiatry 10:900–919

Taylor MJ, Selvaraj S, Norbury R, Jezzard P, Cowen PJ (2009) Normal glutamate but elevated myo-inositol in anterior cingulate cortex in recovered depressed patients. J Affect Disord 119:186–189

Tayoshi S, Nakataki M, Sumitani S et al (2011) GABA concentration in schizophrenia patients and the effects of antipsychotic medication: a proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy study. Schizophr Res 117:83–91

Theberge J, Bartha R, Drost DJ et al (2002) Glutamate and glutamine measured with 4.0 T proton MRS in never-treated patients with schizophrenia and healthy volunteers. Am J Psychiatry 159:1944–1946

Theberge J, Al-Semaan Y, Williamson PC et al (2003) Glutamate and glutamine in the anterior cingulate and thalamus of medicated patients with chronic schizophrenia and healthy comparison subjects measured with 4.0-T proton MRS. Am J Psychiatry 160:2231–2233

Trzesniak C, Araujo D, Crippa JAS (2008) Magnetic resonance spectroscopy in anxiety disorders. Acta Neuropsychiatr 20:56–71

Uchida RR, Del-Ben CM, Busatto GF et al (2008) Regional gray matter abnormalities in panic disorder: a voxel-based morphometry study. Psychiatry Res 163:21–29

Uhlhaas PJ, Singer W (2010) Abnormal neural oscillations and synchrony in schizophrenia. Nat Rev Neurosci 11:100–113

Urenjak J, Williams SR, Gadian DG, Noble M (1993) Proton nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy unambiguously identifies different neural cell types. J Neurosci 13:981–989

Valentine GW, Sanacora G (2009) Targeting glial physiology and glutamate cycling in the treatment of depression. Biochem Pharmacol 78:431–439

van Tol MJ, van der Wee NJ, van den Heuvel OA et al (2010) Regional brain volume in depression and anxiety disorders. Arch Gen Psychiatry 67:1002–1011

Volz HP, Rzanny R, Riehemann S et al (1998) 31P magnetic resonance spectroscopy in the frontal lobe of major depressed patients. Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci 248:289–295

Waagepetersen HS, Sonnewald U, Schousboe A (2007) Glutamine, Glutamate, and GABA: metabolic aspects. In: Lajtha A, Oja S, Schousboe A, Saransaari P (eds) Handbook of neurochemistry and molecular neurobiology: amino acids and peptides in the nervous system. Springer, New York, pp 1–21

Walter M, Henning A, Grimm S et al (2009) The relationship between aberrant neuronal activation in the pregenual anterior cingulate, altered glutamatergic metabolism, and anhedonia in major depression. Arch Gen Psychiatry 66:478–486

Weber OM, Verhagen A, Duc CO, Meier D, Leenders KL, Boesiger P (1999) Effects of vigabatrin intake on brain GABA activity as monitored by spectrally edited magnetic resonance spectroscopy and positron emission tomography. Magn Reson Imaging 17:417–425

Williams RS, Cheng L, Mudge AW, Harwood AJ (2002) A common mechanism of action for three mood-stabilizing drugs. Nature 417:292–295

Winsberg ME, Sachs N, Tate DL, Adalsteinsson E, Spielman D, Ketter TA (2000) Decreased dorsolateral prefrontal N-acetyl aspartate in bipolar disorder. Biol Psychiatry 47:475–481

Wright IC, Rabe-Hesketh S, Woodruff PW, David AS, Murray RM, Bullmore ET (2000) Meta-analysis of regional brain volumes in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 157:16–25

Wu Y, Wang W, Diez-Sampedro A, Richerson GB (2007) Nonvesicular inhibitory neurotransmission via reversal of the GABA transporter GAT-1. Neuron 56:851–865

Yacubian J, de Castro CC, Ometto M et al (2002) 31P-spectroscopy of frontal lobe in schizophrenia: alterations in phospholipid and high-energy phosphate metabolism. Schizophr Res 58:117–122

Yang D, Xie Z, Stephenson D et al (2011) Volumetric MRI and MRS provide sensitive measures of Alzheimer's disease neuropathology in inducible Tau transgenic mice (rTg4510). Neuroimage 54:2652−2658

Yildiz A, Sachs GS, Dorer DJ, Renshaw PF (2001) 31P Nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy findings in bipolar illness: a meta-analysis. Psychiatry Res 106:181–191

Yildiz-Yesiloglu A, Ankerst DP (2006a) Neurochemical alterations of the brain in bipolar disorder and their implications for pathophysiology: a systematic review of the in vivo proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy findings. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 30:969–995

Yildiz-Yesiloglu A, Ankerst DP (2006b) Review of 1H magnetic resonance spectroscopy findings in major depressive disorder: a meta-analysis. Psychiatry Res 147:1–25

Yoon JH, Rokem AS, Silver MA, Minzenberg MJ, Ursu S, Ragland JD, Carter CS (2009) Diminished orientation-specific surround suppression of visual processing in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 35:1078–1084

Yoon JH, Maddock RJ, Rokem A, Silver MA, Minzenberg MJ, Ragland JD, Carter CS (2010a) GABA concentration is reduced in visual cortex in schizophrenia and correlates with orientation-specific surround suppression. J Neurosci 30:3777–3781

Yoon SJ, Lyoo IK, Kim HJ et al (2010b) Neurochemical alterations in methamphetamine-dependent patients treated with cytidine-5′-diphosphate choline: a longitudinal proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy study. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:1165–1173

Yucel M, Harrison BJ, Wood SJ et al (2007) Functional and biochemical alterations of the medial frontal cortex in obsessive-compulsive disorder. Arch Gen Psychiatry 64:946–955

Yue Q, Shibata Y, Isobe T, Anno I, Kawamura H, Gong QY, Matsumura A (2009) Absolute choline concentration measured by quantitative proton MR spectroscopy correlates with cell density in meningioma. Neuroradiology 51:61–67

Yuksel C, Ongur D (2010) Magnetic resonance spectroscopy studies of glutamate-related abnormalities in mood disorders. Biol Psychiatry 68:785–794

Zarate CA Jr, Singh JB, Carlson PJ et al (2006) A randomized trial of an N-methyl-D-aspartate antagonist in treatment-resistant major depression. Arch Gen Psychiatry 63:856–864

Ziemann AE, Allen JE, Dahdaleh NS et al (2009) The amygdala is a chemosensor that detects carbon dioxide and acidosis to elicit fear behavior. Cell 139:1012–1021

Zink M, Vollmayr B, Gebicke-Haerter PJ, Henn FA (2010) Reduced expression of glutamate transporters vGluT1, EAAT2 and EAAT4 in learned helpless rats, an animal model of depression. Neuropharmacology 58:465–473

fMRI as a Measure of Cognition Related Brain Circuitry in Schizophrenia

Laura A. Libby and J. Daniel Ragland

Abstract Functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) has played a prominent role in the quest to identify the brain systems responsible for cognitive dysfunction in schizophrenia. This chapter describes the evolution of these research efforts, which have alternated between efforts to localize specific cognitive impairments to work trying to understand broader network dysfunction. After a concise summary of localization efforts, the remainder of the chapter describes how different groups of scientists have developed and tested broader network theories. This includes a description of both task-activation and resting state studies, and involves a wide array of analytic techniques. The chapter closes with an understanding of how current default-mode and task-positive network theories grew out of these earlier resting-state and task-activation approaches, and provides some recommendations about future directions.

Keywords Functional neuroimaging · Human brain mapping · Brain physiology · Psychosis · Cognitive neuroscience

Contents

L. A. Libby · J. D. Ragland (✉)
Departments of Psychology and Psychiatry,
University of California at Davis, Davis, CA, USA
e-mail: jdragland@ucdavis.edu

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 253–267
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2011_173

Published Online: 22 November 2011

1 Introduction

From the beginning of functional imaging research on cognition in schizophrenia, scientists have oscillated between functional localization approaches designed to map the pathophysiology of schizophrenia to discrete brain regions and cognitive functions, and functional integration approaches attempting to demonstrate how a broader breakdown in communication between multiple brain regions may explain disordered cognition in schizophrenia. Fortunately, these two worlds often collide—providing us with a more nuanced understanding of how information processing goes awry in the brains of individuals diagnosed with schizophrenia. The goal of this chapter is to describe how studies examining group differences in broader network activity (e.g., functional connectivity) grew out of initial studies designed to functionally segregate distinct areas of task-related activation. In so doing, we will briefly touch upon what has been learned from focal activation studies, including references to recent quantitative meta-analyses. However, these focal activation studies have been extensively reviewed (Ragland et al. 2007; Brown and Thompson 2010; Gur and Gur 2010), and the primary focus of this chapter will be on functional integration approaches—beginning with functional connectivity analyses using regions of interest (ROI) during active task conditions, moving to multivariate approaches aimed at examining resting default mode network (DMN) and activated task positive network (TPN) states, and ending with a discussion of more recent approaches employing multi-modal functional and anatomical imaging techniques.

2 Functional Localization

Functional imaging of individuals with schizophrenia has traced an interesting circle, from resting state, to "activation" studies employing task paradigms, and back again to resting studies. The first functional imaging study to localize pathology in schizophrenia was performed by Ingvar and Franzen (1974) who used ^{133}Xenon blood flow (rCBF) during resting state to demonstrate that, compared to healthy participants, individuals with schizophrenia had relatively lower flows in the frontal cortex (i.e., "hypofrontality"), and higher flows in occipito-temporal regions. However, this resting hypofrontality was not always replicated (Gur et al. 1987a, b), leading to a refinement of the model, stressing that, "hypofrontality appears to be dependent on the behavioral state of the patients during the brain imaging experiment" (Weinberger et al. 1991, p. 276). This refinement emphasized the importance of using the subtraction technique to contrast activity during a task state with activity during a baseline condition designed to constrain what subjects were thinking about, and isolate brain regions responsible for the specific function that the task was designed to measure. The power of this approach had previously been demonstrated by Peterson et al., in a word fluency study (Posner et al. 1988), and was widely embraced by the schizophrenia research community.

Since this transition from initial resting state studies, activation paradigms have measured the impact of schizophrenia on regional brain function during a wide array of cognitive, sensory, and emotional processing tasks, leading to over 800 references in a recent PubMed search. These studies initially struggled with group performance differences that confounded interpretation of physiological differences. This difficulty was largely overcome with the development of event-related designs (Zarahn et al. 1997), which allowed one to follow recommendations (Carter et al. 2008) to restrict analysis to correct only trials. The difficulty of reviewing such a vast literature was somewhat simplified with the development of a quantitative meta-analytic technique termed Activation Likelihood Estimation (Turkeltaub et al. 2002; Laird et al. 2005). ALE measures the probability that spatially smoothed activation foci from individual studies occur across multiple studies, and tests the null hypothesis that the location of these activated foci is equal at every voxel, against an alternative hypothesis that activated foci are spatially distributed. To date, we are aware of six studies that have used ALE to perform meta-analyses of functional imaging studies of schizophrenia.

The first three ALE analyses examined working and episodic memory studies, respectively. In the first analysis, Glahn et al. (2005) examined working memory studies employing the N-Back task, and found predicted reductions in dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (DLPFC) activity in patients during task performance. However, patient reductions were not restricted to the DLPFC, extending to more rostral and ventrolateral/insular portions of the prefrontal cortex (PFC). Moreover, there was evidence of patient "overactivation" in the frontal pole, dorsomedial prefrontal cortex, and anterior cingulate gyrus, leading the authors to conclude that working memory dysfunction in schizophrenia cannot be classified as a simple DLPFC deficit, but should be considered in the context of the larger network of activity engaged by the task. Subsequent analyses of episodic memory encoding and retrieval studies also showed areas of both under- and over-activation in patients across multiple brain regions (see Fig. 1). Reduced activation in patients was observed in multiple areas of the PFC including dorsolateral and ventrolateral prefrontal cortex (VLPFC) (Achim and Lepage 2005; Ragland et al. 2009), and in non-prefrontal regions including the medial temporal lobe (Achim and Lepage 2005), thalamus (Ragland et al. 2009) and posterior cingulate gyrus (Achim and Lepage 2005; Ragland et al. 2009). Both analyses found that patients abnormally increased parahippocampal activation during episodic retrieval, and the study by Ragland et al. (2009) found that group differences in VLPFC activity were not present in studies that provided subjects with encoding instructions—thereby reducing strategic memory demands.

The three remaining ALE studies also found a distributed pattern of group differences. In an examination of a variety of executive function tasks Minzenberg et al. (2009) and Li et al. (2010) found patient reductions in the DLPFC, posterior cingulate gyrus, rostral and dorsal anterior cingulate gyrus and thalamus, and patient increases in pre-supplementary motor area and inferior parietal cortex. A study of facial emotion processing (Li et al. 2010) found patient over-activation in the insula, and patient underactivation in the amygdala, parahippocampal gyrus, fusiform gyrus, superior frontal gyrus, and lentiform nucleus. Finally, analysis of

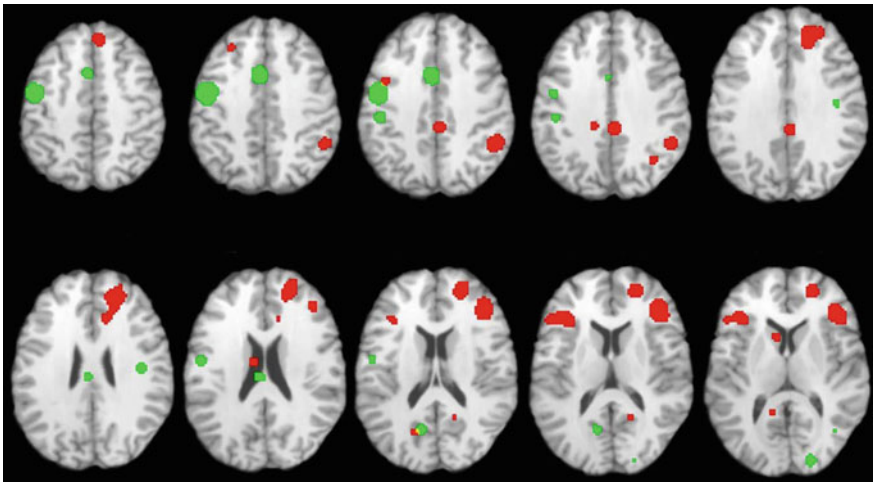


Fig. 1 Illustration of group differences in fMRI activation during memory encoding in healthy participants and patients with schizophrenia based upon an activation likelihood estimation (ALE) meta-analysis of seven previously published studies. Areas of greater activation in healthy participants versus patients are indicated in red, and areas of greater activation in patients versus healthy participants are indicated in green. Image is adapted from original figure published in Ragland et al. (2009)

three studies of time perception (Ortuño et al. 2011), found that patients had reduced activation in middle and superior frontal gyrus, precentral gyrus, lentiform nucleus, thalamus, precuneus, and anterior cingulate, and did not show any areas of atypically increased activation.

As can be appreciated from this review of ALE studies, functional imaging research of schizophrenia using task paradigms and univariate statistical approaches has failed to reveal a "smoking gun" in which dysfunction of a single brain region can fully explain group differences in task performance. This should probably not come as a surprise as the behaviors most commonly impacted by and studied in schizophrenia (e.g., attention, memory, executive control) are multi-factorial—requiring integration of multiple brain regions. Moreover, even if a functional deficit is secondary to impairment of a single brain region, such a focal lesion would likely produce downstream effects on other brain areas, making it difficult to isolate group differences to a single location. There have been two primary responses to the challenges of functional localization. One has been to try to improve localization procedures by translating cognitive neuroscience paradigms designed to identify specific neural mechanisms into clinical studies that can more precisely map brain-behavior relationships. This approach holds great promise and is being developed for clinical trials research to discover new cognitive-enhancing agents, and is being facilitated by the NIH sponsored CNTRICS initiative begun in 2007 (Carter and Barch 2007). The second approach, and the focus of the remainder of this chapter, has been to employ multivariate statistical approaches designed to characterize the impact of schizophrenia on broader network activity.

3 Early Network Theories

One year after Ingvar and Franzen (1974) posited their "hypofrontality" hypothesis, they speculated that their results could be explained by disrupted transmission in a mediothalamic-frontocortical projection system (Franzén and Ingvar 1975) rather than disruption in a single brain region. The notion of disrupted integration of brain activity in schizophrenia was not formally tested until almost 10 years later when Clark et al. (1984) calculated Pearson correlations in positron emission tomography (PET) glucose metabolism between specified ROIs during electrical stimulation (mild shock) versus resting baseline conditions. In a descriptive comparison of patient and control groups, they found that the strong frontal coupling observed in healthy volunteers appeared reduced in the patient sample. Patients also appeared to show reduced anterior–posterior coupling in the left hemisphere and reduced bilateral coupling within anterior brain regions. Group differences in PET regional metabolic correlations were more rigorously tested several years later by Volkow et al. (1988) who employed resting and smooth pursuit eye movement conditions, and tested whether the overall pattern of regional correlations differed between patients and controls using the Kullback procedure. This analysis revealed that patients had a global decrease in the number of significant correlations, which was descriptively characterized as reduced anterior–posterior and cortico-thalamic correlations.

These initial correlational results, combined with clinical speculations that hallucinations and delusions might result from abnormal integration between different brain regions, led Friston and Frith (1995) to propose that schizophrenia may best be characterized as a disconnection syndrome. In this word production study, investigators adapted methodology developed in electrophysiological research to create a measure of functional connectivity defined as, "the temporal correlation between spatially remote neurophysiological events." (Friston and Frith 1995). By using a stepwise regression-like procedure to identify patterns of functional connectivity between all of the voxels in the brain (i.e., eigenimages) the investigators found that the majority of the covariance in the time-series was captured by a negative interaction between prefrontal and superior temporal cortex in healthy controls during the word production task. In contrast, patients showed a positive correlation in fronto-temporal connectivity, leading the authors to conclude that schizophrenia is characterized by a reversal in typical prefrontal and temporal lobe integration. In a subsequent paper, Andreasen et al. (1996) reviewed a number of their previous PET activation studies to argue that this disconnection syndrome is not limited to the frontal and temporal lobe, and extends to a broader failure of integration between prefrontal–thalamic–cerebellar circuitry (termed "cognitive dysmetria"). The disconnection syndrome and cognitive dysmetria hypotheses provided a theoretical foundation for subsequent functional connectivity studies.

4 Task-Related Functional Connectivity

Prior to 2006 when researchers began to investigate resting-state networks, functional connectivity studies of schizophrenia examined group differences in network activity while participants performed various task activation paradigms. Several of these studies used working memory tasks, including the first study by Meyer-Lindenberg et al. (2001) who had healthy participants and patients with schizophrenia perform an N-Back working memory task and a sensorimotor baseline during PET rCBF imaging. As in the previous Friston and Frith (1995) study eigenimages were generated to characterize the variance–covariance matrix of the time-series. These eigenimages were created for a prespecified set of prefrontal, temporal, and parietal ROIs based on task activation results. The pattern that captured the most variance was negative relationships among the temporal cortex, hippocampus, and cerebellum in patients, and a positive relationship between the DLPFC and cingulate gyrus in healthy controls. This group dissociation in functional connectivity remained regardless of task condition, leading the authors to conclude that disruption of fronto-temporal interactions appears to be a trait marker of schizophrenia.

In the late 1990s the field transitioned from PET rCBF to blood oxygen level-dependent (BOLD) fMRI imaging procedures, which provided investigators with better temporal resolution, allowing implementation of new methods to examine functional connectivity. These subsequent fMRI studies examined functional connectivity with a variety of task paradigms. As a test of the disconnection syndrome hypothesis Lawrie et al. (2002) examined correlations between DLPFC and superior temporal gyrus (STG) ROIs in patients and controls while subjects performed a sentence completion task during fMRI. In support of the hypothesis of fronto-temporal disconnection, they found that left fronto-temporal correlations were reduced in schizophrenia, and showed greater reductions for patients with more severe hallucinations. The next study used a somewhat different analytical approach termed psychophysiological interaction analysis (PPI), which examined how correlations between BOLD signal activity in a "seed" region in the right anterior cingulate gyrus (ACC) and activity in the rest of the brain were modulated by task demands (Boksman et al. 2005). This was done for fMRI data collected while participants were performing a word generation task, and revealed that the right ACC showed localized interaction with the left temporal lobe associated with increased verbal fluency in healthy volunteers, that was absent in patients. Using a similar approach with fMRI data obtained during a continuous performance attention task, Honey et al. (2005) found evidence of both increased and decreased ACC connectivity in patients with schizophrenia during a degraded stimulus version of an attentional continuous performance task. When functional connectivity was examined in relation to degraded versus non-degraded stimulus conditions, patient decreases were seen in ACC connectivity to the cerebellum and, patient increases were seen in ACC connectivity to the prefrontal cortex. These disruptions in connectivity with cerebellar and motor areas were viewed in support

of the cognitive dysmetria hypothesis. Finally, this timeseries correlational approach was also used to examine connectivity between STG and parahippocampal gyrus seed regions in the temporal cortex with voxels in the rest of the brain during a word encoding task that manipulated levels-of-processing (Wolf et al. 2007). This analysis of fMRI data revealed that, for deep versus shallow encoding conditions, patients had reduced temporal lobe connectivity to the DLPFC, but increased connectivity to the VLPFC, suggesting that the ventrolateral portion of the PFC may play a compensatory role for patients during episodic encoding.

One of the limitations of previously described functional connectivity analyses is that they do not provide information about the directionality of functional interactions. Therefore, an additional study of the N-Back paradigm (Schlösser et al. 2003) used structural equation modeling to assess "effective connectivity" in patients and controls. Effective connectivity is defined as, "the influence one neural system exerts over another" (Friston et al. 1994), and is examined by constructing anatomical models (i.e., path models) of the directional connections between pre-specified ROIs. Goodness-of-fit statistics are used to select the path models with the smallest residual error. Based upon previous anatomical and functional studies, Schlösser et al. (2003) proposed a unidirectional pathway from parietal cortex to the DLPFC and VLPFC, reciprocal pathways between DLPFC and VLPFC, and a cortico-cerebellar feedback loop involving bi-directional connections among prefrontal cortex, thalamus, and cerebellum. Between-group comparisons of these models revealed that patients receiving typical antipsychotics had reduced prefrontal-cerebellar and cerebellar-thalamic connectivity, and enhanced thalamo-cortical path coefficients. There was also evidence of enhanced interhemispheric connectivity in a group of patients receiving second-generation antipsychotic medications, suggesting that investigators should consider medication effects when performing these studies.

In sum, these functional connectivity studies employing activation tasks and ROI or seed-based correlational approaches have fairly consistently demonstrated that connectivity of the prefrontal cortex and the anterior cingulate gyrus with the temporal cortex appears to be reduced in patients with schizophrenia, consistent with the dissconection syndrome hypothesis. However, these results are not invariant—sometimes showing increased connectivity in patients, and sometimes differing depending upon clinical state, medication status, and the regions that are selected as seeds or as ROIs. As these studies progressed, concerns were also raised about the use of task activation paradigms to examine functional connectivity. When interpreting functional connectivity results, investigators were interested in drawing conclusions about anatomical connections (i.e., areas that fire together, wire together), and one concern about use of activation tasks was that they could create task-related correlations in the time-series that may obscure trait-like differences in anatomical connectivity (Biswal et al. 1995; Lowe et al. 1998; Raichle and Gusnard 2005). A related concern was that group differences in how subjects perform these activation tasks could contribute to group differences in functional connectivity apart from true differences in brain physiology.

These concerns contributed to a directional shift back toward resting-state studies, which eliminate performance demands, and might, ostensibly, provide better trait-like measures of brain physiology.

5 Default Mode Network and Task-Positive Network

Resting-state functional connectivity analysis capitalizes on the finding that the brain appears to be intrinsically organized into functionally correlated networks that are independent of task (Fox et al. 2005; Fransson 2005; Buckner et al. 2008). Early observations in PET imaging found a consistent set of brain areas that showed higher metabolism during resting versus task conditions, particularly in posterior parietal and medial frontal areas (Gusnard and Raichle 2001; Raichle et al. 2001). Around the same time, fMRI studies revealed that BOLD signal in a similar set of brain regions fluctuated spontaneously and coherently at low frequencies (<0.1 Hz) when subjects were resting in the scanner, or simply "doing nothing" (Biswal et al. 1995; Greicius et al. 2003; Fransson 2005). This network comprises medial prefrontal, posterior parietal, and medial temporal regions—all brain areas that have been implicated as dysfunctional in schizophrenia. Moreover, signal fluctuations in this network are anti-correlated with BOLD signal in regions typically engaged by tasks, such as the lateral prefrontal cortex, suggesting a physiological tradeoff between the engagement of "task-negative" and "task-positive" brain states (Fox et al. 2005). This "task-negative" network is thought to represent a baseline brain state from which metabolic resources are diverted during cognitive demand, and has been termed the "default-mode" network (DMN; (Greicius et al. 2003)). The DMN has also been conceptualized as supporting internally directed thought, whereas task-positive networks are thought to support externally oriented cognitive processes (Buckner et al. 2008). Given previously discussed communication breakdowns between brain regions needed for cognitive tasks in schizophrenia, investigators hypothesized that group differences in functional connectivity during activation tasks could be co-occurring with, or driven by abnormal functional connectivity in the DMN. This has led to several fundamental questions about the nature of intrinsic brain networks in schizophrenia.

One question of primary interest has been whether functional connectivity differences between patients with schizophrenia and controls are detectable at rest. Liang et al. (2006) were the first to address this question, using an automated anatomical parcellation procedure to divide the brain into nine regions, and then comparing pairwise regional correlations in resting BOLD fluctuations between patients and controls. They found that resting-state correlations were reduced in patients across brain regions, with the most prominent differences noted in the insula, temporal lobe, striatum, and prefrontal cortex. Additionally, correlations between the cerebellum and all other regions were increased in patients during rest. The results from Liang et al. (2006) established that functional connectivity is

abnormal in patients during rest, and that abnormalities occur across the entire brain, and are not limited to a few regions.

Rather than parcellating the whole brain into anatomical regions, Bluhm et al. (2007) focused their analysis of resting-state functional connectivity in schizophrenia on candidate regions of the DMN. To accomplish this, they began with a seed in the posterior parietal cortex (PPC), a region consistently identified as part of the DMN, and identified correlated voxels across the brain. Then, for each voxel in this network, they compared the degree of connectivity with the PCC between the healthy and patient groups. Functional connectivity between PCC and medial prefrontal cortex, parietal cortex, and cerebellum was reduced in patients. These combined studies suggested widespread functional disintegration within the DMN in schizophrenia patients even at rest. However, it remained unclear whether DMN connectivity was also abnormal in patients during active cognitive tasks, and whether DMN abnormalities were related to dysfunction in brain areas recruited by these tasks.

Thus, a second question was whether group network differences observed during rest were also apparent during task. To address this question, investigators employed a technique called independent component analysis (ICA), which is a data-driven approach to pinpointing temporally consistent, spatially independent brain networks in fMRI data, that occur regardless of task conditions (Calhoun et al. 2009). ICA can be applied equally in resting-state and task-related fMRI, and is particularly useful for identifying the task-negative DMN even during cognitively demanding tasks. The first study to detect DMN abnormalities in schizophrenia patients during task conditions (Garrity et al. 2007) used ICA on fMRI data acquired while subjects performed an auditory oddball detection paradigm. Researchers identified the independent component that most overlapped with DMN brain regions, and then compared the temporal and spatial characteristics of this component between patients and controls. Across both groups, the DMN component showed the greatest activation decrease during presentation of the auditory target stimuli, consistent with the notion that the DMN engagement decreases with greater cognitive demand. Patients had reduced activation compared to controls in the posterior cingulate and precuneus, but increased activation in a different part of the posterior cingulate, the anterior cingulate, and in the superior medial frontal gyrus. It is important to note that these group differences represented differences in regional BOLD signal intensity in those regions, rather than differences in functional connectivity, and reflected topographical differences in the DMN between patients and controls. Similarly, in the temporal domain, patients had relatively less power in low-frequency DMN oscillations, but relatively greater power in higher frequency DMN oscillations, suggesting that DMN abnormalities in patients extended beyond regional differences in network localization. A subsequent study from the same group (Calhoun et al. 2008) established that spatial and temporal DMN differences in patients found during the oddball task were also atypical during rest, suggesting that DMN findings during rest generalize to tasks, and vice versa. However, the spatial layout of both the DMN component and a component consistent with the task-positive network (TPN) were

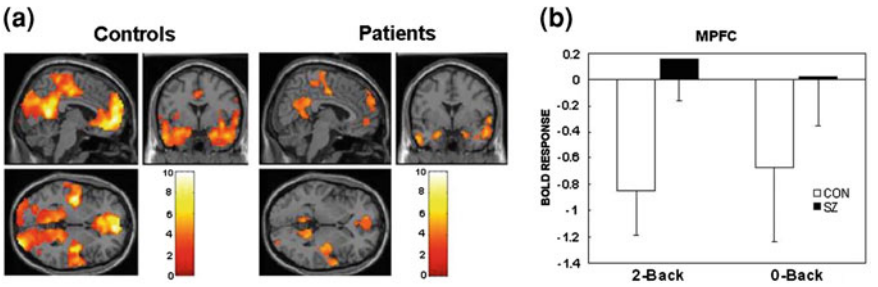


Fig. 2 Task-related suppression of default network regions is lower in patients. **a** Greater activation during rest than task (2-back working memory paradigm) in DMN regions for controls (CON) and patients (SZ). **b** Task-related suppression of MPFC (a DMN region) during 2-back and 0-back conditions. Error bars are 95% confidence intervals. Image is adapted from original Figure published in Whitfield-Gabrieli et al. (2009)

slightly different between activated and resting scans, suggesting that DMN networks were somewhat modulated by task, and that this modulation was not consistent across diagnostic groups.

Several studies have attempted to unravel the relationship between the DMN and the TPN in patients with schizophrenia, with conflicting results. Comparing resting-state networks associated with signal in PCC and DLPFC seed regions, Zhou et al. (2007) found that anti-correlations between the DMN and TPN were greater in patients than in controls. Contrary to earlier findings of reduced connectivity, the study revealed greater within-network functional connectivity in patients. However, this analysis examined only anti-correlated brain regions, and may have missed other important between-group differences. A resting-state study by the Calhoun group (Jafri et al. 2008) compared correlations between seven key independent components and found that, in patients, the DMN independent component was more temporally similar to three of the other non-DMN components including the lateral frontal cortex. This finding suggested that schizophrenia patients might not adequately suppress the DMN when task-related regions come online. Whitefield-Gabrieli et al. (2009) tested this hypothesis by examining interactions between DMN and TPN activity across periods of rest and periods of performance on a working memory task in patients and controls. They found that DMN activity decreased during task, that better task-related DMN suppression was related to better working memory performance in patients, and that this task-related DMN suppression was greater in controls than in patients (see Fig. 2). Additionally, in patients, areas of the DMN were relatively more functionally connected during task, and less anti-correlated with TPN regions during both rest and task conditions. Based on these results, investigators posited a DMN hyperconnectivity/hyperactivity hypothesis, proposing that, in patients, a state of DMN over-synchronization results in failure to divert physiological resources away from the DMN during cognitively demanding tasks.

Whitfield-Gabrieli et al. (2009) also speculated that this hyper-DMN state, in which regions putatively responsible for internally directed thinking are constantly more engaged, may be related to thought disturbance in schizophrenia. They showed that reduced task-related DMN suppression was related to higher scores on a psychopathology index in both the schizophrenia patient group and in healthy individuals. In the Bluhm et al. (2007) study, greater functional connectivity within the DMN during rest was positively associated with positive and negative symptoms in patients. Because of its relationship to both cognitive and clinical variables, it is possible that abnormally high engagement of the DMN is a state-level feature of schizophrenia that can explain both psychopathology and cognitive deficits. However, in these previous studies, patients were receiving antipsychotic medications, which may have contributed to group differences in DMN activity. Olanzapine, an atypical antipsychotic, has been shown to ameliorate clinical symptoms and potentially improve working memory performance. In a double-blind, counterbalanced study examining the effects olanzapine treatment, Sambataro et al. (2010) compared DMN functional connectivity during a working memory task when patients were on and off medication. Olanzapine dose was associated with increased functional connectivity in medial frontal areas of the DMN, but did not affect posterior regions. Although this study revealed that antipsychotic medication can mediate DMN connectivity, and may contribute to variability in functional connectivity differences across schizophrenia studies, DMN connectivity remained aberrant in the un-medicated patient group, suggesting that network-level differences in schizophrenia patients reflect underlying neuropathology regardless of medication effects.

While network connectivity analysis adds another level of complexity to our understanding of brain disruption in schizophrenia, questions remain about exactly what *biological mechanisms* drive the coherence of these functional networks. We now know that coherent signal fluctuations in intrinsic brain networks, particularly the DMN, are highly robust over time and across subjects in healthy populations (Biswal et al. 2010; Van Dijk et al. 2010), suggesting trait-like properties. Moreover, combinations of resting-state fMRI and either anatomical tracer studies in animals (Vincent et al. 2007) or white matter tractography in healthy humans (Greicius et al. 2009) show that intrinsic functional connectivity maps well—but not perfectly—with anatomical connections in the brain. That is, areas that are connected directly or indirectly by white matter tracts show correlated BOLD signal fluctuation during resting-state fMRI. If this functional–anatomical relationship holds in patients, one possible explanation for differences in intrinsic functional connectivity in schizophrenia is that the framework of anatomical connectivity that underlies a functional network is similarly atypical. Zhou et al. (2008) examined both functional and structural connectivity of the anterior hippocampus, a region important for episodic memory often implicated in schizophrenia, and found that both were reduced in patients, suggesting a relationship between functional disintegration and degraded white matter tracts. However, this functional–anatomical relationship may

be less tightly coupled in patients than in controls. Skudlarski et al. (2010) directly compared diffusion tensor-based tractography and resting-state functional connectivity, and found that, while certain brain regions showed either increased or decreased intrinsic functional connectivity in patients versus controls, anatomical connectivity was generally degraded regardless of brain region in the patient sample. Furthermore, while functional networks reflected anatomical connectivity moderately well in controls, functional connectivity between any two brain regions was less predictive of the anatomical connections of those regions in patients. A key assumption of functional connectivity analysis is that network coherence is an indirect measure of anatomical connections. These most recent results challenge whether this assumption can be applied to schizophrenia populations.

6 Conclusions

Has the addition of functional connectivity analysis improved our understanding of pathophysiology in patients with schizophrenia? This research has clearly established that task-related and intrinsic functional connectivity are dysfunctional in patients, but studies do not agree on the exact nature of these disruptions. Task-based and default-mode networks are inversely related in healthy subjects, and this relation appears disrupted by schizophrenia. Patients generally fail to disengage DMN during task conditions, but it is not clear whether this impairment is driven by failure of task-related regions such as the lateral prefrontal cortex to deactivate DMN activity, or by hyperconnectivity within the DMN that makes it more resistant to task-related inhibition (Whitfield-Gabrieli et al. 2009). An added challenge of resting-state versus task activation studies is that resting-state studies do not employ experimental manipulations to test specific hypotheses, thereby reducing the interpretative leverage of the resting-state approach. Regardless of the answer to this question, this current state of affairs suggests caution in interpreting group differences in activation studies that use resting baselines as reference conditions, since these differences can be driven either by the task or by the reference condition. This work has clearly demonstrated that we can no longer think of schizophrenia as an impairment of a single brain region, and that we need to continue to work toward an understanding of group differences at a network level. This progress will likely depend upon the convergence of multiple approaches, including use of carefully controlled cognitive neuroscience tasks to more precisely map brain and behavior interactions, and use of multi-modal imaging techniques (structural and functional) to provide a convergent understanding of the DMN in schizophrenia.

Acknowledgments This work was supported by NIMH grant R01MH084895.

References

Achim A, Lepage M (2005) Episodic memory-related activation in schizophrenia: meta-analysis. Br J Psychiatry 187:500–509

Andreasen NC, O'Leary DS, Cizadlo T, Arndt S, Rezai K, Ponto LL, Watkins GL, Hichwa RD (1996) Schizophrenia and cognitive dysmetria: a positron-emission tomography study of dysfunctional prefrontal-thalamic-cerebellar circuitry. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 93: 9985–9990

Biswal B, Yetkin FZ, Haughton VM, Hyde JS (1995) Functional connectivity in the motor cortex of resting human brain using echo-planar MRI. Magn Reson Med 34:537–541

Biswal BB et al (2010) Toward discovery science of human brain function. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 107:4734–4739

Bluhm RL, Miller J, Lanius RA, Osuch EA, Boksman K, Neufeld RW, Théberge J, Schaefer B, Williamson P (2007) Spontaneous low-frequency fluctuations in the BOLD signal in schizophrenic patients: anomalies in the default network. Schizophr Bull 33:1004–1012

Boksman K, Théberge J, Williamson P, Drost DJ, Malla A, Densmore M, Takhar J, Pavlosky W, Menon RS, Neufeld RW (2005) A 4.0-T fMRI study of brain connectivity during word fluency in first-episode schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 75:247–263

Brown GG, Thompson WK (2010) Functional brain imaging in schizophrenia: selected results and methods. Curr Top Behav Neurosci 4:181–214

Buckner RL, Andrews-Hanna JR, Schacter DL (2008) The brain's default network: anatomy, function, and relevance to disease. Ann NY Acad Sci 1124:1–38

Calhoun VD, Kiehl KA, Pearlson GD (2008) Modulation of temporally coherent brain networks estimated using ICA at rest and during cognitive tasks. Hum Brain Mapp 29:828–838

Calhoun VD, Eichele T, Pearlson G (2009) Functional brain networks in schizophrenia: a review. Front Hum Neurosci 3:17

Carter CS, Heckers S, Nichols T, Pine DS, Strother S (2008) Optimizing the design and analysis of clinical functional magnetic resonance imaging research studies. Biol Psychiat 64:842–849

Carter CS, Barch DM (2007) Cognitive neuroscience-based approaches to measuring and improving treatment effects on cognition in schizophrenia: the CNTRICS initiative. Schizophr Bull 33:1131–1137

Clark CM, Kessler R, Buchsbaum MS, Margolin RA, Holcomb HH (1984) Correlational methods for determining regional coupling of cerebral glucose metabolism: a pilot study. Biol Psychiatry 19:663–678

Fox MD, Snyder AZ, Vincent JL, Corbetta M, Van Essen DC, Raichle ME (2005) The human brain is intrinsically organized into dynamic, anticorrelated functional networks. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102:9673–9678

Fransson P (2005) Spontaneous low-frequency BOLD signal fluctuations: an fMRI investigation of the resting-state default mode of brain function hypothesis. Hum Brain Mapp 26:15–29

Franzén G, Ingvar DH (1975) Absence of activation in frontal structures during psychological testing of chronic schizophrenics. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 38:1027–1032

Friston KJ, Frith CD (1995) Schizophrenia: a disconnection syndrome? Clin Neurosci 3:89–97

Friston KJ, Tononi G, Reeke GN, Sporns O, Edelman GM (1994) Value-dependent selection in the brain: simulation in a synthetic neural model. Neuroscience 59:229–243

Garrity AG, Pearlson GD, McKiernan K, Lloyd D, Kiehl KA, Calhoun VD (2007) Aberrant "default mode" functional connectivity in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 164:450–457

Glahn DC, Ragland JD, Abramoff A, Barrett J, Laird AR, Bearden CE, Velligan DI (2005) Beyond hypofrontality: a quantitative meta-analysis of functional neuroimaging studies of working memory in schizophrenia. Hum Brain Mapp 25:60–69

Greicius MD, Krasnow B, Reiss AL, Menon V (2003) Functional connectivity in the resting brain: a network analysis of the default mode hypothesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:253–258

Greicius MD, Supekar K, Menon V, Dougherty RF (2009) Resting-state functional connectivity reflects structural connectivity in the default mode network. Cereb Cortex 19:72–78

Gur RE, Gur RC (2010) Functional magnetic resonance imaging in schizophrenia. Dialogues Clin Neurosci 12:333–343

Gur RE, Resnick SM, Gur RC, Alavi A, Caroff S, Kushner M, Reivich M (1987a) Regional brain function in schizophrenia. II. Repeated evaluation with positron emission tomography. Arch Gen Psychiatry 44:126–129

Gur RE, Resnick SM, Alavi A, Gur RC, Caroff S, Dann R, Silver FL, Saykin AJ, Chawluk JB, Kushner M (1987b) Regional brain function in schizophrenia. I. A positron emission tomography study. Arch Gen Psychiatry 44:119–125

Gusnard DA, Raichle ME (2001) Searching for a baseline: functional imaging and the resting human brain. Nat Rev Neurosci 2:685–694

Honey GD, Pomarol-Clotet E, Corlett PR, Honey RA, McKenna PJ, Bullmore ET, Fletcher PC (2005) Functional dysconnectivity in schizophrenia associated with attentional modulation of motor function. Brain 128:2597–2611

Ingvar DH, Franzén G (1974) Abnormalities of cerebral blood flow distribution in patients with chronic schizophrenia. Acta Psychiatr Scand 50:425–462

Jafri MJ, Pearlson GD, Stevens M, Calhoun VD (2008) A method for functional network connectivity among spatially independent resting-state components in schizophrenia. Neuroimage 39:1666–1681

Laird AR, McMillan KM, Lancaster JL, Kochunov P, Turkeltaub PE, Pardo JV, Fox PT (2005) A comparison of label-based review and ALE meta-analysis in the Stroop task. Hum Brain Mapp 25:6–21

Lawrie SM, Buechel C, Whalley HC, Frith CD, Friston KJ, Johnstone EC (2002) Reduced frontotemporal functional connectivity in schizophrenia associated with auditory hallucinations. Biol Psychiatry 51:1008–1011

Li H, Chan RC, McAlonan GM, Gong QY (2010) Facial emotion processing in schizophrenia: a meta-analysis of functional neuroimaging data. Schizophr Bull 36:1029–1039

Liang M, Zhou Y, Jiang T, Liu Z, Tian L, Liu H, Hao Y (2006) Widespread functional disconnectivity in schizophrenia with resting-state functional magnetic resonance imaging. Neuroreport 17:209–213

Lowe MJ, Mock BJ, Sorenson JA (1998) Functional connectivity in single and multislice echoplanar imaging using resting-state fluctuations. Neuroimage 7:119–132

Meyer-Lindenberg A, Poline JB, Kohn PD, Holt JL, Egan MF, Weinberger DR, Berman KF (2001) Evidence for abnormal cortical functional connectivity during working memory in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 158:1809–1817

Minzenberg MJ, Laird AR, Thelen S, Carter CS, Glahn DC (2009) Meta-analysis of 41 functional neuroimaging studies of executive function in schizophrenia. Arch Gen Psychiatry 66: 811–822

Ortuño F, Guillén-Grima F, López-García P, Gómez J, Pla J (2011) Functional neural networks of time perception: challenge and opportunity for schizophrenia research. Schizophr Res 125:129–135

Posner MI, Petersen SE, Fox PT, Raichle ME (1988) Localization of cognitive operations in the human brain. Science 240:1627–1631

Ragland J, Yoon J, Minzenberg M, Carter C (2007) Neuroimaging of cognitive disability in schizophrenia: search for a pathophysiological mechanism. Int Rev Psychiatry 19:417–427

Ragland JD, Laird AR, Ranganath C, Blumenfeld RS, Gonzales SM, Glahn DC (2009) Prefrontal activation deficits during episodic memory in schizophrenia. Am J Psychiatry 166:863–874

Raichle ME, Gusnard DA (2005) Intrinsic brain activity sets the stage for expression of motivated behavior. J Comp Neurol 493:167–176

Raichle ME, MacLeod AM, Snyder AZ, Powers WJ, Gusnard DA, Shulman GL (2001) A default mode of brain function. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 98:676–682

Sambataro F, Blasi G, Fazio L, Caforio G, Taurisano P, Romano R, Di Giorgio A, Gelao B, Lo Bianco L, Papazacharias A, Popolizio T, Nardini M, Bertolino A (2010) Treatment with

olanzapine is associated with modulation of the default mode network in patients with Schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:904–912
Schlösser R, Gesierich T, Kaufmann B, Vucurevic G, Hunsche S, Gawehn J, Stoeter P (2003) Altered effective connectivity during working memory performance in schizophrenia: a study with fMRI and structural equation modeling. Neuroimage 19:751–763
Skudlarski P, Jagannathan K, Anderson K, Stevens MC, Calhoun VD, Skudlarska BA, Pearlson G (2010) Brain connectivity is not only lower but different in schizophrenia: a combined anatomical and functional approach. Biol Psychiatry 68:61–69
Turkeltaub PE, Eden GF, Jones KM, Zeffiro TA (2002) Meta-analysis of the functional neuroanatomy of single-word reading: method and validation. Neuroimage 16:765–780
Van Dijk KR, Hedden T, Venkataraman A, Evans KC, Lazar SW, Buckner RL (2010) Intrinsic functional connectivity as a tool for human connectomics: theory, properties, and optimization. J Neurophysiol 103:297–321
Vincent JL, Patel GH, Fox MD, Snyder AZ, Baker JT, Van Essen DC, Zempel JM, Snyder LH, Corbetta M, Raichle ME (2007) Intrinsic functional architecture in the anaesthetized monkey brain. Nature 447:83–86
Volkow ND, Wolf AP, Brodie JD, Cancro R, Overall JE, Rhoades H, Van Gelder P (1988) Brain interactions in chronic schizophrenics under resting and activation conditions. Schizophr Res 1:47–53
Weinberger DR, Berman KF, Daniel DG (1991) Prefrontal cortex dysfunction in schizophrenia. In: Levin HS, Eisenberg HM, Benton AL (eds.) Frontal lobe function and dysfunction. Oxford University Press, New York, pp 275–287
Whitfield-Gabrieli S, Thermenos HW, Milanovic S, Tsuang MT, Faraone SV, McCarley RW, Shenton ME, Green AI, Nieto-Castanon A, LaViolette P, Wojcik J, Gabrieli JD, Seidman LJ (2009) Hyperactivity and hyperconnectivity of the default network in schizophrenia and in first-degree relatives of persons with schizophrenia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106:1279–1284
Wolf DH, Gur RC, Valdez JN, Loughead J, Elliott MA, Gur RE, Ragland JD (2007) Alterations of fronto-temporal connectivity during word encoding in schizophrenia. Psychiatry Res 154:221–232
Zarahn E, Aguirre G, D'Esposito M (1997) A trial-based experimental design for fMRI. Neuroimage 6:122–138
Zhou Y, Shu N, Liu Y, Song M, Hao Y, Liu H, Yu C, Liu Z, Jiang T (2008) Altered resting-state functional connectivity and anatomical connectivity of hippocampus in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 100:120–132
Zhou Y, Liang M, Tian L, Wang K, Hao Y, Liu H, Liu Z, Jiang T (2007) Functional disintegration in paranoid schizophrenia using resting-state fMRI. Schizophr Res 97:194–205

MRI Studies in Late-Life Mood Disorders

Carmen Andreescu and Howard Aizenstein

Abstract There are well-established patterns of structural brain changes associated with aging. The change in brain volume with age and with the diseases of aging presents a particular challenge for MRI studies in the elderly. Structural MRI is important for studies in normal aging, late-life depression, dementia, Alzheimer disease and other cognitive disorders to examine how age-associated changes in neuroanatomy are associated with specific age-related changes in brain function. Functional MRI has been a major advance for the fields of cognitive and affective neuroscience by allowing investigators to test theories of the underlying neural pathways controlling cognitive and emotional processes. In this chapter, we will review the contribution of MRI studies to late-life mood and anxiety disorders: major depression, bipolar disorder and anxiety disorders in late-life.

Keywords Structural MRI · Age-related brain changes · Functional MRI · Methodological challenges in late-life MRI · Late-life mood disorders

Contents

C. Andreescu · H. Aizenstein (✉)
Department of Psychiatry, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA
e-mail: aizen+@pitt.edu

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 269–287
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2011_175

Published Online: 14 December 2011

Over the last decade there has been a rapid increase in the availability of MR imaging. It is likely that the increase in accessibility, as well as the decrease in scanning costs, will continue to increase the use of MRI. Neuroimaging may offer not only insights into the neurobiology of late-life mental disorders, but may also contribute to the effort of personalizing existing treatments and discover new, more efficacious ones. In this chapter, we will review the contribution of MRI studies to late-life mood and anxiety disorders: major depression, bipolar disorder, and anxiety disorders in late-life.

1 Methodologic Challenges of MRI in Late-Life

1.1 The Influence of Brain Morphometric Changes on fMRI

There are well-established patterns of structural brain changes associated with aging. With increasing age, the brain decreases in overall volume, the cortical gyri become smaller, and the sulci and ventricles become larger. These changes in brain volume vary across individuals and occur even in individuals who are otherwise apparently healthy. The changes have been described in a number of studies (e.g., Raz et al. 1997; Resnick et al. 2000) and seem to vary across the brain with most prominent decrease in volume reported in the frontal cortex.

The change in brain volume with age and with the diseases of aging presents a particular challenge for functional MRI studies in these populations: how should these structural changes be accounted for when comparing the functional signal? In a standard fMRI analysis plan the functional images from all the subjects in a study are lined-up with each other (alignment, cross-registration, warping, normalization). If the brains have significantly different shapes and sizes then the brain alignment may bias the results by contributing more CSF (due to the larger sulci and ventricles) of the more atrophic brains as compared to more gray matter from the less atrophic brains. The standard alignment algorithms vary in their ability to account for the variability in brain structure (Wu et al. 2006). Some investigators have addressed this problem by using a larger smoothing kernel in studies of aging subjects (e.g., 10 mm instead of standard 6 mm or 8 mm full-width half-maximum Gaussian). This approach recognizes that the alignment may be worse in the elderly population, and corrects for it by making the images blurrier. This allows the statistical voxel-wise comparison to find group differences even if there is some discrepancy in the spatial co-localization. An alternative approach that other investigators have used involves avoiding the registration

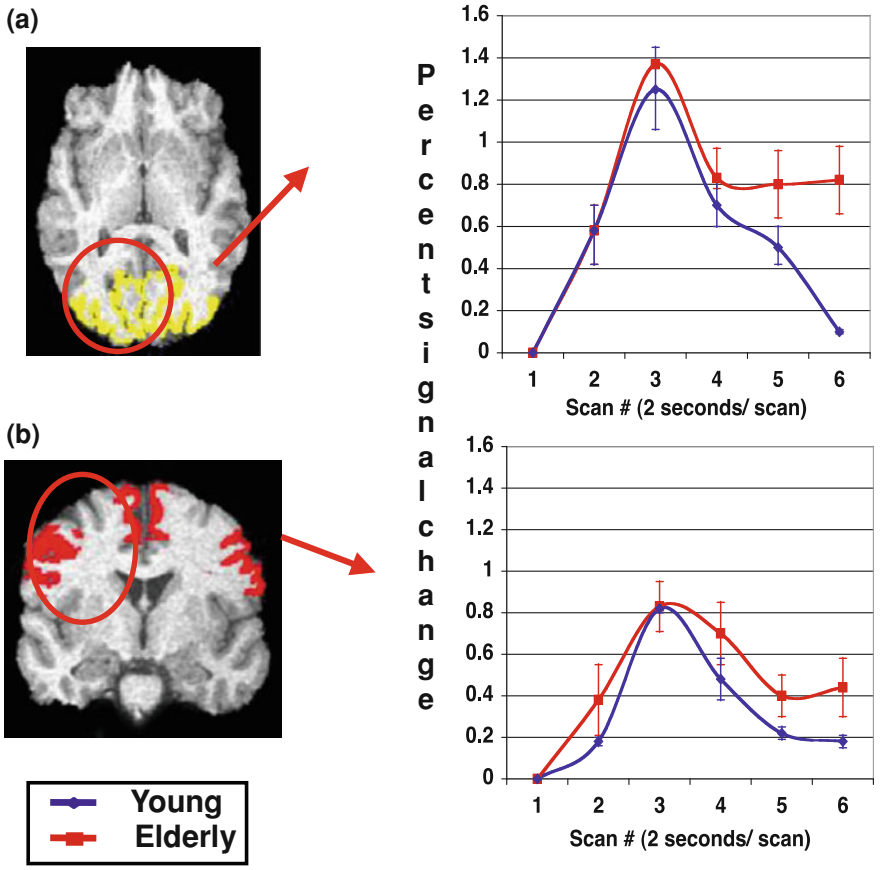


Fig. 1 Time series for **a** visual and **b** motor ROIs. *Blue line* represents mean young percent signal change from baseline; *red line* is elderly percent signal change. Error bars represent ±1 SEM

problems altogether, by focusing on a region-of-interest (ROI)-based analysis (Aizenstein et al. 2011), using ROIs defined in the acquired fMRI space, rather than relying on normalizing the images.

1.2 The BOLD Hemodynamic Response in Healthy Aging

Functional MRI depends on an intact BOLD hemodynamic response function (HRF), i.e., the cascade of neurophysiologic events that leads from neural activation to a change in the measured T2* MR signal. Aging is associated with cerebrovascular changes, so one would expect that it might also alter the BOLD signal. This is of critical importance in interpreting whether the signal identified in an fMRI study of aging reflects changes in neural activity (as is often presumed) or

whether the changes are due to the age-related changes in the coupling of the neural activity to the fMRI signal (i.e., the BOLD HRF). To examine the BOLD HRF in aging we compared healthy college-age subjects and healthy elderly control subjects while they performed a simple visual and motor task (e.g., tapping with their index finger in response to the word TAP in the center of the screen). The resulting fMRI time series (see Fig. 1) show a similar peak for both the young and the elderly subjects in both the visual and motor regions. This suggests that by focusing the analysis on the peak of the HRF the difference in signal observed on fMRI will likely reflect differences in neural activation.

2 MRI Methods for Studying Late-Life Mood Disorders

2.1 Structural Imaging

Structural MRI methods can be used to identify and quantify patterns of changes in volumetric neuroimaging studies. The various structural MRI sequences enable the identification of structural alterations such as (a) volume in gray matter, white matter, and cerebrospinal fluid from high resolution T1-weighted images (Raz et al. 2005, 1998; Rosano et al. 2005) (b) white matter hyperintensities (WMH) from FLAIR images (Gunning-Dixon and Raz 2000; Soderlund et al. 2003) (c) white matter integrity from diffusion weighted imaging (Pfefferbaum et al. 2005; Salat et al. 2005) (d) myelination from magnetization transfer imaging (van Es et al. 2006). Advanced neuroimaging sequences like diffusion spectrum imaging (DSI) and Q-ball imagings are currently being used for studying the white matter tracts (Schmahmann et al. 2007; Fig. 2).

Structural MRI is useful for studying the patterns of neuroanatomical changes in geriatric research. Structural MRI is important for studies in normal aging, late-life depression, dementia, Alzheimer disease, and other cognitive disorders to examine how age-associated changes in neuroanatomy are associated with specific age-related changes in brain function, such as the changes that may be in cognition. Structural MRI allows for identification of both macrostructural and microstructural neuropathologic changes, including atrophy, cerebrovascular changes, demyelination, and changes in membrane integrity.

2.2 BOLD Functional MRI

In the early 1990s a number of investigators showed that not only could MR be used to visualize neuroanatomy and structural pathology but, by tuning the MR contrast appropriately, MR could be used to visualize the dynamic changes in blood oxygenation across the brain; this was the beginning of functional MRI

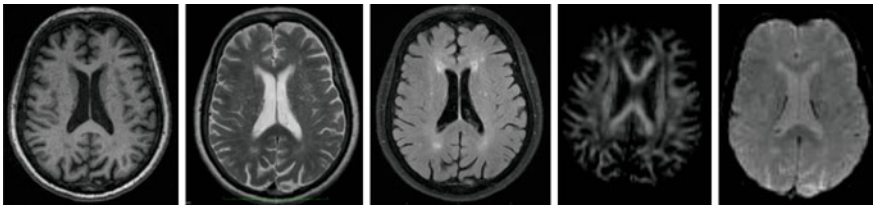


Fig. 2 T1, T2, FLAIR, DTI, and T2* images from 3T scanner

(Schmahmann et al. 2007). Over the subsequent years, a number of studies have shown that this Blood Oxygenation Level Dependent (BOLD) signal could be used to map brain activity on a variety of cognitive and affective tasks.

Functional MRI has been a major advance for the fields of cognitive and affective neuroscience by allowing investigators to test theories of the underlying neural pathways controlling cognitive and emotional processes. This approach is often referred to as 'human brain mapping.' In addition to studying 'normal' human brain function, fMRI can also be used to characterize the functional activation patterns in patient groups. This area of clinical fMRI research has recently led to a number of new insights into the nature of psychopathology and treatment—including the description of a dorsal versus ventral processing imbalance in depression (Phillips et al. 2003), overlap in response patterns with placebo and with medication (Mayberg et al. 2005), and paradoxical nonlinear activation patterns in mild cognitive impairment (Wierenga and Bondi 2007), suggesting a compensatory stage prior to the onset of dementia.

Functional MRI has utilized either resting state paradigms or activation paradigms involving various emotional or cognitive tasks.

2.2.1 Resting State

Over the last decade fMRI has been adapted to examine the connectivity of the Default-Mode Network, an organized functional network of several brain regions active during resting state and inhibited during the performance of active tasks (Raichle et al. 2001). Analysis of resting state activity may enhance the understanding of the biological underpinning of mental illnesses pathophysiology. A primary component of the resting-state network, is the default-mode network, a functionally connected network, which includes as core nodes the posterior cingulate cortex and the medial frontal cortex. Activity of the default-mode network, is believed to reflect self-referential thought, that is suppressed with goal-directed task activity. Activity in the default-mode network is affected in Alzheimer's disease, Major Depressive Disorder (Greicius et al. 2007; Sheline et al. 2009) and anxiety disorders (Zhao et al. 2007; Fig. 3).

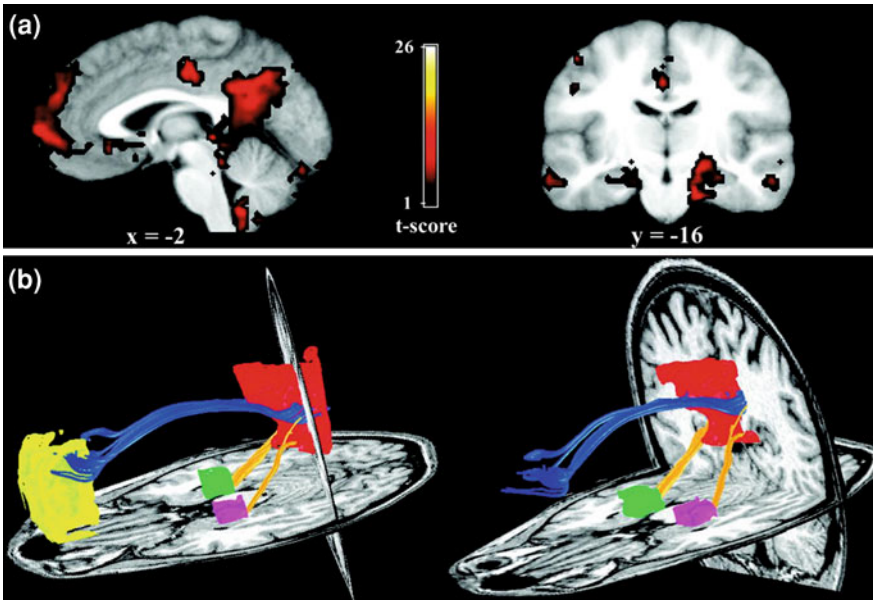


Fig. 3 Functional connectivity reflects structural connectivity in the DMN. **a** Task-free, functional connectivity in the DMN is shown in a group of six subjects. The PCC/RSC and MPFC clusters are best appreciated on the sagittal view. Prominent bilateral MTL clusters are seen on the coronal image (*left side* of image corresponds to *left side* of brain). **b** DTI fiber tractography in a single subject demonstrates the cingulum bundle (*blue tracts*) connecting the PCC/RSC to the MPFC. The *yellow tracts* connect the bilateral MTL to the PCC/RSC. Note that generally the tracts from the MPFC enter the more rostral aspect of the PCC/RSC ROI corresponding to the PCC proper, whereas the tracts from MTL enter the more caudal aspect of the PCC/RSC ROI corresponding to the RSC proper. *Left* and *right* columns show slightly different views of the same tracts to highlight the distinct entry points into the PCC/RSC. There were no tracts connecting the MPFC to the MTL. (from Greicius et al. 2008). For permissions, please e-mail:journals.permissions@oxfordjournals.org

2.2.2 fMRI Studies of Affective Processing in Late-Life Mood Disorders

Several computer-administered paradigms for measuring affect processing are amenable to functional MRI. These include having subjects respond to emotional faces (e.g., Ekman faces, (Ekman and Friesen 1971), images (e.g., the International Affective Picture System, (Lang and Bradley 1997) words, and stories. Studies with these paradigms have identified an affect processing circuit, which includes bilateral medial ventral structures including the amygdala, the ventral striatum, the orbitofrontal cortex, and the pre-and sub-genual anterior cingulate cortex. These ventral regions seem to show increased activation corresponding to the peak of the 'emotional' experience, whether it has positive or negative valence. There has also

been a strong association of these regions with activity in dorsal (described as less affective and more cognitive) structures including the dorsal anterior cingulate cortex and the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex.

Several investigators have integrated these findings into models of affective processing (Mayberg 1997; Phillips et al. 2003; Siegle et al. 2002). The key feature of these models is that the dorsal information processing circuit is more specific for the cognitive elements and regulates the affective activation and processing that occurs in the ventral structures. Thus, for instance, in the fMRI study by Ochsner (2002) the amygdala is activated by negatively valenced emotional stimuli. With cognitive reappraisal of the negative stimuli, the dorsal prefrontal cortex becomes active and the amygdala shows decreased activation, apparently secondary to modulation by the dorsal PFC-mediated reappraisal.

Models of dorsal and ventral cognitive and affective processing have been specifically applied as a framework for studying mid-life depression (Mayberg 1997; Phillips et al. 2003). Both of these models describe mid-life depression as resulting from impaired cognitive and affective processing in these circuits. These models have not yet been applied to LLD. However, the notion of disconnection between the dorsal and ventral circuits would seem to apply even more in late-life as compared to mid-life depression, since in LLD there is more evidence of microstructural changes in the PFC white matter tracts that connect these regions (Alexopoulos et al. 2002; Taylor et al. 2004). Future studies are needed to test this hypothesis.

2.2.3 fMRI Studies of Cognitive Processing in Late-Life Mood Disorders

Several functional neuroimaging studies of late-life mood disorders have been conducted during cognitive activation (e.g., de Asis et al. 2001). Bilateral deficits in dACC and hippocampus were observed during word generation task. These cognitive probes are used for studying the basis of cognitive changes in late-life mood disorders, and for engaging key structures implicated in these disorders (e.g., ACC, dlPFC, hippocampus). Functional imaging performed during controlled cognitive tasks standardizes behavior and therefore decreases variability in brain response.

2.3 Perfusion Functional MRI

A significant limitation of BOLD fMRI is concern that the BOLD hemodynamic response is inherently relative. That is the raw BOLD signal does not provide a reliable estimate of regional blood flow in a region. Rather it is contrast of the BOLD signal on alternating experimental versus control tasks that provide the meaningful signal. In contrast to this limitation, PET imaging with an O-15

radioligand is capable of providing quantitative blood flow measures. In MR imaging, a technique analogous to O-15 PET is also available, and is referred to as Arterial Spin Label (ASL) imaging, or perfusion imaging (Detre et al. 1992; Aguirre et al. 2005). In perfusion MR imaging the MR excitation signal is inverted to provide a 'tagged' signal, which is alternated with an 'untagged' image. Comparing the tagged and untagged provides a quantitative measure the perfusion of the region. Full-brain voxel-wise perfusion images provide a quantitative image of the perfusion across the brain. Investigators have recently used perfusion imaging to demonstrate similar findings as with PET blood flow studies, e.g., decreased parietal-temporal resting perfusion with Alzheimer's disease (Alsop et al. 2010). In addition to providing quantitative resting perfusion, ASL has also recently been used for investigating the blood flow changes associated with tasks (Fernández-Seara et al. 2007). Perfusion fMRI, however, is limited due to slow acquisition time, reduced coverage, and lower SNR compared to BOLD fMRI. The two primary methods for perfusion imaging are referred to as Continuous Arterial Spin Labeling (CASL) and Pulsed Arterial Spin Labeling (PASL). CASL is believed to provide better signal quality, but generally requires special hardware for providing the continuous tagging pulse.

3 MRI Changes in Specific Late-Life Mental Disorders

Throughout its history, DSM architects have struggled with the seemingly fundamental, but complex question of how to define a mental disorder. Current proposals indicate that a spectrum model of mental illness will be embraced in DSM-5, prompting renewed concern and debate about pathologizing normal behavior (Pierre 2010).

Recently the NIMH launched the Research Domain Criteria (RDoC) project to create a framework for research on pathophysiology, especially for genomics and neuroscience. The RDoC project is intended to be the next step in the process of ensuring valid and reliable diagnosis (Insel et al. 2010). Thus, the project intends to classify mental disorders based on dimensions of observable behavior and neurobiological measures, dimensions such as fear and its extinction, response to stress, impulsive behavior, executive function, and working memory. Increasing evidence suggests that abnormality in one dimension frequently occurs in multiple diagnoses of mental disorders. Cutting across traditional diagnostic categories, RDoC will encompass multiple levels of analysis, from genes to neural circuits to behaviors and will be developed for the research community to help break out of diagnostic formulations that may have more reliability than validity.

We will present in this chapter MRI changes in DSM-IVTR disorders, while keeping in mind that an increasing body of the literature focuses on emotion regulation in late-life, executive function and working memory.

3.1 Late-Life Major Depression (LLD)

Depression in the elderly causes significant distress, disability, and loss of life. The importance of considering late-life depression separately from mid-life depression follows from an extensive literature that has identified biological, psychological, and social factors specific for late-life depression. Loss of function and loss of social support are common psychosocial factors in the presentation of depression in the elderly. However, biological factors are also prevalent in LLD. Two key features that distinguish the brain in elderly versus young subjects are cerebrovascular disease and neurodegeneration, and both are known risk factors for depression [reviewed in Lavretsky and Small (2004)]. However, as these processes (cerebrovascular disease and neurodegeneration) exist on a continuum, it is likely that even subsyndromal disease (e.g., cerebrovascular disease without overt strokes and pre-morbid Alzheimer's disease) could also contribute to the depressive syndrome in elderly.

3.1.1 Structural Neuroimaging in Late-Life Depression

The neuroimaging findings in LLD overlap with other diseases of aging, including Alzheimer's disease and cerebrovascular disease. Central and cortical atrophy have been widely reported on both CT [reviewed by Morris and Rapoport (1990)] and MRI (Ballmaier et al. 2004a; Pantel et al. 1997; Rabins et al. 1991). LLD is also associated with reduced frontal lobe volume in general (Kumar et al. 2000), and in particular, the orbitofrontal cortex (Ballmaier et al. 2004b; Lai et al. 2000; Lee et al. 2003) as well as the gyrus rectus and anterior cingulate (Ballmaier et al. 2004b). There also are basal ganglia lesions (Rabins et al. 1991; Steffens et al. 1998; Tupler et al. 2002), especially in the caudate (Krishnan et al. 1992), and the putamen (Steffens et al. 1998; Tupler et al. 2002), that may be worse among late-onset patients. Finally, there is an association between chronic, treatment-resistant depression in groups of mixed ages and right, frontostriatal atrophy (Shah et al. 2002) and reduced volume of the left temporal cortex including the hippocampus (Shah et al. 2002). Recently volumetric studies have identified differences between early versus late-onset LLD (Ballmaier et al. 2004a, b; Andreescu et al. 2011), with the late onset showing less frontal and more temporal and parietal atrophy.

The hippocampus and amygdala appear to be especially sensitive to the effects of major depression. In a study in which the subjects ranged in age from 23 to 86 years of age, both the hippocampus bilaterally and the amygdala core nuclei bilaterally showed reduced volume in depressed subjects relative to controls (Sheline et al. 1999). Reduced hippocampal volume is particularly, but not exclusively, related to later age-of-onset (Steffens et al. 2002), and hippocampal volume was inversely related to conversion to dementia (Steffens et al. 2002). Moreover, the lifetime duration of depression (measured either as years since first

episode or total number of days spent depressed) is very closely associated with hippocampal volume (Bell-McGinty et al. 2002; Sheline et al. 1999).

In addition to studies of regional volume there have also been a number of reports of differences in the MR signal within the white matter of individuals with LLD. Several studies using semi-quantitative ratings (Butters et al. 2004; Greenwald et al. 1998) and semi-automated measures (Taylor et al. 2003) have found increased presence of white matter hyperintensities in periventricular and subcortical regions. Salloway et al. (1996) found the periventricular and subcortical hyperintensities to be most severe in those LLD subjects with late-onset depression. More recently, diffusion tensor imaging has been used to more specifically study the white matter tracts, with results showing decreased fractional anisotropy (a measure of diffusion orientation which is used as a marker of white matter integrity) in prefrontal white matter (Alexopoulos et al. 2002; Taylor et al. 2004). While some studies have found that the disturbances in the white matter are associated with poor treatment response (Alexopoulos et al. 2002, 2008) others have not found this to be the case (Salloway et al. 2002).

3.1.2 Functional Imaging in Late-Life Depression

To date, most of the functional neuroimaging studies reported on LLD have focused on the resting state and have identified changes in baseline (i.e., resting) cerebral activity between patients and controls (reviewed in Table 1). One of the earliest studies (Sackeim et al. 1990) demonstrated global decreased CBF using the xenon inhalation technique. A decrease in global brain metabolism in LLD was also found with PET (Kumar et al. 2000). Baxter et al. (1989) and Bench et al. (1993) using PET have found the decreased blood flow and metabolism in depression, in samples with age ranges extending from mid-life through late-life, to be most prominent in the frontal cortex. Other specific areas with reported decreases in LLD versus controls in PET studies include the medial temporal lobe (Grön et al. 2002) and the caudal ACC (de Asis et al. 2001).

In a recent study exploring resting-state connectivity in the default-mode network in late-life depression, we reported that, compared with non-depressed elderly, depressed subjects pretreatment had decreased connectivity in the subgenual anterior cingulate cortex and increased connectivity in the dorsomedial prefrontal cortex and the orbitofrontal cortex. The abnormal connectivity was significantly correlated with the white matter hyperintensity burden. Remitted elderly depressed subjects had improved functional connectivity compared to pretreatment, although alterations persisted in the anterior cingulate and the prefrontal cortex when remitted elderly depressed subjects were compared with non-depressed elderly. These results provide evidence for altered default-mode network connectivity in late-life depression and emphasizes the role of vascular changes in late-life depression etiopathogenesis (Wu et al. 2011).

Several functional neuroimaging studies of LLD have been conducted during cognitive activation (e.g., de Asis et al. 2001; Grön et al. 2002). The cognitive

Table 1 Review of functional neuroimaging findings in late-life depression

Reference	Imaging modality	Subjects	Primary finding
Sackeim et al. (1990)	SPECT (rCBF using 133Xe inhalation)	30 LLD; 30 EC	Reduced global rCBF
Kumar et al. (1993)	PET (Glucose-15)	8 LLD; 8 EC	Reduced global cerebral metabolism
Lesser et al. (1994)	SPECT (rCBF using 133Xe & Technetium-99 m-HMPAO)	39 LLD; 20 EC	Reduced global rCBF
Smith et al. (1999)	PET (Glucose-15)	6 LLD; 6 EC	Increased activity in right ACC pre-treatment, which decreased with treatment
de Asis et al. (2001)	[^{15}0]H_20 PET (paced word generation)	6 LLD; 5 EC	Decreased activation b/l in dorsal ACC & Hippocampus
Gron et al. (2002)	Block-design FMRI (declarative memory)	12 LLD; 12 EC	Increased vlpfc, decreased hippocampus
Aizenstein et al. (2005)	Event-related BOLD fMRI (sequence learning)	11 LLD; 12 EC	Decreased b/l PFC and increased R striatum
Aizenstein et al. (2006)	Event-related BOLD fMRI (cognitive control task)	14 LLD; 15 EC	Decreased PFC and decreased ACC
Brassen et al. (2008)	Block-design fMRI (emotion reactivity) pre- and post-treatment	13 LLD; 12 EC	Decreased response to negative stimuli in the vmPFC, correlated with symptoms severity and attenuated by symptom improvement
Smith et al. (2009)	PET study	16 LLD; 13 EC	Increased cortical glucose metabolism in brain regions with cerebral atrophy (compensatory response)
Andreescu et al. (2009a)	Event-related BOLD fMRI (cognitive control task)	8 LLD	Sustained activation in the dorsal ACC in subjects with LLD and increased anxiety
Kenny et al. (2010)	Resting-state fMRI	16 LLD; 17 EC	Increased connectivity in the frontal, limbic, parietal, and temporal areas.

Note SPECT single photon emission computerized tomography, *PET* positron emission tomography, *BOLD* blood oxygen level dependent, *PFC* prefrontal cortex, *ACC* anterior cingulate cortex

activation functional imaging studies conducted in LLD have replicated the general patterns of regional activity found during resting studies. In a study using a word generation task, de Asis et al. (2001) found reduced CBF bilaterally in the dorsal anterior cingulate and the hippocampus (as measured compared to controls), and on a verbal declarative memory task, Grön (2002) found decreased left VLPFC and hippocampal activation compared to elderly controls. Recently, on a cognitive control task comparing LLD to elderly controls (Aizenstein et al. 2005); and see Sect. 3 of this chapter) we found decreased BOLD activation in the DLPFC and

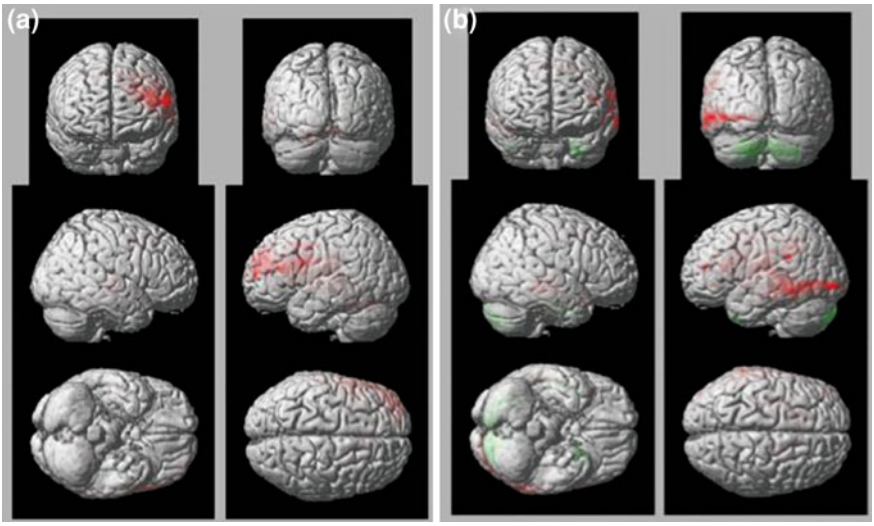


Fig. 4 Elderly non-anxious subjects engage the PFC in suppressing worry (**a**). Elderly GAD subjects (**b**) are not effective in engaging the PFC and maintained an increased activation the posterior areas (temporo-occipital) (**b**)

ACC, and in a sequence learning task comparing LLD to elderly controls we found the depressed elderly to have decreased prefrontal activation and *increased* striatal activation. The increased striatal activation occurred during the trials that violated the predictive sequential pattern, and thus are consistent with reports in mid-life depression of increased negative reward activity in depression.

3.2 Late-Life Bipolar Disorder (LLBD)

Although the prevalence rates of Bipolar Disorder are relatively low among community-dwelling elderly (up to 0.1%), there is significantly higher prevalence (and higher morbidity) in institutional settings, such as personal care homes and nursing homes where prevalence rates may be as high as 10%. Bipolar disorder the elderly is probably heterogenous and its etiopathogenesis is complex.

Bipolar disorder may be divided into two distinct subtypes, the late-onset bipolar (LOB) and the early onset bipolar (EOB) groups. LOB patients tend to have a milder illness in terms of manic severity but they have higher medical and neurological burden. They also have lower familial burden of bipolar illness as compared to EOB patients. There is an increased risk of dementia and stroke in patients with late-life bipolar disorder (Vasudev and Thomas 2010).

Structural and functional neuroimaging data in LLBD is quite scarce. The few studies exploring the neurobiology of late-life bipolar disorder have reported that relative to elderly controls and EOB, late-onset bipolar subjects have increased

Fig. 5 Amygdala (*red*)- sACC (*blue*) functional connectivity during worry induction and worry suppression in elderly controls (*up*) and elderly GAD subjects (*down*)

hyperintense lesions on T2 images around the putamen, as well as in the deep white matter in frontal and parietal regions (Altshuler et al. 1995; Beyer et al. 2004). The authors concluded that their results provide empirical support to the link between vascular risk factors and late-onset BD. It is plausible that, as in the case of MDD, the T2 hyperintensities, which reflect ischemia, area long-term consequence rather than a cause of bipolar illness. One possibility is that people with BD have an excess of atherosclerotic risk factors that lead to microvascular pathology at an even earlier age than MDD. However, using a strict selection of elderly cases with BD and careful case–control matching for clinical and demographic variables, no volumetric differences were found between LLBD subjects in the hippocampus, amygdala, entorhinal, and anterior cingulate cortex, nor a higher degree of WMH, when compared with healthy individuals (Delaloye et al. 2009).

3.3 Late-Life Anxiety disorders

With an estimated community prevalence of 7.3%, late-life generalized anxiety disorder (GAD) is the most common anxiety disorder among the elderly (Wetherell et al. 2001; Wittchen and Hoyer 2001). Late-life GAD is associated with decreased quality of life (de BEURS et al. 1999; Wetherell et al. 2001), cognitive impairment (Mantella et al. 2007; Caudle et al. 2007), increased health

care utilization (de BEURS et al. 1999), and poorer recovery after disabling medical events (de BEURS et al. 1999; Astrom 1996). Recent fMRI studies have reported that, when attempting to regulate their emotional responses, elderly anxious subjects failed to activate prefrontal regions involved in the down-regulation of negative emotions. These results, showing that elderly anxious subjects are not effectively engaging the PFC in suppressing worry, may be clinically relevant for developing personalized therapeutic strategies for the treatment of late-life GAD (Andreescu et al. 2011).

Moreover, time-series analysis of non-anxious subjects showed that amygdala and sACC activate in reverse synchronicity during phases of worry modulation (see Fig. 4). In contrast, elderly GAD subjects displayed same direction activation of the sACC and the amygdala during worry induction. Moreover, time-series cross-correlation analysis showed a decrease correlation between the amygdala and sACC in elderly GAD (Fig. 5).

These results suggest a possible age-related inability of the regulatory regions such as sACC to modulate the worry process in late-life GAD (Andreescu et al. 2009b).

4 Future Directions

MRI has revolutionized clinical neuroscience research and has led to a more sophisticated understanding of the neural substrates of mental disorders (Kumar and Ajilore 2008). There has been tremendous increase in the use of MRI (functional and structural) in studying the brain. These neuroimaging studies have provided deep insight of how the brain works in terms of brain development, function, aging, and other diseases. The use of neuroimaging is important for studying the aging brain as it provides a platform for non-invasive studies of structure and function to increase our understanding of the cognitive aging (Reuter-Lorenz and Lustig 2005) and other age-related changes in the brain.

Applying MRI approaches to the identification of predictors of treatment response may allow us early in the course of therapeutic interventions to identify sub-groups of subjects with difficultly in treating mood disorders. In the future, such subjects may be selected, based on their MRI profile, for more aggressive interventions. Markers of white matter pathology may identify elderly patients for whom the risk of antidepressant treatment may not be balanced by a high probability of treatment response (Kumar and Ajilore 2008; Alexopoulos et al. 2008). In a more personalized medicine era, advances in neuroimaging and genomics could provide a personalized database that may help tailor and guide treatment choices (Kumar and Ajilore 2008)

A potential new treatment is real-time fMRI (de Charms 2008), that has been recently introduced as a method to directly control activation of localized brain regions to affect neurophysiological mechanisms that mediate behavior and cognition (de Charms 2007). Positive results have been reported in modulating pain

perception (de Charms et al. 2005), and more recently in the down-modulation of the sACC (real-time fMRI neurofeedback) (Paul Hamilton et al. HBM 2011). Incorporating real-time fMRI in the future offers the promise of clinical translation in which neuroimaging may also be used for clinical interventional purposes.

References

Aguirre GK, John AD, Wang J (2005) Perfusion fMRI for functional neuroimaging. In Neuroimaging, Part A 66:213–236, Academic Press. http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/B7CV0-4HX9TNB-7/2/5cf4567f9e04a1d0150f4e642a68fd1a

Aizenstein HJ, Butters MA, Figurski JL, Stenger VA, Reynolds CF III, Carter CS (2005) Prefrontal and striatal activation during sequence learning in geriatric depression. Biol Psychiatry 58(4):290–296. doi:10.1016/j.biopsych.2005.04.023

Aizenstein HJ, Butters MA, Clark KA, Figurski JL, Stenger VA , Nebes RD et al (2006) Prefrontal and striatal activation in elderly subjects during concurrent implicit and explicit sequence learning. Neurobiol Aging 27(5):741–751

Aizenstein HJ, Clark KA, Butters MA, Cochran J, Stenger VA, Meltzer CC, Reynolds CF, Carter CS (2011) The BOLD hemodynamic response in healthy aging. J Cogn Neurosci 16(5): 786–793. doi:10.1162/089892904970681

Alexopoulos GS, Kiosses DN, Choi SJ, Murphy CF, Lim KO (2002) Frontal white matter microstructure and treatment response of late-life depression: a preliminary study. Am J Psychiatry 159(11):1929–1932. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp.159.11.1929

Alexopoulos GS, Murphy CF, Gunning-Dixon FM, Latoussakis V, Kanellopoulos D, Klimstra S, Lim KO, Hoptman MJ (2008) Microstructural white matter abnormalities and remission of geriatric depression. Am J Psychiatry 165(2):238–244. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp.2007.07050744

Alsop DC, Dai W, Grossman M, Detre JA (2010) Arterial spin labeling blood flow MRI: its role in the early characterization of Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimers Dis 20(3):871–880

Altshuler LL, Curran JG, Hauser P, Mintz J, Denicoff K, Post R (1995) T2 hyperintensities in bipolar disorder: magnetic resonance imaging comparison and literature meta-analysis. Am J Psychiatry 152(8):1139–1144

Andreescu C, Butters M, Lenze EJ, Venkatraman VK, Nable M, Reynolds CF III et al (2009a) fMRI activation in late-life anxious depression: a potential biomarker. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry 24(8):820–828

Andreescu C, Wu M, Siegle Greg J, Thompson W, Aizenstein H (2009b) Worry modulation in late-life generalized anxiety disorder. Presented at the ACNP 48 annual meeting. Hollywood, Florida

Andreescu C, Gross JJ, Lenze E, Edelman KD, Snyder S, Tanase C, Aizenstein H (2011) Altered cerebral blood flow patterns associated with pathologic worry in the elderly. Depression and Anxiety 28(3):202–209. doi:10.1002/da.20799

Astrom M (1996) Generalized anxiety disorder in stroke patients: a 3-year longitudinal study. Stroke 27(2):270–275

Ballmaier M, Kumar A, Thompson PM, Narr KL, Lavretsky H, Estanol L, DeLuca H, Toga AW (2004a) Localizing gray matter deficits in late-onset depression using computational cortical pattern matching methods. Am J Psychiatry 161(11):2091–2099. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp.161.11.2091

Ballmaier M, Toga AW, Blanton RE, Sowell ER, Lavretsky H, Peterson J, Pham D, Kumar A (2004b) Anterior cingulate, gyrus rectus, and orbitofrontal abnormalities in elderly depressed patients: an MRI-based parcellation of the prefrontal cortex. Am J Psychiatry 161(1):99–108. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp.161.1.99

Baxter LR, Schwartz JM, Phelps ME, Mazziotta JC, Guze BH, Selin CE, Gerner RH, Sumida RM (1989) Reduction of prefrontal cortex glucose metabolism common to three types of depression. Arch Gen Psychiatry 46(3):243–250. doi:10.1001/archpsyc.1989.01810030049007

Bell-McGinty S, Butters MA, Meltzer CC, Greer PJ, Reynolds CF, Becker JT (2002) Brain morphometric abnormalities in geriatric depression: long-term neurobiological effects of illness duration. Am J Psychiatry 159(8):1424–1427. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp.159.8.1424

Bench CJ, Friston KJ, Brown RG, Frackowiak RSJ, Dolan RJ (1993) Regional cerebral blood flow in depression measured by positron emission tomography: the relationship with clinical dimensions. Psychol Med 23(03):579–590. doi:10.1017/S0033291700025368

Beyer JL, Kuchibhatla M, Payne ME, Moo-Young M, Cassidy F, Macfall KJ, Krishnan RR (2004) Hippocampal volume measurement in older adults with bipolar disorder. Am J Geriatr Psychiatr Off J Am Assoc Geriatric Psychiatry 12(6):613–620. doi:10.1176/appi.ajgp.12.6.613

Brassen S, Kalisch R, Weber-Fahr W, Braus DF, Buchel C (2008) Ventromedial prefrontal cortex processing during emotional evaluation in late-life depression: a longitudinal functional magnetic resonance imaging study. Biol Psychiatry 64(4):349–355

Butters MA, Whyte EM, Nebes RD, Begley AE, Dew MA, Mulsant BH, Zmuda MD et al (2004) The nature and determinants of neuropsychological functioning in late-life depression. Arch Gen Psychiatr 61(6):587–595. doi:10.1001/archpsyc.61.6.587

Caudle DD, Senior AC, Wetherell JL, Rhoades HM, Beck JG, Kunik ME, Lynn Snow A, Wilson NL, Stanley MA (2007) Cognitive errors, symptom severity, and response to cognitive behavior therapy in older adults with generalized anxiety disorder. American J Geriatr Psychiatr 15(8):680–689. doi:10.1097/JGP.0b013e31803c550d

de Asis JM, Stern E, Alexopoulos GS, Pan H, Van Gorp W, Blumberg H, et al (2001) Hippocampal and anterior cingulate activation deficits in patients with geriatric depression. Am J Psychiatry 158(8):1321–1323

de Beurs E, Beekman ATF, van Balkom AJLM, Deeg DJH, van Dyck R, van Tilburg W (1999) Consequences of anxiety in older persons: its effect on disability, well-being and use of health services. Psychol Med 29(03):583–593

de Charms RC (2007) Reading and controlling human brain activation using real-time functional magnetic resonance imaging. Trends Cognit Sci 11(11):473–481. doi:10.1016/j.tics.2007.08.014

de Charms RC (2008) Applications of real-time fMRI. Nat Rev Neurosci 9(9):720–729. doi:10.1038/nrn2414

de Charms RC, Maeda F, Glover GH, Ludlow D, Pauly JM, Soneji D, Gabrieli JDE, Mackey SC, Raichle ME (2005) Control over brain activation and pain learned by using real-time functional MRI. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102(51):18626–18631

Delaloye C, de Bilbao F, Moy G, Baudois S, Weber K, Canuto A, Campos L et al (2009) Neuroanatomical and neuropsychological features of euthymic patients with bipolar disorder. Am J Geriatr Psychiatr Off J Am Assoc Geriatric Psychiatry 17(12):1012–1021. doi:10.1097/JGP.0b013e3181b7f0e2

Detre JA, Leigh JS, Williams DS, Koretsky AP (1992) Perfusion imaging. Magn Reson Med 23(1):37–45. doi:10.1002/mrm.1910230106

Ekman P, Friesen WV (1971) Constants across cultures in the face and emotion. J Pers Soc Psychol 17(2):124–129. doi:10.1037/h0030377

Fernández-Seara MA, Wang J, Wang Z, Korczykowski M, Guenther M, Feinberg DA, Detre JA (2007) Imaging mesial temporal lobe activation during scene encoding: comparison of fMRI using BOLD and arterial spin labeling. Hum Brain Mapp 28(12):1391–1400. doi:10.1002/hbm.20366

Greenwald BS, Kramer-Ginsberg E, Krishnan KR, Ashtari M, Auerbach C, Patel M (1998) Neuroanatomic localization of magnetic resonance imaging signal hyperintensities in geriatric depression. Stroke: a J Cereb Circul 29(3):613–617

Greicius MD, Flores BH, Menon V, Glover GH, Solvason HB, Kenna H, Reiss AL, Schatzberg AF (2007) Resting state functional connectivity in major depression: abnormally increased contributions from subgenual cingulate cortex and thalamus. Biol Psychiatry 62(5):429–437. doi:10.1016/j.biopsych.2006.09.020

Greicius MD et al (2008) Resting-state functional connectivity reflects structural connectivity in the default mode network. Cerebral Cortex 19:72–78

Gron G, Bittner D, Schmitz B, Wunderlich AP, Riepe MW (2002) Subjective memory complaints: objective neural markers in patients with Alzheimer's disease and major depressive disorder. Ann Neurol 51(4):491–498

Gunning-Dixon FM, Raz N (2000) The cognitive correlates of white matter abnormalities in normal aging: a quantitative review. Neuropsychology 14(2):224–232. doi:10.1037/0894-4105.14.2.224

Hamilton JP, Glover GH, Hsu JJ, Johnson RF, Gotlib IH (2011) Modulation of subgenual anterior cingulate cortex activity with real-time neurofeedback. Hum Brain Mapp 32(1):22–31. doi: 10.1002/hbm.20997

Insel T, Cuthbert B, Garvey M, Heinssen R, Pine DS, Quinn K, Sanislow C, Wang P (2010) Research domain criteria (RDoC): toward a new classification framework for research on mental disorders. Am J Psychiatry 167(7):748–751. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp.2010.09091379

Kenny ER, O'Brien JT, Cousins DA, Richardson J, Thomas AJ, Firbank MJ et al (2010) Functional connectivity in late-life depression using resting-state functional magnetic resonance imaging. Am J Geriatr Psychiatry 18(7):643–651

Krishnan KRR, McDonald WM, Escalona PR, Doraiswamy PM, Chul Na, Husain MM, Figiel GS, Boyko OB, Ellinwood EH, Nemeroff CB (1992) Magnetic resonance imaging of the caudate nuclei in depression: preliminary observations. Arch Gen Psychiatry 49(7):553–557. doi:10.1001/archpsyc.1992.01820070047007

Kumar A, Newberg A, Alavi A, Berlin J, Smith R, Reivich M (1993) Regional cerebral glucose metabolism in late-life depression and Alzheimer disease: a preliminary positron emission tomography study. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 90(15):7019–7023

Kumar A, Ajilore O (2008) Magnetic resonance imaging and late-life depression: potential biomarkers in the era of personalized medicine. Am J Psychiatry 165(2):166–168. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp.2007.07111771

Kumar A, Bilker W, Jin Z, Udupa J (2000) Atrophy and high intensity lesions: complementary neurobiological mechanisms in late-life major depression. Neuropsychopharmacology 22(3):264–274. doi:10.1016/S0893-133X(99)00124-4

Lai TJ, Payne ME, Byrum CE, Steffens DC, Ranga K, Krishnan R (2000) Reduction of orbital frontal cortex volume in geriatric depression. Biol Psychiatry 48(10):971–975. doi:10.1016/S0006-3223(00)01042-8

Lang PJ, Bradley MM (1997) International affective picture systems (iaps): technical manual and affective ratings. University of Florida, Gainesville

Lavretsky H, Small GW (2004) Mixed cognitive and depressive symptoms. In Late-Life Depression, Oxford University Press, New York

Lee S-H, Payne ME, Steffens DC, McQuoid DR, Lai T-J, Provenzale JM, Krishnan KRR (2003) Subcortical lesion severity and orbitofrontal cortex volume in geriatric depression. Biol Psychiatry 54(5):529–533. doi:10.1016/S0006-3223(03)00063-5

Lesser IM, Mena I, Boone KB, Miller BL, Mehringer CM, Wohl M (1994) Reduction of cerebral blood flow in older depressed patients. Arch Gen Psychiatry 51(9):677–686

Mantella RC, Butters MA, Dew MA, Mulsant BH, Begley AE, Tracey MB, Shear K, Reynolds CF, Lenze EJ (2007) Cognitive impairment in late-life generalized anxiety disorder. Am J Geriatr Psychiatr 15(8):673–679. doi:10.1097/JGP.0b013e31803111f2

Mayberg HS (1997) Limbic-cortical dysregulation: a proposed model of depression. J Neuropsychiatry Clin Neurosci 9(3):471–481

Mayberg HS, Lozano AM et al (2005) Deep brain stimulation for treatment-resistant depression. Neuron 45(5):651–656

Morris P, Rapoport SI (1990) Neuroimaging and affective disorder in late life: a review. Canadian Can J Psychiatry. Revue Canadienne De Psychiatrie 35(4):347–354

Ochsner KN, Bunge SA, Gross JJ, Gabrieli JDE (2002) Rethinking feelings: an fMRI study of the cognitive regulation of emotion. J Cognit Neurosci 14(8):1215–1229. doi:10.1162/089892902760807212

Pantel J, Schröder J, Essig M, Popp D, Dech H, Knopp MV, Schad LR, Eysenbach K, Backenstra M, Friedlinger M (1997) Quantitative magnetic resonance imaging in geriatric depression and

primary degenerative dementia. J Affect Disord 42(1):69–83. doi:10.1016/S0165-0327(96)00105-X

Pfefferbaum A, Adalsteinsson E, Sullivan EV (2005) Frontal circuitry degradation marks healthy adult aging: Evidence from diffusion tensor imaging. NeuroImage 26(3):891–899. doi:10.1016/j.neuroimage.2005.02.034

Phillips ML, Drevets WC, Rauch SL, Lane R (2003) Neurobiology of emotion perception II: implications for major psychiatric disorders. Biol Psychiatry 54(5):515–528. doi:10.1016/S0006-3223(03)00171-9

Pierre JM (2010) The borders of mental disorder in psychiatry and the dsm. J Psychiatr Pract 16(6):375–386. doi:10.1097/01.pra.0000390756.37754.68

Rabins PV, Pearlson GD, Aylward E, Kumar AJ, Dowell K (1991) Cortical magnetic resonance imaging changes in elderly inpatients with major depression. Am J Psychiatry 148(5):617–620

Raichle ME, MacLeod AM, Snyder AZ, Powers WJ, Gusnard DA, Shulman GL (2001) A default mode of brain function. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 98(2):676–682

Raz N, Gunning FM, Head D, Dupuis JH, McQuain J, Briggs SD, Loken WJ, Thornton AE, Acker JD (1997) Selective aging of the human cerebral cortex observed in vivo: differential vulnerability of the prefrontal gray matter. Cereb Cortex 7(3):268–282. doi:10.1093/cercor/7.3.268

Raz N, Gunning-Dixon FM, Head D, Dupuis JH, Acker JD (1998) Neuroanatomical correlates of cognitive aging: Evidence from structural magnetic resonance imaging. Neuropsychology 12(1):95–114. doi:10.1037/0894-4105.12.1.95

Raz N, Lindenberger U, Rodrigue KM, Kennedy KM, Head D, Williamson A, Dahle C, Gerstorf D, Acker JD (2005) Regional brain changes in aging healthy adults: general trends, individual differences and modifiers. Cereb Cortex 15(11):1676–1689. doi:10.1093/cercor/bhi044

Resnick SM, Goldszal AF, Davatzikos C, Golski S, Kraut MA, Metter EJ, Bryan RN, Zonderman AB (2000) One-year age changes in MRI brain volumes in older adults. Cereb Cortex 10(5):464–472. doi:10.1093/cercor/10.5.464

Reuter-Lorenz PA, Lustig C (2005) Brain aging: reorganizing discoveries about the aging mind. Curr Opin Neurobiol 15(2):245–251. doi:10.1016/j.conb.2005.03.016

Rosano C, Becker J, Lopez O, Lopez-Garcia P, Carter CS, Newman A, Kuller L, Aizenstein H (2005) Morphometric analysis of gray matter volume in demented older adults: exploratory analysis of the cardiovascular health study brain mri database. Neuroepidemiology 24(4):221–229. doi:10.1159/000085140

Sackeim HA, Prohovnik I, Moeller JR, Brown RP, Apter S, Prudic J, et al (1990) Regional cerebral blood flow in mood disorders: i. comparison of major depressives and normal controls at rest. Arch Gen Psychiatry 47(1):60–70. doi:10.1001/archpsyc.1990.01810130062009

Salat DH, Tuch DN, Greve AJ, van der Kouwe W, Hevelone ND, Zaleta AK, Rosen BR et al (2005) Age-related alterations in white matter microstructure measured by diffusion tensor imaging. Neurobio Aging 26(8):1215–1227. doi:10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2004.09.017.

Salloway S, Malloy P, Kohn R, Gillard E, Duffy J, Rogg J, Tung G, Richardson E, Thomas C, Westlake R (1996) MRI and neuropsychological differences in early-and late-life-onset geriatric depression. Neurology 46(6):1567–1574

Salloway S, Boyle PA, Correia S, Malloy PF, Cahn-Weiner DA, Lon Schneider K, Krishnan RR, Nakra R (2002) The relationship of MRI subcortical hyperintensities to treatment response in a trial of sertraline in geriatric depressed outpatients. Am J Geriatr Psychiatr Off J Am Assoc Geriatric Psychiatry 10(1):107–111

Schmahmann JD, Pandya DN, Wang R, Dai G, D'Arceuil HE, de Crespigny JA, van Wedeen J (2007) Association fibre pathways of the brain: parallel observations from diffusion spectrum imaging and autoradiography. Brain 130(3):630–653. doi:10.1093/brain/awl359

Shah PJ, Glabus MF, Goodwin GM, Ebmeier KP (2002) Chronic, treatment-resistant depression and right fronto-striatal atrophy. British J Psychiatr 180(5):434–440. doi:10.1192/bjp.180.5.434

Sheline YI, Barch DM, Price JL, Rundle MM, Vaishnavi SN, Snyder AZ, Mintun MA, Wang S, Coalson RS, Raichle ME (2009) The default mode network and self-referential processes in

depression. In: Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 106(6):1942–1947. doi:10.1073/pnas.0812686106
Sheline YI, Sanghavi M, Mintun MA, Gado MH (1999) Depression duration but not age predicts hippocampal volume loss in medically healthy women with recurrent major depression. Journal Neurosci 19(12):5034–5043
Siegle GJ, Steinhauer SR, Thase ME, Stenger VA, Carter CS (2002) Can't shake that feeling: event-related fMRI assessment of sustained amygdala activity in response to emotional information in depressed individuals. Biol Psychiatry 51(9):693–707. doi:10.1016/S0006-3223(02)01314-8
Smith GS, Reynolds CF III, Pollock B, Derbyshire S, Nofzinger E, Dew MA et al (1999) Cerebral glucose metabolic response to combined total sleep deprivation and antidepressant treatment in geriatric depression. Am J Psychiatry 156(5):683–689
Smith GS, Kramer E, Ma Y, Kingsley P, Dhawan V, Chaly T et al (2009) The functional neuroanatomy of geriatric depression. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry 24(8):798–808
Soderlund H, Nyberg L, Adolfsson R, Nilsson L, Launer L (2003) High prevalence of white matter hyperintensities in normal aging: relation to blood pressure and cognition. Cortex 39(4–5):1093–1105. doi:10.1016/S0010-9452(08)70879-7
Steffens DC, Krishnan KRR (1998) Structural neuroimaging and mood disorders: recent findings, implications for classification, and future directions. Biol Psychiatry 43(10):705–712. doi:10.1016/S0006-3223(98)00084-5
Steffens DC, Payne ME, Greenberg DL, Byrum CE, Welsh-Bohmer KA, Ryan Wagner H, MacFall JR (2002) Hippocampal volume and incident dementia in geriatric depression. Am J Geriatr Psychiatr Off J Am Assoc Geriatric Psychiatry 10(1):62–71
Taylor WD, MacFall JR, Steffens DC, Payne ME, Provenzale JM, Ranga Rama Krishnan K (2003) Localization of age-associated white matter hyperintensities in late-life depression. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 27(3):539–544. doi:10.1016/S0278-5846(02)00358-5
Taylor WD, MacFall JR, Payne Martha E, McQuoid DR, Provenzale JM, Steffens DC, Krishnan KRR (2004) Late-life depression and microstructural abnormalities in dorsolateral prefrontal cortex white matter. Am J Psychiatry 161(7):1293–1296. doi:10.1176/appi.ajp.161.7.1293
Tupler LA, Ranga K, Krishnan R, McDonald WM, Dombeck CB, D'Souza S, Steffens DC (2002) Anatomic location and laterality of MRI signal hyperintensities in late-life depression. J Psychosom Res 53(2):665–676. doi:10.1016/S0022-3999(02)00425-7
van Es ACGM, van der Flier WM, Admiraal-Behloul F, Olofsen H, Bollen ELEM, Middelkoop HAM, Weverling-Rijnsburger AWE, Westendorp RGJ, van Buchem MA (2006) Magnetization transfer imaging of gray and white matter in mild cognitive impairment and Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging 27(12):1757–1762. doi:10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2005.09.042
Vasudev A, Thomas A (2010) Bipolar disorder' in the elderly: what's in a name? Maturitas 66(3):231–235. doi:10.1016/j.maturitas.2010.02.013
Wetherell JL, Gatz M, Pedersen NL (2001) A longitudinal analysis of anxiety and depressive symptoms. Psychol Aging 16(2):187–195
Wierenga CE, Bondi MW (2007) Use of functional magnetic resonance imaging in the early identification of Alzheimer's disease. Neuropsychol Rev 17(2):127–143. doi:10.1007/s11065-007-9025-y
Wittchen HU, Hoyer J (2001) Generalized anxiety disorder: nature and course. J Clin Psychiatry 62(Suppl 11):15–19 discussion 20-21
Wu M, Andreescu C, Butters MA, Tamburo R, Reynolds CF III, Aizenstein H (2011) Default-mode network connectivity and white matter burden in late-life depression. Psychiatry Res 194(1):39–46. PMID: 21824753
Wu M, Carmichael O, Lopez-Garcia P, Carter CS, Aizenstein HJ (2006) Quantitative comparison of AIR, SPM, and the fully deformable model for atlas-based segmentation of functional and structural MR images. Hum Brain Mapp 27(9):747–754. doi:10.1002/hbm.20216
Zhao X-H, Wang P-J, Li C-B, Hu Z-H, Xi Q, Wu W-Y, Tang X-W (2007) Altered default mode network activity in patient with anxiety disorders: an fMRI study. Eur J Radiol 63(3):373–378. doi:10.1016/j.ejrad.2007.02.006

The Role of Diffusion Tensor Imaging in the Study of Cognitive Aging

Owen Carmichael and Samuel Lockhart

Abstract This chapter gives an overview of the role that diffusion tensor MRI (DTI) can play in the study of cognitive decline that is associated with advancing age. A brief overview of biological injury processes that impinge on the aging brain is provided, and their overall effect on the integrity of neural architecture is described. Cognitive decline associated with aging, and white matter connectivity degradation as a biological substrate for that decline, is then described. We then briefly describe the technology of DTI as a means for in vivo, non-invasive interrogation of white matter connectivity, and relate it to FLAIR, a more traditional MRI method for assessing white matter injury. We then survey the existing findings on relationships between aging-associated neuropathological processes and DTI measurements on one hand; and relationships between DTI measurements and late-life cognitive function on the other. We conclude with a summary of current research directions in relation to DTI studies of cognitive aging.

Keywords Diffusion tensor MRI · Cognitive aging · Brain aging · White matter injury · Connectivity

Contents

O. Carmichael (✉)
Neurology Department, University of California, Davis, Davis, CA, USA
e-mail: ocarmichael@ucdavis.edu

S. Lockhart
Centerfor Neuroscience, University of California, Davis, Davis, CA, USA

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 289–320
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2011_176

Published Online: 13 November 2011

1 Scientific Context of DTI in Aging

1.1 Brain Changes Associated With Aging

The aging brain is beset by a variety of deleterious biological processes that develop insidiously over the course of many years, interact with each other, and eventually trigger the neuronal dysfunction and death that underlie late-life cognitive decline (Fig. 1). Beginning in roughly the sixth decade of life, an array of cardiovascular risks promoted by environmental and genetic factors trigger subclinical primary vascular injury through multiple, complex etiological pathways: for example, chronic glucose dysregulation is associated with chronic low-grade inflammation (Miranda et al. 2005); and hypertension and atherosclerotic plaque cause vascular remodeling, i.e. changes to blood vessel structural characteristics that determine the fluid mechanical properties of blood flow (Kiechl and Willeit 1999). The vascular injury processes interact; for example inflammation exacerbates dysfunction of the endothelium by dramatically modulating leukocyte trafficking (Fisher 2008). At approximately the same time, Alzheimer's Disease (AD) risk factors promote the production and aggregation of beta amyloid in extracellular spaces and within blood vessels (Cummings 2004) (i.e., cerebral amyloid angiopathy, CAA). Amyloid exacerbates inflammatory processes, and CAA exacerbates vascular remodeling; vascular remodeling may conversely hinder the clearance of amyloid plaque through vascular spaces (Preston et al. 2003).

Amyloid deposition, inflammation, vascular remodeling, and endothelial dysfunction trigger a complex cascade of secondary injury processes including

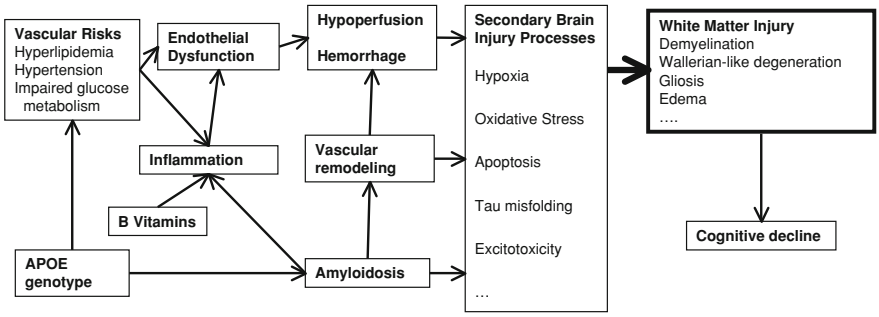


Fig. 1 A partial, simplified view of the complex array of interconnected biological processes that promote white matter injury and subsequent cognitive decline in the aging brain. Because diffusion tensor MRI provides non-invasive measurements of white matter injury, its role in cognitive aging research is to help elucidate the links between biological factors (including vascular, degenerative, nutritional, genetic, and other factors), white matter injury, and cognitive function

apoptosis, hypoxia, oxidative stress, excitotoxicity, and tau phosphorylation. Other factors have the potential to influence these primary injury processes: nutritional factors such as B vitamins can modulate inflammatory processes independent of cardiovascular risks for example (Selhub et al. 2000), and sex hormone levels may modulate injury processes through a number of pathways (Janowsky 2006). The secondary processes cause neuronal injury including demyelination, neurotransmitter dysregulation, and disruption of cell homeostasis. These effects and subsequent neuronal death give rise to the profound loss of cognitive abilities that typify late-life cognitive decline. Importantly, there is a growing sense that the course of late-life brain change is commonly influenced by an admixture of multiple, concurrent, injury processes, rather than a single, isolated pathological process such as AD that is either present or absent (Jagust et al. 2008; Schneider and Bennett 2010; DeCarli 2006).

1.2 Cognitive Changes Associated With Aging

Broad variability across the population in risk factors for aging-related brain injury processes has given rise to broad variability in the time course of late-life brain changes. This heterogeneity in brain change trajectories is presumed to drive the great variability in late-life cognitive trajectories that is one of the hallmark observations of cognitive aging research (Fig. 2). There are robust inter-individual differences in cognitive functioning throughout adulthood and this heterogeneity is amplified by differences in trajectories of cognitive change that emerge as people age. Longitudinal studies of older individuals reveal widely differing rates of cognitive decline, as well as many cases of stable function and even modest

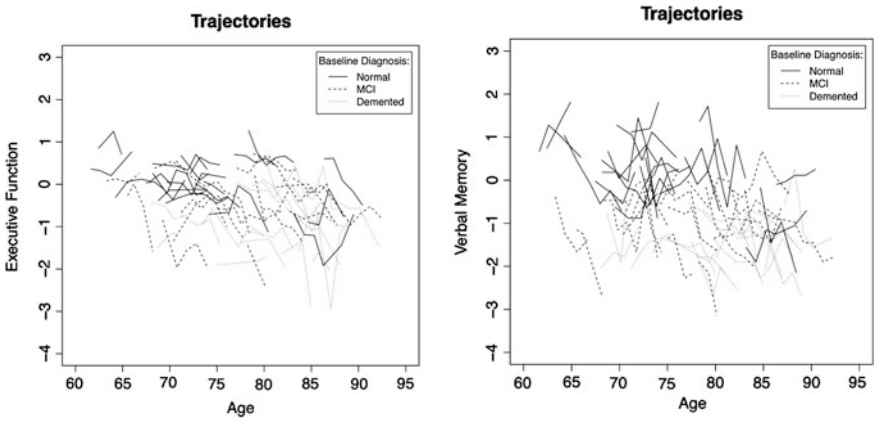


Fig. 2 Population variability in aging-related brain injury processes likely leads to the broad variability in cognitive decline observed in many studies of elderly individuals. Trajectories of psychometrically matched measures of executive function (*left*) and episodic memory (*right*) are plotted for 60 randomly selected individuals from a longitudinal study of aging (Mungas et al. 2010), including 20 individuals clinically diagnosed at baseline with mild cognitive impairment, 20 clinically diagnosed at baseline with dementia, and 20 who were cognitively normal at baseline. On average, the more clinically impaired individuals exhibited lower cognitive function at baseline and greater longitudinal declines; however, there is substantial variability in trajectories and substantial overlap between clinical diagnostic groups. The role of DTI in cognitive aging research is to provide in vivo, non-invasive measurements of white matter injury, from which some of this cognitive heterogeneity is hypothesized to arise. [See Mungas et al. (2010) for more information]

improvement (Albert et al. 1995; Colsher and Wallace 1991; Christensen et al. 1999; Rubin et al. 1998; Schaie 1988; Wilson et al. 2002; Zelinski et al. 1993; Mungas et al. 2010). Variability in longitudinal trajectories translates into the increased variability of function over time that is one of the basic observations of cross-sectional studies of cognitive aging (Christensen et al. 1999). In the context of this broad heterogeneity, the prediction of late-life cognitive decline has emerged as one of the central goals of cognitive aging research.

1.3 Late-Life Cognitive Decline as a Disconnection Syndrome

A convergent body of cognitive neuroscience research supports the notion that a substantial portion of late-life cognitive decline observed in the aforementioned studies is accounted for by disconnection of distributed networks of brain regions that function in concert to give rise to higher-order cognitive abilities (Buckner 2004; O'Sullivan et al. 2001; Seeley et al. 2007). Coordinated activity of distributed sets of brain regions is required for successful memory function, language, attention, and other aspects of higher-order thought. Mapping out the circuitry and

function of these networks, and the ways their architecture relates to domain-specific cognitive function, has been a key goal of cognitive neuroscience research since neuroimaging technologies became widely available.

Visual attention provides a typical example of how crucial distributed brain networks are for successful cognitive functioning, even for tasks that seem relatively rudimentary. It relies on a set of executive control processes critical to successful visual search of the environment, including interaction between top-down, goal-oriented search, and bottom-up, reflexive orienting (Madden 2007). Electrophysiological and neuroimaging research suggests that even such simple behavior relies upon multiple distributed brain regions that interact selectively, synchronously, and successfully as part of a network (Corbetta et al. 2008; Corbetta and Shulman 2002). Specifically, ventral frontal-parietal regions facilitate bottom-up attention, while dorsal frontal-parietal regions contribute to top-down attention (Kastner and Ungerleider 2000; Woldorff et al. 2004; Bisley 2011). Neural activity in frontal and parietal regions is thought to modulate perceptual system activity to enable selective sensory processing for the target (Bar 2003; Hopfinger et al. 2000). Thus, multiple brain regions in distributed networks must be recruited in concert to perform a relatively simple function—attending to visual stimuli—that none could complete in isolation.

Cognitive processes are resolved by neural systems that are both localized and distributed (Mesulam 1990). Indeed, both connectivity and modularity of networks is critical to brain function and cognition (Mesulam 1998; Bullmore and Sporns 2009). Focal, modular brain regions are thought to perform dedicated, specialized processing of particular aspects of cognitive function. Reciprocal connectivity allows for information flow among modules to create larger, distributed cognitive networks. It has been argued that network anatomy and connectivity define the limits of the cognitive tasks that can be performed, and allow humans the flexibility necessary to perform them (Mesulam 1998).

Network modularity and connectivity have been mapped out through non-human primate anatomical and electrophysiological studies, as well as human neuroimaging research (Corbetta and Shulman 2002). In humans, networked activity is important for cognitive functions as diverse as visual attention, working memory (Rissman et al. 2004), episodic memory (Eichenbaum et al. 2007), semantic memory (Hagoort et al. 2008), and cognitive control (O'Reilly et al. 2010). In particular, nodes in prefrontal cortex are thought to be essentially involved in multiple cognitive networks (Mesulam 1998; Miller and Cohen 2001).

The question of how activity is coordinated among diverse brain regions in a connected network is an active area of neuroscience research. Synchronization of neural activity is thought to be required for successful cognitive functioning (Fries et al. 2008). However, in most brain regions, the mechanisms of coordination and integration of information from multiple disparate network modules are unexplained, and discovering these mechanisms is an ongoing challenge.

Because cognitive networks utilize white matter to connect distributed cortical nodes, aging-related changes in network behavior are hypothesized to follow from changes in the integrity of white matter connections, in addition to likely structural

and functional changes to neuronal cell bodies, dendrites, and synapses (Greenwood 2000; Tisserand and Jolles 2003). This "disconnection hypothesis" states that injury to myelin and the axon proper diminish the efficient axonal conduction of electrical signals, thus reducing information processing efficiency in distributed networks, thus leading to diminished cognitive abilities with age (O'Sullivan et al. 2001).

It is within the context of the disconnection hypothesis that DTI serves to provide its most valuable contributions to the study of cognitive aging—as described below, DTI has the potential to assay the integrity of axonal connections between nodes in distributed cognitive networks, and thereby assess relations between network connectivity and age-related cognitive decline.

2 DTI Measurement

2.1 Background

DTI is an MRI method for using magnetic field gradients to measure the directional distribution of water diffusion at each location in the brain. Many reviews have described the technology underlying DTI data acquisition in detail [for example, Bammer et al. (2009), Chanraud et al. (2010), Mukherjee et al. (2008a, b), Beaulieu (2002)]. The simplest way to conceptualize DTI may be as an acquisition of several component images, each of which quantify the degree to which water molecules in the brain appear to be diffusing along a particular direction of travel. Because each such component image only provides diffusion information along a particular direction of travel, several component images, corresponding to several lines of travel, are acquired in rapid sequence and aligned to each other to build a fully 3D representation of the spatial distribution of water diffusion at every location in the brain. If, for a particular location in the white matter, local water diffusion appears to be anisotropic, that is, if water strongly prefers to diffuse along certain well-defined spatial directions and not others, we indirectly infer the presence of highly organized axonal structures: the water is likely to be diffusing within axons along their directions of travel, or within or between myelin sheaths. If, conversely, water is free to diffuse in any and all spatial directions where an axon tract is expected to occur, we can indirectly infer that axonal injury, demyelination, gliosis, or edema may be making this free diffusion possible.

2.2 Preprocessing

Preprocessing must be applied to insure that all of the DTI component images avoid common MRI acquisition artifacts and are in spatial correspondence with each other. Geometric distortions are introduced into each component image as part of the MRI measurement process; these can be corrected at acquisition time

by dynamically modifying parameters of the acquisition sequence, or they can be corrected post-hoc by linearly or nonlinearly aligning the component images to each other or to a group average.

2.3 Diffusion Representations

Once the component images are brought into alignment with each other, each location in the brain is represented by the amount of water diffusion along each of the directions of travel. The key post-processing step in DTI is the extrapolation of this information into a mathematical object that quantifies the amount of water diffusion locally along any and all directions of travel. Traditionally, this spatial distribution of water diffusion has been summarized in terms of a three-by-three matrix that in essence describes three principal, orthogonal directions along which water diffuses, and the amount of diffusion along those directions (Fig. 3, bottom left). Water diffusion along any other direction is interpolated from the three preferred ones. Estimating the three directions and diffusion magnitudes requires only six component images, representing diffusion along orthogonal directions, together with an additional T2-weighted image, and thus this representation has been prominent since the earliest days of DTI. However, the ability of the three orthogonal directions to represent complex spatial distributions of water diffusion is limited; depending on whether water appears to diffuse locally along one, two, or three prominent orthogonal directions, the spatial distribution of water diffusion is required to be represented as pencil-like, pancake-like, or sphere-like, respectively. Now that greater numbers of component images per scan are routinely acquired, the ability to mathematically represent more complex spatial distributions of water diffusion is available. The canonical example is a white matter fiber crossing, at which water diffuses preferentially along two (possibly orthogonal) directions, but water diffusion along all other directions is relatively weak; in a three-orthogonal-direction representation, a pancake-shaped distribution will result in which all directions in between the two preferred ones will appear to have strong water diffusion as well. However, while a number of higher-order diffusion representations have been developed, no single one of them has risen to dominance, and methodologies for manipulating complex diffusion representations are still a highly active area of computational research [see, for example, Frank (2002), Liu et al. (2004), Tournier et al. (2004)].

2.4 DTI Summary Measures of Local White Matter Integrity

Because mathematical representations of DTI data are more complex than those provided for more traditional MRI data, researchers have sought to summarize it into univariate summary measures that capture characteristics of the water

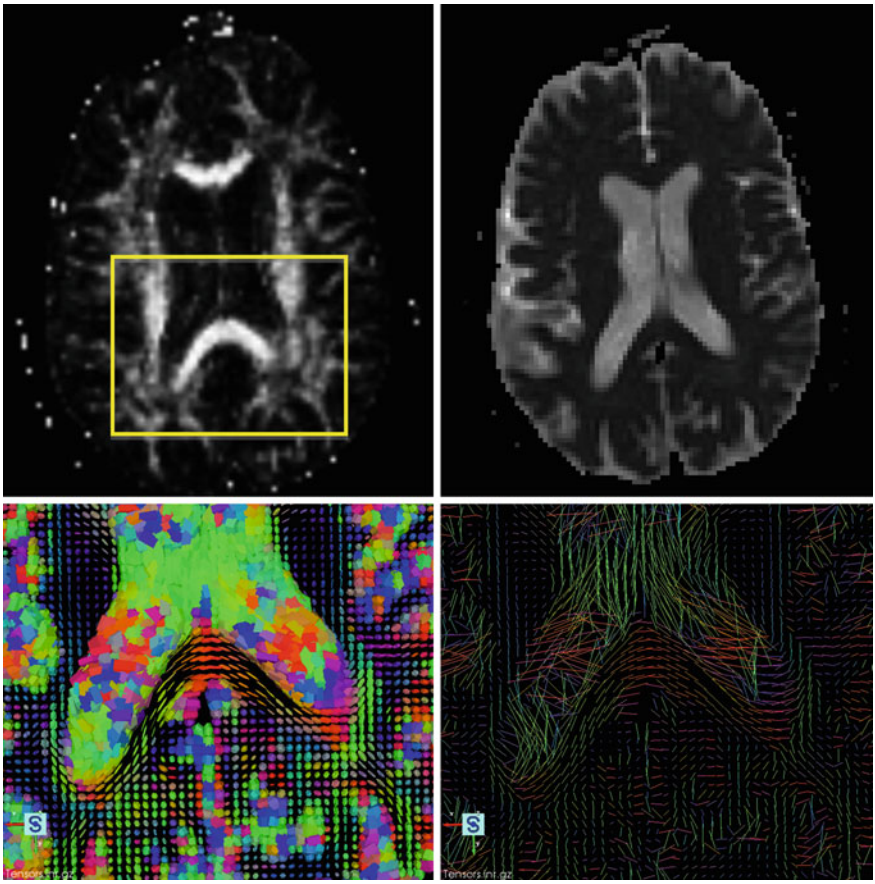


Fig. 3 Univariate summary measures and visual depictions of the diffusion tensor for a typical elderly individual. *Top Images* showing fractional anisotropy (FA, *left*) and mean diffusivity (MD, *right*) for a single slice. For both measures, lesser values are rendered in darker colors. *Bottom* Expanded view of the slice section shown as a *yellow box* in the *upper left* view. Ellipsoids are used to depict the orientations of the three principal orthogonal directions of water diffusion at each location (*left*). An arrow points in the orientation of the first principal diffusion direction at each location (*right*)

diffusion directional distribution. Because the three-orthogonal-direction representation still predominates in neuroscientific studies, the univariate summaries are predominantly calculated from the relative diffusion magnitudes along each of the directions. Fractional anisotropy (FA), for example, calculates the ratio of the magnitude of water diffusion along the most preferred direction to the sum of magnitudes along all three directions, effectively summarizing how preferred the single most preferred diffusion direction is over the others (Fig. 3, top left). This is commonly used as a proxy measure of local white matter microstructural integrity, with clear limitations. Because it is a ratio, FA does not quantify the sheer amount

of water diffusion in an absolute sense; in addition, locations with two or more well-defined directions of strong water diffusion will appear to have low FA. Mean diffusivity (MD), conversely, provides a measure of the total bulk of water diffusion by taking the average of the magnitudes of water diffusion along the three orthogonal directions, and thus does not directly provide a sense of whether that diffusion tends to occur preferentially along one or another direction (Fig. 3, top right). Several minor variants of FA and MD have been presented in the literature, each of which incorporate quantification of the sheer volume of water diffusion and/or the degree to which that diffusion preferentially follows one or another spatial direction. Each of the univariate summaries is limited in its ability to quantify the structural integrity of the underlying white matter, and their inability to disambiguate differing states of white matter organization has largely driven the development of more expressive diffusion representations. From a cognitive aging perspective, the key impact of DTI summary measure limitations has been the inability to establish thresholds on them that differentiate normal, healthy white matter from lesioned tissue. That is, depending on the intrinsic organization of the white matter locally, FA may tend to be relatively low for no other reason than that there are multiple preferred diffusion directions. In other locations where only a single strong diffusion direction is expected, low FA may be a marker of white matter disruption.

Ultimately, to truly disentangle the integrity of white matter from its underlying geometry, higher-order diffusion representations are needed. However, lacking such data, a practical approach to this problem is to use a development sample of healthy young individuals to calculate nominal values of diffusion summaries at every white matter location in a standardized space; white matter integrity in novel subjects is then indexed against these population norms (Lee et al. 2010) (Fig. 4).

2.5 DTI Summary Measures of Connectivity

Univariate DTI summary measures can be useful for characterizing local white matter integrity, and because they are univariate, they can be relatively easy to incorporate into traditional MRI analytic pathways. But DTI additionally provides the capability to integrate multiple water diffusion measurements over a trajectory into summary measures of interregional connectivity, which can then be used to quantify the integrity of structural connections among distributed cognitive networks. Higher integrity of longer-range structural connections is indicated by greater directionality of water diffusion along the trajectory; such trajectories may possess greater myelination, greater axonal integrity, or denser concentration of myelinated axons.

Deterministic tractography, the traditional method for using DTI to assess the integrity of interregional connectivity, traces a set of curved trajectories, or fibers that originate inside of one region of interest, and follow paths along the preferential water diffusion directions implied by the local diffusion representation

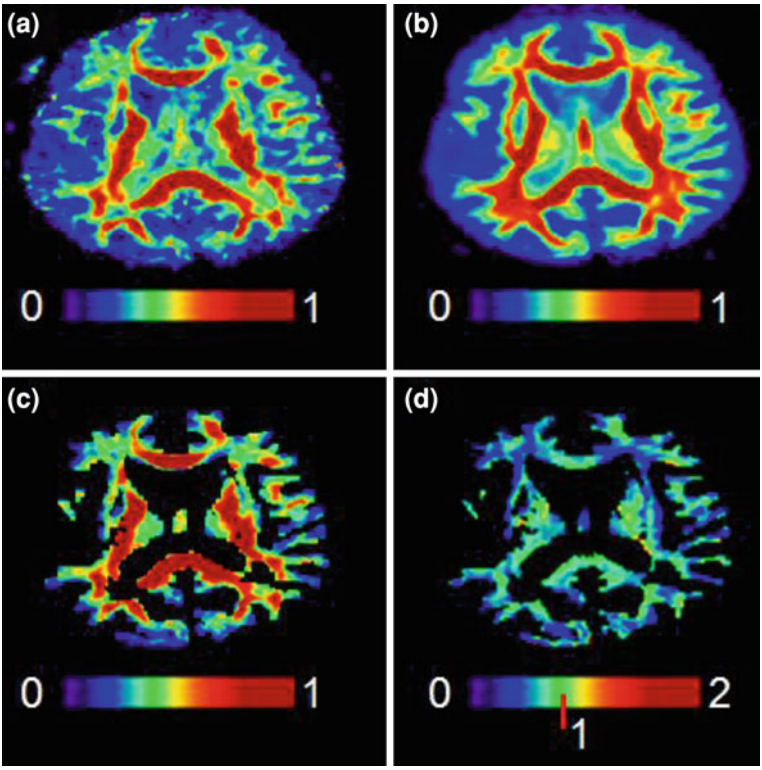


Fig. 4 Indexing FA against normative values is a practical method for converting FA into a white matter integrity measure that is independent of intrinsic local fiber organization. *Top left* Slice of an FA map of a typical elderly individual. *Top right* Co-registered slice of the mean FA map from a population of healthy young individuals, revealing spatial variability in FA values that is due to the intrinsic local geometric organization of fibers. *Bottom left* FA within the white matter pixels of the elderly individual is shown, suggesting a spatially varying pattern of white matter integrity. *Bottom right* Dividing the elderly individual's FA at each location by the corresponding young mean FA reveals a different spatial map of white matter integrity, expressed as percentages of expected young values

(Fig. 3, bottom right). Each fiber path represents a plausible axon tract trajectory. Connectivity between a pair of regions is usually determined by tracing all such curved fibers that originate within any starting voxel in the first region, and isolating only those that terminate in the second region. Complications are added on top of this basic procedure: for example, various mathematical techniques are used to make sure that the traced fiber paths are reasonably straight and smooth, and post-processing steps cull those fibers that are so short and contorted that they probably do not reflect a valid white matter tract. Additionally because traditional DTI generally only provides robust water diffusion data within the white matter, assessing connectivity between a pair of gray matter structures involves the uncertain task of identifying proximal white matter voxels to use as fiber starting

points. In the end, the result is a set of fibers that purport to connect one region to another; the degree of connectivity between the two can be quantified in terms of the number of such fibers.

Probablistic tractography overcomes many of the practical limitations of deterministic tractography at the cost of increased computational burden. The governing principle of probabilistic tractography is to consider, for each starting voxel, all possible fiber trajectories that originate there and terminate somewhere else in the brain. Each such fiber trajectory is assigned a probability representing the degree to which water diffusion directionality along the trajectory are consistent with the hypothesis that a white matter tract follows that path. Interregional connectivity is quantified by summing the probabilities of all such fiber trajectories that originate in one region and end in another. In the abstract, this overcomes the key limitation of deterministic tractography: the requirement that each starting voxel pick exactly one fiber trajectory through the brain. Depending on the configuration of white matter tracts and level of noise in the data, there may be points in the trajectory where multiple directions of travel seems equally plausible, and probabilistic tractography gracefully considers the likelihood of all such putative paths. The practical problem with probabilistic tractography is that there are infinitely many possible fiber trajectories emanating out of each starting voxel, and thus summing fiber probabilities over all possible trajectories is intractable to compute. Therefore, the art of probabilistic tractography involves exploring the space of possible fiber trajectories in a time-efficient way. Even if this space is explored efficiently, however, there is no way to make the jump from one trajectory per starting voxel to multiple without heaping on additional computation.

Lacking high-quality DTI data that allows for robust deterministic tracking, and lacking state-of-the-art computational tools for probabilistic tractography, one common fallback position is to manually trace the paths of interregional white matter tracts using standardized anatomical tracing protocols together with a combination of DTI, anatomical, and functional images, possibly overlaid on top of each other. The univariate summary measures of local white matter integrity may then be summarized over the region to provide an overall summary of interregional connectivity; or, a voxel-based analysis of the local integrity measures can be reduced to focus only on those white matter tract voxels. This effectively converts tractography into a time-consuming manual process, although it provides a clear means for imposing expert neuroanatomical knowledge about tract trajectories onto the DTI analytic process.

2.6 Relation to FLAIR

The application of DTI to white matter characterization in aging has naturally raised the question of whether the information it provides is redundant with or complementary to that provided by several conventional MRI sequences that are useful for white matter characterization (Haller et al. 2009; Wozniak and Lim

2006). The most widespread of these is fluid attenuation inversion recovery (FLAIR), in which the T2 signal from parenchyma is carefully measured while that of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) signal is suppressed. In white matter, the FLAIR contrast is indirectly determined by the density of lipid protons within myelin, which facilitate the relaxation of water protons bound to its macromolecular matrix (Barkhof and Scheltens 2002). Areas of abnormally high signal in the white matter on FLAIR are a common finding on scans of the elderly brain; such white matter hyperintensities (WMH) are associated with cognitive impairment in these individuals (DeCarli et al. 2005; Nordahl et al. 2006; Nordahl et al. 2005; Yoshita et al. 2006). WMH reflect various pathogenic mechanisms, including cerebral ischemia and degradation of myelin in adjacent fiber tracts (Kim et al. 2008), although lacking additional data, we can only indirectly infer which of these mechanisms contribute to specific WMHs based on WMH size and location (DeCarli et al. 2005; Schmidt et al. 2003).

It appears that as white matter slowly and progressively degrades with advancing age due to various pathological mechanisms, DTI provides fairly sensitive detection of such changes, even when they are quite subtle. White matter on FLAIR, meanwhile, might only become hyperintense when this degeneration reaches a more advanced stage. There are two streams of evidence supporting this notion. First, on co-registered FLAIR and DTI, regions of reduced white matter integrity, as measured by DTI-based FA or MD, extend beyond the boundaries of FLAIR-based WMH, and such abnormal DTI values gradually fall back to normal values with distance from the WMH (Bronge 2002; Firbank et al. 2003; Maillard et al. 2011) (Fig. 5). This suggests that aging-associated white matter damage may involve foci of severely damaged tissue surrounded by more mild damage; FLAIR is only able to identify the former, in the form of WMHs, while DTI can identify both the core and the surround. Second, markers of aging-associated neuropathological processes, including vascular disease and inflammation, may be more strongly associated with DTI than they are with WMH burden; this reinforces the view that DTI may provide a more "continuous" measure of white matter dysfunction while WMHs are only those sites where this dysfunction has passed a threshold of high severity (Fornage et al. 2008; Nitkunan et al. 2008a; O'Sullivan et al. 2004; van Dijk 2005; Wersching et al. 2010).

While DTI appears to have the potential to provide more sensitive measurement of aging-associated white matter dysfunction than FLAIR, its value relative to FLAIR for this purpose is currently not entirely clear for three key reasons. First, the number of studies that have measured both FLAIR and DTI in the same individuals, and directly evaluated what information about prevalent aging-related white matter pathology is shared between the two or unique to one or the other, is still very small. One study has suggested that by investigating relationships between FLAIR signal intensity and DTI measures within WMHs, we can effectively categorize WMHs according to the severity of WMH dysfunction, but the clinical value of such deeper characterization of WMH severity is currently unclear (Zhan et al. 2009). Second, while several serial FLAIR studies have used multiple scans per individual to directly chart the longitudinal course of WMH

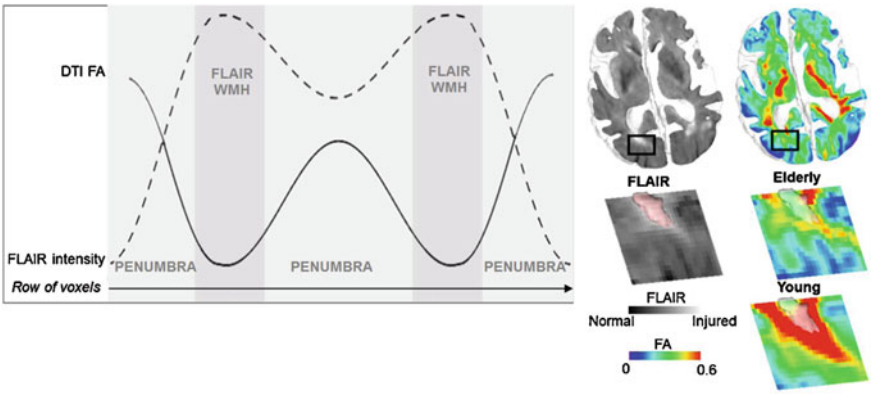


Fig. 5 *Left* White matter hyperintensities (WMHs) from FLAIR MRI may represent only the focal cores of severe white matter injury surrounded by penumbrae of more mildly injured tissue. Fractional anisotropy (FA) from DTI may provide a more graded measure of white matter integrity that captures mild injury to the WMH penumbra. *Top right* Example co-registered slices of FLAIR and FA images of a typical elderly individual. *Middle right* The location of a FLAIR-based WMH is shown overlaid as a *pink/white blob*. Compared to a typical young individual (*lower right*), FA is reduced in a broad zone that extends far beyond the WMH boundary, suggesting a more graded and spatially extended white matter injury process than is captured through WMHs. For more information, see Maillard et al. (2011)

changes in relation to risk factors and cognition, only three analogous serial DTI studies have appeared that report associations between DTI-based measures and ancillary variables of interest (Charlton et al. 2010; Teipel et al. 2010; Sullivan et al. 2010). Third, while FLAIR is a longstanding MRI technology that is relatively easy to acquire, DTI is a recent development, with attendant problems related to data reliability and biases (see Sect. 5.1 below). Thus, it remains to be seen whether FLAIR and DTI will continue to provide complementary information about aging-associated white matter changes as time goes on.

3 Relation Between DTI and Cognitive Aging Risk Factors

3.1 Age

Aging-associated changes to the microstructural properties of white matter in the absence of neurodegenerative pathology were well known from autopsy studies prior to the widespread adoption of DTI (Aboitiz et al. 1996). However, the consensus view at that time was that aging-associated white matter changes detectable in vivo were confined to white matter lesions on T2-weighted MRI; the bulk volume of white matter on conventional T1-weighted sequences, unlike that

of gray matter, did not show strong signals of decline with advancing age [see, e.g., Raz et al. (2005), Raz et al. (1997, 2004)]. However, a set of early studies finding associations between advancing age and regional DTI summary measures established DTI as a useful technology for non invasively detecting such age-related changes in vivo (Moseley 2002; Sullivan and Pfefferbaum 2006). The most consistent findings from these early region-of-interest studies were that FA decreased, and MD increased, with advancing age in cognitively intact elders; and that age-associated white matter microstructural alterations followed an anterior-to-posterior gradient, with prefrontal regions especially vulnerable to such degradation. Specific white matter regions that showed the strongest associations with advancing age included the anterior cingulate gyrus, middle frontal gyrus, genu of the corpus callosum, and centrum semiovale. Later studies largely confirmed the association between DTI measures and advancing age, although the notion that prefrontal white matter is especially vulnerable to aging effects has received mixed support. Furthermore, there has been some variability in the life course of white matter maturation and degradation across the lifespan as reported by DTI studies; they generally agree that white matter integrity follows an inverted U-shape curve over the lifespan, with developmental early-life increases in white matter integrity giving way to aging-associated degradations later in life, but it is not clear when declines in white matter integrity commence in earnest: estimates have ranged from the third to sixth decades of life.

The noteworthy advance of these studies is that they provided a new indicator of brain health that deteriorated with increasing age even among those lacking any evidence of clinically relevant neurodegenerative pathology. In addition because the measurements assayed the integrity of interregional connectivity, they provided a plausible link between brain structure and subtle cognitive declines observed in otherwise-intact individuals. However, in biological terms, the discovery of a connection between DTI and chronological age provided more questions than answers: it suggested that a set of white-matter-damaging biological processes may be acting on the brain over the lifespan, and age can serve as a proxy measure for the combined effects of all such processes, but the roles that specific biological processes—possibly related to AD, CVD, and diverse additional factors—play in promoting such microstructural white matter change remained unclear. Indeed, one of the seminal advances in aging research since the publication of the early DTI studies of aging has been the discovery that a great number of cognitively intact, community-dwelling elderly individuals may in fact be in the process of developing clinically silent neuropathology related to CVD and AD slowly and progressively over the course of years, if not decades. Understanding the effects of such pathologies on white matter microstructure could lead to prevention of age-related FA reductions, and possibly to prevention of the cognitive decline that is associated with advancing age.

3.2 Cerebrovascular Dysfunction

Due to the very high prevalence of cardiovascular disease beginning in midlife, cerebrovascular dysfunction represents a plausible biological substrate driving decline in DTI-based white matter integrity measures in advancing age. DTI measures are sensitive to gliosis, edema, and demyelination, each of which can be associated with either chronic or acute ischemic vascular changes. It is clear that DTI measures are modified in the vicinity of ischemic infarction (Chen et al. 2008). In addition, DTI summary measures suggest reduced white matter integrity in clinical conditions including CADASIL (Holtmannspotter et al. 2005) and ischemic vascular dementia (Assaf et al. 2002; Xu et al. 2010) that are characterized by severe ischemic changes, often in the absence of overt concomitant pathology (Jones et al. 1999). In addition, as noted above, DTI measures may be strongly related to FLAIR-based measures of white matter hyperintensity, which are in turn strongly linked to cerebrovascular dysfunction.

However, while DTI measures appear to indicate reduced white matter integrity in overt cerebrovascular disorders, it is less clear whether DTI can indicate subtle integrity reductions during the many years in which a constellation of vascular risk factors may be promoting progressive, clinically silent cerebrovascular dysfunction, which in turn may be reducing white matter integrity in the absence of clinically relevant behavioral changes. One study reported that, relative to matched controls, FA is reduced among individuals with a history of hypertension, and that FA is further reduced among those with small vessel disease (Nitkunan et al. 2008b). These reductions in FA correlated with a magnetic resonance spectroscopy marker of axonal loss and dysfunction (N-acetylaspartate), and the strength of the correlation increased in a stepwise fashion moving from control, to hypertensive, to small vessel disease groups. A second study noted that individuals with long-standing type 1 diabetes had significantly reduced FA relative to matched controls; moreover, in the diabetic individuals, longer disease duration and poorer glucose regulation was correlated with reduced FA (Kodl et al. 2008). A third study linked adiposity to reduced white matter integrity on DTI (Cazettes et al. 2011); this and another study found associations between decreased white matter integrity and increases in markers of systemic inflammation that commonly accompanies cerebrovascular dysfunction (Wersching et al. 2010). While these studies may have implications for the hypothesis that at least part of the age-associated declines in white matter integrity may be driven by the effects of hypertension, type two diabetes, obesity, and other cardiovascular risk factors even in the absence of an acute cerebrovascular event, a great deal more study is required to further substantiate this view. In particular, the relations between more direct biochemical or imaging-based measures of vascular dysfunction and DTI measures have not been explored to any great depth. Examples of blood markers of vascular injury that would enable such a study include inflammatory cytokines and vascular adhesion molecules; imaging markers of vascular injury, such as perfusion MRI measures of cerebral blood flow, susceptibility weighted MRI measures of microhemorrhage,

and MRI measures of atherosclerotic indices, would also be viable candidates for exploring relationships with DTI.

3.3 Genetics (APOE)

Apolipoprotein E (APOE) genotype is the most strongly validated genetic risk factor for clinical dementia of the Alzheimer type, and studies that assess relationships between DTI measures and APOE genotype typically view the relationships through this lens. From this point of view, cognitively normal elders possessing the 3-4 or 4-4 genotype are at increased risk of developing clinical AD in the future, and therefore may exhibit evidence of early AD pathology that is not so severe as to manifest itself through behavioral changes. As such, cognitively normal elderly carriers of the 3-4 or 4-4 genotype may represent a compelling in vivo model for the earliest AD-associated brain changes, and detecting such brain changes has important implications for the pathophysiology of AD pathology as well as its early detection and prognosis (Reiman et al. 1998; Strittmatter and Roses 1995; Reiman et al. 2009).

Taking a broader view, however, the APOE gene codes for an extracellular cholesterol transport protein that is involved in a wide variety of cellular metabolic pathways (Strittmatter and Bova Hill 2002; Laskowitz and Vitek 2007). Besides the AD cascade, these pathways are implicated in the development of a variety of vascular and neurological injury processes, each of which could contribute to white matter damage evident on DTI. Indeed, possession of one or two e4 alleles may promote inflammation and atherosclerosis (Kontush and Chapman 2006), and may be a risk factor for poorer long-term outcomes in traumatic brain injury (Zhou et al. 2008), hemmorhagic stroke (Martinez-Gonzalez and Sudlow 2006), and possibly multiple sclerosis (Pinholt et al. 2006). With these findings in mind, associations between APOE and DTI measures among cognitively healthy elders should be viewed within the broader context of the role APOE plays in promoting a wide variety of deleterious aging-related biological processes.

Several studies on this topic have reported that possession of at least one e4 allele late in life is independently associated with diminished white matter integrity. The regional specificity of the findings have varied, with reported APOE effects on the left hippocampal gyrus (Honea et al. 2009), across broad regions of the white matter (Heise et al. 2010), on the medial temporal lobe and splenium of the corpus callosum (Persson et al. 2006), and on the parahippocampal gyri (Nierenberg et al. 2005). The possession of both APOE and a family history of clinical AD was reported to be associated with diminished WM integrity in a range of white matter tracts among cognitively normal women (Smith et al. 2010). In addition, APOE may exacerbate the white matter damage that is associated with development of clinical AD (Wang et al. 2010). Only one study to date has examined the relative time course of APOE-related loss of white matter integrity over the life span; APOE was associated with diminished integrity in both young

adult (aged 20–35 years) and older (50–78) groups, and age did not significantly modulate the relationship, suggesting that APOE effects on white matter may in fact assert themselves in early adulthood and remain stable across the remainder of the lifespan (Heise et al. 2010). The consistent pattern of these studies is a detrimental effect of APOE on white matter integrity, possibly due to many biological mechanisms that APOE is linked to.

3.4 Amyloid

Under the amyloid hypothesis of AD, the production and aggregation of amyloid beta is the primary biological event that triggers a variety of secondary injury processes that, acting together, compromise the structure and function of the brain, eventually leading to the profound loss of cognitive function characteristic of clinical AD. Although this pathological cascade has been traditionally viewed as preferentially damaging neuronal cell bodies, dendrites, and synapses, a growing body of DTI studies have suggested that the presence of clinical AD and its clinical precursor, mild cognitive impairment, is associated with diminished white matter integrity as well (see Sect. 4.2). Whether these effects represent secondary results of primary injury to the gray matter, as opposed to primary injury processes acting directly on axons, myelin, and glia, is currently unclear. However, what is clear is that an advanced stage of the AD pathological cascade, characterized by clinically significant cognitive impairment, is associated with diminished white matter integrity as measured by DTI.

The motivation for more specifically studying the relationship between brain amyloid burden and DTI measures is provided by the alarming number of elderly individuals who show no clinically significant cognitive deficit, yet already harbor significant levels of brain amyloid (Aizenstein et al. 2008). These individuals may represent the earliest detectable stage of the AD pathology process: they already show subtle gross anatomical, functional, and neuropsychological deficits (Fagan et al. 2009; Sperling et al. 2009; Pike et al. 2007), and many of them are likely to develop clinical AD in the long term (Morris et al. 2009). However, among cognitively intact elders, the impact of significant brain amyloid on white matter connections is not entirely clear. Studies of white matter changes among clinical AD patients have been limited in addressing this issue because at that later stage of the AD pathology process, white matter deficits may reflect the accumulated effects of amyloid, secondary AD-related injury processes, and possibly injury related to very common concomitant pathology (Cummings 2004; Schneider et al. 2007). Elucidating this issue could clarify the relevance to patients of proposed clinical diagnostic criteria defined by amyloid burden in the absence of significant cognitive impairment (Blennow and Zetterberg 2010).

The scientific rationale for a specific relationship between amyloid and white matter integrity arises primarily from evidence that amyloid beta exacerbates cerebrovascular dysfunction, which in turn promotes white matter disruptions

(Smith and Greenberg 2009; Whitehead et al. 2007). In addition, there is at least one intriguing report that amyloid may more directly impact white matter integrity, by inhibiting the myelin production functionality of mature oligodendrocytes (Horiuchi et al. 2010). However, published data on direct relationships between amyloid burden and DTI measures in asymptomatic elders has been extremely limited. In vivo human data to date has been limited to demonstrations of reduced white matter integrity among individuals clinically diagnosed with intracerebral hemorrhage caused by amyloid deposition in blood vessels (Viswanathan et al. 2008; Salat et al. 2006). Meanwhile, one DTI study of transgenic mice that produce amyloid describes progressive degradation of white matter integrity over the lifespan coinciding with the approximate time course of amyloid plaque accumulation (Sun et al. 2005) [See, however, Harms et al. (2006)].

4 Relation Between DTI and Cognition in the Elderly

4.1 Across the Span of Cognitive Trajectory

Studies relating DTI measures to cognitive function have been driven by diverse hypotheses about the effects of white matter disruption on cognitive aging. Many have emphasized frontal-mediated cognitive domains, especially executive control, following suggestions that frontal white matter is preferentially vulnerable to aging-related disruption (Malloy et al. 2007). Others have focused on the hypothesis that impaired network connectivity leads to declines in processing speed in addition to executive control (Madden et al. 2009a). Finally, the importance of aging-associated white matter disconnection may be that it impairs compensatory recruitment that is required to maintain task performance in the face of gradual and progressive degradation of gray matter during normal cognitive aging (Sullivan and Pfefferbaum 2006; Cabeza 2002). DTI remains one of the most useful tools for testing such disconnection hypotheses in vivo.

The earliest reports of relations between DTI and cognition in cognitively intact elders focused on univariate white matter integrity measures along the interhemispheric tracts. The integrity of the splenium of the corpus callosum and parietal pericallosal regions correlated with reaction time (RT) for alternating, but not unimanual, finger tapping, (Sullivan et al. 2001), and MD in anterior white matter tracts, which allow communication between frontal lobes, was correlated with reduced executive control and attentional set-shifting independent of age (O'Sullivan et al. 2001). Associations between white matter integrity and performance on a visual target detection task may vary with age: in younger adults, splenium FA best predicted reaction time, while in older adults, FA in the anterior limb of the internal capsule was the best predictor (Madden et al. 2004). Meanwhile, reduced working memory performance in older individuals may be associated with reduced FA in frontal white matter and increased MD in frontal

and posterior white matter, independent of age (Charlton et al. 2006). Together, these results suggest that DTI may be assaying the integrity of connections within distributed cognitive networks that are recruited for efficient information transfer in frontal-mediated cognitive tasks.

More recent tractography-based results are largely consistent with a pattern of age-related frontal white matter integrity declines predicting executive control deficits. Poorer performance on the Stroop Test, generally considered a measure of executive control, was associated with lower FA in premotor callosal fibers and post-central callosal fibers (Sullivan et al. 2006), and FA in the genu and right superior longitudinal fasciculus was reported to mediate the age-related variability in performance on a task-switching paradigm (Madden et al. 2009b). These and many other results imply that reductions in integrity of specific tracts are differentially correlated with declines in varied components of executive control.

There are limited reports in normal older adults of relations between DTI measures and episodic memory deficits. One fiber tracking study of older and younger adults found that while FA in anterior white matter tracts including the genu and uncinate fasciculus was associated with executive control in agreement with the studies described above, while FA in posterior tracts including the cingulum bundle, inferior longitudinal fasciculus, and splenium, was related to memory performance (Davis et al. 2009).

4.2 Between Clinical Diagnostic Groups

Progressive neurodegenerative diseases that underlie clinical dementia syndromes are increasingly being thought of from the point of view of cognitive network disconnection (Seeley et al. 2009). Comparisons of DTI-based network connectivity measures between healthy individuals and those diagnosed with clinical dementia may illuminate the relations between network degeneration and the spatial patterning of disease, providing guidance for network-based disease monitoring and treatment (Palop et al. 2006).

Most DTI studies on clinical dementia syndromes to date have focused on AD and MCI. Early investigations generally indicated increased MD and reduced FA in MCI and AD, particularly in long white matter tracts innervating association cortex (Moseley et al. 2002). In many of these studies, the degree of white matter disruption was associated with the degree of memory dysfunction or scores on the Mini Mental State Examination [MMSE, (Folstein et al. 1975)]. Most of these reports describe white matter deterioration in posterior regions. For example, in one report (Rose et al. 2000), poorer MMSE score among AD patients was correlated with decreased diffusion anisotropy in the splenium of the corpus callosum. Among amnestic MCI patients and healthy age-matched controls, the same group reported that reduced FA in posterior white matter regions was associated with reduced cognitive performance, particularly in memory (Rose et al. 2006; Medina and Gaviria 2008).

One study reported that white matter alterations in temporal, frontal, and parietal regions were more pronounced as diagnostic status declined from normal cognition, to MCI, to clinical AD (Huang et al. 2007). Across all subjects, lower temporal white matter FA and higher diffusivity correlated with poorer episodic memory performance, lower frontal white matter FA correlated with poorer executive control, and higher parietal white matter RD correlated with poorer visuospatial function. These findings support the hypothesis that reduced connectivity may underlie decline of cognitive networks in dementia. Additionally, vascular-related changes to white matter integrity that are coexistent with MCI and AD may contribute to dysfunction of neural networks, particular those connecting prefrontal cortex to its targets. Such disconnection, combined with known hippocampal injury, may contribute to cognitive declines observed in these conditions (Mayda et al. 2009).

Few studies have examined the differential effects of degenerative processes, such as AD, and vascular injury processes on brain structure, including white matter connectivity. In one such study of cognitively normal, MCI, and AD participants (Lee et al. 2009), clinical diagnosis was used as an indicator of neurodegenerative disease burden, and a vascular risk score indicated overall cerebrovascular disease burden. These were independently associated with FA in the corpus callosum as well as subcortical white matter, with spatially independent patterns of microstructural damage across diagnostic groups. Neurodegeneration primarily affected FA in more organized white matter tracts, while vascular factors contributed to FA reductions in less organized white matter, which may partially explain functional differences. Further evidence (Lee et al. 2010) confirmed that vascular and degenerative processes make differential, region-specific contributions to white matter impairment as measured by DTI, across the spectrum of cognitive ability, and further suggested that differential patterns of structural injury, and thus functional decline, may be contingent on connectivity changes.

Relatively few studies have investigated relations between DTI and cognition in patients with frontotemporal dementia (FTD). In one study comparing FTD and AD with healthy aging, FTD patients demonstrated reduced FA in frontal and temporal white matter tracts, while AD patients demonstrated reduced FA in parietal, temporal and frontal tracts (Zhang et al. 2009). In direct comparison with AD, FTD patients demonstrated greater reductions overall, particularly in frontal FA; however, due to difficulty of matching subjects based on MMSE performance, the FTD cohort may have been more demented. Such characteristic signatures of white matter impairment may allow for improved differential diagnostic power.

Most studies of FTD subtypes which have distinctive cognitive sequelae, such as the behavioral variant of FTD (bvFTD), semantic dementia (SD), and Progressive non-fluent aphasia (PNFA), have only explored associations between DTI measures and diagnostic status and not specific cognitive tasks. In one recent study, bvFTD patients exhibited decreased FA and increased diffusivity measures in white matter connecting frontal with temporal and parietal lobes, while SD patients showed similar diffusion in tracts such as inferior longitudinal fasciculus and uncinate fasciculus, and PNFA patients showed these tract abnormalities in the

superior longitudinal fasciculus (Whitwell et al. 2010). Clearly, further investigations of DTI-cognition relations in FTD subtypes are needed.

5 Future Directions

5.1 Advances in DTI Methodology

Methods for acquiring high-resolution, anatomically accurate water diffusion MRI data are developing rapidly, and there are several pressing challenges that need to be addressed by methodologists to advance the utility of DTI as a tool to study the cognitive aging process.

The most pressing methodological challenge may be the development of acquisition and post-processing techniques that provide reliable white matter integrity measurements across scan sessions and scanner operating equipment. The few published reports on DTI reliability suggest that white matter integrity and connectivity measurements do vary substantially simply by acquiring DTI data on a different device, or on a different day (Pfefferbaum et al. 2003; Takao et al. 2011; Vollmar et al. 2010). It is currently unclear whether the variability stems from differences in scan prescription, measurement noise, brittleness of post-processing pipelines, or some combination of each. Interscanner variability has made large-scale, multi-site DTI studies difficult to justify, and has made reported DTI findings difficult to replicate. Intraindividual variability in DTI measurements have dampened enthusiasm for the use of DTI as a tool for measurement of longitudinal change, which is critical both for clarifying the biological course of aging-associated white matter changes and for assessment of DTI-based endpoints in clinical trials. These issues represent the key barrier to fully delineating the utility and limitations of DTI as it relates to the study of cognitive aging.

Fortunately, there are tentative signs pointing to the possibility of reliable, serial DTI data collection across multiple scanners in the future. Considerable attention is being paid to the development of compelling physical phantoms that emulate the macroscopic configuration and water diffusion properties of white matter tracts [for example, Klein et al. (2008)]. Such phantoms can play a pivotal role in evaluating the validity of DTI measurement methods and for harmonizing DTI data across scanners. In addition, the Alzheimer's Disease Neuroimaging Initiative (ADNI), whose unprecedented investment in cross-scanner standardization has dramatically boosted the viability of large-scale, multi-site collection of quantitative T1-weighted elderly brain MRI, has recently made a similar investment in DTI (Jack et al. 2010). Finally, there is at least one report that sophisticated post-processing methods may be able to play a major role in ameliorating differences in DTI data across scanners and scan sessions, and the continued development of such methods is a major focus of the computational neuroimaging community (Vollmar et al. 2010).

The mathematics of representing and manipulating DTI data is another major methodological direction. How best to represent the complicated spatial statistics

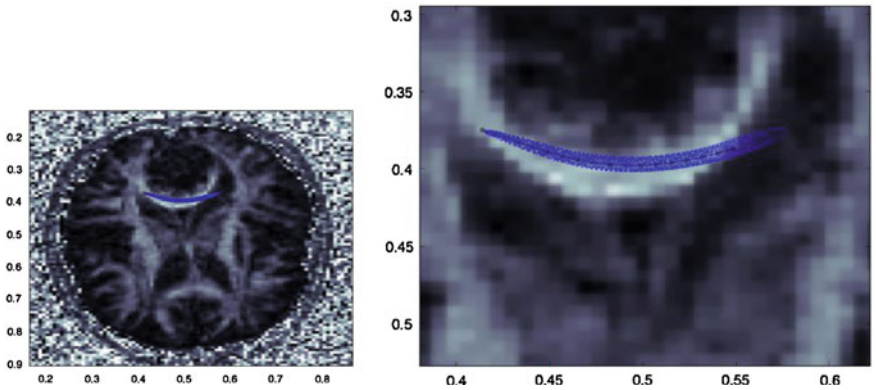


Fig. 6 New mathematical methods for estimating uncertainty in DTI-based white matter connectivity measurements could help to make DTI a more robust and reliable measurement technology. *Left* A slice from an FA map of a typical elderly individual. *Right* In an expanded view of the splenium of the corpus callosum, one white matter fiber tracing is shown as a thin *black curve*. The *blue* envelope around that curve represents uncertainty in the fiber trajectory: due to limited spatial resolution and noise in the acquired DTI data, the true fiber trajectory may actually lie anywhere within the envelope. Such uncertainty information may allow users to quantify the effects of DTI data quality on connectivity measurements, account for data quality in downstream analyses, and identify corrupted scans for which uncertainty is especially high [see Koltchinskii et al. (2007) for more information]

of water diffusion in a way that is relatively stable across scan sessions, computationally feasible, and accurate, is an ongoing research problem among computational scientists. In addition, the complexity of fiber tract trajectories in brain, together with limitations in MRI acquisition technology, make uncertainty in the spatial statistics of water diffusion prominent, and several empirical and analytic methods have been developed for quantifying how confident we should be in our estimated white matter integrity and connectivity measures (Chang et al. 2007; Zhu et al. 2008; Behrens et al. 2003; Koltchinskii et al. 2007; Sakhanenko 2008) (Fig. 6). However, while this uncertainty information can help practitioners make the critical distinction between tract trajectories that are fairly certain, and those that may be artifactual, such uncertainty information is currently very rarely leveraged in real analyses. The incorporation of this uncertainty information throughout data analytic pathways is expected to boost the viability of DTI in cognitive aging as time goes on.

5.2 Needs in Relation to DTI and Risk Factors

As a non-invasive, broadly tolerated technology, DTI seems to be uniquely placed to allow us to observe how white matter connectivity evolves with advancing age. Studies that combine serial DTI measurement with concurrent measurement of

neuropathological processes presumably represent the most viable path toward understanding the relative time course of late-life white matter changes and how that time course is modulated by a complex array of inter-connected biological events. Yet, to our knowledge, there may be as few as three published studies related to cognitive aging that involve multiple DTI scans per human subject (Charlton et al. 2010; Teipel et al. 2010; Sullivan et al. 2010). As noted above methodological issues related to DTI measurement reliability have made serial DTI studies difficult, but their importance for decoding the biology of cognitive aging is clear, and they will remain a future direction of study. In addition, studies that isolate biomarkers of individual neuropathological processes, including AD, CVD, inflammation, and others, and relate those to DTI measurements will be important for our understanding of the differential contributions that each of these processes make in determining the biological substrate on which age-related cognitive decline plays itself out.

5.3 Needs in Relation to DTI and Cognitive Networks

Incorporating measures of functional connectivity using functional magnetic resonance imaging will allow researchers to further investigate the extent to which loss of nodal and network function both depends on and causes changes in white matter connectivity (Madden et al. 2010; Madden et al. 2007). In addition, incorporation of additional modalities such as EEG, MEG, and intracranial recording will allow enhanced understanding of the relationships between brain structure and the spatial and temporal properties of cognitive networks [e.g., Westlye et al. (2009)].

An obstacle may exist in the relatively primitive psychological ontology currently in use in a majority of cognitive neuroscience research laboratories, and the manner in which we relate highly debatable cognitive processes to measured brain structure and function (Bunzl et al. 2010). The problem in localizing functions to discrete nodes is that processing may not be modular at all, in that there may not be a one-to-one mapping between a brain region and a specific cognitive function. Certainly, a better comprehension is required regarding localization as it relates to our understanding of fundamental categories of cognition.

6 Conclusion

Diffusion tensor MRI provides a non-invasive, in vivo technology for measuring the integrity of brain connectivity that is required for higher-order cognitive function but declines with advancing age. Its white matter injury measurements have the potential to provide an anatomical substrate that links a variety of aging-related pathophysiological mechanisms to the cognitive decline that is common in

the elderly. While the past decade of studies generally support the view that reductions in DTI-based white matter integrity measures are associated with advancing age and cognitive decline, a precise understanding of the biological mechanisms that lead to white matter integrity reductions and subsequent cognitive losses in the elderly is still being developed. As methods for DTI acquisition and postprocessing continue to develop and enable large-scale, longitudinal research studies, pressing questions about relations between risk and protective factors, white matter integrity, and clinically relevant cognitive outcomes will be addressed. These studies in turn will clarify the utility of DTI as a marker of aging-associated cognitive decline for clinical diagnosis and clinical trials.

Acknowledgments Special thanks to Pauline Maillard for tremendous help with the DTI-FLAIR section, Figs. 4, 5. Thanks to Luda Sakhanenko for help with Fig. 6. Thanks to Dan Mungas for help with Fig. 2. We also acknowledge the generous support of NIH grant K01 AG 030514 and a grant from the Dana Foundation.

References

Aboitiz F, Rodriguez E, Olivares R, Zaidel E (1996) Age-related changes in fibre composition of the human corpus callosum: sex differences. Neuroreport 7:1761–1764

Aizenstein HJ, Nebes RD, Saxton JA, Price JC, Mathis CA, Tsopelas ND, Ziolko SK, James JA, Snitz BE, Houck PR, Bi W, Cohen AD, Lopresti BJ, DeKosky ST, Halligan EM, Klunk WE (2008) Frequent amyloid deposition without significant cognitive impairment among the elderly. Arch Neurol 65:1509–1517. doi:10.1001/archneur.65.11.1509, pii:65/11/1509

Albert MS, Jones K, Savage CR, Berkman L, Seeman T, Blazer D, Rowe JW (1995) Predictors of cognitive change in older persons: MacArthur studies of successful aging. Psychol Aging 10:578–589

Assaf Y, Mayzel-Oreg O, Gigi A, Ben-Bashat D, Mordohovitch M, Verchovsky R, Reider G II, Hendler T, Graif M, Cohen Y, Korczyn AD (2002) High b value q-space-analyzed diffusion MRI in vascular dementia: a preliminary study. J Neurol Sci 203–204:235–239, pii:S0022510X02002976

Bammer R, Holdsworth SJ, Veldhuis WB, Skare ST (2009) New methods in diffusion-weighted and diffusion tensor imaging. Magn Reson Imaging Clin N Am 17:175–204. doi:10.1016/j.mric.2009.01.011, pii:S1064-9689(09)00012-9

Bar M (2003) A cortical mechanism for triggering top-down facilitation in visual object recognition. J Cogn Neurosci 15:600–609. doi:10.1162/089892903321662976

Barkhof F, Scheltens P (2002) Imaging of white matter lesions. Cerebrovasc Dis 13(Suppl 2):21–30

Beaulieu C (2002) The basis of anisotropic water diffusion in the nervous system—a technical review. NMR Biomed 15:435–455

Behrens TE, Woolrich MW, Jenkinson M, Johansen-Berg H, Nunes RG, Clare S, Matthews PM, Brady JM, Smith SM (2003) Characterization and propagation of uncertainty in diffusion-weighted MR imaging. Magn Reson Med 50:1077–1088. doi:10.1002/mrm.10609

Bisley JW (2011) The neural basis of visual attention. J Physiol (Lond) 589:49–57. doi:10.1113/jphysiol.2010.192666

Blennow K, Zetterberg H (2010) Is it time for biomarker-based diagnostic criteria for prodromal Alzheimer's disease? Alzheimers Res Ther 2:8. doi:10.1186/alzrt31, pii:alzrt31

Bronge L (2002) Magnetic resonance imaging in dementia. A study of brain white matter changes. Acta Radiol Suppl 43:1–32

Buckner RL (2004) Memory and executive function in aging and AD: multiple factors that cause decline and reserve factors that compensate. Neuron 44:195–208

Bullmore E, Sporns O (2009) Complex brain networks: graph theoretical analysis of structural and functional systems. Nat Rev Neurosci 10:186–198. doi:10.1038/nrn2575

Bunzl M, Hanson SJ, Poldrack RA (2010) An exchange about localism. In: Hanson SJ, Bunzl M (eds) Foundational issues in human brain mapping. MIT Press, Cambridge, pp 49–54

Cabeza R (2002) Hemispheric asymmetry reduction in older adults: the HAROLD model. Psychol Aging 17:85–100

Cazettes F, Cohen JI, Yau PL, Talbot H, Convit A (2011) Obesity-mediated inflammation may damage the brain circuit that regulates food intake. Brain Res 1373:101–109. doi:10.1016/j.brainres.2010.12.008, pii:S0006-8993(10)02620-X

Chang LC, Koay CG, Pierpaoli C, Basser PJ (2007) Variance of estimated DTI-derived parameters via first-order perturbation methods. Magn Reson Med 57:141–149. doi:10.1002/mrm.21111

Chanraud S, Zahr N, Sullivan EV, Pfefferbaum A (2010) MR diffusion tensor imaging: a window into white matter integrity of the working brain. Neuropsychol Rev 20:209–225. doi:10.1007/s11065-010-9129-7

Charlton RA, Barrick TR, McIntyre DJ, Shen Y, O'Sullivan M, Howe FA, Clark CA, Morris RG, Markus HS (2006) White matter damage on diffusion tensor imaging correlates with age-related cognitive decline. Neurology 66:217–222

Charlton RA, Schiavone F, Barrick TR, Morris RG, Markus HS (2010) Diffusion tensor imaging detects age related white matter change over a 2 year follow-up which is associated with working memory decline. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 81:13–19

Chen Z, Ni P, Zhang J, Ye Y, Xiao H, Qian G, Xu S, Wang J, Yang X, Chen J, Zhang B, Zeng Y (2008) Evaluating ischemic stroke with diffusion tensor imaging. Neurol Res 30:720–726. doi:10.1179/174313208X297968, pii:ner1409

Christensen H, Mackinnon AJ, Korten AE, Jorm AF, Henderson AS, Jacomb P, Rodgers B (1999) An analysis of diversity in the cognitive performance of elderly community dwellers: individual differences in change scores as a function of age. Psychol Aging 14:365–379

Colsher PL, Wallace RB (1991) Longitudinal application of cognitive function measures in a defined population of community-dwelling elders. Ann Epidemiol 1:215–230

Corbetta M, Shulman GL (2002) Control of goal-directed and stimulus-driven attention in the brain. Nat Rev Neurosci 3:201–215. doi:10.1038/nrn755

Corbetta M, Patel G, Shulman GL (2008) The reorienting system of the human brain: from environment to theory of mind. Neuron 58:306–324. doi:10.1016/j.neuron.2008.04.017

Cummings JL (2004) Alzheimer's disease. N Engl J Med 351:56–67. doi:10.1056/NEJMra040223, pii:351/1/56

Davis SW, Dennis NA, Buchler NG, White LE, Madden DJ, Cabeza R (2009) Assessing the effects of age on long white matter tracts using diffusion tensor tractography. Neuroimage 46:530–541

DeCarli CS (2006) When two are worse than one: stroke and Alzheimer disease. Neurology 67:1326–1327. doi:10.1212/01.wnl.0000244911.16867.11, pii:67/8/1326

DeCarli C, Fletcher E, Ramey V, Harvey D, Jagust WJ (2005) Anatomical mapping of white matter hyperintensities (WMH): exploring the relationships between periventricular WMH, deep WMH, and total WMH burden. Stroke 36:50–55

Eichenbaum H, Yonelinas AP, Ranganath C (2007) The medial temporal lobe and recognition memory. Annu Rev Neurosci 30:123–152. doi:10.1146/annurev.neuro.30.051606.094328

Fagan AM, Head D, Shah AR, Marcus D, Mintun M, Morris JC, Holtzman DM (2009) Decreased cerebrospinal fluid Abeta(42) correlates with brain atrophy in cognitively normal elderly. Ann Neurol 65:176–183. doi:10.1002/ana.21559

Firbank MJ, Minett T, O'Brien JT (2003) Changes in DWI and MRS associated with white matter hyperintensities in elderly subjects. Neurology 61:950–954

Fisher M (2008) Injuries to the vascular endothelium: vascular wall and endothelial dysfunction. Rev Neurol Dis 5(Suppl 1):S4–S11

Folstein MF, Folstein SE, McHugh PR (1975) Mini-mental state. A practical method for grading the cognitive state of patients for the clinician. J Psychiatr Res 12:189–198

Fornage M, Chiang YA, O'Meara ES, Psaty BM, Reiner AP, Siscovick DS, Tracy RP, Longstreth WT (2008) Biomarkers of Inflammation and MRI-Defined small vessel disease of the brain: the cardiovascular health study. Stroke 39:1952–1959. doi:10.1161/strokeaha.107.508135

Frank LR (2002) Characterization of anisotropy in high angular resolution diffusion-weighted MRI. Magn Reson Med 47:1083–1099. doi:10.1002/mrm.10156

Fries P, Scheeringa R, Oostenveld R (2008) Finding gamma. Neuron 58:303–305. doi:10.1016/j.neuron.2008.04.020

Greenwood PM (2000) The frontal aging hypothesis evaluated. J Int Neuropsychol Soc: JINS 6:705–726

Hagoort P, Baggio G, Willems R, Gazzaniga M (2008) Semantic unification. In: Gazzaniga MS (ed) The cognitive neurosciences, 4th edn. MIT Press, Cambridge

Haller S, Pereira VM, Lazeyras F, Vargas MI, Lovblad KO (2009) Magnetic resonance imaging techniques in white matter disease: potentials and limitations. Top Magn Reson Imaging 20:301–312. doi:10.1097/RMR.0b013e318207a5a9, pii:00002142-200912000-00002

Harms MP, Kotyk JJ, Merchant KM (2006) Evaluation of white matter integrity in ex vivo brains of amyloid plaque-bearing APPsw transgenic mice using magnetic resonance diffusion tensor imaging. Exp Neurol 199:408–415. doi:10.1016/j.expneurol.2006.01.002, pii:S0014-4886(06)00009-4

Heise V, Filippini N, Ebmeier KP, Mackay CE (2010) The APOE varepsilon4 allele modulates brain white matter integrity in healthy adults. Mol Psychiatry 16:908–916. pii:mp201090, doi:10.1038/mp.2010.90

Holtmannspotter M, Peters N, Opherk C, Martin D, Herzog J, Bruckmann H, Samann P, Gschwendtner A, Dichgans M (2005) Diffusion magnetic resonance histograms as a surrogate marker and predictor of disease progression in CADASIL: a two-year follow-up study. Stroke 36:2559–2565. doi:10.1161/01.STR.0000189696.70989.a4, pii:01.STR.0000189696.70989.a4

Honea RA, Vidoni E, Harsha A, Burns JM (2009) Impact of APOE on the healthy aging brain: a voxel-based MRI and DTI study. J Alzheimers Dis 18:553–564. doi:10.3233/JAD-2009-1163, pii:G6559086962225K7

Hopfinger JB, Buonocore MH, Mangun GR (2000) The neural mechanisms of top-down attentional control. Nat Neurosci 3:284–291. doi:10.1038/72999

Horiuchi M, Maezawa I, Itoh A, Wakayama K, Jin LW, Itoh T, Decarli C (2010) Amyloid beta1-42 oligomer inhibits myelin sheet formation in vitro. Neurobiol Aging. pii:S0197-4580(10)00221-6, doi:10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2010.05.007

Huang J, Friedland RP, Auchus AP (2007) Diffusion tensor imaging of normal-appearing white matter in mild cognitive impairment and early Alzheimer disease: preliminary evidence of axonal degeneration in the temporal lobe. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol 28:1943–1948. doi:10.3174/ajnr.A0700

Jack CR Jr, Bernstein MA, Borowski BJ, Gunter JL, Fox NC, Thompson PM, Schuff N, Krueger G, Killiany RJ, Decarli CS, Dale AM, Carmichael OW, Tosun D, Weiner MW, Alzheimer's Disease Neuroimaging I (2010) Update on the magnetic resonance imaging core of the Alzheimer's disease neuroimaging initiative. Alzheimers Dement 6:212–220. doi:10.1016/j.jalz.2010.03.004, pii:S1552-5260(10)00064-6

Jagust WJ, Zheng L, Harvey DJ, Mack WJ, Vinters HV, Weiner MW, Ellis WG, Zarow C, Mungas D, Reed BR, Kramer JH, Schuff N, DeCarli C, Chui HC (2008) Neuropathological basis of magnetic resonance images in aging and dementia. Ann Neurol 63:72–80. doi:10.1002/ana.21296

Janowsky JS (2006) The role of androgens in cognition and brain aging in men. Neuroscience 138:1015–1020. doi:10.1016/j.neuroscience.2005.09.007, pii:S0306-4522(05)01036-5

Jones DK, Lythgoe D, Horsfield MA, Simmons A, Williams SC, Markus HS (1999) Characterization of white matter damage in ischemic leukoaraiosis with diffusion tensor MRI. Stroke 30:393–397

Kastner S, Ungerleider LG (2000) Mechanisms of visual attention in the human cortex. Annu Rev Neurosci 23:315–341. doi:10.1146/annurev.neuro.23.1.315

Kiechl S, Willeit J (1999) The natural course of atherosclerosis. Part II: vascular remodeling. Bruneck study group. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 19:1491–1498

Kim K, Macfall J, Payne M (2008) Classification of white matter lesions on magnetic resonance imaging in elderly persons. Biol Psychiatry 64:273–280. doi:10.1016/j.biopsych.2008.03.024

Klein J, Laun F, Erhard P, Diehl V, Hahn HK (2008) On the reliability of quantitative volumetric and structural neuroimaging. Imaging Decis MRI 12:2–10. doi:10.1111/j.1617-0830.2009.00128.x

Kodl CT, Franc DT, Rao JP, Anderson FS, Thomas W, Mueller BA, Lim KO, Seaquist ER (2008) Diffusion tensor imaging identifies deficits in white matter microstructure in subjects with type 1 diabetes that correlate with reduced neurocognitive function. Diabetes 57:3083–3089. doi:10.2337/db08-0724, pii:db08-0724

Koltchinskii V, Sakhanenko L, Cai S (2007) Integral curves of noisy vector fields and statistical problems in diffusion tensor imaging: nonparametric kernel estimation and hypotheses testing. Ann Statist 35:1576–1607

Kontush A, Chapman MJ (2006) Functionally defective high-density lipoprotein: a new therapeutic target at the crossroads of dyslipidemia, inflammation, and atherosclerosis. Pharmacol Rev 58:342–374. doi:10.1124/pr.58.3.1, pii:58/3/342

Laskowitz DT, Vitek MP (2007) Apolipoprotein E and neurological disease: therapeutic potential and pharmacogenomic interactions. Pharmacogenomics 8:959–969. doi:10.2217/14622416.8.8.959

Lee DY, Fletcher E, Martinez O, Ortega M, Zozulya N, Kim J, Tran J, Buonocore M, Carmichael O, DeCarli C (2009) Regional pattern of white matter microstructural changes in normal aging, MCI, and AD. Neurology 73:1722–1728. doi:10.1212/WNL.0b013e3181c33afb, pii:WNL.0b013e3181c33afb

Lee DY, Fletcher E, Martinez O, Zozulya N, Kim J, Tran J, Buonocore M, Carmichael O, DeCarli C (2010) Vascular and degenerative processes differentially affect regional interhemispheric connections in normal aging, mild cognitive impairment, and Alzheimer disease. Stroke 41:1791–1797. doi:10.1161/STROKEAHA.110.582163, pii:STROKEAHA.110.582163

Liu C, Bammer R, Acar B, Moseley ME (2004) Characterizing non-Gaussian diffusion by using generalized diffusion tensors. Magn Reson Med 51:924–937. doi:10.1002/mrm.20071

Madden DJ (2007) Aging and visual attention. Curr Dir Psychol Sci 16:70–74. doi:10.1111/j.1467-8721.2007.00478.x

Madden DJ, Whiting WL, Huettel SA, White LE, MacFall JR, Provenzale JM (2004) Diffusion tensor imaging of adult age differences in cerebral white matter: relation to response time. Neuroimage 21:1174–1181. doi:10.1016/j.neuroimage.2003.11.004

Madden DJ, Spaniol J, Whiting WL, Bucur B, Provenzale JM, Cabeza R, White LE, Huettel SA (2007) Adult age differences in the functional neuroanatomy of visual attention: a combined fMRI and DTI study. Neurobiol Aging 28:459–476. doi:10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2006.01.005

Madden DJ, Bennett IJ, Song AW (2009a) Cerebral white matter integrity and cognitive aging: contributions from diffusion tensor imaging. Neuropsychol Rev 19:415–435. doi:10.1007/s11065-009-9113-2

Madden DJ, Spaniol J, Costello MC, Bucur B, White LE, Cabeza R, Davis SW, Dennis NA, Provenzale JM, Huettel SA (2009b) Cerebral white matter integrity mediates adult age differences in cognitive performance. J Cogn Neurosci 21:289–302. doi:10.1162/jocn.2009.21047

Madden DJ, Costello MC, Dennis NA, Davis SW, Shepler AM, Spaniol J, Bucur B, Cabeza R (2010) Adult age differences in functional connectivity during executive control. Neuroimage 52:643–657. doi:10.1016/j.neuroimage.2010.04.249

Maillard P, Fletcher E, Harvey D, Carmichael O, Reed B, Mungas D, Decarli C (2011) White matter hyperintensity penumbra. Stroke 42:1917–1922. doi:10.1161/STROKEAHA.110.609768, pii:STROKEAHA.110.609768

Malloy P, Correia S, Stebbins G, Laidlaw DH (2007) Neuroimaging of white matter in aging and dementia. Clin Neuropsychol 21:73–109. doi:10.1080/13854040500263583

Martinez-Gonzalez NA, Sudlow CL (2006) Effects of apolipoprotein E genotype on outcome after ischaemic stroke, intracerebral haemorrhage and subarachnoid haemorrhage. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 77:1329–1335. doi:10.1136/jnnp.2006.097543, pii:jnnp.2006.097543

Mayda A, Yoshita M, DeCarli C (2009) White matter hyperintensities in aging and dementia. In: Jagust W, D'Esposito M (eds) Imaging the aging brain. Oxford University Press, New York, pp 273–290

Medina DA, Gaviria M (2008) Diffusion tensor imaging investigations in Alzheimer's disease: the resurgence of white matter compromise in the cortical dysfunction of the aging brain. Neuropsychiatr Dis Treat 4:737–742

Mesulam MM (1990) Large-scale neurocognitive networks and distributed processing for attention, language, and memory. Ann Neurol 28:597–613. doi:10.1002/ana.410280502

Mesulam MM (1998) From sensation to cognition. Brain 121(Pt 6):1013–1052

Miller EK, Cohen JD (2001) An integrative theory of prefrontal cortex function. Annu Rev Neurosci 24:167–202. doi:10.1146/annurev.neuro.24.1.167

Miranda PJ, DeFronzo RA, Califf RM, Guyton JR (2005) Metabolic syndrome: definition, pathophysiology, and mechanisms. Am Heart J 149:33–45. doi:10.1016/j.ahj.2004.07.013, pii:S0002870304004491

Morris JC, Roe CM, Grant EA, Head D, Storandt M, Goate AM, Fagan AM, Holtzman DM, Mintun MA (2009) Pittsburgh compound B imaging and prediction of progression from cognitive normality to symptomatic Alzheimer disease. Arch Neurol 66:1469–1475. doi:10.1001/archneurol.2009.269, pii:66/12/1469

Moseley M (2002) Diffusion tensor imaging and aging—a review. NMR Biomed 15:553–560. doi:10.1002/nbm.785

Moseley M, Bammer R, Illes J (2002) Diffusion-tensor imaging of cognitive performance. Brain Cogn 50:396–413

Mukherjee P, Berman JI, Chung SW, Hess CP, Henry RG (2008a) Diffusion tensor MR imaging and fiber tractography: theoretic underpinnings. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol 29:632–641. doi:10.3174/ajnr.A1051, pii:ajnr.A1051

Mukherjee P, Chung SW, Berman JI, Hess CP, Henry RG (2008b) Diffusion tensor MR imaging and fiber tractography: technical considerations. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol 29:843–852. doi:10.3174/ajnr.A1052, pii:ajnr.A1052

Mungas D, Beckett L, Harvey D, Farias ST, Reed B, Carmichael O, Olichney J, Miller J, DeCarli C (2010) Heterogeneity of cognitive trajectories in diverse older persons. Psychol Aging 25:606–619. doi:10.1037/a0019502, pii:2010-15893-001

Nierenberg J, Pomara N, Hoptman MJ, Sidtis JJ, Ardekani BA, Lim KO (2005) Abnormal white matter integrity in healthy apolipoprotein E epsilon4 carriers. Neuroreport 16:1369–1372, pii:00001756-200508220-00022

Nitkunan A, Barrick TR, Charlton RA, Clark CA, Markus HS (2008a) Multimodal MRI in cerebral small vessel disease: its relationship with cognition and sensitivity to change over time. Stroke 39:1999–2005. doi:10.1161/strokeaha.107.507475

Nitkunan A, Charlton RA, McIntyre DJ, Barrick TR, Howe FA, Markus HS (2008b) Diffusion tensor imaging and MR spectroscopy in hypertension and presumed cerebral small vessel disease. Magn Reson Med 59:528–534. doi:10.1002/mrm.21461

Nordahl CW, Ranganath C, Yonelinas AP, DeCarli C, Reed BR, Jagust WJ (2005) Different mechanisms of episodic memory failure in mild cognitive impairment. Neuropsychologia 43:1688–1697. doi:10.1016/j.neuropsychologia.2005.01.003, pii:S0028-3932(05)00022-9

Nordahl CW, Ranganath C, Yonelinas AP, DeCarli C, Fletcher E, Jagust WJ (2006) White matter changes compromise prefrontal cortex function in healthy elderly individuals. J Cogn Neurosci 18:418–429. doi:10.1162/089892906775990552

O'Reilly RC, Herd SA, Pauli WM (2010) Computational models of cognitive control. Curr Opin Neurobiol 20:257–261. doi:10.1016/j.conb.2010.01.008

O'Sullivan M, Jones DK, Summers PE, Morris RG, Williams SC, Markus HS (2001) Evidence for cortical "disconnection" as a mechanism of age-related cognitive decline. Neurology 57:632–638

O'Sullivan M, Morris RG, Huckstep B, Jones DK, Williams SCR, Markus HS (2004) Diffusion tensor MRI correlates with executive dysfunction in patients with ischaemic leukoaraiosis. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatr 75:441–447

Palop JJ, Chin J, Mucke L (2006) A network dysfunction perspective on neurodegenerative diseases. Nature 443:768–773. doi:10.1038/nature05289

Persson J, Lind J, Larsson A, Ingvar M, Cruts M, Van BC, Adolfsson R, Nilsson LG, Nyberg L (2006) Altered brain white matter integrity in healthy carriers of the APOE epsilon4 allele: a risk for AD? Neurology 66:1029–1033

Pfefferbaum A, Adalsteinsson E, Sullivan EV (2003) Replicability of diffusion tensor imaging measurements of fractional anisotropy and trace in brain. J Magn Reson Imaging 18:427–433. doi:10.1002/jmri.10377

Pike KE, Savage G, Villemagne VL, Ng S, Moss SA, Maruff P, Mathis CA, Klunk WE, Masters CL, Rowe CC (2007) Beta-amyloid imaging and memory in non-demented individuals: evidence for preclinical Alzheimer's disease. Brain 130:2837–2844

Pinholt M, Frederiksen JL, Christiansen M (2006) The association between apolipoprotein E and multiple sclerosis. Eur J Neurol 13:573–580. doi:10.1111/j.1468-1331.2006.01360.x, pii:ENE1360

Preston SD, Steart PV, Wilkinson A, Nicoll JA, Weller RO (2003) Capillary and arterial cerebral amyloid angiopathy in Alzheimer's disease: defining the perivascular route for the elimination of amyloid beta from the human brain. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol 29:106–117. doi:pii:424

Raz N, Gunning FM, Head D, Dupuis JH, McQuain J, Briggs SD, Loken WJ, Thornton AE, Acker JD (1997) Selective aging of the human cerebral cortex observed in vivo: differential vulnerability of the prefrontal gray matter. Cereb Cortex 7:268–282

Raz N, Gunning-Dixon F, Head D, Rodrigue KM, Williamson A, Acker JD (2004) Aging, sexual dimorphism, and hemispheric asymmetry of the cerebral cortex: replicability of regional differences in volume. Neurobiol Aging 25:377–396

Raz N, Lindenberger U, Rodrigue KM, Kennedy KM, Head D, Williamson A, Dahle C, Gerstorf D, Acker JD (2005) Regional brain changes in aging healthy adults: general trends, individual differences and modifiers. Cereb Cortex 15:1676–1689

Reiman EM, Uecker A, Caselli RJ, Lewis S, Bandy D, De Leon MJ, De Santi S, Convit A, Osborne D, Weaver A, Thibodeau SN (1998) Hippocampal volumes in cognitively normal persons at genetic risk for Alzheimer's disease. Ann Neurol 44:288–291. doi:10.1002/ana.410440226

Reiman EM, Chen K, Liu X, Bandy D, Yu M, Lee W, Ayutyanont N, Keppler J, Reeder SA, Langbaum JBS, Alexander GE, Klunk WE, Mathis CA, Price JC, Aizenstein HJ, DeKosky ST, Caselli RJ (2009) Fibrillar amyloid-Œ≤ burden in cognitively normal people at 3 levels of genetic risk for Alzheimer's disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci 106:6820–6825. doi:10.1073/pnas.0900345106

Rissman J, Gazzaley A, D'Esposito M (2004) Measuring functional connectivity during distinct stages of a cognitive task. Neuroimage 23:752–763. doi:10.1016/j.neuroimage.2004.06.035

Rose SE, Chen F, Chalk JB, Zelaya FO, Strugnell WE, Benson M, Semple J, Doddrell DM (2000) Loss of connectivity in Alzheimer's disease: an evaluation of white matter tract integrity with colour coded MR diffusion tensor imaging. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatr 69:528–530

Rose SE, McMahon KL, Janke AL, O'Dowd B, de Zubicaray G, Strudwick MW, Chalk JB (2006) Diffusion indices on magnetic resonance imaging and neuropsychological performance in amnestic mild cognitive impairment. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatr 77:1122–1128. doi:10.1136/jnnp.2005.074336

Rubin EH, Storandt M, Miller JP, Kinscherf DA, Grant EA, Morris JC, Berg L (1998) A prospective study of cognitive function and onset of dementia in cognitively healthy elders. Arch Neurol 55:395–401

Sakhanenko L (2008) Lower bounds for accuracy of estimation in diffusion tensor imaging. Theory Probab Appl 54:168–177
Salat DH, Smith EE, Tuch DS, Benner T, Pappu V, Schwab KM, Gurol ME, Rosas HD, Rosand J, Greenberg SM (2006) White matter alterations in cerebral amyloid angiopathy measured by diffusion tensor imaging. Stroke 37:1759–1764
Schaie KW (1988) Variability in cognitive function in the elderly: implications for societal participation. Basic Life Sci 43:191–211
Schmidt R, Enzinger C, Ropele S, Schmidt H, Fazekas F (2003) Progression of cerebral white matter lesions: 6-year results of the Austrian stroke prevention study. Lancet 361:2046–2048
Schneider JA, Bennett DA (2010) Where vascular meets neurodegenerative disease. Stroke 41:S144–S146. doi:10.1161/STROKEAHA.110.598326, pii:41/10_suppl_1/S144
Schneider JA, Arvanitakis Z, Bang W, Bennett DA (2007) Mixed brain pathologies account for most dementia cases in community-dwelling older persons. Neurology 69:2197–2204
Seeley WW, Menon V, Schatzberg AF, Keller J, Glover GH, Kenna H, Reiss AL, Greicius MD (2007) Dissociable intrinsic connectivity networks for salience processing and executive control. J Neurosci 27:2349–2356. doi:10.1523/JNEUROSCI.5587-06.2007, pii:27/9/2349
Seeley WW, Crawford RK, Zhou J, Miller BL, Greicius MD (2009) Neurodegenerative diseases target large-scale human brain networks. Neuron 62:42–52. doi:10.1016/j.neuron.2009.03.024
Selhub J, Bagley LC, Miller J, Rosenberg IH (2000) B vitamins, homocysteine, and neurocognitive function in the elderly. Am J Clin Nutr 71:614S–620S
Smith EE, Greenberg SM (2009) Beta-amyloid, blood vessels, and brain function. Stroke 40:2601–2606. doi:10.1161/strokeaha.108.536839
Smith CD, Chebrolu H, Andersen AH, Powell DA, Lovell MA, Xiong S, Gold BT (2010) White matter diffusion alterations in normal women at risk of Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging 31:1122–1131. doi:10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2008.08.006, pii:S0197-4580(08)00292-3
Sperling RA, Laviolette PS, O'Keefe K, O'Brien J, Rentz DM, Pihlajamaki M, Marshall G, Hyman BT, Selkoe DJ, Hedden T, Buckner RL, Becker JA, Johnson KA (2009) Amyloid deposition is associated with impaired default network function in older persons without dementia. Neuron 63:178–188. doi:10.1016/j.neuron.2009.07.003, pii:S0896-6273(09)00505-4
Strittmatter WJ, Bova Hill C (2002) Molecular biology of apolipoprotein E. Curr Opin Lipidol 13:119–123
Strittmatter WJ, Roses AD (1995) Apolipoprotein E and Alzheimer disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 92:4725–4727
Sullivan EV, Pfefferbaum A (2006) Diffusion tensor imaging and aging. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 30:749–761
Sullivan EV, Adalsteinsson E, Hedehus M, Ju C, Moseley M, Lim KO, Pfefferbaum A (2001) Equivalent disruption of regional white matter microstructure in ageing healthy men and women. NeuroReport 12:99–104
Sullivan EV, Adalsteinsson E, Pfefferbaum A (2006) Selective age-related degradation of anterior callosal fiber bundles quantified in vivo with fiber tracking. Cereb Cortex 16:1030–1039. doi:10.1093/cercor/bhj045
Sullivan EV, Rohlfing T, Pfefferbaum A (2010) Longitudinal study of callosal microstructure in the normal adult aging brain using quantitative DTI fiber tracking. Dev Neuropsychol 35:233–256. doi:10.1080/87565641003689556, pii:921878985
Sun SW, Song SK, Harms MP, Lin SJ, Holtzman DM, Merchant KM, Kotyk JJ (2005) Detection of age-dependent brain injury in a mouse model of brain amyloidosis associated with Alzheimer's disease using magnetic resonance diffusion tensor imaging. Exp Neurol 191:77–85. doi:10.1016/j.expneurol.2004.09.006, pii:S0014-4886(04)00374-7
Takao H, Hayashi N, Ohtomo K (2011) Effect of scanner in asymmetry studies using diffusion tensor imaging. Neuroimage 54:1053–1062. doi:10.1016/j.neuroimage.2010.09.023, pii:S1053-8119(10)01204-8
Teipel SJ, Meindl T, Wagner M, Stieltjes B, Reuter S, Hauenstein KH, Filippi M, Ernemann U, Reiser MF, Hampel H (2010) Longitudinal changes in fiber tract integrity in healthy aging and

mild cognitive impairment: a DTI follow-up study. J Alzheimers Dis 22:507–522. doi:10.3233/JAD-2010-100234, pii:U878W14G85597127

Tisserand DJ, Jolles J (2003) On the involvement of prefrontal networks in cognitive ageing. Cortex (a journal devoted to the study of the nervous system and behavior) 39:1107–1128

Tournier JD, Calamante F, Gadian DG, Connelly A (2004) Direct estimation of the fiber orientation density function from diffusion-weighted MRI data using spherical deconvolution. Neuroimage 23:1176–1185. doi:10.1016/j.neuroimage.2004.07.037, pii:S1053-8119(04)00410-0

van Dijk EJ (2005) C-reactive protein and cerebral small-vessel disease: the rotterdam scan study. Circulation 112:900–905. doi:10.1161/circulationaha.104.506337

Viswanathan A, Patel P, Rahman R, Nandigam RN, Kinnecom C, Bracoud L, Rosand J, Chabriat H, Greenberg SM, Smith EE (2008) Tissue microstructural changes are independently associated with cognitive impairment in cerebral amyloid angiopathy. Stroke 39:1988–1992. doi:10.1161/STROKEAHA.107.509091, pii:STROKEAHA.107.509091

Vollmar C, O'Muircheartaigh J, Barker GJ, Symms MR, Thompson P, Kumari V, Duncan JS, Richardson MP, Koepp MJ (2010) Identical, but not the same: intra-site and inter-site reproducibility of fractional anisotropy measures on two 3.0T scanners. Neuroimage 51:1384–1394. doi:10.1016/j.neuroimage.2010.03.046, pii:S1053-8119(10)00333-2

Wang C, Stebbins GT, Medina DA, Shah RC, Bammer R, Moseley ME, Detoledo-Morrell L (2010) Atrophy and dysfunction of parahippocampal white matter in mild Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging. pii:S0197-4580(10)00074-6, doi:10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2010.01.020

Wersching H, Duning T, Lohmann H, Mohammadi S, Stehling C, Fobker M, Conty M, Minnerup J, Ringelstein EB, Berger K, Deppe M, Knecht S (2010) Serum C-reactive protein is linked to cerebral microstructural integrity and cognitive function. Neurology 74:1022–1029. doi:10.1212/WNL.0b013e3181d7b45b, pii:74/13/1022

Westlye LT, Walhovd KB, Bjørnerud A, Due-Tønnessen P, Fjell AM (2009) Error-related negativity is mediated by fractional anisotropy in the posterior cingulate gyrus—a study combining diffusion tensor imaging and electrophysiology in healthy adults. Cereb Cortex 19:293–304. doi:10.1093/cercor/bhn084

Whitehead SN, Cheng G, Hachinski VC, Cechetto DF (2007) Progressive increase in infarct size, neuroinflammation, and cognitive deficits in the presence of high levels of amyloid. Stroke 38:3245–3250. doi:10.1161/STROKEAHA.107.492660, pii:STROKEAHA.107.492660

Whitwell JL, Avula R, Senjem ML, Kantarci K, Weigand SD, Samikoglu A, Edmonson HA, Vemuri P, Knopman DS, Boeve BF, Petersen RC, Josephs KA, Jack CR (2010) Gray and white matter water diffusion in the syndromic variants of frontotemporal dementia. Neurology 74:1279–1287. doi:10.1212/WNL.0b013e3181d9edde

Wilson RS, Beckett LA, Barnes LL, Schneider JA, Bach J, Evans DA, Bennett DA (2002) Individual differences in rates of change in cognitive abilities of older persons. Psychol Aging 17:179–193

Woldorff MG, Hazlett CJ, Fichtenholtz HM, Weissman DH, Dale AM, Song AW (2004) Functional parcellation of attentional control regions of the brain. J Cogn Neurosci 16:149–165. doi:10.1162/089892904322755638

Wozniak JR, Lim KO (2006) Advances in white matter imaging: a review of in vivo magnetic resonance methodologies and their applicability to the study of development and aging. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 30:762–774. doi:10.1016/j.neubiorev.2006.06.003, pii:S0149-7634(06)00047-9

Xu Q, Zhou Y, Li YS, Cao WW, Lin Y, Pan YM, Chen SD (2010) Diffusion tensor imaging changes correlate with cognition better than conventional MRI findings in patients with subcortical ischemic vascular disease. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 30:317–326. doi:10.1159/000320491, pii:000320491

Yoshita M, Fletcher E, Harvey D, Ortega M, Martinez O, Mungas DM, Reed BR, DeCarli CS (2006) Extent and distribution of white matter hyperintensities in normal aging, MCI, and AD. Neurology 67:2192–2198

Zelinski EM, Gilewski MJ, Schaie KW (1993) Individual differences in cross-sectional and 3-year longitudinal memory performance across the adult life span. Psychol Aging 8:176–186

Zhan W, Zhang Y, Mueller SG, Lorenzen P, Hadjidemetriou S, Schuff N, Weiner MW (2009) Characterization of white matter degeneration in elderly subjects by magnetic resonance diffusion and FLAIR imaging correlation. Neuroimage 47:T58–T65. doi:10.1016/j.neuroimage.2009.02.004

Zhang Y, Schuff N, Du A-T, Rosen HJ, Kramer JH, Gorno-Tempini ML, Miller BL, Weiner MW (2009) White matter damage in frontotemporal dementia and Alzheimer's disease measured by diffusion MRI. Brain 132:2579–2592. doi:10.1093/brain/awp071

Zhou W, Xu D, Peng X, Zhang Q, Jia J, Crutcher KA (2008) Meta-analysis of APOE4 allele and outcome after traumatic brain injury. J Neurotrauma 25:279–290. doi:10.1089/neu.2007.0489

Zhu T, Liu X, Connelly PR, Zhong J (2008) An optimized wild bootstrap method for evaluation of measurement uncertainties of DTI-derived parameters in human brain. Neuroimage 40:1144–1156

Structural, Functional and Spectroscopic MRI Studies of Methamphetamine Addiction

Ruth Salo and Catherine Fassbender

Abstract This chapter reviews selected neuroimaging findings related to long-term amphetamine and methamphetamine (MA) use. An overview of structural and functional (fMRI) MR studies, Diffusion Tensor Imaging (DTI), Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy (MRS) and Positron Emission Tomography (PET) studies conducted in long-term MA abusers is presented. The focus of this chapter is to present the relevant studies as tools to understand brain changes following drug abstinence and recovery from addiction. The behavioral relevance of these neuroimaging studies is discussed as they relate to clinical symptoms and treatment. Within each imaging section this chapter includes a discussion of the relevant imaging studies as they relate to patterns of drug use (i.e., duration of MA use, cumulative lifetime dose and time MA abstinent) as well as an overview of studies that link the imaging findings to cognitive measures. In our conclusion we discuss some of the future directions of neuroimaging as it relates to the pathophysiology of addiction.

Keywords Methamphetamine · Amphetamine · Imaging · Structural · Functional · Addiction

Contents

R. Salo (✉) · C. Fassbender
UC Davis Imaging Research Center, 4701 X Street, Sacramento, CA, USA
e-mail: resalo@ucdavis.edu

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 321–364
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2011_172

Published Online: 18 November 2011

Acronyms

5-HT	Serotonin
AC	Anterior commissure
ACC	Anterior cingulate cortex
ADC	Apparent diffusion coefficient
BDI	Beck Depression Inventory
BOLD	Blood-oxygen-level dependence
BPRS	Brief Psychiatric Rating Scale
BSI	Brief Symptom Inventory
C	Coherence index
CC	Corpus callosum
Cho	Choline
Cr	Creatine
CSF	Cerebral spinal fluid
DAT	Dopamine transporter
DD	Delay discounting
DTI	Diffusion tensor imaging
FA	Fractional anisotropy
fMRI	Functional magnetic resonance imaging
Glu	Glutamate
GM	Gray matter
GLX	Glutamate + Glutamine
HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus
MA	Methamphetamine
mI	Myo-inositol
MRI	Magnetic resonance imaging

MRS	Magnetic resonance spectroscopy
NAA	N-acetyl aspartate
NAc	Nucleus accumbens
NMR	Nuclear magnetic resonance
OFC	Orbital frontal cortex
PC	Posterior commissure
PD	Parkinson's disease
PFC	Prefrontal cortex
PCr	Phosphocreatine
PET	Positron emission tomography
PVC	Primary visual cortex
ROI	Region of interest
RT	Reaction time
SCID	Structured clinical interview for DSM-IV
SCL-90	Symptom checklist-90
SERT	Serotonin transporter
VBM	Voxel-based morphometry
VMAT	Vesicular monoamine transporter
WCST	Wisconsin card sort test
WM	White matter
WURS	Wender Utah Rating Scale

1 Introduction

Unlike most organs of the body, the brain has been less amenable to in vivo investigation until recent times. Researchers now have the capability to examine the fine structure and physiology of an intact brain in vivo with different imaging modalities. These imaging techniques have greatly increased our understanding of healthy brain function as well as that of neuropsychiatric disorders, including addiction. In this chapter we will review selected neuroimaging findings related to long-term amphetamine and methamphetamine (MA) use. We will present an overview of structural and functional (fMRI) MR studies, Diffusion Tensor Imaging (DTI), Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy (MRS) and Positron Emission Tomography (PET) studies that have been conducted in long-term MA abusers. We will also discuss the relevant studies as tools to understand brain changes following drug abstinence and recovery from addiction. Imaging techniques have great potential to elucidate the interaction between neuronal changes, drug use patterns and clinical symptomatology. Furthermore, correlations between brain structure and function with measures of cognitive function have been observed, suggesting that altered neuronal function within select regions may contribute to impairments in behavioral regulation linked to addiction (Chung et al. 2007;

Salo et al. 2007; Sung et al. 2007; Kim et al. 2009a). Group differences in brain structure and function are by themselves important findings, but meaningful associations with drug use patterns and behavior makes them even more clinically relevant. To that end within each imaging section we have included a discussion of the relevant imaging studies as they relate to clinical patterns of drug use (i.e., duration of MA use, cumulative lifetime dose and time MA abstinent) as well as an overview of studies that link the imaging findings to cognitive measures. We have included the majority of imaging studies that were referenced on PubMed in this chapter that focused primarily on MA and to a lesser degree amphetamine. We have not included those studies that involved samples of polydrug abusers, prenatal MA exposure or those that examined the comorbidity of HIV + MA or the comorbidity of MA use with other psychiatric disorders such as schizophrenia and bipolar. The reason for this selective approach is that we felt that the inclusion of other disorders could mask the underlying neural changes induced by MA alone and could weaken the interpretation of the imaging results as it relates to MA. Finally, in our conclusion we will discuss some of the future directions of MRI and PET as they relate to the pathophysiology of substance use disorders and their treatment.

2 Magnetic Resonance Imaging Techniques

MRI has evolved considerably over the past nearly three decades. Currently with higher field magnets and advanced pulse sequence designs one is able to obtain high-resolution structural images of the brain with sub millimeter resolution. Such improved instrumentation allows for contrast between tissue types allowing one to separate/segment brain tissue into gray matter (GM), white matter (WM) and cerebral spinal fluid (CSF). We are thus able to measure tissue volumes for the various brain structures in normal and clinical populations.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is based upon the phenomenon of nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR). NMR is the physical property by which nuclei of certain elements—such as hydrogen—when placed in a strong magnetic field and exposed to radiowaves of a particular frequency, resonate or emit energy of the same frequency that can be detected as an NMR signal. This NMR signal can be localized in space by applying magnetic field gradients in three directions; subsequently, the localized signals can be converted into an image. The basic MRI requires a strong primary magnetic field (B0) that is parallel with the long axis of the tube-shaped device within which a subject lies. This large primary magnet generates these magnetic fields that align the hydrogen molecules (protons) within that field. The magnetic field gradient added to the main field allows one to select a slice for imaging. The radiofrequency pulses applied perpendicularly to the main field at the same time as the magnetic field gradient perturb the aligned hydrogen molecules of the proscribed slice. These perturbed hydrogen molecules then precess about the axis of the primary magnetic field (B0) and come back to the initial alignment. The pattern of decay of the signal

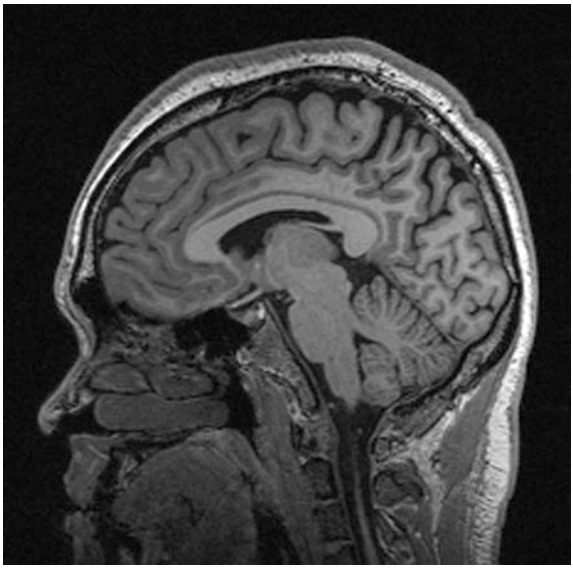


Fig. 1 T1 weighted MR image acquired in the sagittal plane

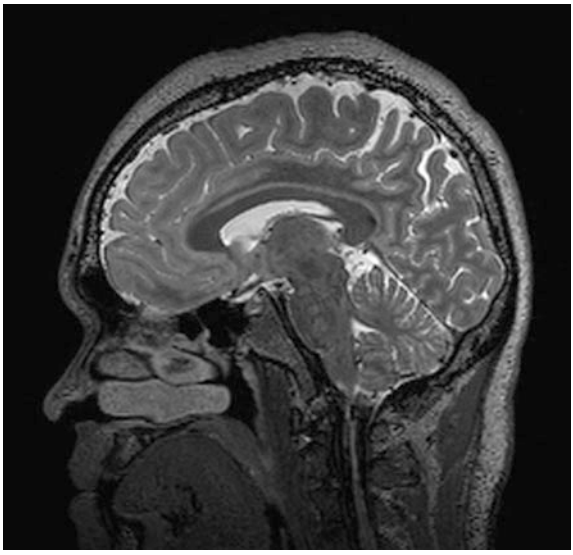


Fig. 2 T2 weighted MR image acquired in the sagittal plane

as the precessing protons come back into initial alignment gives information about the concentration of the signal source, the hydrogen atoms in water being imaged, but also reflects the chemical environment in which the signal source is found. Two characteristic relaxation times, T1 and T2, characterize the chemical environment (Figs. 1, 2).

2.1 Structural MR Imaging Studies of Methamphetamine (MA) Abuse

Evidence that MA induces neuronal damage comes for the most part from the animal literature. Surprisingly relatively few structural brain studies have been conducted in human MA abusers and some of those have been post-mortem examinations whereas others have employed in vivo imaging. Exposure to high doses of MA and related stimulants has been shown to cause long-term changes in the dopaminergic (Ricaurte et al. 1980; Wagner et al. 1980a, b; Ricaurte et al. 1982, 1984) as well as in the serotonergic system (O'Hearn et al. 1988; Axt and Molliver 1991; Zhou and Bledsoe 1996) in humans and non-human primates. Damage has been seen in frontostriatal regions subserving selective attention such as the striatum, frontal cortex and amygdala (Ricaurte et al. 1982; Villemagne et al. 1998) as well as regions subserving memory such as hippocampus and amygdala (Melega et al. 1996). Consistent with the animal work, an early post-mortem study of the brains of MA abusers revealed reduced dopamine transporter (DAT) levels in the nucleus accumbens (NAc), caudate and putamen (Wilson et al. 1996). This study will be discussed in greater detail later in the chapter. There is less evidence of structural changes in posterior brain regions such as visual cortex following MA exposure (Molliver et al. 1990).

Those structural imaging studies that have been published in human amphetamine/MA abusers have revealed patterns of damage consistent with the animal work (Bartzokis et al. 2000; Thompson et al. 2004). One of the first structural MR studies of amphetamine abusers was conducted on a low-field (1.5 T) machine and compared regional brain volumes in nine amphetamine-dependent males, 10 cocaine-dependent males and 16 non-substance abusing male controls (Bartzokis et al. 2000). Both stimulant abusing groups exhibited smaller temporal lobe volumes compared to the controls, localized primarily to GM with no differences observed in the frontal lobes. Although the two stimulant abusing groups did not differ from each other on regional brain volumes, the cocaine abusers exhibited a unique profile in that they exhibited an age-related decline whereas the amphetamine abusers did not. As shall be seen in subsequent structural MR studies of MA abuse, WM hypertrophy was also observed in conjunction with GM decline, and was more evident in the amphetamine abusers than in the cocaine abusing group. A more recent high-resolution structural MRI study later reported evidence of structural abnormalities in chronic MA abusers (Thompson et al. 2004). Cortical maps obtained at 3 T revealed severe GM deficits in the cingulate, hippocampus and paralimbic cortices. On average, MA abusers had 7.8% smaller hippocampal volumes than control subjects and reductions of 11.3% within the cingulate and paralimbic cortices. In conjunction with the GM reductions, WM hypertrophy was also observed in the MA abusers. These results suggest that MA abuse may target hippocampal regions as well as the cingulate-limbic cortex.

In addition to the structural abnormalities reviewed above in the temporal and paralimbic cortices, one study examined the effects of MA on the corpus callosum

(CC) of 27 MA abusers compared to controls (Oh et al. 2005). In this study, automated shape analysis techniques were employed to detect whether group differences might exist within subregions of the CC. Although no group differences in overall CC volume were observed, differential patterns were observed in the curvature and the width of distinct CC sub regions between the two groups. In the boundary model-based shape analysis, decreased width was observed in the posterior midbody and isthmus of the MA abusers, while increased curvature was observed in the genu of the MA abusers. CC abnormalities will be discussed further in the DTI section within this chapter. Although the studies reviewed above have described a consistent pattern of GM reduction following long-term MA abuse, they did not report volumetric changes within striatal regions. However, one study did report evidence of increased striatal volume in a large group of 50 MA abusers who had been drug abstinent more than two years (Chang et al. 2005). The authors suggested that possible mechanisms for the striatal enlargement may include glial activation and inflammatory changes associated with MA-induced injury which in turn reflects a compensatory response to the neurotoxic effects of MA.

A pair of studies used voxel-based morphometry (VBM) to examine volume differences in gray and WM segmented tissue in MA abusers (Schwartz et al. 2010; Kim et al. 2006). The first of the two published studies obtained imaging data from 29 MA abusers and 20 non-substance abusing controls in order to detect group differences as well as to investigate the relationship of drug sobriety on brain volumes discussed below (Kim et al. 2006). GM density decreases were observed in the mid-prefrontal gyrus with no differences observed in WM. The authors also reported volume reductions in the left medial frontal gyrus, right mid-frontal gyrus and right precentral gyrus of the MA abusers; however, when statistical corrections for multiple comparisons were applied these region group differences were no longer statistically significant. A subsequent study also used VBM to examine structural changes in 61 MA-dependent individuals in the early stages of abstinence (Schwartz et al. 2010). In this study lower cortical GM density was observed in the MA abusers within the bilateral insular regions and the left MFG? The authors also observed a density increase within regions of the cerebellum.

2.1.1 Volumetric Findings and Drug Use Patterns

The ability to link changes in brain volume following MA abuse and patterns of drug use (e.g., duration of MA use and length of MA sobriety) is an important endeavor as it provides insight to which brain regions are more susceptible to the neurotoxic effects of MA. At the same time, such approaches offer a valuable opportunity to detect whether or not select brain regions may be resilient following extended periods of MA sobriety. Although the body of structural imaging studies in MA abusers is relatively small to date, some, but not all, have linked observed changes to drug use patterns. One such study of 50 MA abusers reported that those subjects with smaller striatal regions reported the greatest amount of lifetime MA use (Chang et al. 2005). No results were reported in relation length

of drug abstinence. In another study that employed VBM techniques relationships with drug abstinence were examined and reported. In this study lower GM density within the right midfrontal cortex was observed in the MA abusers with short-term abstinence (<6 months) compared to the MA abusers who had remained drug abstinent for longer periods of time (>6 months) (Kim et al. 2006). In fact those MA abusers with long-term MA abstinence had GM volumes that approached those of controls suggesting possibly some degree of normalization following extended periods of drug sobriety.

The relationship between drug abstinence and structural abnormalities was also examined in a recent VBM study (Schwartz et al. 2010). This study of 61 abstinent MA abusers (age range 20–63) revealed that increased time of MA abstinence correlated significantly with increased GM density in the bilateral amygdala, striatum, left fusiform gyrus and right cerebellar tonsil. In addition, a negative correlation was observed between time MA abstinent and cortical density within the right midfrontal gyrus. No correlations were reported for duration of use or cumulative dosage.

2.1.2 Volumetric Findings and Cognitive Function

Several of the studies reviewed above analyzed the relationship between brain volume and behavioral measures. In one of the first studies to correlate changes in brain volume with cognition, reductions in hippocampal volumes were found to correlate with performance on a test of word-recall, such that those MA abusers with the lowest test scores had the most pronounced reductions within the hippocampus (Thompson et al. 2004). Findings of reductions in striatal volume have also been related to measures of cognition. In a study of 50 MA abusers those with smaller striatal volume were more impaired on tasks of both verbal fluency and speeded motor function (Chang et al. 2005). These findings are consistent with neurological studies that have implicated these same regions. Findings from the VBM study reviewed above also revealed neural-behavioral correlations. In this study, those MA abusers who scored the lowest on the Wisconsin Card Sort Test (WCST), a task that measures multiple executive functions had the lowest GM density within the right mid frontal cortex (Kim et al. 2006). This correlation was the strongest in those MA abusers with short-term abstinence. As with many of the studies within this review, correlational findings were observed only in the MA abusing group and not in the controls. This lack of observed correlations in the controls may be due in part to small sample sizes.

A recent VBM study examined the relationship between impulsive behavior and structural abnormalities (Schwartz et al. 2010). This study administered a delay discounting (DD) task to 61 MA-dependent individuals in order to measure the tendency of the MA abusers to select immediate over delayed rewards. Group differences were observed between MA abusers and controls as manifested by increased impulsivity in the MA abusers. In addition to the behavioral differences, significant positive correlations were also observed between impulsivity and GM density within bilateral putamen, left ventral striatum and the posterior cingulate cortex. Negative correlations were also observed in frontal region. To the best of

our knowledge these are the only published findings that have linked measures of cognition to changes in brain volume within MA abusers.

2.1.3 Summary

In a recent review of the MRI literature in MA abuse, Berman et al. examined a group of peer-reviewed MRI studies published between 1988 and August 2000 (Berman et al. 2008). In this comprehensive review the majority of studies reported regional brain volume reductions in the MA abusers with a preferential involvement of medial temporal lobe structures (i.e., hippocampus), and cingulate cortices. In conjunction with GM deficits there was also a consistent pattern of WM hypertrophy. Although the majority of studies reported volume reductions (Schwartz et al. 2010; Thompson et al. 2004), there was moderate evidence for enlargement within striatal regions (Chang et al. 2005). In summary, although there are relatively few structural imaging studies in human MA abusers, those that have been published suggest profound volumetric abnormalities in cingulate, temporal, hippocampal and limbic regions. These findings of structural abnormalities were accompanied by correlations with measures of cognition including verbal fluency, impulsivity, memory and tasks of executive function. Furthermore, the findings of volumetric abnormalities in the MA abusers were also found to correlate with drug use patterns (i.e., duration of drug use, time abstinent).

3 Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy (MRS)

Magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS) is a valuable tool to examine the presence of neuronal damage or deterioration in addiction. MRS is based on the same principles of NMR and produces patterns of signals, or spectra, which allow visualization of neurochemicals in vivo. The individual peaks in the spectrum represent information about the chemical makeup of the tissue under examination, with time change of these spectra following the changes in concentrations of biological compounds. MRS allows for the visualization of diverse group of markers of cellular integrity and function, including those of living neurons N-acetylaspartate (NAA), high-energy metabolic products creatine (Cr), cell membrane synthesis or degradation choline (Cho), glia myonositol (mI), glutamate + Glutamine (GLX) as well as glutamate (Glu).

Although structural MRI employs hydrogen protons almost exclusively, MRS uses a number of elements including hydrogen (proton), phosphorus-31, fluorine-15, lithium-7, sodium-23 and carbon-13. Compared with MRI, MRS requires that a relatively large volume be sampled in order to obtain a sufficient signal. MRS has a volume resolution of about 1 cubic centimeter from (H^1) or proton spectroscopy of metabolites, whereas 6 cubic centimeters or more are necessary for phosphorus spectroscopy. Despite these limitations, MRS has made significant contributions to the imaging of biological function, including the field of addiction.

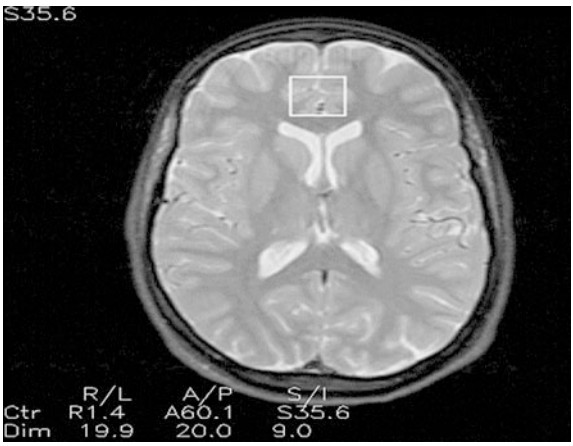


Fig. 3 Oblique axial proton density magnetic resonance image showing the typical location (*white box*) of the voxel sampling within the anterior cingulate cortex

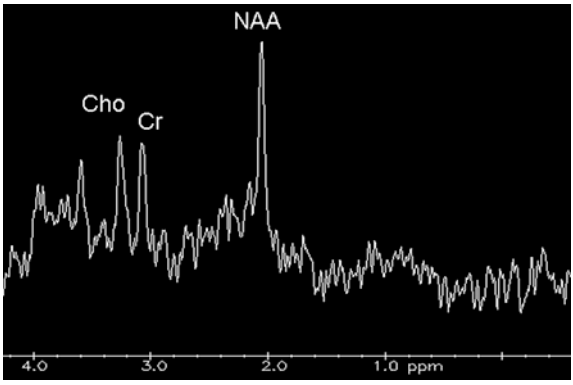


Fig. 4 Representative MRS spectra acquired at 1.5 T

Two MRS techniques are available in proton spectroscopy; single-voxel proton MRS in which a preselected region of interest (ROI) is sampled and MRSI proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy imaging in which several brain regions can be sampled simultaneously and multiple spectra obtained. Although single-voxel techniques may yield greater signal to noise ratios, MRSI possesses the ability to better define neurochemical differences between brain regions. MRS has made significant contributions to the understanding of neurochemical function to date and has great potential to contribute to the further understanding of neurochemical differences associated with addiction (Figs. 3, 4).

3.1 MRS Imaging Studies of Methamphetamine (MA) Abuse

The use of MRS to study neurochemical changes resulting from long-term MA abuse has yielded a number of important findings. Several early proton MRS studies reported evidence of frontostriatal neuronal damage in MA abusers

(Ernst et al. 2000; Taylor et al. 2000; Nordahl et al. 2002). One of the first MRS studies conducted in MA abusers found evidence of abnormally low NAA in the basal ganglia as well as in lateral frontal WM (Ernst et al. 2000). Ernst et al. interpreted the pattern of low NAA accompanied by high amounts of mI and Cho, as consistent with neuronal damage; compromised neurons with glial proliferation. These findings are consistent with the published findings from the animal literature, in which damage was also reported in frontostriatal regions (Ricaurte et al. 1982; Villemagne et al. 1998). Nordahl et al. also found evidence consistent with damage in medial frontal regions and reported reductions in NAA/Cr in the primarily GM region of the rostral Anterior Cingulate Cortex (ACC) of MA abusers compared to controls (Nordahl et al. 2002). No differences were observed in the medial Primary Visual Cortex (PVC). They interpreted the lack of PVC differences to reflect the fact that the PVC receives relatively little DA innervation and thus is less vulnerable to damage following MA abuse. Taylor et al. also reported reduced NAA/Cr within the ACC but not in the caudate nucleus (Taylor et al. 2000). In a later study of 48 abstinent MA abusers by the same group, no group differences were observed in neurometabolites between the substance abusers and controls, but longer duration of lifetime MA abuse was significantly correlated with both increases in frontal GM Cho and elevated mI levels within the basal ganglia, both of which are markers of damage (Taylor et al. 2007).

In another study that focused on striatal regions, Sekine et al. measured NAA, Cr + phosphocreatine (PCr), and Cho levels bilaterally in the basal ganglia of 13 abstinent MA abusers and 11 controls (Sekine et al. 2002). Significantly reduced Cr + PCr/Cho ratios were observed in the basal ganglia of the MA abusers but NAA/Cho ratios in the same region did not significantly differ between groups. These findings suggest that protracted use of MA may cause changes in some, but not all, metabolite alterations in the basal ganglia.

Sung et al. examined alterations in neurochemicals within both WM and GM of 30 abstinent MA abusers. In this study, conducted on a 3 T magnet, increases in mI and decreases in NAA were observed within frontal WM of the MA abusers (Sung et al. 2007). Further analyses examined the relationship of these metabolite values with patterns of drug use and cumulative drug dosage which will be discussed in a later section.

One of the neural mechanisms by which MA is thought to exert damage on the human brain is through neurotoxicity mediated by excess glutamate (Ohmori et al. 1996; Davidson et al. 2001; Quinton and Yamamoto 2006). Despite several studies conducted in animals, direct evidence of the effects of Glu on the human brain is limited. One reason for the lack of studies in this area may lie in the technical challenges in obtaining reliable measures of Glu. At lower fields (1.5 T) the ability to separate the combined glutamate signal (glutamate + Glutamine or GLX) is difficult. Thus the studies reviewed below include those that have measured GLX at lower fields (Ernst and Chang 2008) and more recent studies conducted at 3 T in which the ability to measure uncontaminated Glu is now possible (Hurd et al. 2004; Sailasuta et al. 2010a, b).

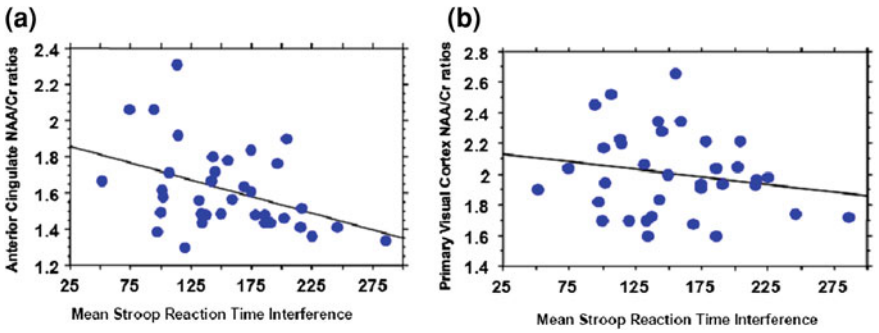


Fig. 5 Correlation between NAA/Cr metabolite levels in the anterior cingulate cortex (**a**), primary visual cortex (**b**) and mean stroop reaction time interference in 36 methamphetamine abusers. (Reprinted from Salo et al. 2007)

Ernst et all examined GLX in a group of 25 abstinent MA abusers and observed lower GLX levels in frontal GM but not in the basal ganglia compared to non-substance abusing controls (Ernst and Chang 2008). In one of the first studies to measure changes in Glu in 18 abstinent MA users, Sailasuta et al. (2010a, b). reported both increases in Glu and NAA reductions in frontal WM. Although globally Glu levels correlated with NAA levels, suggesting a possible role of Glu in mediating MA neurotoxicity, such a correlation was not observed in the frontal WM (Sailasuta et al. 2010a, b).

3.1.1 Summary

Collectively these MRS studies suggest that long-term MA use causes changes in neurochemicals that are more pronounced in frontostriatal regions, with less evidence in posterior brain regions. Most of the studies reviewed thus far have focused on NAA, Cho and MI. With increasing field strengths and technological advances scientists are now able to measure a broader range of metabolites including Glu (Hurd et al. 2004) (Fig. 5).

3.2 MRS Findings and Drug Use Patterns

MRS has proven to be a powerful imaging tool to investigate the relationship between neural changes following MA abuse and patterns of drug use (e.g., duration of MA use and length of MA sobriety). One of the first MRS studies to examine the effects of MA abstinence on neurochemicals reported that in a sample of 24 MA abusing subjects, those MA abusers who had been abstinent for 12 months and longer had lower Cho/NAA levels within the ACC compared to those MA abusers who had been MA abstinent for six months and less (Nordahl et al. 2005). This study

was followed up by an expanded dataset of 47 MA abusers in which increases (i.e., normalization) in NAA/Cr were also observed within the same rostral ACC regions (Salo et al. 2011a). The relative Cho and NAA normalization across periods of abstinence suggests that, following cessation of MA abuse, adaptive changes occur, that may contribute to some degree of normalization of neuronal structure and function in the ACC. These NAA changes may underlie improvements in cognition that have also been observed across periods of drug abstinence (Salo et al. 2009b).

Sung et al. also reported changes in neurometabolites related to patterns of MA use (Sung et al. 2007). Sung et al. reported a marginal difference in frontal NAA levels between those MA abusers with greater lifetime MA exposure (i.e., >100 g) and those with lower lifetime MA exposure. NAA reductions in those MA abusers with the longer lifetime MA exposure were greater in frontal WM than in GM. Unlike the previous MRS studies reviewed above, Sekine et al. focused on a bilateral sampling of the basal ganglia (i.e., primarily putamen) in a sample of 13 MA abusers in order to examine neurochemical differences in MA abusers (Sekine et al. 2002). In this study there was a significant correlation between the Cr + Pcr values and the duration of MA use, driven mostly by the left basal ganglia. In a later study of 48 abstinent MA abusers by the same group, no group differences were observed in neurometabolites between the substance abusers and controls, but longer duration of lifetime MA abuse was significantly correlated with both increases in frontal GM Cho and elevated mI levels within the basal ganglia (Taylor et al. 2007), both of which are markers of damage.

Changes in glutamatergic function have also been observed across periods of drug abstinence (Ernst and Chang 2008; Sailasuta et al. 2010a, b). Ernst et al. reported a varied time course of GLX levels in MA abusers across periods of abstinence. In a sample of 12 MA abusers, those who had maintained drug abstinence across periods of 12 months showed evidence of normalization in the GLX signal followed by subsequent increases (Ernst and Chang 2008). The authors suggested that these findings may reflect that the glutamate system is down regulated early in abstinence and then normalizes over time. In one of the first studies to measure changes in Glu in 18 abstinent MA users, Sailasuta et al. also reported significant reductions in Glu levels within frontal WM across periods of MA abstinence (Sailasuta et al. 2010b). No correlations were observed between time MA abstinent and posterior gray matter.

3.2.1 Summary

Many of the MRS studies reviewed above have detected significant correlations between MA dosage, years use and length of MA abstinences. The findings reveal that those MA abusers who have used the powerful stimulant for a longer period of time and at larger dosages exhibit the greatest neurometabolite abnormalities, consistent with damage. Of even greater importance is the important finding that some degree of neurochemical normalization may occur across extended periods of MA abstinence and that not all the neurometabolite changes observed following

long-term MA use are permanent. The increases in NAA observed across periods of drug abstinence may reflect a partial restoration of mitochondrial function as NAA is synthesized in the mitochondria (Moffett et al. 2007). If this is true then this is of particular relevance as mitochondrial dysfunction is thought to be one of the key mechanisms by which MA produces its neurotoxic effects on brain function (Davidson et al. 2001; Quinton and Yamamoto 2006). The findings of Cho normalization may represent an adaptive response to overt damage. a process that may include reactive gliosis, increased membrane turnover and axonal sprouting. At longer remission periods less membrane synthesis and turnover may occur potentially explaining the normalized relative choline values (Nordahl et al. 2005). The findings of GLX and Glu normalization may represent yet another set of adaptive changes by the human brain (Ernst and Chang 2008; Sailasuta et al. 2010b). Possible explanations for reductions in GLX/Glu following MA abuse might be: (1) the loss of glutamatergic neurons; (2) decreased Glu synthesis or (3) reduced Glu uptake within the glial cells (Yamamoto and Bankson 2005). While yet another potential mechanism for reductions in GLX/Glu might be a result of MA-induced oxidative stress (Tata and Yamamoto 2007). Thus normalization of the GLX/Glu signal across extended periods of sobriety may reflect a reversal of the neurotoxic processes described above. While collectively all of the findings above paint an encouraging picture of positive brain recovery associated with drug sobriety, the findings do suggest that protracted periods of drug sobriety (i.e., >12 months) may be needed for neurochemical function to normalize.

3.3 MRS Findings and Cognitive Function

Although there are many MRS studies that have reported group differences in MRS metabolites between MA abusers and non-substance abusing controls, only a small subset of these studies have linked these MRS data to cognitive measures (Salo et al. 2007). Of particular interest is the relationship between NAA and measures of cognition. NAA is believed to be present almost exclusively in neurons and their dendritic and axonal processes (Tsai and Coyle 1995). As NAA is synthesized within the mitochondria and decreases in NAA correlate with reductions in ATP, NAA can be regarded as a marker of neuronal viability that is related to the energy metabolism of the neuron (Tsai and Coyle 1995; Grachev et al. 2001; Ohrmann et al. 2004; Moffett et al. 2007). Salo et al. examined the relationship between a measure of attentional control (i.e., Stroop Task) and metabolites within the ACC and PVC. In this study of 34 abstinent MA abusers, an inverse correlation was observed between ACC-NAA/Cr and performance on the Stroop color-word selective attention task. Specifically, those MA abusers with the worst performance on the attention task had the lowest NAA/Cr levels within the ACC. No significant correlations were observed in the PVC. In a follow-up study that employed a task of spatial attention, significant correlations were observed between both ACC and PVC NAA/Cr levels in the MA abusers

(Salo et al. 2011b). These findings are of particular interest as the two groups (MA abusers and controls) did not differ in performance on the task of spatial attention. The strong correlation between spatial attention and NAA/Cr levels within the PVC in the MA-dependent individuals suggests that preserved neuronal integrity within the PVC of stimulant abusers may modulate cognitive mechanisms that process implicit spatial information. In summary, although there are only a pair of MRS studies that have correlated metabolite values with cognitive performance in MA abusers, the published findings are consistent with other MRS studies of cognition that have published in healthy control subjects (Jung et al. 1999; Grachev et al. 2001).

3.4 MRS Findings and Clinical Symptoms

There are few MRS studies that have attempted to link changes in neurometabolites with the psychiatric symptoms associated with long-term MA abuse. Given the impact of MA-induced psychiatric symptomatology on emergency rooms and health care services, the identification of the neural correlates of MA-induced psychosis and MA-related symptoms is of paramount importance. In the Sekine et al. study discussed above, reductions in Cr + PCr/Cho ratio observed in the bilateral basal ganglia correlated significantly with both duration of MA use and with the severity of residual psychiatric symptoms (Sekine et al. 2002). In this study a comprehensive approach was used to evaluate psychiatric symptoms in the MA abusers including: (1) self report; (2) family report; (3) medical record review; and (4) administration of the Brief Psychiatric Rating Scale (BPRS). Specifically, the authors found a negative correlation between Cr + PCr/Cho ratios in the basal ganglia and scores on the positive symptoms subscale of the BPRS which measures delusions and hallucinations. In other words, those MA abusers who exhibited the highest scores on the BPRS subscale were those individuals with the lowest Cr + PCr/Cho ratios in the basal ganglia. The authors interpreted this correlation to reflect that residual psychiatric symptoms may be in part attributable to the metabolite alterations in the basal ganglia.

4 Diffusion Tensor Imaging (DTI)

Diffusion tensor imaging (DTI) has emerged as a powerful non-invasive imaging tool that gives a measure of the pattern of connectivity between neural structures by examining the restricted flow patterns of water molecules in axonal pathways and white matter substrates. When water molecules are flowing randomly in CSF or cortical GM, the environment is said to be ‘isotropic’. In contrast, when the environment is constrained by WM cell membranes (i.e., organelles and axonal bundles) the diffusion is restricted such that flow is greater along the axon than

perpendicular to it. This diffusion or flow pattern is called anisotropy. DTI techniques are necessary to measure the directional flow of water molecules in anisotropic environments by combining a number of diffusion weighed images along with a baseline or reference image to characterize the flow of water molecules in three-dimensional space. Different measures can be obtained from the DTI images such as Fractional Anisotropy (FA) and Coherence indices (C). FA is computed on a voxel to voxel basis and reflects the degree or fraction of the total anisotropic tensor. FA values vary across regions and tissue types. Regions such as the CC where fibers are organized in parallel have high FA values approaching 1, whereas FA values in the ventricles CSF are closer to 0 reflecting a random or isotropic diffusion pattern. C represents the coherence between voxels in the WM. DTI techniques are extremely valuable when examining axonal integrity and connectivity of brain structures and have important applications to the study of MA abuse. Although volumetric measurements of WM macrostructure can be obtained through traditional MR techniques, currently DTI is the only in vivo tool capable of measuring WM microstructure within the human brain. To date only a handful of DTI studies have been conducted in MA abusers and the results will be reviewed below.

4.1 DTI Imaging Studies of Methamphetamine (MA) Abuse

Studies of MA exposure using animal models have suggested that chronic exposure may destroy axonal arbors of dopamine neurons with sparing of the cell bodies themselves (Ricaurte et al. 1980, 1982). Compared to the rich body of published animal studies on WM damage following MA exposure, only a small number of studies in humans have been published (Tobias et al. 2010; Thompson et al. 2004; Oh et al. 2005; Bae et al. 2006; Alicata et al. 2009; Kim et al. 2009a; Salo et al. 2009a). Although some studies have examined WM macrostructure (Oh et al. 2005; Bae et al. 2006), others have studied WM microstucture using DTI techniques (Tobias et al.; Chung et al. 2007; Kim et al. 2009a; Salo et al. 2009a). DTI has emerged as a promising imaging technique to examine WM abnormalities in both clinical (Lim et al. 2002; Lim and Helpern 2002; Pfefferbaum and Sullivan 2005; Pfefferbaum et al. 2006) and non-clinical populations (Lim and Helpern 2002; Sullivan and Pfefferbaum 2003; Madden et al. 2004; Pfefferbaum et al. 2005; Barkovich et al. 2006). Information derived from the DTI measures can then be correlated with cognitive measures in order to predict the relationship between changes in WM microstructure and behavior (Pfefferbaum et al. 2000; O'Sullivan et al. 2001; Sullivan et al. 2001; Kubicki et al. 2002; Madden et al. 2004; Kubicki et al. 2005; Schulte et al. 2005).

As long-term MA use can cause significant damage to WM, the emergence of MA imaging studies that have used DTI has been of paramount importance to the addiction literature. Findings of reduced FA may occur as a result of demyelination, as well as from axonal damage (Song et al. 2002). Morphological studies of

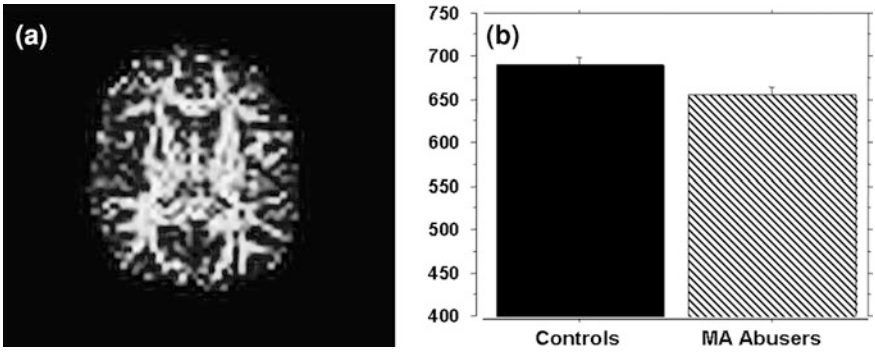


Fig. 6 Group differences in fractional anisotropy (FA) between methamphetamine (MA) abusers and controls (**b**). FA image (**a**). Salo et al. unpublished figures

animals who have been exposed to MA report findings of abnormally low presynaptic DA & 5-HT axonal markers which are related to overt destruction of DA and 5-HT axon terminals as well as the axon proper, typically sparing the nerve cell bodies (Ricaurte et al. 1980, 1982). While the exact mechanism of MA damage to axonal fibers is unknown, there is abundant evidence from animal studies that MA exposure causes both acute disintegration and more chronic fragmentation in the WM fibers of frontal, parietal and temporal cortices, as well as in the hippocampus and cingulum bundle (Zhou and Bledsoe 1996).

One of the first studies to apply DTI to the study of MA abuse reported lower FA within frontal regions of 32 MA abusers (Chung et al. 2007). These changes in WM microstructure were observed bilaterally at the level of the AC-PC plane but not in the posterior regions of the parietal and occipital cortices. Furthermore, extended analyses of gender differences revealed that these WM group differences were accounted for by the male MA abusers. A pair of recent DTI studies focused on the examination of the CC in long-term MA abusers. One study examined WM microstructure in 37 abstinent MA abusers and found differences in FA values within the genu of the CC but not in the splenium (Salo et al. 2009a). Another study also reported abnormal changes in the genu of the CC and further reported that the tensor values observed suggest that altered myelination may be one probable source of the abnormal FA values in the MA group (Kim et al. 2009a) (Fig. 6).

A later DTI study of 30 abstinent MA abusers examined both WM diffusion as well as fiber orientation within the CC, frontal WM, basal ganglia and the cerebellum (Alicata et al. 2009). In contrast to the other DTI studies reviewed above, no differences in FA values were observed in the CC but reductions in FA values were observed in the frontal WM of the MA abusers. In addition to the FA group differences, increased diffusivity was also observed in the striatum of the MA group (caudate and putamen). The authors suggest that this pattern of increased diffusivity within the striatum may reflect a neuroinflammatory response consistent with other imaging studies that have reported increased striatal volume following

MA abuse (Chang et al. 2007). The most recent DTI study of MA abusers examined WM changes in 23 MA abusers and 18 matched controls (Tobias et al.). This study revealed modest (3–12%) FA reductions in several regions, including right prefrontal WM above the AC–PC plane, bilateral midcaudal superior corona radiata, the genu of the CC, and the right perforant path adjacent to the hippocampus. The hippocampal findings were of interest due to previously published findings of structural abnormalities in the hippocampal region (Thompson et al. 2004). Furthermore, in many of these studies the degree of alteration to WM microstructure appears to be related to the duration of MA use and clinical symptoms which will be discussed in greater detail below.

4.2 DTI Findings and Drug Use Patterns

A subset of the DTI studies reviewed above correlated WM indices with drug use patterns (Alicata et al. 2009; Salo et al. 2009a). Although the study by Alicata et al. failed to detect a significant correlation between FA and drug use patterns, they did observe a positive correlation between cumulative drug usage (daily and lifetime) and ADC indices, a measure of diffusivity, within the putamen of MA abusers. Specifically, those MA abusers with the highest ADC values reported using the highest dosages of MA on both a daily basis and across lifetime. No correlations were reported between periods of drug abstinence and WM. In the Salo et al. study correlations were examined between DTI indices, years MA use and time abstinent. No significant correlations were observed (Salo et al. 2009a).

4.3 DTI Findings and Cognitive Function

A number of DTI studies have extended the imaging findings to examine relationships with behavior and cognition. Such an approach is critical to better understand how neural changes following long-term MA abuse can alter the way addicted individuals make decisions and in turn how these neural changes may promote the maladaptive behavior that sustains compulsive drug seeking behavior. Several of the DTI studies reviewed above collected concurrent data from a range of cognitive tasks and related the behavioral performance to the patterns of WM microstructure observed in their study. The first study to examine the relationship of FA values with cognitive performance administered the WCST, a task of frontal executive function (Chung et al. 2007). In this study lower FA values within frontal regions were found to correlate with worse performance on the WCST. A subsequent study also observed a negative correlation between WCST total error and FA in the genu region of the CC (Kim et al. 2009a) in a small group of abstinent MA abusers. There were no significant correlations between WCST total error and tensor measures, including FA in the splenium region of the CC.

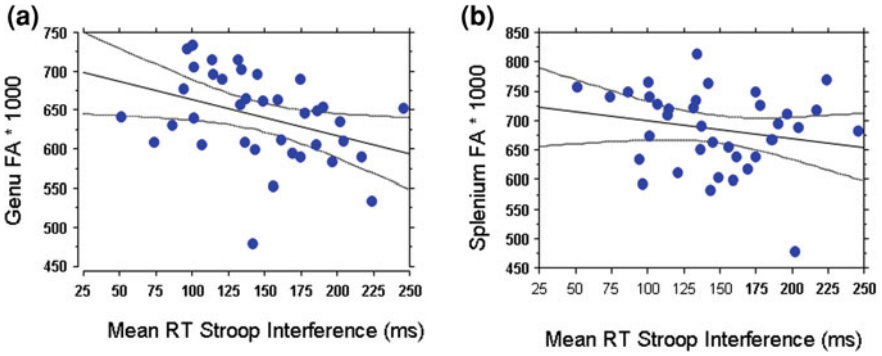


Fig. 7 Correlational scatterplots between millisecond (ms) reaction time (RT) stroop interference and fractional anisotropy (FA) 1,000 values in the (**a**) genu and (**b**) splenium of 37 methamphetamine (MA) abusers. (Reprinted from Salo et al. 2009a)

A later study administered a task of selective attention (Stroop Color Word Task) and found that even after correcting for multiple comparisons, FA within the genu correlated significantly with task performance in the MA abusers but not in controls. Since both the WCST and the Stroop task are known to engage the frontal cortex, this is strong evidence that the WM changes observed across both studies on medial and lateral frontal WM have functional correlates with behavior and cognition. A pair of recent DTI studies of cocaine abusers reported similar findings in that they observed significant correlations between FA in anterior WM and measures of impulsivity (Moeller et al. 2005; Lim et al. 2008) and suggest that the findings are applicable to a broader population of stimulant abusers. Furthermore, the observed correlations with WM connectivity in the MA abusers suggest that neural connections that are vital to top-down cognitive processes such as decision making are disrupted following long-term MA use (Fig. 7).

One possible reason for this correlation with anterior structures is the connectivity pattern of the genu itself. The fibers that cross through the genu connect right and left regions of the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (PFC), an area with strong interconnections to the ACC (Pandya and Seltzer 1986). Both the ACC and the dorsolateral PFC are thought to mediate top-down cognitive control. Another possibility for the correlation with the genu may be that axons within the genu are usually thinner in diameter and less myelinated than those in the splenium and thus may be more susceptible to damage following long-term drug abuse (LaMantia and Rakic 1990; Aboitiz et al. 1996). In contrast, the fibers that cross through the splenium connect regions within visual association areas (Rockland and Pandya 1986), regions that are certainly involved in the execution of any visual selection task, but may not be recruited heavily by demanding tasks of behavioral control, such as the WCST and the Stroop task.

4.4 DTI Findings and Clinical Symptoms

Although there have been several DTI studies that examined the relationship between WM changes and cognition, few have correlated WM microstructural changes with the clinical and psychiatric symptoms associated with long-term MA abuse. The DTI study by Tobias et al. made an important contribution to the addiction literature by examining the relationship between clinical symptoms and WM microstructure (Tobias et al. 2010). Among the 23 MA abusers studied, the left midcaudal superior corona radiata FA values correlated positively with measures of depression, as well as a subset of general psychiatric positive symptoms (i.e., depression, paranoia). The results seem somewhat counterintuitive in that increased FA values, which generally mean healthy WM, would correlate with increased symptoms of clinical depression and psychotic symptomatology. The authors suggest that subjects with intact WM (i.e., higher FA) may be more aware of their illness and thus endorse symptoms to a greater degree.

4.4.1 Summary

Collectively the rather small body of DTI studies reviewed above points to a consistent picture of WM damage within frontal regions of the brain with relative sparing of posterior regions. Furthermore, in many of these studies the degree of alteration to WM microstructure appears to be related to the changes in executive cognitive function, duration of MA use and clinical symptoms.

5 Functional MRI

Although structural MRI has been a useful tool in pinpointing gross anatomical changes associated with a variety of clinical disorders and typical development, fMRI has allowed researchers to map differing cognitive constructs to specific brain regions in awake, performing humans. fMRI is a relatively new technology, which researchers began to use in the late 90 s to illuminate the neural correlates underlying different psychological constructs of the brain. Its potential to move the field of psychology and neuroscience forward soon became apparent. Not only does fMRI have excellent spatial resolution but it provides researchers a window into the brain as subjects actively perform cognitive tasks. As no harmful effects of fMRI have thus far been revealed, it is an ideal technique for repeated use on the same participant (e.g., in longitudinal studies or within-subject experimental designs). The use of fMRI technology has revealed impairments in a wide range of cognitive domains linked to addiction in general and specifically MA dependence.

Neuronal firing in the brain requires energy and the brain's response to this energy expenditure is to increase local blood flow to that anatomical region. The ratio of oxyhemoglobin to deoxyhemoglobin changes in that region of the brain

and fMRI utilizes the blood-oxygen-level dependence (BOLD) signal, the MRI contrast of blood deoxyhemoglobin, as an indirect measure of neuronal firing in the brain. Therefore the BOLD signal associated with certain cognitive activities can be measured and localized with very good spatial resolution to certain brain regions, as described above for structural MRI. In studies of brain activation, changes in the oxygenation of the hemoglobin are associated with external stimuli or cognitive challenge. It appears that hemoglobin changes between diamagnetic and paramagnetic states are a result of a relative change in oxygen extraction during sensory or cognitive challenge.

The hemodynamic response measured by fMRI is a relatively slow signal, taking about 4–5 s to peak and about 15–20 s in total to rise and fall. This can vary across brain regions and according to particular constructs under investigation. One consideration, which sets fMRI aside from other techniques such as PET, is the fact that there is no implicit baseline. This makes paradigm design a particularly important consideration for fMRI research. Early fMRI studies utilized a block design whereby many events of interest were presented in succession to create a large change in the BOLD signal, which was contrasted against a baseline such as rest, or were measured above a baseline of similar task activity minus the event of interest.

More recent techniques allow for event-related analyses, which allow changes in BOLD signal associated with discrete events of interest to be isolated from on-going task-related activity. However the relatively poor temporal resolution of the hemodynamic response functions remains a limiting factor with regard to separating psychological constructs, which are temporally proximal. At the current time there have been relatively few fMRI studies on MA dependence from a small number of laboratories. Some research groups have focused on cognitive control processes, others on emotion regulation and other on the interplay between systems responding to reward and those involved in control processes.

5.1 fMRI Studies of Methamphetamine (MA) Abuse

5.1.1 Decision Making and Cognitive Control

The earliest fMRI studies of MA dependence come from Paulus and colleagues (Paulus et al. 2003, 2005). This group used fMRI techniques to investigate the neural correlates of decision making in MA-dependent individuals. Understanding decision making in addiction is crucial to understanding the mechanisms by which individuals appear to make poor choices, which can lead to long-term substance abuse and dependence. The same two-choice prediction task has been used throughout these studies to investigate the neural correlates of decision making in MA addiction (Paulus et al. 2002, 2003, 2005, 2008). This task assesses the capacity to make decisions under situations of uncertain outcomes with only 50% of the responses to be reinforced with a correct response outcome. The behavioral

data from these studies consistently report that MA users are more influenced by more immediate or recent success or failure. In contrast, the controls may be more inclined to tailor their response strategy to ongoing outcomes subsequent to choices. The authors conclude that there is a strong stimulus–response association in MA users that is consistent with a dominance of habit-based learning (Paulus et al. 2003, 2005).

The imaging data from these studies showed that functional activity associated with the prediction task was greater in controls in right inferior frontal gyrus (BA 44) and left medial frontal gyrus (BA46) compared to the MA abusers (Paulus et al. 2002). In general, although controls tended to activate left MFG (BA 9/10), bilateral medial frontal gyrus (BA 10) and right OFC (BA 11) to the prediction task over the control condition, the MA users did not display any change in activity in BA 9/10. In fact, subjects with MA dependence displayed a decrease in activity in bilateral dorsolateral PFC and right orbitofrontal (OFC) in the active compared to control condition. Thus, the MA users displayed a lack of task-specific activity for this paradigm. Lastly, less activity in left insula (BA 13) and more activity in right midfrontal gyrus (BA 9) predicted more instances of decisions that were directly influenced by immediately preceding failures in MA users (Paulus et al. 2002).

In a follow-up to their 2002 study, Paulus and colleagues examined functional activity during a similar paradigm in 14 male MA abusers compared with 14 controls (Paulus et al. 2003). MA-dependent subjects were abstinent for an average of 25 days (range 6–46 days). Controls displayed success-related patterns of neural activation in OFC, dorsolateral PFC and parietal cortex. In contrast, independent of whether or not they were successful, MA users displayed less task-related activity in OFC (BA 10), dorsolateral PFC (BA 9), ACC (BA 32) and parietal cortex (BA 7). MA-dependent subjects also displayed less task-related activity in bilateral parietal cortex (BA 7/19), left post-central gyrus (BA 5) and left superior temporal gyrus (BA 39). Both MA-dependent and control participants displayed more task-related activation in the right insula (BA 13), right inferior frontal (BA 44, 45), right middle frontal gyrus (BA 9) at low error rates and least activity when the outcome was most unpredictable (i.e., 50% error rate). However, MA dependent subjects displayed different patterns of neural activity to different error rates compared to controls in a number of regions including in the left insula (BA 13), inferior frontal gyrus (BA 46), middle frontal gyrus (BA 10), precuenus (BA 7) and inferior parietal lobe (BA 40). The authors concluded that although controls activate regions more when they are successful, MA users activate more when the situation is unpredictable.

In a more recent fMRI study, the same group investigated whether functional activation during their two-choice prediction paradigm in users in early remission (3 to 4 weeks abstinent) would predict relapse in 40 MA users (Paulus et al. 2005). Participants underwent fMRI during early remission and were contacted approximately 1 year later for a follow-up interview (median interval to follow-up interview 370 days). Investigators established that 18 of the 40 participants had relapsed and 22 had not. Imaging results revealed that those Individuals who had not relapsed displayed more activity in the right hemisphere in the insula (BA 13), inferior parietal lobe (BA 40) middle temporal gyrus (BA 22), middle occipital

gyrus (BA 19), dorsolateral PFC (BA 6), posterior cingulate (BA 23), inferior frontal gyrus (BA 45), in the left caudate/putamen as well as the cingulate gyrus (BA 32) compared to those participants who had relapsed. Furthermore, activation in the right insula, right posterior cingulate and right middle temporal gyrus best differentiated between those individuals who had relapsed and those who had not. Cross validation techniques were correctly able to predict 19 out of the 22 individuals who did not relapse and predicted 17 out of 18 who relapsed (94% sensitivity; 86% specificity). Time to relapse was best predicted by activity in right midfrontal gyrus, right midtemporal gyrus and right posterior cingulate. This study is the first to date that has successfully used functional imaging data to predict risk for relapse in MA abusers. This study is of paramount importance, as it suggests that there may be cognitive and neural correlates which may identify individuals at greater risk for relapse and may be applicable to a broad range of addicted individuals.

One last study from the Paulus group examined response inhibition and the use of cues to prepare for an impending inhibitory event in 19 recently abstinent MA-dependent individuals (25–50 days) compared to 19 controls (Leland et al. 2008). The authors used a GO/NOGO paradigm with four different stimulus classes, one representing the NOGO event and three representing GO events. One class of the GO stimuli acted as a fairly accurate (87%) predictor of a NOGO stimulus while another class never preceded a NOGO. In the MA abusers the false alarm rate was lower following a cue compared to an uncued NOGO, which was not the case in controls. The authors suggested that the controls did not overtly benefit from the cue because they were already performing well on the task whereas the MA subjects may have an impaired inhibitory system. The imaging data revealed that the MA group had greater cue-related activity in the ventral and dorsal ACC compared to controls. Furthermore, more activity in the ventral ACC was associated with fewer false alarms to following cues.

fMRI techniques have also been employed to examine behavioral regulation and cognitive control processes linked to addiction and MA dependence. Salo et al. utilized a modified Stroop color-word selective attention paradigm to examine how MA abusers adjusted both their reaction time (RT) and accuracy to an experimental event based on previous events or trials (Kerns et al. 2004; Salo et al. 2009c). In this single trial version of the Stroop task trial-to-trial adjustments were measured by comparing RT to conflict trials (i.e., trials in which the word and font color were incongruent) preceded by conflict trials and RT to conflict trials preceded by non-conflict trials (i.e., trials in which the word and font color matched). While controls tended to speed their RT following a conflict trial (consistent with the literature on conflict processing), the MA abusers did not (Kerns et al. 2004). In fact, the MA abusers exhibited no trial-to-trial adjustment and performed as if the previous trial event had not entered their awareness. In other words the MA abusers did not utilize a previous exposure to an event to modify their behavior. This difference in trial-to-trial RT adjustments was found in the absence of mean error rates or general RT differences between groups. Of great importance are the imaging results linked to the trial-to-trial behavioral adjustments. While controls

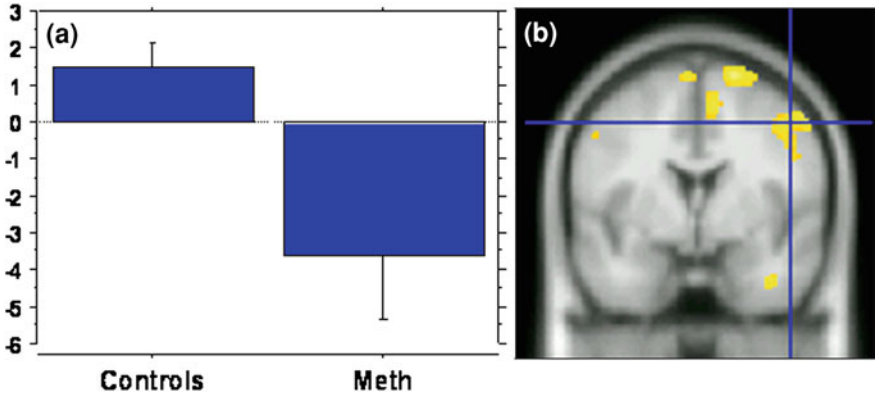


Fig. 8 **b** Dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (DLPFC) region showing increased activity related to trial to trial adjustments in control subjects relative to methamphetamine (MA) abusers. **a** Graph of the average coefficients for the trial-to-trial adjustment statistical contrast in the two groups, averaged within group for the voxels of the DLPFC activation shown. (Reprinted from Salo et al. 2009c)

displayed increased activity in right PFC following conflict trials (consistent with engagement of top-down control) the MA abusers failed to engage the same region (Salo et al. 2009c). These findings have since been replicated in a larger group of MA abusers and controls (Fig. 8).

5.1.2 Emotion Regulation

A number of studies have examined social and emotional processes in MA-dependent subjects. Kim et al. examined empathy processing in 19 abstinent MA users compared to 19 controls (Kim et al. 2011). The authors used cartoons to depict two categories of stories, empathy and physical causality. The empathy condition required subjects to empathize with the character's situation and imagine their emotional state whereas the physical condition required subjects to imagine physical events alone. MA users scored worse than controls on both the empathy and physical conditions. The imaging results revealed that the MA users displayed hypoactivity in OFC, temporal poles and hippocampus, with hyperactivity observed in the dorsolateral PFC. This pattern of activity did not correlate with task performance. The authors concluded that the dorsolateral PFC may have been recruited in MA subjects more than controls due to both compromised OFC functioning, as well as impairments in empathetic processing. Medial frontal cortex, including OFC, has been implicated in processing emotional expressions, and thus may be critical to the experience of empathy.

Payer et al. used fMRI and a facial affect-matching task to evaluate emotion regulation in 12 MA-dependent subjects in very early stages of drug abstinence

(5–16 days) (Payer et al. 2008). Subjects were required to match either emotional facial expressions (active condition) or irregular shapes (control condition). Both MA-dependent subjects and controls activated a similar network of regions to emotional facial expressions including amygdala, ventrolateral and dorsolateral PFC, precentral frontal cortex, parietal cortex and occipital regions. Although no group differences were observed in task performance, the MA group displayed right-hemisphere hypoactivity within ventrolateral PFC, temperoparietal junction, inferior temporal gyrus, middle temporal and fusiform gyri as well as in the left cuneus. In contrast, the dorsal ACC, which has been referred to as the cognitive region of the ACC, was more active in the MA group. As noted above Leland et al. also observed ACC hyperactivity in their GO/NOGO paradigm (Leland et al. 2008), although Paulus et al. found hypoactivity in cingulate suggesting that patterns of activity in this region may be task-dependent (Paulus et al. 2003). ROI analysis focusing on the amygdala revealed that although there was a trend toward amygdala hypoactivity in the MA abusers compared to the controls, it failed to reach significance.

Recently, Payer et al. conducted a second fMRI study using a paradigm examining facial affect in 25 MA users compared to 23 controls (Payer et al. 2011). The authors hypothesized that the MA abusers would be impaired in emotion regulation. Although all participants displayed similar patterns of activation in regions including bilateral amygdala and inferior frontal gyrus during face processing, group differences were observed in bilateral ventral inferior frontal gyrus during visual processing of facial affect. During affect labeling all subjects engaged dorsal inferior frontal gyrus but the MA group displayed hypoactivity within the amygdala. The authors carried out an analysis to investigate whether any potential differences in GM volume were influencing the between-group differences in brain activity. Although VBM analysis revealed lower GM volumes in the MA group, this did not appear to significantly influence group differences in functional activity. The authors also carried out ROI analyses focusing on the amygdala to further investigate any potential group differences and failed to find any significant functional or structural differences. And finally, Payer et al. tested functional connectivity between inferior frontal gyrus and amygdala in both groups (Payer et al. 2011). As predicted there was an increase in connectivity between these regions during affect labeling, particularly in the right hemisphere; however, no between-group differences were observed. The authors concluded that, contrary to their hypothesis, MA users were successful in emotional regulation. They suggested that hypoactivity in ventral inferior frontal gyrus may reflect limited emotional insight, which may ultimately lead to heightened aggression in the MA abusing group.

5.1.3 Reward Processing

Other studies have investigated temporal discounting in individuals with MA dependence. Temporal discounting refers to the tendency for distant rewards to be less preferred over immediate rewards. Temporal discounting is usually investigated with the delay discounting (DD) paradigm, which presents individuals with

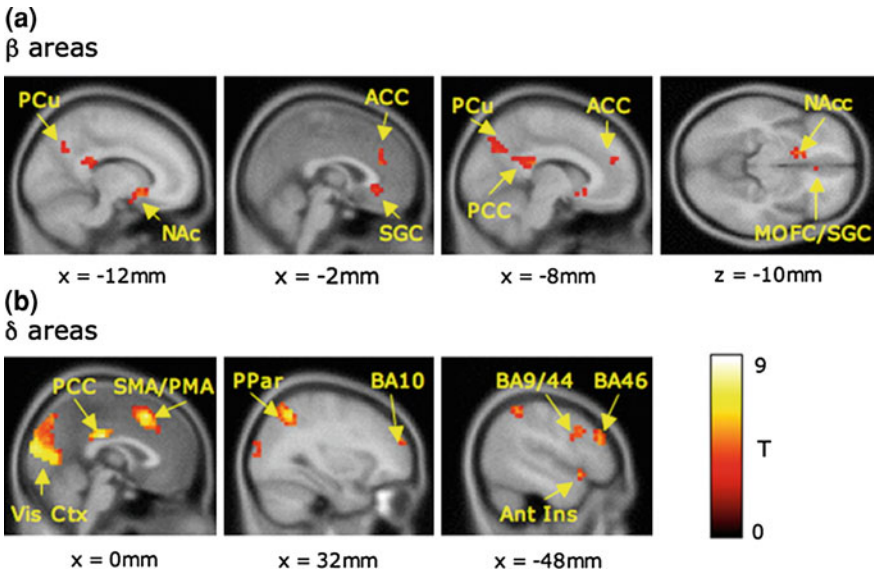


Fig. 9 **a** Brain areas that are preferentially activated by choices involving a reward available at a 0 min delay. **b** Brain areas that are activated by all intertemporal choices. (Reprinted from McClure et al. 2007)

choices between immediate small rewards and delayed larger rewards. An individual's reward-related impulsivity can then be measured and compared to their peers. It has been hypothesized that there are two separate neural systems that regulate this type of decision making process; the cognitive system, including dorsolateral PFC and parietal cortex, which is involved in cognitive control and deliberative processes and the limbic system, that responds more to immediate rewards and can be described as being the "impatient" system (McClure et al. 2004a, b). These two systems are an integral part of everyday decision making processes and are thought to be dysfunctional in addicted individuals (Fig. 9).

Monterosso et al. examined brain activity during a DD paradigm in 12 non treatment-seeking MA abusers and 17 control participants (Monterosso et al. 2007). Control subjects were predominantly smokers due to the high rate of smokers in the MA group. The authors administered the Wender Utah Rating Scale (WURS) to exclude those subjects suspected to have childhood Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity disorder. Behavioral data revealed that MA-dependent subjects were more impulsive in their reward choice than controls. Areas of activity during the DD task included ventrolateral and dorsolateral PFC, parietal lobe and ACC. Although there were no regions that were significantly more active in the MA compared to the control group, control subjects activated the left dorsolateral PFC and right inferior parietal sulcus to a greater degree than MA-dependent subjects during difficult decisions. Furthermore, although activity in the control group was minimal in the aforementioned regions during easy decisions and

increased substantially during difficult decisions, activity in the MA group did not differ between easy and difficult decisions. Greater activity in the left ventrolateral PFC in all participants was related to a decrease in impulsivity in choosing between small immediate and large delayed rewards.

Hoffman et al. also compared activity during a DD task in 19 MA-dependent subjects compared to 17 drug-free controls (Hoffman et al. 2008). As previous studies in MA abusers have shown an increase in sensitivity to immediate rewards over larger delayed rewards (Monterosso et al. 2007), Hoffman et al. hypothesized impairments in the cognitive circuit and increased activity in the affective circuit thought to mediate selection of small immediate versus large delayed rewards (Hoffman et al. 2008). Contrasting difficult versus easy choices on the DD task resulted in 11 clusters of activity including right insula, dorsal ACC, medial superior frontal gyrus, posterior cingulate, ventrolateral and dorsolateral PFC and regions of parietal cortex. The data revealed that MA users made more impulsive decisions than controls and displayed hypoactivity in bilateral precuneus, right caudate, ACC and dorsolateral PFC compared to controls. Neither Monterosso nor Hoffman located any significant activity in OFC or ventral striatum during their delay discounting paradigms. This may have been due to susceptibility artifacts, which make imaging of these regions difficult. Monterosso and colleagues have suggested that the utilization of hypothetical rewards were not sufficient to recruit limbic areas (Monterosso et al. 2007).

5.2 fMRI Findings and Drug Use Patterns

Relatively few fMRI studies have linked the imaging findings to patterns of drug use. One important study used the patterns of brain activation observed in the MA abusers to predict patterns of relapse (Paulus et al. 2005). In this seminal imaging study, Paulus and colleagues found that higher levels of activity in left midfrontal gyrus and less in left superior temporal gyrus (BA 38) predicted longer period of abstinence. Longer duration of MA abuse correlated with more activity in OFC. Paulus et al. also found that more activity in left middle frontal gyrus (BA 6) and less activity in left superior temporal gyrus (BA 38) correlated with longer periods of sobriety in MA-dependent subjects. Furthermore, subjects with a larger decrease on orbitofrontal activity had a longer history of MA abuse (Paulus et al. 2002). In their 2003 study, Paulus et al. found that duration of MA use predicted differences between groups in left midfrontal gyrus (BA9), ACC (BA32) and left precuneus. Duration of sobriety was associated with more activity in left medial frontal gyrus (8) (Paulus et al. 2003).

5.3 fMRI findings and Cognitive Function

As the strength of fMRI lies in part in its ability to measure cognitive processes online during scan acquisition, it is somewhat redundant to discuss the cognitive findings in any detail here as they have already been discussed above.

5.3.1 fMRI Findings and Clinical Symptoms

Payer and colleagues examined the relationship between scores on the Symptom Checklist 90 (SCL-90-R; Derogatis et al. 1973), the Brief Symptom Inventory (BSI; Derogatis and Melisaratos 1983) both of which assess self-reports of psychological symptoms experienced in the past 7 (SCL) or 30 (BSI) days (Payer et al. 2008). The authors found that higher dorsal ACC activity related to higher scores on the Hostility and Interpersonal Sensitivity subscales of both the SCL-90 and the BSI. The authors also found a non-significant trend ($p = 0.09$) towards high self-reports of interpersonal sensitivity being associated with lower activity in right ventrolateral PFC; however the authors pointed out that the combination of a relatively small sample size in addition to a non-significant trend suggest that the results should be interpreted with caution (Payer et al. 2008). In a later study this group also found that a reduction in amygdala activity during affect labeling was associated with increases in perpetrated aggression in controls and participants with MA dependence (Payer et al. 2011). The authors suggest that these findings may suggest impairment in socio-emotional regulation, perhaps related to socially maladaptive behaviors exhibited.

5.3.2 Summary

In summary the body of fMRI studies conducted in MA abusers have painted a picture of disrupted behavioral regulation and abnormal decision making processes that are linked to differential recruitment of frontal brain regions (Paulus et al. 2002, 2003, 2005; Leland et al. 2008; Salo et al. 2009c). Furthermore additional studies have identified changes in BOLD activity among MA abusers while performing tasks that measure reward processing and delay of gratification (Monterosso et al. 2007; Hoffman et al. 2008). Finally there has emerged a recent fMRI literature that has examined the neural substrates of emotion regulation in MA abusers (Payer et al. 2008, 2011). Thus the body of fMRI studies reviewed here is very consistent with the MRS findings and suggests that MA targets the dopaminergic rich frontostriatal regions to a greater degree compared to posterior cortices.

6 Positron Emission Tomography

Positron Emission Tomography (PET) has evolved significantly over the past quarter of a century. PET provides physiological information about the tissue being sampled. via the detection of paired 511-KeV photons that are emitted by radioactive decay. By detecting the simultaneous arrival of these photons at crystal sensors, the electronics determine the line path (chord) on which the isotope existed at the time that the radioactive decay occurred. The PET study requires (1)

a PET camera with sensors that pick up (simultaneous) pairs of photons emanating from tissue being sampled, (2) a compound labeled with a positron emitter, and (3) a compartmental model characterizing relevant physiological processes that the radiolabeled compound undergoes. Positron emitters release a positron when a proton is converted to a neutron. This released positron then annihilates an electron resulting in the emission of two gamma ray photons at a 180°eccentricity to each other. Numerous elements have positron-emitting isotopes including several commonly found in biological molecules—for example fluorine-18 [F-18], carbon-11 [C-11], oxygen-15 [O-15], and nitrogen-13 [N-13]. The acquired imaging data as well as the compartmental model are then utilized to obtain the physiological rates of the biological processes being sampled. The application of PET to the study of addictive disorders includes the imaging of neuroreceptors, neurotransmitter kinetics, transporters, blood flow and measurement of regional glucose metabolism

6.1 PET Imaging Studies of Methamphetamine (MA) Abuse

PET can be used to examine dopaminergic functioning including dopamine receptor binding and dopamine transporter (DAT) functioning), serotonergic functioning and glucose metabolism in individuals who abuse MA. Animal studies suggest that MA produces profound damage to dopamine (Preston et al. 1985) and serotonin cells (Ricaurte et al. 1980, 1994). Studies in mice have shown that given acutely, MA increases dopamine levels in the synaptic cleft, mainly through the inhibition of the DAT (Giros et al. 1996). However, it may be ill advised to over-extend the results from animal studies to humans as MA-induced neuronal damage has been shown to vary across species (Kita et al. 2003).

One of the earliest PET studies of human MA abusers was a postmortem study of 11 control subjects and 12 individuals with a history of MA abuse. This study revealed a reduction in DAT density following chronic MA abuse (Wilson et al. 1996). Following studies attempted to replicate the finding of a reduction in DAT density in living human subjects with MA dependence. McCann and colleagues found a reduction in DAT density in the caudate (23% less) and the putamen (25% less) of MA abusers compared to control subjects (McCann et al. 1998). However the participants with a history of MA abuse in this study were poly-drug users, also having heavily used methcathinone in addition to MA. Following this study, a number of others also found striatal reductions in DAT in MA abusers (Volkow et al. 2001b, 2001d; Moszczynska et al. 2004; McCann et al. 2008). More widespread decreases in DAT density and binding potential have been found in PFC, caudate/putamen and nucleus accumbens (NAc) in other studies (Iyo et al. 1993; Sekine et al. 2001)

Using a combined imaging approach that applied MRS, SPECT and PET Iyo et al. examined metabolic and neurochemical changes in 11 MA abusers and nine non-substance abusing controls (Iyo et al. 2004). No significant differences were

observed between the MA abusers and controls in the density of striatal dopamine D2 receptors, however the density of DAT in the NAc and caudate/putamen in the MA group was significantly less compared with the controls. Furthermore, this reduction was significantly correlated with the length of MA use and severity of psychotic symptoms which will be discussed in greater detail below. Thus, findings in DAT reduction in MA abusers are relatively consistent, despite differing methodologies and subject characteristics across the different studies.

A significant body of research has reported severe dopamine depletion in the brains of chronic MA abusers. One study of autopsied brains of twenty chronic MA users detected severe dopamine reductions in the caudate of the MA abusers with six of the subjects having 70% dopamine depletion in the caudate compared to healthy controls (Moszczynska et al. 2004). The MA abusers also had significant dopamine reduction in the putamen. The authors compared MA brains to brains of Parkinson's (PD) patients. PD patients tended to have a marked decrease in dopamine in the putamen rather than the caudate (i.e., the opposite pattern from the MA abusers). Furthermore dopamine depletion in the MA abusers was comparable to PD reduction in the caudate but not in the putamen. The authors suggested that this may explain the range of cognitive impairments observed in MA abusers but with a lack of PD symptoms. PET can also assess the distribution of MA throughout the body and brain. A very recent study measured the distribution of MA within various organs of the human body, including the brain and concluded that MA was distributed widely through most organs in the body; with the highest levels of uptake occurring in the lungs, liver and brain with clearance being the slowest from the brain, liver and stomach (over 75 min) (Volkow et al. 2010).

Striatal reductions in dopamine D2 receptors have also been found in MA abusers (Sonsalla et al. 1986; Iyo et al. 1993; Volkow et al. 2001a). An early PET study used the radiotracer 11C-N-methylspiperone to assess the role of dopamine D2 receptors in the striatum of six male MA abusers and ten age- and sex-matched control subjects. Although striatal D2 binding did not differ between groups, the ratio of binding availability in the striatum was related to the psychotic symptoms exhibited in the MA group. These findings will be discussed in greater detail below. D2 receptor availability was also associated with metabolic rate in the OFC (Volkow et al. 2001a), a region associated with impulse control (Sellitto et al. 2010; Damasio 1996). This correlation between D2 receptor availability and OFC metabolism is of interest as it has been reported that short-term exposure to stimulants can disrupt OFC functioning and negatively effect behaviors thought to be subserved by this region (Olausson et al. 2007). The association between D2 receptor availability and OFC metabolic rate was interpreted as potentially contributing to the compulsive nature of drug taking in addicted individuals (Volkow et al. 2001a). However changes in dopamine D2 receptor density were not observed in the striatum of MA abusers who were at least 2 months clean (Volkow et al. 2001b).

The vesicular monoamine transporter (VMAT2) has been identified as a marker of nigrostriatal dopamine neuron integrity in humans (in vivo (Frey et al. 1997; Lee et al. 2000; Boileau et al. 2008) and postmortem (Wilson et al. 1996)) as well

as in animals (Vander Borght et al. 1995; Strome et al. 2006; Sossi et al. 2007). PET studies have utilized (+)[^{11}C]dihydrotetrabenzanine (DTBZ), a VMAT2 PET radioligand, as a marker of dopamine integrity. The use of VMAT2 as a marker of dopamine integrity in PET studies has yielded conflicting results. Wilson et al. found normal VMAT2 levels in the brains of their MA-abusing subjects in their postmortem study despite a finding of reductions in DAT in this group (Wilson et al. 1996). However, it should be noted that this post-mortem brain study included a limited sample size and it is difficult to translate postmortem data to the in vivo scenario. In contrast, a recent study discovered a small, 10% decrease in VMAT2 binding in the striatum of MA abusers who were, on average, three years abstinent (Johanson et al. 2006). An average of three years is a relatively long period of abstinence thus it is possible that there was recovery of dopaminergic function during this time period.

Members of Wilson's group published an additional study measuring dopamine integrity in subjects with MA dependence, this time in vivo (Boileau et al. 2008). In this study, the authors used active MA users as they wished to investigate whether greater decreases in VMAT2 binding would occur compared to the Johanson et al. study mentioned above. The results from their study, however, suggested that VMAT2 might not, in fact, be a reliable marker of dopamine neuronal integrity in PET studies. Contrary to their hypothesis, Boileau et al. found an *increase* in VMAT2 binding in the putamen and head of the caudate in comparison to controls (Boileau et al. 2008). This was particularly pronounced in subjects who had presented with a positive drug screen on the day of the scan and reported having used from 1.5 to 3 days previously. The effect of an increase in VMAT2 in MA abusing participants decreased with time abstinent; in fact VMAT2 binding failed to differ significantly from controls following a period of 7 to 21 days abstinent and subjects who were abstinent for over 30 days were only slightly elevated (9% in the caudate and 4% in the putamen) in comparison to controls. These authors also used an additional control group, which consisted of PD patients. As expected, these PD patients displayed lower VMAT2 in these brain regions when compared to control subjects. The authors suggested that VMAT2 (at low radiotracer concentration as present in PET studies) might be influenced by changes in vesicular dopamine levels (de la Fuente-Fernandez et al. 2009). They argued that administration of MA, which is a powerful dopaminergic drug, would decrease vesicular dopamine and that this would be reflected by increased VMAT2 binding. Thus failure to find a difference in striatal (+)[^{11}C]DTBZ binding between MA abusers and controls may not necessarily indicate preservation of striatal dopamine innervations. In a follow-up to their 2008 study, Boileau and colleagues investigated whether acute MA administration would cause increased VMAT2 binding in the striatum in healthy non-substance using controls (Boileau et al. 2010). Boileau et al. scanned nine subjects pre, 2 h post and in five subjects 24 h post administration of a low dose of MA. The authors failed to find increased striatal VMAT2 binding which they suggested may be due to the low dose administered to their non drug-using cohort. They suggested that a low dose of MA may have stimulated a compensatory increase in

dopamine synthesis which might have replenished vesicles. Thus, the PET literature on MA abuse in humans using VMAT2 binding dopamine neuronal integrity is, as yet, unresolved.

To the best of our knowledge, only two studies have utilized PET to study the effect of long-term MA use on the serotonergic system in humans (Iyo et al. 1993; Sekine et al. 2006). Iyo et al. scanned six male MA abusers, all who had previously experienced MA-induced psychosis and ten male controls (Iyo et al. 1993). In addition, as discussed above D2 receptor binding was also measured in the striatum of the same subjects. The authors did not report group differences in receptor binding in striatal and frontal cortices, however the ratio of binding availability in the striatum was significantly decreased compared to that in the frontal cortex of the MA abusers. The authors conclude that this reduction may represent an imbalance in the activity of the D2 and serotonin receptors. Furthermore as all ten MA abusers reported a history of MA-induced psychosis, this imbalance may be related to the susceptibility to MA psychosis. A later study of long-term MA abuse on the serotonergic system compared 12 currently abstinent MA abusers (mean period of abstinence 1.6 years) to healthy controls. The authors described their subjects as being recreational users with no history of particularly heavy MA use. They used [11C]McN-5652, which has a binding specificity to pre-synaptic serotonin transporter (SERT) to examine changes in the serotonergic system of MA abusers. The authors found decreased SERT density in all ten regions of interest studied, namely, midbrain, thalamus, caudate nucleus, putamen, amygdala, ACC, dorsolateral PFC, OFC and cerebellar cortex.

A number of studies have measured glucose metabolism in MA abusers. Volkow and colleagues used [18F] fluorodeoxyglucose to examine brain metabolism in fifteen MA abusers (2 weeks to almost 3 years abstinent) compared to 21 controls (Volkow et al. 2001c). They found a 14% increase in whole brain metabolism in MA abusers, in particular in parietal cortex (20% increase). Following normalization for whole brain metabolism, the MA abusers displayed decreased metabolism in the thalamus, striatum (larger in the caudate [12%] than the putamen [6%]) and the increase in parietal cortex remained significant. The authors interpreted the increase in parietal metabolism to be related to inflammation and gliosis brought about by MA-induced brain damage. The authors cite animal studies that find gliosis in response to MA administration as support for their theory (Sheng et al. 1994; Escubedo et al. 1998).

London and colleagues measured glucose metabolism using [18F] PET in 17 female MA-abusers who were in early abstinence (4–7 days) compared to 18 female controls (London et al. 2004). Reduced metabolism within the ACC and insula was reported along with concomitant increases in the OFC, mid and posterior cingulate, amygdala, ventral striatum and cerebellum (London et al. 2004, 2005) These are the same brain regions in which reduced DAT density has been observed following long-term MA exposure (Volkow et al. 2001d; Sekine et al. 2003). Another study of glucose metabolism imaged male MA abusers in early abstinence (i.e., 21 days) in a resting state PET study (Kim et al. 2009b). They also found evidence of left inferior frontal hypometabolism in MA abusers compared to controls, close to Brodmann area 9 in dorsolateral PFC.

6.2 PET Findings and Drug Use Patterns

Measures of dopaminergic integrity (DAT binding and dopamine receptors), as well as metabolism ascertained through PET imaging have been correlated with patterns and severity of drug use (i.e., number of months using drug, months abstinent and general quantities of drug consumed). Sekine and colleagues found that DAT reductions in caudate/putamen and in NAc were associated with length of MA use, but not with duration of abstinence (Sekine et al. 2001). Volkow et al. also found a correlation between DAT density and years of MA use in the caudate but not the putamen (trend significant; $p = 0.08$) but again no correlation with abstinence duration nor with MA dosage. A pair of recent PET studies also failed to find any correlation between DAT binding potential and duration of abstinence (Johanson et al. 2006; McCann et al. 2008). In addition to PET studies of DAT binding and dopamine receptor density, investigations were also carried to determine whether a relationship between brain metabolism and drug patterns existed. Iyo et al. found that NAc metabolism correlated negatively with period of MA use but not with months abstinent (Iyo et al. 2004). Kim et al. found that cerebral glucose metabolism in left inferior frontal WM correlated negatively with total cumulative dose of MA (Kim et al. 2009b). In one study which examined serotonergic functioning in MA abusers, Sekine and colleagues found that decreased SERT density in the midbrain, thalamus, caudate, putamen and OFC correlated with longer of MA use; however, there was no correlation with time abstinent (from 6 months to 5 years) (Sekine et al. 2006).

Thus, in the studies reviewed thus far, there is some evidence for a decrease in DAT binding potential with increased time abusing MA, but remaining MA abstinent does not appear to have a major impact on DAT recovery. However there is one important longitudinal PET study of MA abusers that contradicts this conclusion (Volkow et al. 2001b). In this study the authors examined DAT reduction in the striatum of 5 MA abusers who were tested following a short abstinence period (less than six month abstinent) and then again following protracted abstinence (12–17 months). The authors found a substantial increase in DAT following a protracted abstinence period of one year and longer (Fig. 10).

A follow-up PET study of these participants that measured glucose metabolism revealed no differences in global metabolism between short versus long-term MA abstinence. Furthermore regional analyses revealed no differences in absolute metabolic measures within the striatum, thalamus, and occipital cortex. Relative changes were also assessed by using the regional values normalized by the global measures. The relative metabolic measures of the MA abusers were significantly lower after both short- and long-term abstinence in the striatum. In contrast, after extended periods of abstinence, relative thalamic activity did not differ from that of the control subjects (Wang et al. 2004). The authors suggest that the sustained reduction in metabolic activity in the striatum could underlie some of the long-lasting deficits reported in abstinent MA abusers. In a direct comparison of the 25 MA abusers, thalamic metabolism was lower in the 12 short-term abstinent MA

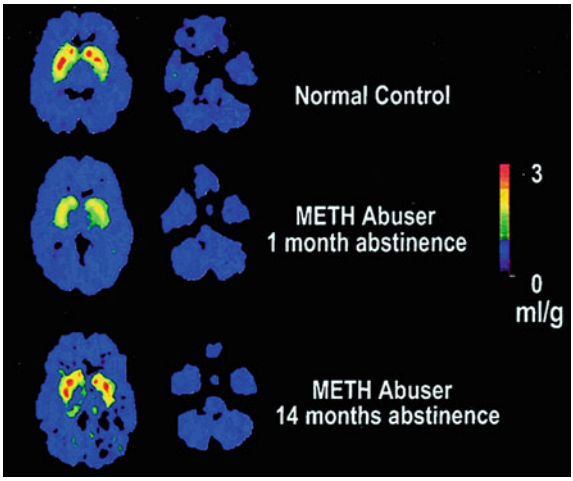


Fig. 10 Brain images of the distribution volume of [11C] *d-threo* methylphenidate in a control and a methamphetamine abuser evaluated twice, during short and protracted abstinence. Notice the significant increases in binding in striatum in the methamphetamine abuser with protracted abstinence. (Reprinted from Volkow et al. 2001b)

abusers compared to the 13 long-term abstinent MA abusers. Metabolism in the striatum did not differ between the two groups as a function of abstinence.

6.3 PET Findings and Cognitive Function

Many studies have assessed psychiatric symptoms and cognitive functioning (evaluated by a battery of cognitive tasks) in MA abusers in order to investigate whether the symptom severity or cognitive ability relate to PET findings. Volkow and colleagues administered a battery of motor and cognitive tasks to their participants who had abused MA (Volkow et al. 2001d). The motor tasks included the Timed Gait Task and Grooved Pegboard Task, the attentional tasks included the California Computerized Assessment Package, the Symbol Digit Modalities Test and the Stroop Interference. The Rey Auditory Verbal Learning Test was also administered to measure memory. The authors found that reductions of DAT in the striatum were associated with impairments in motor functioning (indicated by slowing on both motor tasks) and memory impairment, but not with any components of the administered attention tasks. Volkow et al. also found that higher parietal metabolism in MA abusers was associated with slowed motor performance on the grooved pegboard task and suggested that hyper metabolism in this region may also be linked to impairments in other cognitive functions, such as attention and visuospatial skills (Volkow et al. 2001d). McCann et al. found a negative correlation between DAT binding potential and memory assessed by the Wechsler Memory Scale-III (Wechsler 1981). In contrast to the Volkow study, no correlations were observed with motor impairment or measures of attention and executive control.

In a recent PET study that measured both DAT and VMAT2 within the striatum cognitive function was evaluated using tests of motor function, memory, learning,

attention and executive function (Johanson et al. 2006). The findings revealed that MA abusers exhibited performance deficits on only three of the 12 tasks. Failure to find more substantial changes in neurocognitive function may be attributed to the length of time that MA users were abstinent (ranging from 3 months to more than 10 years, mean 3 years).

6.4 PET Findings and Clinical Symptoms

Many studies have assessed psychiatric and clinical symptoms associated with long-term MA use. Clinical symptoms can be measured through psychiatric rating scales as well as questionnaires that measure drug related symptoms, such as craving. Such approaches can shed light on whether the severity of symptoms relates to changes in metabolic activity or dopamine transmission as measured by PET. Sekine et al. used the BPRS (Overall and Gorham 1962) to assess psychiatric symptoms in MA abusers who were at least 7 days abstinent. The authors discovered a negative relationship between DAT binding in the caudate/putamen and in the NAc with BPRS scores (Total and positive). There was no correlation between BPRS scores and DAT binding potential in the PFC. Iyo et al. replicated this finding in their PET study, determining that caudate/putamen and NAc (but not PFC) DAT binding potential correlated negatively with the positive symptom subscore of the BPRS while caudate/putamen binding only, correlated with the total BPRS score (Iyo et al. 2004). In addition to the correlations reported above, the severity of psychiatric symptoms often correlates with the duration of MA use (Sekine et al. 2001; Iyo et al. 2004). As may be expected, subjective craving also declines with increased amount of time abstinent from the drug (Sekine et al. 2001).

PET was used to assess the role of dopamine D2 receptors in the striatum and serotonin S2 receptors in the frontal cortex in the susceptibility to MA -induced psychosis. Subjects were six male MA abusers who had previously experienced MA psychosis and ten age- and sex-matched control subjects. The radiotracer used was 11C-N-methylspiperone. Although binding availability in the two regions did not differ between the two groups, the ratio of binding availability in the striatum to that in the frontal cortex significantly decreased in the MA subjects compared to the control subjects. These findings suggest that an imbalance in the activity of these two receptors may be related to the susceptibility to MA-induced psychosis (Iyo et al. 1993).

In a recent PET study self-reports of depression symptoms (as measured by the Beck Depression Inventory—BDI) correlated positively with glucose metabolism in the anterior cingulate and amygdala (London et al. 2004). The authors also reported that more recent MA use (measured by grams per week) was associated with greater levels of depression (measured by the BDI). Furthermore ratings of anxiety (measured by the State-Trait Anxiety Inventory) correlated negatively with activity in the anterior cingulate cortex, left insula, OFC and amygdala. The authors cited a study by Gur et al. to explain the negative correlation between

glucose metabolism in the insula and anxiety symptoms (Gur et al. 1987). In the Gur et al. study, the authors found an inverted U shape relationship between cortical blood flow and anxiety, such that cortical blood flow increased with anxiety in subjects with low levels of anxiety but that it decreased in those subjects with high anxiety (Gur et al. 1987). As the MA abusers in the London et al. study had a higher degree of anxiety symptoms, the authors suggest that the results in this study are consistent with being situated at the negative slope of the curvilinear function (p. 80). Sekine et al. found that rates of aggression (measured by the Aggression Questionnaire Scale) in MA abusers increased significantly with decreasing levels of SERT levels in most regions of interest studies; thalamus, caudate, putamen, anterior cingulate, OFC, temporal, cerebellar and dorsolateral cortex (Sekine et al. 2006). Whole brain statistical analysis supported this finding in OFC, ACC and temporal cortex.

7 Conclusion

There has been significant progress in our understanding of the human brain structure and function with imaging techniques. These advances in neuroimaging have greatly enhanced our knowledge of the neural correlates of addiction and allow scientists to relate these neural changes to patterns of drug use, drug abstinence and cognitive function. All of these approaches are critical to better understand the powerful effects that long-term substance abuse has on the human brain. Despite the powerful neurotoxic profile of MA (Davidson et al. 2001; Quinton and Yamamoto 2006), it appears that in some cases neuronal function does have the ability to recover following long-term MA use (Salo et al. 2011a; Volkow et al. 2001b; Wang et al. 2004; Nordahl et al. 2005; Kim et al. 2006; Ernst and Chang 2008; Salo et al. 2009b). This may be in part due to the fact that although MA is particularly damaging to the axonal processes, it may be that the cell body itself is relatively spared (Fowler et al. 2008). The findings that relate extended periods of drug sobriety to improvements in brain function have also been extended to measures of cognition (Simon et al. 2010; Salo et al. 2009b). Linking neuroimaging findings to behavior and clinical patterns of drug use is essential if there is to be a translational implementation of the science that occurs in the laboratory to the important clinical work that transpires in substance abuse centers. Improvements in MR have included not just enhanced resolution and contrast, but also brought forth new imaging techniques (i.e., MRS and DTI) both of which have clinical and research importance.

At the present time it is our position that imaging studies of an individual may not be diagnostic but rather their value lies in the ability to identify patterns of brain changes across groups with similar drug use characteristics. One of the challenges in measuring neural changes associated with long-term drug use is that one can never completely isolate the consequences of drug exposure on the brain from those that may predate the drug use itself. It is widely accepted that there

exists a genetic vulnerability to addiction and substance abuse. The combination of genetic and environmental influences is thought to contribute to 40–60% of the variability associated with the risk of addiction (Compton et al. 2005; Volkow 2005). However, even after the consideration of preexisting factors the majority of studies reviewed in this chapter point to significant consequences of the drug itself. The observed correlations between years use, dosage levels and recovery of neural chemistry and function following periods of sobriety suggest that observed brain changes are likely a synergistic effect between pre-existing factors and direct consequences of MA exposure. This complex interaction between risk factors and the direct effects of MA itself speaks to the need for more longitudinal imaging studies in substance abuse to track brain changes across periods of drug sobriety. Such studies will be of paramount importance to clinical treatment settings and will inform and guide future studies of substance abuse and addiction.

Acknowledgments We would like to thank Michael Buonocore, MD, PhD for his help with figures for this chapter.

References

Aboitiz F, Rodriguez E, Olivares R, Zaidel E (1996) Age-related changes in fibre composition of the human corpus callosum: sex differences. Neuroreport 7:1761–1764

Alicata D, Chang L, Cloak C, Abe K, Ernst T (2009) Higher diffusion in striatum and lower fractional anisotropy in white matter of methamphetamine users. Psychiatry Res 174:1–8

Axt KJ, Molliver ME (1991) Immunocytochemical evidence for methamphetamine-induced serotonergic axon loss in the rat brain. Synapse 9:302–313

Bae SC, Lyoo IK, Sung YH, Yoo J, Chung A, Yoon SJ, Kim DJ, Hwang J, Kim SJ, Renshaw PF (2006) Increased white matter hyperintensities in male methamphetamine abusers. Drug Alcohol Depend 81:83–88

Barkovich AJ, Miller SP, Bartha A, Newton N, Hamrick SE, Mukherjee P, Glenn OA, Xu D, Partridge JC, Ferriero DM, Vigneron DB (2006) MR imaging, MR spectroscopy, and diffusion tensor imaging of sequential studies in neonates with encephalopathy. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol 27:533–547

Bartzokis G, Beckson M, Lu PH, Edwards N, Rapoport R, Wiseman E, Bridge P (2000) Age-related brain volume reductions in amphetamine and cocaine addicts and normal controls: implications for addiction research. Psychiatry Res 98:93–102

Berman S, O'Neill J, Fears S, Bartzokis G, London ED (2008) Abuse of amphetamines and structural abnormalities in the brain. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1141:195–220

Boileau I, Rusjan P, Houle S, Wilkins D, Tong J, Selby P, Guttman M, Saint-Cyr JA, Wilson AA, Kish SJ (2008) Increased vesicular monoamine transporter binding during early abstinence in human methamphetamine users: is VMAT2 a stable dopamine neuron biomarker? J Neurosci 28:9850–9856

Boileau I, Houle S, Rusjan PM, Furukawa Y, Wilkins D, Tong J, Selby P, Wilson AA, Kish SJ (2010) Influence of a low dose of amphetamine on vesicular monoamine transporter binding: a PET (+)[11C]DTBZ study in humans. Synapse 64:417–420

Chang L, Cloak C, Patterson K, Grob C, Miller EN, Ernst T (2005) Enlarged striatum in abstinent methamphetamine abusers: a possible compensatory response. Biol Psychiatry 57:967–974

Chang L, Alicata D, Ernst T, Volkow N (2007) Structural and metabolic brain changes in the striatum associated with methamphetamine abuse. Addiction 102(1):16–32

Chung A, Lyoo IK, Kim SJ, Hwang J, Bae SC, Sung YH, Sim ME, Song IC, Kim J, Chang KH, Renshaw PF (2007) Decreased frontal white-matter integrity in abstinent methamphetamine abusers. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 10:765–775

Compton WM, Thomas YF, Conway KP, Colliver JD (2005) Developments in the epidemiology of drug use and drug use disorders. Am J Psychiatry 162:1494–1502

Damasio AR (1996) The somatic marker hypothesis and the possible functions of the prefrontal cortex. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci 351:1413–1420

Davidson C, Gow AJ, Lee TH, Ellinwood EH (2001) Methamphetamine neurotoxicity: necrotic and apoptotic mechanisms and relevance to human abuse and treatment. Brain Res Brain Res Rev 36:1–22

de la Fuente-Fernandez R, Sossi V, McCormick S, Schulzer M, Ruth TJ, Stoessl AJ (2009) Visualizing vesicular dopamine dynamics in Parkinson's disease. Synapse 63:713–716

Derogatis LR, Melisaratos N (1983) The Brief Symptom Inventory: an introductory report. Psychol Med 13:595–605

Derogatis LR, Lipman RS, Covi L (1973) SCL-90: an outpatient psychiatric rating scale–preliminary report. Psychopharmacol Bull 9:13–28

Ernst T, Chang L (2008) Adaptation of brain glutamate plus glutamine during abstinence from chronic methamphetamine use. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol 3:165–172

Ernst T, Chang L, Leonido-Yee M, Speck O (2000) Evidence for long-term neurotoxicity associated with methamphetamine abuse: a 1H MRS study. Neurology 54:1344–1349

Escubedo E, Guitart L, Sureda FX, Jimenez A, Pubill D, Pallas M, Camins A, Camarasa J (1998) Microgliosis and down-regulation of adenosine transporter induced by methamphetamine in rats. Brain Res 814:120–126

Fowler JS, Volkow ND, Logan J, Alexoff D, Telang F, Wang GJ, Wong C, Ma Y, Kriplani A, Pradhan K, Schlyer D, Jayne M, Hubbard B, Carter P, Warner D, King P, Shea C, Xu Y, Muench L, Apelskog K (2008) Fast uptake and long-lasting binding of methamphetamine in the human brain: comparison with cocaine. Neuroimage 43:756–763

Frey K, Kilbourn M, Robinson T (1997) Reduced striatal vesicular monoamine transporters after neurotoxic but not after behaviorally-sensitizing doses of methamphetamine. Eur J Pharmacol 334:273–279

Giros B, Jaber M, Jones SR, Wightman RM, Caron MG (1996) Hyperlocomotion and indifference to cocaine and amphetamine in mice lacking the dopamine transporter. Nature 379:606–612

Grachev ID, Kumar R, Ramachandran TS, Szeverenyi NM (2001) Cognitive interference is associated with neuronal marker N-acetyl aspartate in the anterior cingulate cortex: an in vivo (1)H-MRS study of the Stroop Color-Word task. Mol Psychiatry 6(496):529–439

Gur RC, Gur RE, Resnick SM, Skolnick BE, Alavi A, Reivich M (1987) The effect of anxiety on cortical cerebral blood flow and metabolism. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 7:173–177

Hoffman WF, Schwartz DL, Huckans MS, McFarland BH, Meiri G, Stevens AA, Mitchell SH (2008) Cortical activation during delay discounting in abstinent methamphetamine dependent individuals. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 201:183–193

Hurd R, Sailasuta N, Srinivasan R, Vigneron DB, Pelletier D, Nelson SJ (2004) Measurement of brain glutamate using TE-averaged PRESS at 3T. Magn Reson Med 51:435–440

Iyo M, Nishio M, Itoh T, Fukuda H, Suzuki K, Yamasaki T, Fukui S, Tateno Y (1993) Dopamine D2 and serotonin S2 receptors in susceptibility to methamphetamine psychosis detected by positron emission tomography. Psychiatry Res 50:217–231

Iyo M, Sekine Y, Mori N (2004) Neuromechanism of developing methamphetamine psychosis: a neuroimaging study. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1025:288–295

Johanson CE, Frey KA, Lundahl LH, Keenan P, Lockhart N, Roll J, Galloway GP, Koeppe RA, Kilbourn MR, Robbins T, Schuster CR (2006) Cognitive function and nigrostriatal markers in abstinent methamphetamine abusers. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 185:327–338

Jung RE, Yeo RA, Chiulli SJ, Sibbitt WL Jr, Weers DC, Hart BL, Brooks WM (1999) Biochemical markers of cognition: a proton MR spectroscopy study of normal human brain. Neuroreport 10:3327–3331

Kerns JG, Cohen JD, MacDonald AW 3rd, Cho RY, Stenger VA, Carter CS (2004) Anterior cingulate conflict monitoring and adjustments in control. Science 303:1023–1026

Kim SJ, Lyoo IK, Hwang J, Chung A, Hoon Sung Y, Kim J, Kwon DH, Chang KH, Renshaw PF (2006) Prefrontal grey-matter changes in short-term and long-term abstinent methamphetamine abusers. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 9:221–228

Kim IS, Kim YT, Song HJ, Lee JJ, Kwon DH, Lee HJ, Kim MN, Yoo DS, Chang Y (2009a) Reduced corpus callosum white matter microstructural integrity revealed by diffusion tensor eigenvalues in abstinent methamphetamine addicts. Neurotoxicology 30:209–213

Kim YT, Lee SW, Kwon DH, Seo JH, Ahn BC, Lee J (2009b) Dose-dependent frontal hypometabolism on FDG-PET in methamphetamine abusers. J Psychiatry Res 43:1166–1170

Kim YT, Kwon DH, Chang Y (2011) Impairments of facial emotion recognition and theory of mind in methamphetamine abusers. Psychiatry Res 186:80–84

Kita T, Wagner GC, Nakashima T (2003) Current research on methamphetamine-induced neurotoxicity: animal models of monoamine disruption. J Pharmacol Sci 92:178–195

Kubicki M, Westin CF, Maier SE, Mamata H, Frumin M, Ersner-Hershfield H, Kikinis R, Jolesz FA, McCarley R, Shenton ME (2002) Diffusion tensor imaging and its application to neuropsychiatric disorders. Harv Rev Psychiatry 10:324–336

Kubicki M, Westin CF, McCarley RW, Shenton ME (2005) The application of DTI to investigate white matter abnormalities in schizophrenia. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1064:134–148

LaMantia AS, Rakic P (1990) Axon overproduction and elimination in the corpus callosum of the developing rhesus monkey. J Neurosci 10:2156–2175

Lee CS, Samii A, Sossi V, Ruth TJ, Schulzer M, Holden JE, Wudel J, Pal PK, de la Fuente-Fernandez R, Calne DB, Stoessl AJ (2000) In vivo positron emission tomographic evidence for compensatory changes in presynaptic dopaminergic nerve terminals in Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 47:493–503

Leland DS, Arce E, Miller DA, Paulus MP (2008) Anterior cingulate cortex and benefit of predictive cueing on response inhibition in stimulant dependent individuals. Biol Psychiatry 63:184–190

Lim KO, Helpern JA (2002) Neuropsychiatric applications of DTI—a review. NMR Biomed 15:587–593

Lim KO, Choi SJ, Pomara N, Wolkin A, Rotrosen JP (2002) Reduced frontal white matter integrity in cocaine dependence: a controlled diffusion tensor imaging study. Biol Psychiatry 51:890–895

Lim KO, Wozniak JR, Mueller BA, Franc DT, Specker SM, Rodriguez CP, Silverman AB, Rotrosen JP (2008) Brain macrostructural and microstructural abnormalities in cocaine dependence. Drug Alcohol Depend 92:164–172

London ED, Simon SL, Berman SM, Mandelkern MA, Lichtman AM, Bramen J, Shinn AK, Miotto K, Learn J, Dong Y, Matochik JA, Kurian V, Newton T, Woods R, Rawson R, Ling W (2004) Mood disturbances and regional cerebral metabolic abnormalities in recently abstinent methamphetamine abusers. Arch Gen Psychiatry 61:73–84

London ED, Berman SM, Voytek B, Simon SL, Mandelkern MA, Monterosso J, Thompson PM, Brody AL, Geaga JA, Hong MS, Hayashi KM, Rawson RA, Ling W (2005) Cerebral metabolic dysfunction and impaired vigilance in recently abstinent methamphetamine abusers. Biol Psychiatry 58:770–778

Madden DJ, Whiting WL, Huettel SA, White LE, MacFall JR, Provenzale JM (2004) Diffusion tensor imaging of adult age differences in cerebral white matter: relation to response time. Neuroimage 21:1174–1181

McCann UD, Wong DF, Yokoi F, Villemagne V, Dannals RF, Ricaurte GA (1998) Reduced striatal dopamine transporter density in abstinent methamphetamine and methcathinone users: evidence from positron emission tomography studies with [11C]WIN-35, 428. J Neurosci 18:8417–8422

McCann UD, Kuwabara H, Kumar A, Palermo M, Abbey R, Brasic J, Ye W, Alexander M, Dannals RF, Wong DF, Ricaurte GA (2008) Persistent cognitive and dopamine transporter deficits in abstinent methamphetamine users. Synapse 62:91–100

McClure SM, Laibson DI, Loewenstein G, Cohen JD (2004a) Separate neural systems value immediate and delayed monetary rewards. Science 306:503–507

McClure SM, York MK, Montague PR (2004b) The neural substrates of reward processing in humans: the modern role of FMRI. Neuroscientist 10:260–268

McClure SM et al (2007) Time discounting for primary rewards. J Neurosci 27:5796–5804

Melega WP, Quintana J, Raleigh MJ, Stout DB, Yu DC, Lin KP, Huang SC, Phelps ME (1996) 6-[18F]fluoro-L-DOPA-PET studies show partial reversibility of long-term effects of chronic amphetamine in monkeys. Synapse 22:63–69

Moeller FG, Hasan KM, Steinberg JL, Kramer LA, Dougherty DM, Santos RM, Valdes I, Swann AC, Barratt ES, Narayana PA (2005) Reduced anterior corpus callosum white matter integrity is related to increased impulsivity and reduced discriminability in cocaine-dependent subjects: diffusion tensor imaging. Neuropsychopharmacology 30:610–617

Moffett JR, Ross B, Arun P, Madhavarao CN, Namboodiri AM (2007) N-Acetylaspartate in the CNS: from neurodiagnostics to neurobiology. Prog Neurobiol 81:89–131

Molliver ME, Berger UV, Mamounas LA, Molliver DC, O'Hearn E, Wilson MA (1990) Neurotoxicity of MDMA and related compounds: anatomic studies. Ann N Y Acad Sci 600:649–661, discussion 661–644

Monterosso JR, Ainslie G, Xu J, Cordova X, Domier CP, London ED (2007) Frontoparietal cortical activity of methamphetamine-dependent and comparison subjects performing a delay discounting task. Hum Brain Mapp 28:383–393

Moszczynska A, Fitzmaurice P, Ang L, Kalasinsky KS, Schmunk GA, Peretti FJ, Aiken SS, Wickham DJ, Kish SJ (2004) Why is parkinsonism not a feature of human methamphetamine users? Brain 127:363–370

Nordahl TE, Salo R, Possin K, Gibson DR, Flynn N, Leamon M, Galloway GP, Pfefferbaum A, Spielman DM, Adalsteinsson E, Sullivan EV (2002) Low N-acetyl-aspartate and high choline in the anterior cingulum of recently abstinent methamphetamine-dependent subjects: a preliminary proton MRS study. Magnetic resonance spectroscopy. Psychiatry Res 116:43–52

Nordahl TE, Salo R, Natsuaki Y, Galloway GP, Waters C, Moore CD, Kile S, Buonocore MH (2005) Methamphetamine users in sustained abstinence: a proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy study. Arch Gen Psychiatry 62:444–452

Oh JS, Lyoo IK, Sung YH, Hwang J, Kim J, Chung A, Park KS, Kim SJ, Renshaw PF, Song IC (2005) Shape changes of the corpus callosum in abstinent methamphetamine users. Neurosci Lett 384:76–81

O'Hearn E, Battaglia G, De Souza EB, Kuhar MJ, Molliver ME (1988) Methylenedioxyamphetamine (MDA) and methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA) cause selective ablation of serotonergic axon terminals in forebrain: immunocytochemical evidence for neurotoxicity. J Neurosci 8:2788–2803

Ohmori T, Abekawa T, Koyama T (1996) The role of glutamate in behavioral and neurotoxic effects of methamphetamine. Neurochem Int 29:301–307

Ohrmann P, Kersting A, Suslow T, Lalee-Mentzel J, Donges US, Fiebich M, Arolt V, Heindel W, Pfleiderer B (2004) Proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy in anorexia nervosa: correlations with cognition. Neuroreport 15:549–553

Olausson P, Jentsch JD, Krueger DD, Tronson NC, Nairn AC, Taylor JR (2007) Orbitofrontal cortex and cognitive-motivational impairments in psychostimulant addiction: evidence from experiments in the non-human primate. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1121:610–638

O'Sullivan M, Jones DK, Summers PE, Morris RG, Williams SC, Markus HS (2001) Evidence for cortical "disconnection" as a mechanism of age-related cognitive decline. Neurology 57:632–638

Overall JE, Gorham DR (1962) The Brief Psychiatric Rating Scale. Psychological Rep 10:799–812

Pandya DN, Seltzer B (1986) The topography of commissural fibers. In: Lepore F, Ptito M, Jasper HH (eds) Two hemispheres-one brain: functions of the corpus callosum. Alan R. Liss, Inc., New York, pp 47–74

Paulus MP, Hozack NE, Zauscher BE, Frank L, Brown GG, Braff DL, Schuckit MA (2002) Behavioral and functional neuroimaging evidence for prefrontal dysfunction in methamphetamine-dependent subjects. Neuropsychopharmacology 26:53–63

Paulus MP, Hozack N, Frank L, Brown GG, Schuckit MA (2003) Decision making by methamphetamine-dependent subjects is associated with error-rate-independent decrease in prefrontal and parietal activation. Biol Psychiatry 53:65–74

Paulus MP, Tapert SF, Schuckit MA (2005) Neural activation patterns of methamphetamine-dependent subjects during decision making predict relapse. Arch Gen Psychiatry 62:761–768

Paulus MP, Lovero KL, Wittmann M, Leland DS (2008) Reduced behavioral and neural activation in stimulant users to different error rates during decision making. Biol Psychiatry 63:1054–1060

Payer DE, Lieberman MD, Monterosso JR, Xu J, Fong TW, London ED (2008) Differences in cortical activity between methamphetamine-dependent and healthy individuals performing a facial affect matching task. Drug Alcohol Depend 93:93–102

Payer DE, Lieberman MD, London ED (2011) Neural correlates of affect Processing and aggression in methamphetamine dependence. Arch Gen Psychiatry 68:271–282

Pfefferbaum A, Sullivan EV (2005) Disruption of brain white matter microstructure by excessive intracellular and extracellular fluid in alcoholism: evidence from diffusion tensor imaging. Neuropsychopharmacology 30:423–432

Pfefferbaum A, Sullivan EV, Hedehus M, Adalsteinsson E, Lim KO, Moseley M (2000) In vivo detection and functional correlates of white matter microstructural disruption in chronic alcoholism. Alcohol Clin Exp Res 24:1214–1221

Pfefferbaum A, Adalsteinsson E, Sullivan EV (2005) Frontal circuitry degradation marks healthy adult aging: evidence from diffusion tensor imaging. Neuroimage 26:891–899

Pfefferbaum A, Adalsteinsson E, Sullivan EV (2006) Dysmorphology and microstructural degradation of the corpus callosum: Interaction of age and alcoholism. Neurobiol Aging 27:994–1009

Preston KL, Wagner GC, Schuster CR, Seiden LS (1985) Long-term effects of repeated methylamphetamine administration on monoamine neurons in the rhesus monkey brain. Brain Res 338:243–248

Quinton MS, Yamamoto BK (2006) Causes and consequences of methamphetamine and MDMA toxicity. Aaps J 8:E337–E347

Ricaurte GA, Schuster CR, Seiden LS (1980) Long-term effects of repeated methylamphetamine administration on dopamine and serotonin neurons in the rat brain: a regional study. Brain Res 193:153–163

Ricaurte GA, Guillery RW, Seiden LS, Schuster CR, Moore RY (1982) Dopamine nerve terminal degeneration produced by high doses of methylamphetamine in the rat brain. Brain Res 235:93–103

Ricaurte GA, Seiden LS, Schuster CR (1984) Further evidence that amphetamines produce long-lasting dopamine neurochemical deficits by destroying dopamine nerve fibers. Brain Res 303:359–364

Ricaurte GA, Sabol KE, Seiden LS (1994) Functional consequences of neurotoxic amphetamine exposure. In: Cho AK, Segal DS (eds) Amphetamine and its analogs. Academic Press, San Diego, pp 297–313

Rockland KS, Pandya DN (1986) Topography of occipital lobe commissural connections in the rhesus monkey. Brain Res 365:174–178

Sailasuta N, Abulseoud O, Harris KC, Ross BD (2010a) Glial dysfunction in abstinent methamphetamine abusers. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 30:950–960

Sailasuta N, Abulseoud O, Hernandez M, Haghani P, Ross BD (2010b) Metabolic abnormalities in abstinent methamphetamine dependent subjects. Subst Abuse 2010:9–20

Salo R, Nordahl TE, Natsuaki Y, Leamon MH, Galloway GP, Waters C, Moore CD, Buonocore MH (2007) Attentional control and brain metabolite levels in methamphetamine abusers. Biol Psychiatry 61:1272–1280

Salo R, Nordahl TE, Buonocore MH, Natsuaki Y, Waters C, Moore CD, Galloway GP, Leamon MH (2009a) Cognitive control and white matter callosal microstructure in methamphetamine-dependent subjects: a diffusion tensor imaging study. Biol Psychiatry 65:122–128

Salo R, Nordahl TE, Galloway GP, Moore CD, Waters C, Leamon MH (2009b) Drug abstinence and cognitive control in methamphetamine-dependent individuals. J Subst Abuse Treat 37:292–297

Salo R, Ursu S, Buonocore MH, Leamon MH, Carter C (2009c) Impaired prefrontal cortical function and disrupted adaptive cognitive control in methamphetamine abusers: a functional magnetic resonance imaging study. Biol Psychiatry 65:706–709

Salo R, Buonocore MH, Leamon M, Natsuaki Y, Waters C, Moore CD, Galloway GP, Nordahl TE (2011a) Extended findings of brain metabolite normalization in MA-dependent subjects across sustained abstinence: a proton MRS study. Drug Alcohol Depend 113:133–138

Salo R, Nordahl TE, Buonocore MH, Natsuaki YT, Moore CD, Waters C, Leamon MH (2011b) Spatial inhibition and the visual cortex: a magnetic resonance spectroscopy imaging study. Neuropsychologia 49:830–838

Schulte T, Sullivan EV, Muller-Oehring EM, Adalsteinsson E, Pfefferbaum A (2005) Corpus callosal microstructural integrity influences interhemispheric processing: a diffusion tensor imaging study. Cereb Cortex 15:1384–1392

Schwartz DL, Mitchell AD, Lahna DL, Luber HS, Huckans MS, Mitchell SH, Hoffman WF (2010) Global and local morphometric differences in recently abstinent methamphetamine-dependent individuals. Neuroimage 50:1392–1401

Sekine Y, Iyo M, Ouchi Y, Matsunaga T, Tsukada H, Okada H, Yoshikawa E, Futatsubashi M, Takei N, Mori N (2001) Methamphetamine-related psychiatric symptoms and reduced brain dopamine transporters studied with PET. Am J Psychiatry 158:1206–1214

Sekine Y, Minabe Y, Kawai M, Suzuki K, Iyo M, Isoda H, Sakahara H, Ashby CR Jr, Takei N, Mori N (2002) Metabolite alterations in basal ganglia associated with methamphetamine-related psychiatric symptoms. A proton MRS study. Neuropsychopharmacology 27:453–461

Sekine Y, Minabe Y, Ouchi Y, Takei N, Iyo M, Nakamura K, Suzuki K, Tsukada H, Okada H, Yoshikawa E, Futatsubashi M, Mori N (2003) Association of dopamine transporter loss in the orbitofrontal and dorsolateral prefrontal cortices with methamphetamine-related psychiatric symptoms. Am J Psychiatry 160:1699–1701

Sekine Y, Ouchi Y, Takei N, Yoshikawa E, Nakamura K, Futatsubashi M, Okada H, Minabe Y, Suzuki K, Iwata Y, Tsuchiya KJ, Tsukada H, Iyo M, Mori N (2006) Brain serotonin transporter density and aggression in abstinent methamphetamine abusers. Arch Gen Psychiatry 63:90–100

Sellitto M, Ciaramelli E, di Pellegrino G (2010) Myopic discounting of future rewards after medial orbitofrontal damage in humans. J Neurosci 30:16429–16436

Sheng P, Cerruti C, Cadet JL (1994) Methamphetamine (METH) causes reactive gliosis in vitro: attenuation by the ADP-ribosylation (ADPR) inhibitor, benzamide. Life Sci 55:PL51–PL54

Simon SL, Dean AC, Cordova X, Monterosso JR, London ED (2010) Methamphetamine dependence and neuropsychological functioning: evaluating change during early abstinence. J Stud Alcohol Drugs 71:335–344

Song SK, Sun SW, Ramsbottom MJ, Chang C, Russell J, Cross AH (2002) Dysmyelination revealed through MRI as increased radial (but unchanged axial) diffusion of water. Neuroimage 17:1429–1436

Sonsalla PK, Gibb JW, Hanson GR (1986) Roles of D1 and D2 dopamine receptor subtypes in mediating the methamphetamine-induced changes in monoamine systems. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 238:932–937

Sossi V, Holden JE, Topping GJ, Camborde ML, Kornelsen RA, McCormick SE, Greene J, Studenov AR, Ruth TJ, Doudet DJ (2007) In vivo measurement of density and affinity of the monoamine vesicular transporter in a unilateral 6-hydroxydopamine rat model of PD. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 27:1407–1415

Strome EM, Cepeda IL, Sossi V, Doudet DJ (2006) Evaluation of the integrity of the dopamine system in a rodent model of Parkinson's disease: small animal positron emission tomography compared to behavioral assessment and autoradiography. Mol Imaging Biol 8:292–299

Sullivan EV, Pfefferbaum A (2003) Diffusion tensor imaging in normal aging and neuropsychiatric disorders. Eur J Radiol 45:244–255

Sullivan EV, Adalsteinsson E, Hedehus M, Ju C, Moseley M, Lim KO, Pfefferbaum A (2001) Equivalent disruption of regional white matter microstructure in ageing healthy men and women. Neuroreport 12:99–104

Sung YH, Cho SC, Hwang J, Kim SJ, Kim H, Bae S, Kim N, Chang KH, Daniels M, Renshaw PF, Lyoo IK (2007) Relationship between N-acetyl-aspartate in gray and white matter of abstinent methamphetamine abusers and their history of drug abuse: a proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy study. Drug Alcohol Depend 88:28–35

Tata DA, Yamamoto BK (2007) Interactions between methamphetamine and environmental stress: role of oxidative stress, glutamate and mitochondrial dysfunction. Addiction 102(1):49–60

Taylor MJ, Alhassoon OM, Schweinsburg BC, Videen JS, Grant I (2000) MR spectroscopy in HIV and stimulant dependence HNRC Group. HIV Neurobehavioral Research Center. J Int Neuropsychol Soc 6:83–85

Taylor MJ, Schweinsburg BC, Alhassoon OM, Gongvatana A, Brown GG, Young-Casey C, Letendre SL, Grant I (2007) Effects of human immunodeficiency virus and methamphetamine on cerebral metabolites measured with magnetic resonance spectroscopy. J Neurovirol 13: 150–159

Thompson PM, Hayashi KM, Simon SL, Geaga JA, Hong MS, Sui Y, Lee JY, Toga AW, Ling W, London ED (2004) Structural abnormalities in the brains of human subjects who use methamphetamine. J Neurosci 24:6028–6036

Tobias MC, O'Neill J, Hudkins M, Bartzokis G, Dean AC, London ED (2010) White-matter abnormalities in brain during early abstinence from methamphetamine abuse. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 209:13–24

Tsai G, Coyle JT (1995) N-acetylaspartate in neuropsychiatric disorders. Prog Neurobiol 46: 531–540

Vander Borght T, Kilbourn M, Desmond T, Kuhl D, Frey K (1995) The vesicular monoamine transporter is not regulated by dopaminergic drug treatments. Eur J Pharmacol 294:577–583

Villemagne V, Yuan J, Wong DF, Dannals RF, Hatzidimitriou G, Mathews WB, Ravert HT, Musachio J, McCann UD, Ricaurte GA (1998) Brain dopamine neurotoxicity in baboons treated with doses of methamphetamine comparable to those recreationally abused by humans: evidence from [11C]WIN-35, 428 positron emission tomography studies and direct in vitro determinations. J Neurosci 18:419–427

Volkow ND (2005) What do we know about drug addiction? Am J Psychiatry 162:1401–1402

Volkow ND, Chang L, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Ding YS, Sedler M, Logan J, Franceschi D, Gatley J, Hitzemann R, Gifford A, Wong C, Pappas N (2001a) Low level of brain dopamine D2 receptors in methamphetamine abusers: association with metabolism in the orbitofrontal cortex. Am J Psychiatry 158:2015–2021

Volkow ND, Chang L, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Franceschi D, Sedler M, Gatley SJ, Miller E, Hitzemann R, Ding YS, Logan J (2001b) Loss of dopamine transporters in methamphetamine abusers recovers with protracted abstinence. J Neurosci 21:9414–9418

Volkow ND, Chang L, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Franceschi D, Sedler MJ, Gatley SJ, Hitzemann R, Ding YS, Wong C, Logan J (2001c) Higher cortical and lower subcortical metabolism in detoxified methamphetamine abusers. Am J Psychiatry 158:383–389

Volkow ND, Chang L, Wang GJ, Fowler JS, Leonido-Yee M, Franceschi D, Sedler MJ, Gatley SJ, Hitzemann R, Ding YS, Logan J, Wong C, Miller EN (2001d) Association of dopamine transporter reduction with psychomotor impairment in methamphetamine abusers. Am J Psychiatry 158:377–382

Volkow ND, Fowler JS, Wang GJ, Shumay E, Telang F, Thanos PK, Alexoff D (2010) Distribution and pharmacokinetics of methamphetamine in the human body: clinical implications. PLoS One 5:e15269

Wagner GC, Ricaurte GA, Johanson CE, Schuster CR, Seiden LS (1980a) Amphetamine induces depletion of dopamine and loss of dopamine uptake sites in caudate. Neurology 30:547–550

Wagner GC, Ricaurte GA, Seiden LS, Schuster CR, Miller RJ, Westley J (1980b) Long-lasting depletions of striatal dopamine and loss of dopamine uptake sites following repeated administration of methamphetamine. Brain Res 181:151–160

Wang GJ, Volkow ND, Chang L, Miller E, Sedler M, Hitzemann R, Zhu W, Logan J, Ma Y, Fowler JS (2004) Partial recovery of brain metabolism in methamphetamine abusers after protracted abstinence. Am J Psychiatry 161:242–248

Wechsler D (1981) Manual for the Wechsler adult intelligence scale—revised. Psychological Corporation, New York

Wilson JM, Kalasinsky KS, Levey AI, Bergeron C, Reiber G, Anthony RM, Schmunk GA, Shannak K, Haycock JW, Kish SJ (1996) Striatal dopamine nerve terminal markers in human, chronic methamphetamine users. Nat Med 2:699–703

Yamamoto BK, Bankson MG (2005) Amphetamine neurotoxicity: cause and consequence of oxidative stress. Crit Rev Neurobiol 17:87–117

Zhou FC, Bledsoe S (1996) Methamphetamine causes rapid varicosis, perforation and definitive degeneration of serotonin fibers: an immunocytochemical study of serotnin trasnporter. In: Neuroscience-Net, pp 1–17

Pharmacological MRI Approaches to Understanding Mechanisms of Drug Action

Michael J. Minzenberg

Abstract Functional neuroimaging is a novel technique for the study of drug action in the brain. The emerging role of this method is intimately tied to the unique challenges to advancing drug development for neuropsychiatric disorders. This chapter first presents a brief overview of the important treatment needs that remain to be met, which serve as clinical targets for drug development. Important factors that hinder progress in drug development, which arise from clinical, scientific and economic issues, are acknowledged. This sets the stage for the unique advantages of functional neuroimaging modalities such as functional MRI (fMRI) as a biomarker and drug development tool, in both clinical and preclinical phases. The physiological basis of the fMRI signal is briefly outlined, and aspects of neural signaling related to this signal change, with emphasis on implications for pharmacology studies. The utility of fMRI for evaluating the full anatomic extent of central neurotransmitter systems in a dynamic manner is then described. This is a critical advantage, and particularly important for studies of how systems such as the monoamines modulate distributed neural networks during cognitive processes in both health and illness, and how these actions are modified with pharmacological intervention. Central catecholamine systems are seen as paradigmatic targets amenable to pharmacologic fMRI. fMRI is observed to occupy a unique position in the armamentarium of methods available to the pharmacologist and the drug development process, and poised to play an expanding role in basic and clinical neuroscience.

M. J. Minzenberg (✉)
Imaging Research Center, Department of Psychiatry, University of California, Davis School of Medicine, 4701 X Street, Sacramento, CA 95817, USA
e-mail: michael.minzenberg@ucdmc.ucdavis.edu

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 365–388
DOI: 10.1007/7854_2011_177

Published Online: 5 November 2011

Keywords Functional neuroimaging · Functional MRI (fMRI) · Neuropharmacology · Neurotransmission · Catecholamines · Biomarker · Drug development · Neuropsychiatry

Contents

1 The Status and Challenges of Drug Development in Neuropsychiatric Illness

Any discussion of new methodologies available to advance neuropharmacology must first acknowledge the tremendous personal and public health impact of neuropsychiatric illness, and the substantial challenges to furthering our knowledge of how drugs work in the human brain. Psychiatric disorders are among the most debilitating illnesses that humans face. Contemporary global epidemiological surveys such as those conducted by the World Health Organization (Murray et al. 1994) have established a number of high-prevalence psychiatric conditions, including schizophrenia, mood disorders and substance abuse, as among the highest impact in medicine overall, reflected in measures of long-term disability. Not surprisingly, these conditions are associated with inordinate suffering on the part of the afflicted, their families and loved ones, and considerable economic cost incurred as direct costs of care and enormous levels of lost productivity.

A number of important unmet treatment needs persist among the more serious and chronic conditions encountered in psychiatry. These include symptom domains such as negative symptoms and cognitive dysfunction in schizophrenia, which confer the greatest impact on clinical outcome in this illness yet have no established treatment; treatment-refractory states and relapsing–remitting courses of illness, even for symptoms which serve as primary treatment targets, in mood, anxiety, psychotic and substance-use disorders; “secondary” symptoms that arise from these disorders and strongly modify outcome, such as impulsivity and

suicide; the deleterious effects of persistent symptoms on health-related behaviors and medical co-morbidity; and uncertain and variable effects of existing treatments on subjective well-being and long-term functional outcome, even for many patients who achieve full remission from primary target symptoms such as psychosis. The single-minded emphasis on monotherapy for disorders that are heterogeneous (at least as currently defined) may be one factor that tends to preclude attention to neglected clinical targets (Hyman and Fenton 2003). On the other hand, inappropriately narrow clinical indications are likely to be disapproved by the FDA as "pseudospecific" (Laughren and Levin 2006), leading to the need to "walk the tightrope" in adequately addressing these targets. More generally, there is little evidence that the morbidity or mortality associated with psychiatric illness has changed in the era of modern psychopharmacology (Insel and Scolnick 2006). Furthermore, the notion of either primary or secondary prevention remains a neglected goal in psychiatry (Insel and Scolnick 2006). Therefore, genuine advances in psychiatric treatment hold the promise to alleviate considerable suffering and global health burdens.

Unfortunately, the remote and recent history of drug development in psychiatry poses numerous challenges to achieving this aim. As is well known, the early history of drug discovery in mental health is characterized largely by serendipity (Ban 2006), with major successes initially arising from keen clinical observations made during use of certain compounds for unrelated medical conditions (such as surgical procedures, respiratory infections, hypertension and epilepsy). More recently, the industry has virtually uniformly pursued the strategy of mining existing targets (such as D2 receptors for antipsychotics, or monoamine transporters for depression) with a proliferation of so-called "me-too" products. One important consequence is that the newer agents available for major mental illness generally lack enhanced efficacy for existing treatment targets, nor clinically significant efficacy against new targets, but rather extend the range of adverse physiological effects that patients are exposed to, including some (e.g. metabolic syndrome) that appear likely to adversely affect long-term clinical outcomes such as life expectancy. Unfortunately for patients, families and clinicians, there may be a vicious cycle where the patients in most need of treatment advances (e.g., schizophrenia patients with prominent negative symptoms or cognitive dysfunction) are the least likely to benefit from new medications.

While some pharmaceuticals for central nervous system (CNS) indications have been among the most successful throughout medicine in recent years, generating staggering revenues for large pharmaceutical companies, with massive, expanding markets for these drugs, there has been a recent withdrawal overall of the pharmaceutical industry from CNS. The proximal causes appear to be the inordinate and expanding cost of bringing new drugs to market, particularly costly for CNS drugs, which show a relatively high failure rate compared to other classes of agents (Kola and Landis 2004). This scenario is accounted for in part by the increasing cost of obtaining regulatory approval. This trend away from CNS was set in motion even prior to the recent economic downturn, and appears likely to worsen, given the trend in costs (Breier 2005).

Many reasons for this inordinate cost dovetail with the scientific challenges to advancing drug development. There is now a considerable dialogue in the clinical/scientific and industry literatures addressing the myriad challenges facing the scientific, medical, regulatory and industry communities to advance the state of drug development for neuropsychiatric disorders (Agid et al. 2007; Conn and Roth 2008). These challenges, in the aggregate, provide a context for the emerging role of noninvasive functional neuroimaging in pharmacology, and are discussed in turn.

The inevitable starting place for any discussion of these challenges is the system for classifying illness in psychiatry. The current standard, instantiated in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual (DSM, now undergoing a revision to a fifth full edition), has a long and complex history, originating in committees of experts in clinical psychiatry. This system of diagnosis and classification remains based on clinical phenomenology, that is, reportable or clinically observable signs and symptoms, without reference to underlying theoretical models of mental illness, nor empirical knowledge about etiology or pathophysiology available from clinical or basic neuroscience. While more recent editions of the DSM have relied increasingly on empirical field trials to evaluate the measurement properties and performance of these criteria sets in discriminating among discrete illness types, there remains no rooting of categories in distinct etiologies or pathophysiological processes. In addition, it remains unclear whether individual syndromes (including schizophrenia-spectrum disorders, depression and personality disorders) are better represented as dimensional conditions. As a result, heterogeneity within categories, and co-morbidity across categories, are the rule for patients. The lack of correspondence between diagnoses and distinct pathophysiologies is a particular obstacle for drug development, as the resulting heterogeneity confounds efforts to establish molecular targets and useful biomarkers of drug action (see below).

The underlying pathophysiology also remains obscure for virtually all major mental illness. The biological events or fundamental cellular/molecular processes that form the basis for illness is essentially unknown for schizophrenia, autism, bipolar disorder, etc., despite a wealth of epidemiological clues about antecedents and risk states for many disorders, and a range of consistent biological and cognitive abnormalities observed in these disorders. This makes it hard to characterize and capitalize on treatment targets, as the field is to some extent "shooting in the dark." Beyond the nosological constraints, both the polygenic nature of mental illness, and the inherent complexity of the brain, may be root causes of this obscurity. While this is increasingly recognized in psychiatric genetics and systems neuroscience, there is no visible way yet around the roadblock.

The unique challenge of modeling the complex clinical phenomenology of psychiatric illness in animals remains an unresolved problem (Nestler and Hyman 2010). Many of the core features of mental illness, such as hallucinations, delusions, depressed mood and guilt, cannot be induced or detected in animals, including non-human primates. While cellular and molecular processes implicated in psychiatric disorders (such as monoamine transport, signaling via D2 receptors,

brain-derived neurotrophic factor, etc.) can be reliably and specifically manipulated with diverse methods, animal models of clinical phenomenology tend to express at best very partial (and typically very nonspecific) features of illness. For instance, animals with targeted gene knockouts or brain lesions that lead to social withdrawal are often suggested to variously model schizophrenia, autism and depression, which are distinct clinical conditions with widely divergent patterns of gene association, biological abnormalities, treatment response and clinical course. In addition, many cognitive processes that are important to psychiatric illness (e.g. language, abstract thought) are not found in any other species. Among treatment considerations, the precise drug treatment regimen (e.g. dose, duration) in animals that properly models treatment in clinical settings is typically uncertain. Furthermore, variation across species in both pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics confers hard limits on the utility of animal models for predicting the efficacy of drugs in humans. Not surprisingly then, there is poor predictive utility of animal models for effective treatments for cognition, for instance (Hagan and Jones 2005). Animal models remain an important pillar of both basic and clinical neuroscientific knowledge, given the inaccessibility of brain tissue in patients, the range of manipulations possible in animals, and the close correspondence of physiology across mammalian species. Nonetheless, significant refinement in how these models are developed and utilized will be necessary to improve their contribution (Nestler and Hyman 2010).

Interestingly, even for those drugs with clinical efficacy established beyond doubt, such as D2 antagonists for psychosis, or monoamine transport inhibitors for depression, the critical mechanism of action remains unclear. The consequences for neurotransmission of administering these drugs are well established; however, clinical effects tend to exhibit a considerable temporal delay beyond the onset of effects on neurotransmitter receptor activity. Delayed changes in neuronal signaling rates or patterns, intracellular signaling cascades, gene transcription and structural changes in synapses have each been addressed in recent work as likely mediators of clinical efficacy. Nonetheless, how an individual's brain can get from any of these changes relief from auditory hallucinations or suicidal thoughts remains essentially unknown. In addition, for many drugs (e.g. aripiprazole, clozapine, lithium, valproic acid, mirtazepine) there is evidence for a multiplicity of actions, each of which may be responsible for efficacy. This may be why investigators remain divided on whether more, versus less, specificity in the profile of drug action matters for clinical efficacy (Hopkins 2008; Roth et al. 2004). Indeed, the history of failed versus successful agents for major mental illness suggests that "magic shotguns" should be preferred to "magic bullets" (Roth et al. 2004). The trouble with this observation follows from the complexity of effects associated with a single drug that has multiple actions on numerous highly interacting neurotransmitter systems. This may necessitate both non-conventional small-molecule screening approaches to identify promising agents, and significant advances in direct testing in humans by a variety of experimental methods, including functional neuroimaging.

2 Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging as a Biomarker

The question of which molecular process is most essential for clinical efficacy, and therefore most worthy of investigation and development, is often framed as a problem of "target validation." This notion is intimately tied to the construct of "biomarkers" in drug development. The NIH Biomarker Definitions Working Group has defined a biomarker as "A characteristic that is objectively measured and evaluated as an indicator of normal biological processes, pathogenic processes or pharmacological responses to a therapeutic intervention" (Lesko and Atkinson 2001). The FDA has proposed a similar definition of a "marker" or surrogate endpoint for testing medical treatments (US Senate Bill 830), and the FDA Critical Path Initiative (http://www.fda.gov/oc/initiatives/criticalpath/) has identified Imaging as a critical technology to surmount the drug development roadblock. A typical role for a biomarker is to properly "measure the delivery of drugs to their intended targets, and to understand and predict pathophysiology, and how it is altered by therapy, through monitoring variables known to have clinical relevance" (Frank and Hargreaves 2003). The NIH Working Group defines three levels of biomarkers: those that track the natural course of illness (type 0); those that examine intervention effects, where the drug's mechanism of action is known but where a strict relationship to clinical outcome has not been established (type 1); and those where changes in the biomarker are truly predictive of clinical outcome (type 2). Wong and colleagues suggest that at present, most neuroimaging measures can be considered to have the status of either type 0 or type 1 biomarker (Wong et al. 2009). Useful biomarkers can uniquely enable proof-of-concept studies for novel agents early in the drug discovery process, and thus reduce risk in safety and efficacy determinations in the course of drug development. They can be used to directly compare competing interventions, to evaluate pharmacokinetics, to stratify clinical populations, to ascertain treatment considerations such as dose and duration. They are also often sensitive predictors of adverse events associated with a given agent, including the detection of central effects of agents with primarily peripheral actions. As a surrogate for a clinical endpoint, they ideally provide earlier (and less expensive) measures of clinical efficacy and side effects. Furthermore, useful biomarkers may support the extension of a known compound into new therapeutic areas as its effects in the human brain are elaborated, and importantly, may also permit the "rescue" of drugs that have failed a primary CNS indication (O'Connor and Roth 2005; Shorter 2002). Biomarkers are now ubiquitous in drug development for indications throughout medicine, with variable levels of success which depends in a large part on the degrees of validation of the measure as a biomarker.

Given the foregoing review, it should be clear why the development of biomarkers in psychiatry has lagged considerably behind that of the rest of medicine. Nonetheless, CNS may be the vanguard in the use of imaging biomarkers in medicine, with other specialties following this lead, and it is reasonable to assume that each of the goals of a good biomarker outlined above will be attained with

functional neuroimaging measures in the foreseeable future. Wong et al. (2009) emphasize two critical phases in the course of drug development where noninvasive neuroimaging has emerging potential. First, clinical experiments that are conducted relatively early in development that aim to demonstrate "proof of biology" by testing a novel hypothesis by associating target engagement with a biological change that is proposed to lead to a therapeutic response. Second, subsequent clinical studies that demonstrate "proof of concept", defined as proof that this engagement of the target is linked to a clinically significant change in a clinical endpoint, or in other words that this target engagement by the drug has a true clinical impact that is likely to change how patients with the given condition are treated. This is typically established in phase II clinical trials.

A number of other practical advantages are observed with pharmaco-fMRI in drug development. The method does not involve exposure to ionizing radiation, rendering it more useful for repeated imaging studies in individual subjects. The capacity for easy, reliable repeat scanning is a significant advantage, as this is necessary to permit full washout of drugs with a long elimination half-life (which is a desirable feature of agents for clinical use), and to evaluate effects that may be region- and time-sensitive, such as those underlying a latency to clinical efficacy, as well as tolerance, sensitization and withdrawal effects (Stein 2001). Time-sensitive effects may be important to identify limits to effective drug action. Repeat studies also allow within-subject study designs, to confer greater statistical power for the evaluation of dose–response relationships (and dose–response interactions with brain region) and for the comparative efficacy of different agents, by varying doses or agents within subjects across sessions (Honey and Bullmore 2004).

3 Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging in Preclinical Drug Development

The utility of fMRI is in fact observed even prior to clinical phases of drug development. One distinct advantage of this methodology is that it can be used noninvasively and in a repeated manner across diverse species, yet it is also feasible to combine with more invasive measures of neural activity in animal models. Rodents and primates alike are now readily investigated with fMRI, including with MRI scanners with small bores to accommodate rodents and particularly high magnetic field strengths (e.g. 12 Tesla) that are not yet approved for use in humans. The use of high field strength and combination with invasive measures such as intracranial electrical recordings or microdialysis has afforded insights into the relationship between BOLD signal change and cellular processes, to inform the use of fMRI in clinical populations. fMRI in animal models provides "functional signatures" by identifying distributed neural circuits engaged by a certain drug. It may be more sensitive to changes in a circuit underlying behavioral or cognitive effects than the overt behaviors themselves that are measured in traditional behavioral assays. Active circuits modulated by drugs may also remain

undetermined by overt behaviors in behavioral assays, yet may nonetheless have clinically relevant effects. It is less dependent on a limited set of receptor ligands, which significantly restricts the range of pharmacological assessments available in positron emission tomography (PET). fMRI may also have a particular advantage for specific classes of agents. For instance, full receptor agonists, partial agonists and inverse agonists are now entering the pharmacopoeia as novel agents for a variety of neuropsychiatric conditions (with aripiprazole as a successful example). Agents with these pharmacological actions, or potent agonists acting at low-density CNS receptors, are difficult to evaluate with other modalities such as PET. fMRI is uniquely capable of evaluating the neural effects of agents such as these, as it primarily indexes post-synaptic membrane polarization states, without relying on competition between a given agent and a (radiolabelled) competitor for ligand binding (see below). fMRI may in fact be the only existing method which can provide proof of target (at the circuit level), and target engagement, for these classes of agents (Borsook et al. 2006).

4 The Biophysical and Physiological Basis of Signal in fMRI

Because a fundamental concern of neuropharmacology is the effects of chemical compounds on signaling processes in the brain, it is essential to consider the types of signaling processes that can be measured by fMRI. As with all MR-based imaging procedures used in humans, the fMRI signal from which neural activity is inferred is derived from complex biophysical phenomena, and dependent on a particular set of physiological features of neural and hemodynamic properties of the brain and cerebrovasculature. While a full treatment of this is precluded by length considerations, a proper basic understanding is necessary in order to consider how fMRI measures brain activity, and the challenges of elucidating the action of drugs which act on both the neurons and the vasculature of the brain. Many excellent, detailed overviews of these phenomena are available elsewhere (Logothetis and Wandell 2004; Norris 2006); these are briefly outlined here as an introduction, along with some basic procedural aspects of MRI. First, a large, doughnut-shaped magnet with a circular electric current (maintained at very low temperatures to perpetuate the current) establishes a static magnetic field with relatively high strength, on the order of 40,000 times that of the earth's magnetic field. Subjects are placed inside, with humans typically reclining awake and relaxed in a supine position on a table inserted into the bore of the magnet; they typically maintain both visual contact with a monitor to present visual stimuli during cognitive tasks, and auditory contact with the investigator at the MRI console (though other tasks and monitoring are feasible, such as auditory, gustatory or somatosensory stimuli, physiological monitoring, eye tracking/pupillometry, etc.). The magnetic field is experienced in the subjects' soft tissues, with the most important effect being the alignment of protons with the direction of the static field. These protons are primarily available as hydrogen ions in water;

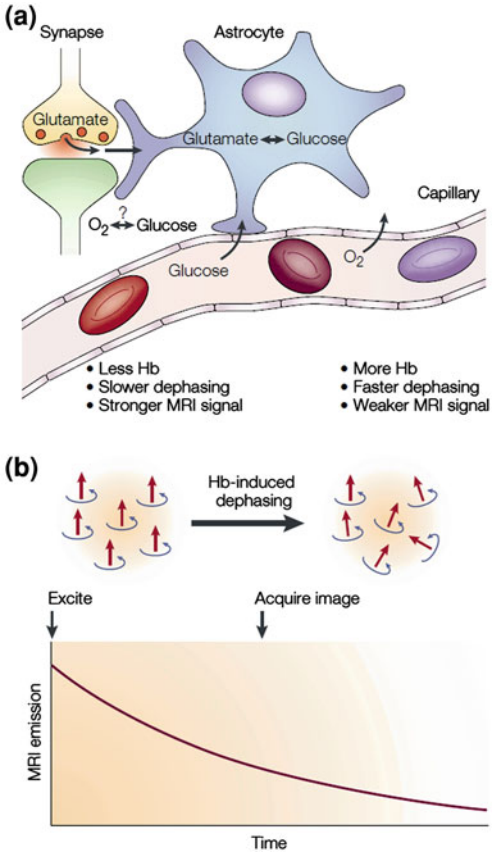


Fig. 1 BOLD functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI)

at relatively low field strength this source is primarily intravascular, but as the field strength increases, an increased proportion of protons from water are contained within the parenchyma of the brain. A radiofrequency pulse is then triggered in a repetitive manner during the course of image acquisition. This pulse alters the angle of the protons' spin in a manner that is controlled by the pulse sequence (the "flip angle") set by the investigator. With the brief cessation of the pulse, the original angle of the protons' spin is assumed again. This is referred to as "relaxation", and during this process energy is released which is detected by the scanner. A gradient coil distributes the field in a graded manner across space (i.e., the subject's head); this creates signal variation in two spatial dimensions that permits a two-dimensional image "slice" of the brain to be acquired, and these slices are in turn acquired in a progressive, repetitive manner across the third spatial dimension so that a three-dimensional image can be constructed. The signal acquired is maximized with the proportion of protons that resonate, that is, spin in phase with each other. Protons that spin out of phase tend to cancel each other's contribution to the signal recovered by the scanner. This "dephasing" is strongly

affected by inhomogeneity in the local tissue environment; in the vasculature, this is determined most critically by the oxidation state of hemoglobin contained in erythrocytes that course through the tissue.

Here, the physiology of the cerebrovasculature comes into play. The vasculature of the brain has complex autoregulatory processes to maintain blood flow and oxygen delivery to the brain (Heeger and Ress 2002) (see Fig. 1).

Among these, as relative increases in local neural activity occur (e.g. in response to a sensory stimulus or another information processing demand), there is a transient increase in flow to the local area. While the increased neural activity elicited in this manner may rely primarily on "aerobic" glycolysis, the vasculature tends to deliver more oxygen than needed locally. Therefore, the oxygen extraction fraction tends to decrease with increased local neural activity, and the fraction of oxygenated hemoglobin coursing through this vascular bed increases. As the paramagnetism of hemoglobin decreases with increasing oxygen content, the local field inhomogeneity is transiently decreased, permitting a relatively higher rate of signal recovery by the scanner, due to relatively less dephasing of the signal among the affected protons. Thus, the signal measured in fMRI is referred to as the Blood Oxygen Level-Dependent contrast, or BOLD signal (Bandettini et al. 1992; Kwong et al. 1992; Ogawa et al. 1992) [reviewed in (Logothetis and Wandell 2004)]. This signal is measured as a relative signal, as it does not strictly quantify blood flow, oxygen content, or energetics in the neurons or local tissues (though other emerging MR-based methods are now available to quantify flow, such as arterial spin-labeling). Therefore, the degree of neural activity determined with this method and attributed to the experimental condition(s) must be measured relative to a "baseline" condition. This baseline can be either an implicit baseline, typically determined as the residual (i.e. the error term) in a statistical model of experimental effects, or alternatively, the signal associated with another explicit (baseline) experimental condition.

A critical feature of this complex physiological process, with particular implications for the use of fMRI for pharmacology, is the link between neural activity and hemodynamics. This functional link, between neurons/glia and the adjacent vasculature, is referred to as *neurovascular coupling*. The precise cellular and molecular mechanisms that form the basis of this coupling remain incompletely elucidated (Raichle and Mintun 2006). However, a number of distinct yet interrelated biochemical processes and mediators have been implicated. These include vasoactive ions, nitric oxide, glutamate, adenosine, lactate, prostaglandins and other endogenous compounds, with a special role for astrocytes (Girouard and Iadecola 2006). Most of the energy need of neurons, especially in primates, appears budgeted for postsynaptic activity (Attwell and Iadecola 2002). However, other investigators have found evidence for presynaptic activity as a major energy consumer as well, and alternatively, there is evidence that neurotransmission may directly drive changes in hemodynamic activity, not dependent per se on energy utilization [see (Logothetis and Pfeuffer 2004) for review]. What is common to each of these models of neurovascular coupling is an emphasis on signaling activity by neurons as the basis for changes in local hemodynamics. Importantly, for the

present discussion, a considerable range of pharmacological agents, including numerous therapeutic CNS drugs, may have either direct or indirect effects on one or more of these biochemical processes. There is evidence for cerebrovascular regulation by a range of neurotransmitter systems, including glutamate [via NMDA receptors: (Faraci and Breese 1993; Lovick et al. 1999)], dopamine (Krimer et al. 1998), norepinephrine (Palmer 1986), serotonin (Palmer 1986) and acetylcholine (Sato et al. 2002). How the precise sites of action of these neurotransmitters in the vasculature may affect neurovascular coupling, or other hemodynamic responses that affect BOLD signal change, remain to be elucidated. This is an active area of research, not merely because of the implications for interpreting BOLD signal change in pharmaco-fMRI studies, but also because the neurochemical regulation of the cerebrovasculature is important to numerous disorders of this system, including migraine, stroke and Alzheimer's disease (Girouard and Iadecola 2006). In the meantime, particular experimental methods have been recommended to support disambiguation of neural versus vascular sources of drug effects on the BOLD signal. These include fMRI experimental design that includes proper control conditions that are not expected to show neurally mediated drug effects; direct measures of blood flow and vascular reactivity, other physiological monitoring such as oxygen consumption, and complementary measures of neural activity that are not dependent on blood flow, such as electroencephalography (Iannetti and Wise 2007). It should be appreciated that the use of these measures is not necessarily straightforward, as drug-induced changes in flow for instance may arise from changes in local central neural activity rather than directly on the local vasculature. Nonetheless, convergent evidence for a neural mechanism of action of drugs evaluated by fMRI remains an important goal.

5 Features of Neural Signaling that are Measured by fMRI

5.1 Local Field Potentials Versus Action Potential Generation

Recent studies have begun to elucidate which of the diverse types of signaling processes manifest by neurons may be measured in BOLD signal change. A very influential study conducted by Logothetis and colleagues (Logothetis et al. 2001) investigated electrical activity in awake monkeys concurrently with measurement of BOLD contrast by fMRI. Microelectrode recordings were made in the V1 visual cortex to derive measures of both local field potentials (LFP) and multi-unit activity (MUA). The LFP is a measure of slow electrical signals and subthreshold activity in neuronal membranes (not action potentials), reflecting primarily a weighted average of synchronous dendritic and somatic components of synaptic signals of a local neuronal population, with LFP amplitude a function of the extent and geometry of the recorded dendrites. MUA, in contrast, is a measure of overt spiking (action potential) activity in a recorded neuronal population, with cell size a critical determinant of amplitude, and the MUA is variably heterogeneous as a

result, especially across brain regions. Both the LFP and MUA are measured in a local population of neurons adjacent to the recording electrode, though the LFP probably is detected from a larger expanse of space than the MUA. Logothetis evaluated how each of these measures compared in their relationship to BOLD signal change in the monkeys, first in the absence of visual stimulation, to determine how to model the relationship of each to the BOLD signal. Then, they compared visually evoked BOLD responses with those predicted by the models derived from LFP and MUA. The authors found that both the LFP and the MUA predicted BOLD signal change very well in visual cortex, with a slight but significant advantage for the LFP. The difference appeared due to the transient nature of the MUA, which returned to baseline prior to stimulus offset, in contrast to both the LFP and BOLD signal, which were sustained for up to 20 s. The authors concluded that BOLD signal primarily reflects input and processing within a local area rather than spiking output. In contrast, a different study addressing this problem found that LFP and MUA were comparable in the strength of their relationship with BOLD signal change, measured with intracranial recording in awake humans (Mukamel et al. 2005). However, other studies may provide definitive evidence in favor of the LFP account of BOLD signal change (Mathiesen et al. 1998; Thomsen et al. 2004). Using a rat cerebellar preparation that permits the uncoupling of LFP with MUA, these investigators employed electrical stimulation of parallel fibers that leads to both a monosynaptic excitatory postsynaptic potential, and a disynaptic inhibitory postsynaptic potential in the Purkinje output neurons of the cerebellar cortex. With strong synaptic excitation but minimal change in the net spiking activity of these neurons, they found that blood flow and LFP nevertheless increased. This critically suggests that the mechanism underlying BOLD contrast is more directly determined by the LFP than spiking activity (though it is important to acknowledge that under most conditions, LFP and MUA are themselves highly correlated). These and other studies have also suggested that there may not be a simple linear relationship between LFP and the BOLD signal, and that the association of BOLD with both LFP and spiking activity may vary with the design of experiments, including stronger associations among all measures seen with more transient stimulus presentations that are typical of rapid event-related designs in fMRI (see Heeger and Ress 2002). More generally, with these studies BOLD signal change is presently thought to primarily reflect the postsynaptic integrative processes that occur in a local brain region, which are more diverse and arguably more informative of neural integration than spiking activity (Logothetis and Wandell 2004).

5.2 Oscillatory Brain Activity

One of the more interesting features of this synaptic integration which relates to BOLD signal change is the oscillations observed among populations of neurons. A wide range of oscillatory phenomena is seen across a wide frequency band and

throughout the brain of mammals (Buzsaki and Draguhn 2004). A number of oscillatory frequency bands have been implicated in information processing, and more generally, they may serve as signatures of dynamic functional assemblies of neurons that are responsible for cognition. Oscillatory activity can be detected by subjecting the LFP to filters to restrict the electrical potentials to certain oscillatory ranges. It can also be detected in the EEG recorded non-invasively from the scalp, when the electrical signal recorded is subjected to signal processing methods such as wavelet deconvolution. While scalp-recorded oscillatory activity maintains a lower frequency limit due to attenuation and filtering of the signal by tissues intervening between brain and scalp, brain oscillations detected at the scalp nonetheless correspond well to that measured intracranially, in their relationship with other biological and cognitive processes. Like the LFP more generally, brain oscillations are not strictly associated with spiking activity. Single neurons can oscillate, typically as a function of a set of coordinated cell membrane ion conductances; however, large-scale oscillations tend to emerge from complex dynamics between multiple neuronal types. A critical element appears to be the activity of inhibitory interneurons, which in the cortex use gamma amino-butyric acid (GABA) as a neurotransmitter. Oscillation-based synchrony is the most energy-efficient mechanism for temporal coordination (Buzsaki and Draguhn 2004). Oscillation may be an important mechanism of gain control in the nervous system (Salinas and Sejnowski 2001), as well as supporting resonance (Hutcheon and Yarom 2000), which can be seen as a form of tuning of neurons. Gain control and resonance are two important features of neuronal activity that confer sensitivity and specificity to neuronal signals and codes. One high-frequency oscillation that appears particularly related to BOLD signal change is in the gamma range (typically defined as 30–80 Hz, though higher gamma frequencies can be detected in intracranial recordings). A number of research groups have now reported strong and specific associations between BOLD signal change and gamma-range oscillations in the LFP, with diverse experiments such as the comparison of intracranial responses of neurosurgical patients to BOLD signal change in healthy adults in response to the identical visual/auditory stimulus (Mukamel et al. 2005; Nir et al. 2007); combined fMRI/EEG recording in epileptic patients performing a semantic decision task (Lachaux et al. 2007); and simple visual stimulation of V1 in monkeys (Goense and Logothetis 2008). It thus appears that BOLD signal change may reasonably index changes in power in the gamma range. This is fortuitous given the diverse cognitive processes that are also associated with gamma oscillations. These include perceptual integrative processes such as binding of sensory representations into a coherent percept (Fries 2009); episodic memory (Herrmann et al. 2004); working memory (Tallon-Baudry et al. 1998); and cognitive control processes (Cho et al. 2006; Minzenberg et al. 2010). These cognitive processes are generally highly dependent on prefrontal cortical function and ascending modulation by catecholamines and other neurotransmitter systems. Gamma oscillations (measured primarily by scalp EEG) are disrupted in a number of neuropsychiatric conditions (Herrmann and Demiralp 2005; Uhlhaas and Singer 2006) which are also characterized by cognitive deficits in these processes and their neural

substrates, measured by functional and structural imaging and post-mortem histopathology. This critically suggests that altered brain oscillations may represent a physiological signature of neural circuit dysfunction that is expressed in impaired cognition and perhaps even clinical symptomatology. While brain oscillations are fundamentally dependent on the complex temporal-spatial dynamic interactions between GABAergic interneurons and glutamatergic principal cells in regions such as neocortex and hippocampus, nonetheless there are a number of other neurotransmitter systems that modulate the power and frequency of these oscillations, and perhaps the neuronal membership in an active assembly that participates in a given oscillation (Whittington et al. 2000). These observations suggest the potential for fMRI to characterize the sites and mechanisms of action of pharmacological agents (including monoaminergic and peptidergic agents, anesthetics, and other drugs) which affect brain oscillations, and the relationship of these oscillatory effects with clinical efficacy.

5.3 Negative BOLD Response

In typical traditional fMRI studies, investigators process the acquired images and derive the signal used to infer brain activity using a linear statistical model of BOLD signal change. Statistical inference regarding the predicted experimental effects is made by contrasting the targeted experimental manipulation against the (implicit or explicit) baseline, with increased activity (typically beta values derived from the regression model of BOLD signal change) above the baseline leading to rejection of a null hypothesis. However, approximately 10 years ago, various research teams began to appreciate certain experimental conditions associated with changes from baseline in a *negative* direction, i.e. phenomena where local neural activity appeared higher in the baseline, or "resting" state and subsequently decreased during certain cognitive demands. Directed interrogation of brain regions that exhibited this pattern of task-related deactivations from baseline revealed a previously unidentified functional network in humans, centered on midline cortical regions in the medial prefrontal and parietal cortices, and lateral cortical areas including the inferior parietal lobule and lateral temporal lobe. Remarkably, this same network has been consistently identified in functional connectivity analyses of so-called "resting state" BOLD fluctuation, where subjects are awake and alert during fMRI but unengaged in any externally directed cognitive task. This network is now commonly referred to as the "default mode network", which implies a significant level of activity in the absence of an overt or externally directed task, and it is observed in both humans and non-human primates (Buckner et al. 2008; Raichle and Mintun 2006). More recently, there is evidence that the default mode network is negatively correlated with the fronto-parietal "task-positive" network, implying a reciprocal relationship that may be controlled in accordance with the behavioral state or current goals of the organism (Fox et al. 2005). In the context of the present discussion, one important implication of this discovery is that BOLD signals may be used to meaningfully

evaluate neuronal inhibition with certain cognitive processes, especially those with significant demands on attention or control processes.

An important consideration for fMRI studies of pharmacology is how the "negative BOLD response" (NBR) may inform the nature of neuronal membrane polarization states or signaling activity in the brain, and how these may be sensitive to pharmacological intervention. The metabolic budget associated with inhibitory neuronal processes is incompletely known at present, and it has been argued that quantification of the energy cost of inhibition cannot be meaningfully isolated from that of excitation in the brain (Buzsaki et al. 2007). Nonetheless, recent fMRI studies in animals have offered some intriguing hints that the NBR may be associated with increased neuronal inhibition in a local brain region. These studies have found that NBR is associated with decreased blood flow and blood volume and increased deoxyhemoglobin locally, and decreases in both the LFP and MUA (Boorman et al. 2010); and that cortical hyperpolarization occurs with local decreases in oxygenation, as would be expected with the NBR (Devor et al. 2007). fMRI studies in humans are consistent with these observations (Shmuel et al. 2002; Wade and Rowland 2010) and suggest that the NBR is not merely due to vascular steal or altered neurovascular coupling (Lin et al. 2011). Furthermore, the NBR in humans has been associated with cortical GABA concentration measured by magnetic resonance spectroscopy (Northoff et al. 2007). These various observations suggest that fMRI has utility for detecting inhibitory neuronal processes, and therefore potential for the evaluation of pharmacological effects that are manifest in neuronal hyperpolarization or decreased neuronal activity. Neuronal inhibitory processes are not only essential to brain oscillations (as indicated above), but form a fundamental feature of the operation of neural networks in general, both at the local circuit level and in long-range intracortical and cortical-subcortical network operations as well. Indeed, the "small-world" nature of cerebral circuitry that is increasingly apparent in the mammalian brain is critically dependent on these inhibitory processes, which are probably mediated primarily by GABA (Buzsaki et al. 2004). Furthermore, the actions of modulatory neurochemical systems (including those at virtually all monoamine receptor subtypes) are predominantly inhibitory. These observations suggest that for a neuroimaging method to comprehensively interrogate the effects of drugs on signaling in the brain, a valid and sensitive measure of inhibitory processes is essential. fMRI is promising in this regard, and cellular model-based tests of neuronal inhibitory effects of pharmacological agents have recently appeared (Minzenberg et al. 2008, 2011).

6 fMRI as a Tool to Evaluate the Functional Role of Central Neurotransmitter Systems

fMRI has at least three key methodological features which confer important advantages over other neuroimaging and non-imaging methods used in human pharmacology. First, the spatial resolution with the currently standard fMRI

methods for image acquisition and processing allows the discrimination of activity in local brain regions at approximately millimeter spatial resolution. While this is not yet a degree of spatial resolution that can discriminate cortical columns, or subregions within small subcortical nuclei, for instance (at least not with standard methods), it is increasingly adequate for the resolution of adjacent subcortical regions in tightly packed subcortical regions such as the thalamus or midbrain dopaminergic areas. Second, the temporal resolution of fMRI is critical to monitoring the time course of information processing as it unfolds in typical cognitive task paradigms. Virtually all experimental tasks that are in use to evaluate cognitive processes comprise few to many subcomponent processes. These include investigations of perception, attention, various forms of memory, control processes, incentive and reward processes, and motor output, not to mention more complex phenomena such as social and emotion processes. While fMRI is constrained by the hemodynamic response from the millisecond sampling rate of EEG, for instance, it still can be easily used to isolate neural activity associated with discrete events ("event-related" fMRI) or processing stages within single trials. This stands in contrast to either PET or the older approach in fMRI, which both rely on blocked sequences of trials to compare brain activity under different experimental conditions. This older approach does not permit the isolation of the varied subcomponent cognitive processes that might be demanded in a single trial: for instance, a typical working memory task paradigm requires a subject to encode a stimulus, maintain a representation of the stimulus or its associated information across a delay, perceive the subsequent target stimulus and reactivate the stored information and use it to make a decision and an associated overt motor response. This entire sequence of information processing stages typically occurs over a span of 3–20 s. Because it is entirely possible, and of great theoretical and practical interest, that a given drug modulates the maintenance of information and not the motor response that follows from the use of that information, event-related fMRI represents a clear advance over other noninvasive methods in achieving specificity in drug modulatory effects on cognition and its neural basis. The third major advantage of fMRI is the lack of dependence on the development of brain-penetrating, potent and selective ligands for neurotransmitter receptors of sufficient density in the brain, to evaluate effects on signaling. Many important neurotransmitter systems are not yet amenable to interrogation with ligand-PET in humans (e.g. noradrenergic system), yet these systems remain fully amenable to the study of drug effects on signaling processes using brain-penetrating compounds such as beta adrenergic receptor antagonists and norepinephrine transporter inhibitors. In principle, any chemical agent that enters the brain and has psychological effects can be evaluated by fMRI, both in the presence or absence of information-processing demands.

As a consequence of these particular methodological features, fMRI represents an advance in the evaluation of drug action on neurotransmitter systems in modulating distributed neural networks and the discrete cognitive processes that they support. The capacity to interrogate small structures located deep in the brain is a major advantage over EEG for instance, which only measures electrical

activity arising from large cortical regions. In order to fully understand how neurochemical systems operate, and how they are affected by drug interventions, it is critical to have a method that can evaluate drug effects on activity at the cell bodies of neurons that give rise to these systems. This is because of a single-minded focus on terminal fields (e.g. in the cortex) of projections arising from these subcortical areas, while representing the "business end" of the system as the local influence on signal throughput, nonetheless cannot account for how a drug may affect neurotransmission by modulating its major determinant, which is activity arising from the cell body. In addition, these subcortical structures have numerous reciprocal projections with their projection targets, and therefore drug effects on cognition may result from changes in descending influence on subcortical nuclei. For these reasons, it is important to interrogate the full anatomic extent of these systems, that is, the activity from the origin of cells in subcortical regions to their full terminal fields throughout the brain. A recent and exciting development in functional neuroimaging therefore is the emerging capability of fMRI to measure activity in subcortical regions such as the ventral tegmental area, substantia nigra and locus coeruleus, which give rise to monoamine neurotransmitter systems which are of great importance to both the etiology and treatment of much neuropsychiatric illness.

6.1 fMRI Studies of Subcortical Catecholamine Systems

The neurochemical systems that arise from the human brain stem and use dopamine (DA) or norepinephrine (NE) as a neurotransmitter subserve critical roles in a number of cognitive and behavioral processes. For DA, these include incentive and reward-based learning (Haber and Knutson 2010), behavioral and cognitive control (Montague et al. 2004), attention, integration of related affective information such as pleasurable and aversive features of environmental stimuli to modulate cognition and guide behavior, and integration of brain activity as a function of general overt activity levels and the sleep–wake cycle. Cognitive and behavioral processes subject to modulation by NE overlap with those of DA to a larger degree than has been traditionally appreciated. Reward-based learning may be the only one of these processes that has been largely unaddressed with respect to the central NE system. NE additionally has long been recognized for its role in arousal, elementary aspects of perception and autonomic functions. In general, these systems, arising from the ventral tegmental area (VTA) and the substantia nigra (SN) of the ventral midbrain for DA, and the pontine locus coeruleus (LC) for NE, serve as critical links between the environment and the organism, for the valuation and use of information to guide information storage and goal-directed action (Aston-Jones and Cohen 2005; Bouret and Sara 2005; Montague et al. 2004; Sara 2009) [see Figure from Sara (2009) below for projection patterns arising from VTA and LC]. In keeping with this general role, the circuitry that these areas participate in is extensive, involving a large share of the major functional areas in

cortical and subcortical regions. For the VTA, this primarily includes limbic regions (e.g. hippocampus, hypothalamus, amygdala, ventral striatum, basal forebrain cholinergic nuclei), association neocortices, and other monoamine systems. For the SN, this includes dorsal striatum, thalamus, and more distant targets in the motor cortices, other cortical areas and cerebellum. For the LC-NE system, virtually the entire brain serves as a target, with the dorsal striatum as the only region in the mammalian brain that contains a paucity of NE or adrenergic receptors. These networks are organized as discrete functional loops which give rise to much of what the brain can achieve in cognition and behavior. As might be expected, these networks are also disrupted in a wide range of neuropsychiatric illnesses, including Parkinson's disease, schizophrenia, obesity and drug addiction, psychopathy, dementias, mood and anxiety disorders, attention-deficit disorder and many others. Accordingly, these catecholamine systems are important targets for the action of existing and candidate drugs for the treatment of these disorders, currently including l-DOPA, DA and NE transporter inhibitors, adrenergic antagonists, and DA receptor agonists and antagonists.

It is therefore of great interest to interrogate the functional dynamics of catecholamine systems during cognitive and behavioral processes, as model systems in which to evaluate the potential of new and existing drugs to modulate these processes and remediate the clinical syndromes arising from disturbances in these processes.

Recent work from several research groups has shown that these subcortical areas can be reliably evaluated during experimental cognitive tasks in humans, and that the functional role of these areas in humans is consistent with those determined in animal models (Duzel et al. 2009). While the LC-NE system has been relatively less well studied in humans, there is evidence that drug effects on this system can be tested in a manner that is informed by physiological and cognitive model-based predictions (Minzenberg et al. 2008). In addition, concurrent pupillometry can be acquired in the MRI environment, both to aid in topographic localization of the LC in BOLD images, as well as to provide a novel concurrent behavioral measure of LC-NE system functioning that can be related to the fMRI measure of LC activity during cognitive processes (Sterpenich et al. 2006). Among the midbrain DA regions, there are a number of distinct and important species differences between rodents and humans or non-human primates (Duzel et al. 2009). These species differences highlight the need for a valid and sensitive method to study these systems directly in humans. In addition, in humans, the functional and anatomic distinctions between the VTA and SN in particular are also much less well drawn than is commonly appreciated. For example, the midbrain region most representative of the rat VTA resides in the dorsal part of the primate SN; these two nuclei are more continuous with each other in humans than in the rat, leading some anatomists to distinguish dorsal/ventral tiers of the midbrain DA complex rather than VTA versus SN (and the retrorubral field); the projection patterns of VTA versus SN are not easily distinguished in humans; and the response properties of VTA and SN neurons show no significant differences (reviewed in Duzel et al. 2009). Due to these observations, plus the limits on

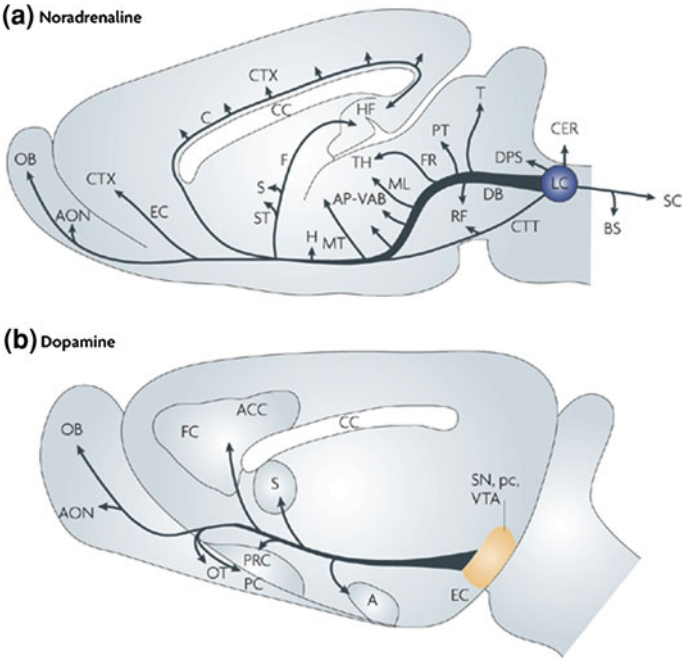


Fig. 2 Comparative anatomy: **a** Noradrenaline. **b** Dopamine

spatial discrimination between adjacent, small subcortical structures, many investigators who study these regions in humans with functional neuroimaging refer generally to the "dopaminergic midbrain." In these studies, the VTA/SN complex is typically localized in BOLD images by reference to structural scans acquired as either magnetization transfer scans, proton density scans or T1-weighted scans sensitive to neuromelanin, which in the brain stem is restricted to catecholamine neurons.

It is important to consider the various possible underlying physiological sources of BOLD signal change in the neurons found in this area [see (Duzel et al. 2009) Fig. 2]. These could include LFPs arising from either glutamatergic or GABAergic inputs to tonically active DA neurons, glutamatergic inputs to silent DA neurons, or inhibition of GABAergic input to DA neurons. BOLD signal change could also arise from burst firing of DA neurons, or local DA release from DA neurons in either burst or tonic firing modes. While the relationship of LFPs in these DA-rich areas to discharge of these neurons remains to be characterized in animals, the most parsimonious account, based on single-unit studies in monkeys, suggests that DA neuron discharge is primarily a function of direct excitatory glutamatergic input from the neocortex or elsewhere in the midbrain. In addition, fMRI studies in animals have supported a relationship between BOLD signal change and DA neurotransmission. These studies find a strong association of DA release (induced

with stimulants) and BOLD signal change in limbic terminal fields of midbrain DA projections e.g. nucleus accumbens; (Chen et al. 1997), and that this relationship persists with DA lesions and fetal DA neuron grafts (Chen et al. 1999). Stimulant-induced changes in blood volume (which itself is highly-related to BOLD signal change) show similar associations (reviewed in (Knutson and Gibbs 2007), and these stimulant effects show predictable interactions with co-administered D2 antagonists (Chen et al. 2005; Schwarz et al. 2004). An elegant study of healthy human subjects, using fMRI during a reward-based learning paradigm and ligand-PET, found BOLD signal change in the VTA/SN to correlate with [^{11}C] raclopride displacement as a measure of increased DA release in the nucleus accumbens (Schott et al. 2008). These various studies indicate that BOLD signal change closely follows DA neurotransmission, at least in some brain areas that receive strong input from the VTA/SN. Nonetheless, a number of physiological features of these systems may have important implications for interpreting studies of cognition and pharmacology in humans, including the role of local inhibition in the VTA/SN, the role of silent DA neurons, and the temporal relationship of BOLD signal change to discharge of these neurons. Studies combining functional neuroimaging with genetics or pharmacology in humans, or invasive measures in animals, will further elucidate the underlying basis of BOLD signal change in these brain areas to optimize the utility of neuroimaging in studies of human pharmacology.

7 Summary

The emergence of noninvasive functional neuroimaging methods such as fMRI for neuropharmacology is intimately tied to the status of drug development for CNS disorders, and the importance of currently unmet treatment needs among patients with these disorders. These imaging methods are seen to have a number of unique advantages to meet these goals, as well as serving as a tool for basic neuroscience. The physiological basis for signal change in fMRI is complex, and the readout in BOLD signal change is a function of a number of signaling processes in the brain, each of which are of interest for pharmacology. Widely distributed neurotransmitter systems such as the monoamines are readily amenable to study using fMRI, and the dynamics of these systems' operations over space and time can be interrogated in a uniquely advantageous manner. fMRI and related methods therefore stand poised to occupy a unique position in the armamentarium of experimental methods available to the basic and clinical scientist, to achieve progress in our understanding of the pharmacology of the brain and how we may attain greater success in relieving the massive burden of neuropsychiatric illness.

References

Agid Y, Buzsaki G, Diamond DM, Frackowiak R, Giedd J et al (2007) How can drug discovery for psychiatric disorders be improved? Nat Rev Drug Discov 6:189–201

Aston-Jones G, Cohen JD (2005) An integrative theory of locus coeruleus-norepinephrine function: adaptive gain and optimal performance. Annu Rev Neurosci 28:403–450

Attwell D, Iadecola C (2002) The neural basis of functional brain imaging signals. Trends Neurosci 25:621–625

Ban TA (2006) The role of serendipity in drug discovery. Dialogues Clin Neurosci 8:335–344

Bandettini PA, Wong EC, Hinks RS, Tikofsky RS, Hyde JS (1992) Time course EPI of human brain function during task activation. Magn Reson Med 25:390–397

Boorman L, Kennerley AJ, Johnston D, Jones M, Zheng Y et al (2010) Negative blood oxygen level dependence in the rat: a model for investigating the role of suppression in neurovascular coupling. J Neurosci 30:4285–4294

Borsook D, Becerra L, Hargreaves R (2006) A role for fMRI in optimizing CNS drug development. Nat Rev Drug Discov 5:411–424

Bouret S, Sara SJ (2005) Network reset: a simplified overarching theory of locus coeruleus noradrenaline function. Trends Neurosci 28:574–582

Breier A (2005) Developing drugs for cognitive impairment in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 31:816–822

Buckner RL, Andrews-Hanna JR, Schacter DL (2008) The brain's default network: anatomy, function, and relevance to disease. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1124:1–38

Buzsaki G, Draguhn A (2004) Neuronal oscillations in cortical networks. Science 304:1926–1929

Buzsaki G, Geisler C, Henze DA, Wang XJ (2004) Interneuron diversity series: circuit complexity and axon wiring economy of cortical interneurons. Trends Neurosci 27:186–193

Buzsaki G, Kaila K, Raichle M (2007) Inhibition and brain work. Neuron 56:771–783

Chen YC, Choi JK, Andersen SL, Rosen BR, Jenkins BG (2005) Mapping dopamine D2/D3 receptor function using pharmacological magnetic resonance imaging. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 180:705–715

Chen YC, Galpern WR, Brownell AL, Matthews RT, Bogdanov M et al (1997) Detection of dopaminergic neurotransmitter activity using pharmacologic MRI: correlation with PET, microdialysis, and behavioral data. Magn Reson Med 38:389–398

Chen YI, Brownell AL, Galpern W, Isacson O, Bogdanov M et al (1999) Detection of dopaminergic cell loss and neural transplantation using pharmacological MRI, PET and behavioral assessment. Neuroreport 10:2881–2886

Cho RY, Konecky RO, Carter CS (2006) Impairments in frontal cortical gamma synchrony and cognitive control in schizophrenia. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:19878–19883

Conn PJ, Roth BL (2008) Opportunities and challenges of psychiatric drug discovery: roles for scientists in academic, industry, and government settings. Neuropsychopharmacology 33:2048–2060

Devor A, Tian P, Nishimura N, Teng IC, Hillman EM et al (2007) Suppressed neuronal activity and concurrent arteriolar vasoconstriction may explain negative blood oxygenation level-dependent signal. J Neurosci 27:4452–4459

Duzel E, Bunzeck N, Guitart-Masip M, Wittmann B, Schott BH, Tobler PN (2009) Functional imaging of the human dopaminergic midbrain. Trends Neurosci 32:321–328

Faraci FM, Breese KR (1993) Nitric oxide mediates vasodilatation in response to activation of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors in brain. Circ Res 72:476–480

Fox MD, Snyder AZ, Vincent JL, Corbetta M, Van Essen DC, Raichle ME (2005) The human brain is intrinsically organized into dynamic, anticorrelated functional networks. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102:9673–9678

Frank R, Hargreaves R (2003) Clinical biomarkers in drug discovery and development. Nat Rev Drug Discov 2:566–580

Fries P (2009) Neuronal gamma-band synchronization as a fundamental process in cortical computation. Annu Rev Neurosci 32:209–224
Girouard H, Iadecola C (2006) Neurovascular coupling in the normal brain and in hypertension, stroke, and Alzheimer disease. J Appl Physiol 100:328–335
Goense JB, Logothetis NK (2008) Neurophysiology of the BOLD fMRI signal in awake monkeys. Curr Biol 18:631–640
Haber SN, Knutson B (2010) The reward circuit: linking primate anatomy and human imaging. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:4–26
Hagan JJ, Jones DN (2005) Predicting drug efficacy for cognitive deficits in schizophrenia. Schizophr Bull 31:830–853
Heeger DJ, Ress D (2002) What does fMRI tell us about neuronal activity? Nat Rev Neurosci 3:142–151
Herrmann CS, Demiralp T (2005) Human EEG gamma oscillations in neuropsychiatric disorders. Clin Neurophysiol 116:2719–2733
Herrmann CS, Munk MH, Engel AK (2004) Cognitive functions of gamma-band activity: memory match and utilization. Trends Cogn Sci 8:347–355
Honey G, Bullmore E (2004) Human pharmacological MRI. Trends Pharmacol Sci 25:366–374
Hopkins AL (2008) Network pharmacology: the next paradigm in drug discovery. Nat Chem Biol 4:682–690
Hutcheon B, Yarom Y (2000) Resonance, oscillation and the intrinsic frequency preferences of neurons. Trends Neurosci 23:216–222
Hyman SE, Fenton WS (2003) Medicine. What are the right targets for psychopharmacology? Science 299:350–351
Iannetti GD, Wise RG (2007) BOLD functional MRI in disease and pharmacological studies: room for improvement? Magn Reson Imaging 25:978–988
Insel TR, Scolnick EM (2006) Cure therapeutics and strategic prevention: raising the bar for mental health research. Mol Psychiatry 11:11–17
Knutson B, Gibbs SE (2007) Linking nucleus accumbens dopamine and blood oxygenation. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 191:813–822
Kola I, Landis J (2004) Can the pharmaceutical industry reduce attrition rates? Nat Rev Drug Discov 3:711–715
Krimer LS, Muly EC 3rd, Williams GV, Goldman-Rakic PS (1998) Dopaminergic regulation of cerebral cortical microcirculation. Nat Neurosci 1:286–289
Kwong KK, Belliveau JW, Chesler DA, Goldberg IE, Weisskoff RM et al (1992) Dynamic magnetic resonance imaging of human brain activity during primary sensory stimulation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 89:5675–5679
Lachaux JP, Fonlupt P, Kahane P, Minotti L, Hoffmann D et al (2007) Relationship between task-related gamma oscillations and BOLD signal: new insights from combined fMRI and intracranial EEG. Hum Brain Mapp 28:1368–1375
Laughren T, Levin R (2006) Food and Drug Administration perspective on negative symptoms in schizophrenia as a target for a drug treatment claim. Schizophr Bull 32:220–222
Lesko LJ, Atkinson AJ Jr (2001) Use of biomarkers and surrogate endpoints in drug development and regulatory decision making: criteria, validation, strategies. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 41:347–366
Lin P, Hasson U, Jovicich J, Robinson S (2010) A neuronal basis for task-negative responses in the human brain. Cereb Cortex 21:821–830
Logothetis NK, Pauls J, Augath M, Trinath T, Oeltermann A (2001) Neurophysiological investigation of the basis of the fMRI signal. Nature 412:150–157
Logothetis NK, Pfeuffer J (2004) On the nature of the BOLD fMRI contrast mechanism. Magn Reson Imaging 22:1517–1531
Logothetis NK, Wandell BA (2004) Interpreting the BOLD signal. Annu Rev Physiol 66:735–769

Lovick TA, Brown LA, Key BJ (1999) Neurovascular relationships in hippocampal slices: physiological and anatomical studies of mechanisms underlying flow-metabolism coupling in intraparenchymal microvessels. Neuroscience 92:47–60

Mathiesen C, Caesar K, Akgoren N, Lauritzen M (1998) Modification of activity-dependent increases of cerebral blood flow by excitatory synaptic activity and spikes in rat cerebellar cortex. J Physiol 512(Pt 2):555–566

Minzenberg MJ, Firl AJ, Yoon JH, Gomes GC, Reinking C, Carter CS (2010) Gamma oscillatory power is impaired during cognitive control independent of medication status in first-episode schizophrenia. Neuropsychopharmacology 35:2590–2599

Minzenberg MJ, Watrous AJ, Yoon JH, Ursu S, Carter CS (2008) Modafinil shifts human locus coeruleus to low-tonic, high-phasic activity during functional MRI. Science 322:1700–1702

Minzenberg MJ, Yoon JH, Carter CS (2011) Modafinil modulation of the default mode network. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 215:23–31

Montague PR, Hyman SE, Cohen JD (2004) Computational roles for dopamine in behavioural control. Nature 431:760–767

Mukamel R, Gelbard H, Arieli A, Hasson U, Fried I, Malach R (2005) Coupling between neuronal firing, field potentials, and FMRI in human auditory cortex. Science 309:951–954

Murray CJ, Lopez AD, Jamison DT (1994) The global burden of disease in 1990: summary results, sensitivity analysis and future directions. Bull World Health Organ 72:495–509

Nestler EJ, Hyman SE (2010) Animal models of neuropsychiatric disorders. Nat Neurosci 13:1161–1169

Nir Y, Fisch L, Mukamel R, Gelbard-Sagiv H, Arieli A et al (2007) Coupling between neuronal firing rate, gamma LFP, and BOLD fMRI is related to interneuronal correlations. Curr Biol 17:1275–1285

Norris DG (2006) Principles of magnetic resonance assessment of brain function. J Magn Reson Imaging 23:794–807

Northoff G, Walter M, Schulte RF, Beck J, Dydak U et al (2007) GABA concentrations in the human anterior cingulate cortex predict negative BOLD responses in fMRI. Nat Neurosci 10:1515–1517

O'Connor KA, Roth BL (2005) Finding new tricks for old drugs: an efficient route for public-sector drug discovery. Nat Rev Drug Discov 4:1005–1014

Ogawa S, Tank DW, Menon R, Ellermann JM, Kim SG et al (1992) Intrinsic signal changes accompanying sensory stimulation: functional brain mapping with magnetic resonance imaging. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 89:5951–5955

Palmer GC (1986) Neurochemical coupled actions of transmitters in the microvasculature of the brain. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 10:79–101

Raichle ME, Mintun MA (2006) Brain work and brain imaging. Annu Rev Neurosci 29:449–476

Roth BL, Sheffler DJ, Kroeze WK (2004) Magic shotguns versus magic bullets: selectively non-selective drugs for mood disorders and schizophrenia. Nat Rev Drug Discov 3:353–359

Salinas E, Sejnowski TJ (2001) Gain modulation in the central nervous system: where behavior, neurophysiology, and computation meet. Neuroscientist 7:430–440

Sara SJ (2009) The locus coeruleus and noradrenergic modulation of cognition. Nat Rev Neurosci 10:211–223

Sato A, Sato Y, Uchida S (2002) Regulation of cerebral cortical blood flow by the basal forebrain cholinergic fibers and aging. Auton Neurosci 96:13–19

Schott BH, Minuzzi L, Krebs RM, Elmenhorst D, Lang M et al (2008) Mesolimbic functional magnetic resonance imaging activations during reward anticipation correlate with reward-related ventral striatal dopamine release. J Neurosci 28:14311–14319

Schwarz AJ, Zocchi A, Reese T, Gozzi A, Garzotti M et al (2004) Concurrent pharmacological MRI and in situ microdialysis of cocaine reveal a complex relationship between the central hemodynamic response and local dopamine concentration. Neuroimage 23:296–304

Shmuel A, Yacoub E, Pfeuffer J, Van de Moortele PF, Adriany G et al (2002) Sustained negative BOLD, blood flow and oxygen consumption response and its coupling to the positive response in the human brain. Neuron 36:1195–1210

Shorter E (2002) Looking backwards: a possible new path for drug discovery in psychopharmacology. Nat Rev Drug Discov 1:1003–1006

Stein EA (2001) fMRI: a new tool for the in vivo localization of drug actions in the brain. J Anal Toxicol 25:419–424

Sterpenich V, D'Argembeau A, Desseilles M, Balteau E, Albouy G et al (2006) The locus ceruleus is involved in the successful retrieval of emotional memories in humans. J Neurosci 26:7416–7423

Tallon-Baudry C, Bertrand O, Peronnet F, Pernier J (1998) Induced gamma-band activity during the delay of a visual short-term memory task in humans. J Neurosci 18:4244–4254

Thomsen K, Offenhauser N, Lauritzen M (2004) Principal neuron spiking: neither necessary nor sufficient for cerebral blood flow in rat cerebellum. J Physiol 560:181–189

Uhlhaas PJ, Singer W (2006) Neural synchrony in brain disorders: relevance for cognitive dysfunctions and pathophysiology. Neuron 52:155–168

Wade AR, Rowland J (2010) Early suppressive mechanisms and the negative blood oxygenation level-dependent response in human visual cortex. J Neurosci 30:5008–5019

Whittington MA, Faulkner HJ, Doheny HC, Traub RD (2000) Neuronal fast oscillations as a target site for psychoactive drugs. Pharmacol Ther 86:171–190

Wong DF, Tauscher J, Grunder G (2009) The role of imaging in proof of concept for CNS drug discovery and development. Neuropsychopharmacology 34:187–203

Index

Curr Topics Behav Neurosci (2012) 11: 389–391
DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-28711-4